A Simple PDF File

This is a small demonstration .pdf file -

just for use in the Virtual Mechanics tutorials. More text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text.

And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. Boring, zzzzz. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text.

And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. Even more. Continued on page 2 ...

Simple PDF File 2

...continued from page 1. Yet more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. Oh, how boring typing this stuff. But not as boring as watching paint dry. And more text. And more text. And more text. And more text. Boring. More, a little more text. The end, and just as well.

The Maths E-Book of Notes and Examples

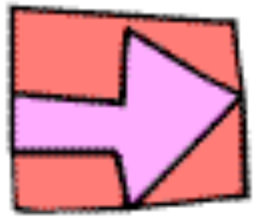
In association with

mr barton maths.com

Contents

Click on which topic below you'd like to view

Number



1. Types of Number

1. Integers

"Integer" is just a posh word for whole number.
The thing to remember is that integers can be positive or negative
So: 1, 7, 298, -3, 0 and -49 are all integers, but 2.5 is not!

2. Rational Numbers

Rational Numbers are numbers which can be written as fractions.
Don't Forget: the top and bottom of the fraction (numerator and denominator) must be whole numbers (integers).

So: 4 is a rational number as it can be written as: $^4/_1$ or $^8/_2$

0.6 is a rational number as it can be written as: $^6/_{10}$ or $^3/_5$

even 4.285714285714... is a rational number as it can be written as: $^{30}/_7$

3. Irrational Numbers

Irrational Numbers are just the opposite of Rational Numbers
They cannot be written as a fraction.
In fact, when these numbers are written in decimal form, the numbers go on forever and ever and the pattern of digits is not repeated.

e.g. The most famous Irrational Number is pi (π), which is 3.1415927..., but $\sqrt{2}$ and $\sqrt{7}$ are irrational too

Return to contents page

4. Square Numbers

You can get a Square Number by multiplying any whole number (integer) by itself

So: The first square number is 1, because $1 \times 1 = 1$.

The second square number is 4, because $2 \times 2 = 4$, and so on...

The first ten square numbers are: 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81, 100

Look:

You can also get all the square numbers by counting the dots in square patters:

5. Triangle Numbers

You can get all the Triangle Numbers by starting with 1, and then adding 2, then adding 3, then adding 4, and so on...

So: The first triangle number is 1

The second triangle number is 3 $(1 + 2)$

The third triangle numbers is 6 $(1 + 2 + 3)$

The first ten triangle numbers are: 1, 3, 6, 10, 15, 21, 28, 36, 45, 55

Look:

You can also get all the triangle numbers by counting the dots in triangle patters:

Challenge:

By looking at the dot patterns, can you see why every time you add together two consecutive triangle numbers, you get a square number?

e.g. $15 + 21 = 36$, which is a square number, and $36 + 45 = 81$, which is also a square number!

Return to contents page

6. Cube Numbers

You can get a Cube Number by multiplying any whole number (integer) by itself and then by itself again.

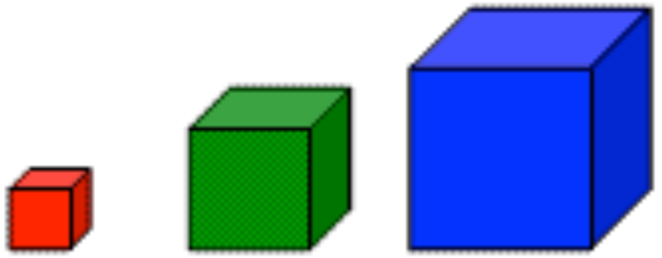
So: The first cube number is 1, because $1 \times 1 \times 1 = 1$.

The second cube number is 8, because $2 \times 2 \times 2 = 8$, and so on...

The first ten square numbers are: 1, 8, 27, 64, 125, 216, 343, 512, 729, 1000

Look:

If Mr Barton was in any way artistic, he would show you that you can get all the cube numbers by counting dots in cubes. Don't take my word for it, try it yourself!



7. Factors

The Factors of a number are all the whole numbers (integers) that divide into your number exactly (there must not be a remainder!)

Don't forget: 1 is a factor of all numbers, and so is the number itself!

e.g. The factors of 12 are: 1, 2, 3, 4, 6 and 12

The factors of 55 are: 1, 5, 11, and 55

Challenge:

Have you any idea why all square numbers seem to have an odd number of factors?

8. Multiples

The Multiples of a number are all the numbers in your number's times table

Don't forget: you must count the number itself!

e.g. Some multiples of 7 are: 7, 14, 21, 28... but there are loads more, like 700 and 4445

Some multiples of 21 are: 21, 42, 63... but there are loads more, like 231 and 1050

Return to contents page

9. Prime Numbers

For some reason, people always get confused with prime numbers, so try to remember this definition and you won't go wrong:

A prime number is a number that has exactly 2 factors, no more, no less

So: 1 is NOT a prime number, as it only has one factor (1)

2 is a prime number as it has two factors (1 and 2)

Don't Forget: 2 is the only EVEN prime number!

7 is a prime number as it has two factors (1 and 7)

21 is NOT a prime number as it has four factors (1, 3, 7 and 21)

1061 is a prime number as it has just two factors (1 and 1061)

Look:

Unfortunately, there does not seem to be any patterns to help us find all the prime numbers, but it's not all bad news. I think the prize for finding the largest prime number is about $1million, and its even more if you find the pattern! If you have a spare 5 minutes, why not give it a go.

Anyway, until then, here are all the prime numbers between 1 and 100:

2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37, 41, 43, 47, 53, 59, 61, 67, 71, 73, 79, 83, 89 and 97.

Return to contents page

2. Prime Factors, HCF & LCM

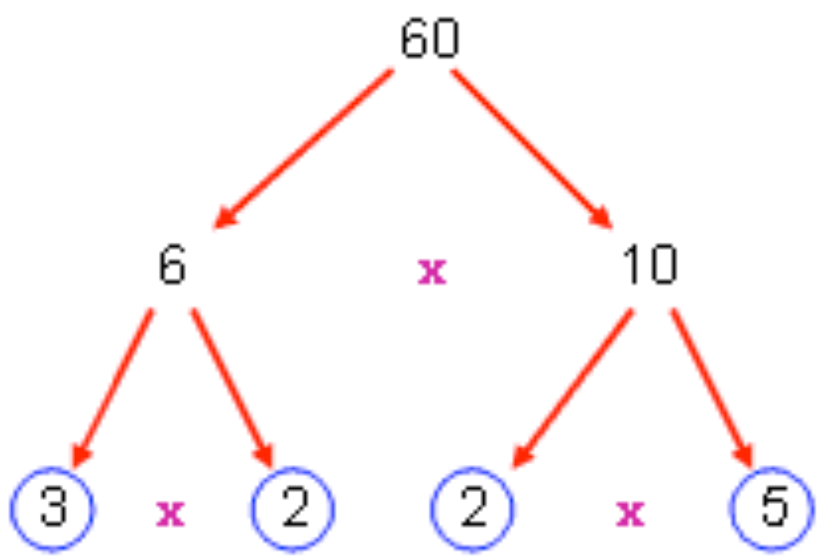
1. Prime Factors

Any positive integer can be written as a product of its prime factors.

Now, that may sound complicated, but all it means is that you can break up any number into a multiplication of prime numbers, and it's really easy to do with Factor Trees!

Don't Forget: **1** is NOT a prime number, so will NEVER be in your factor tree

e.g. Express 60 as a product of its prime factors



$3 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5 = 60$

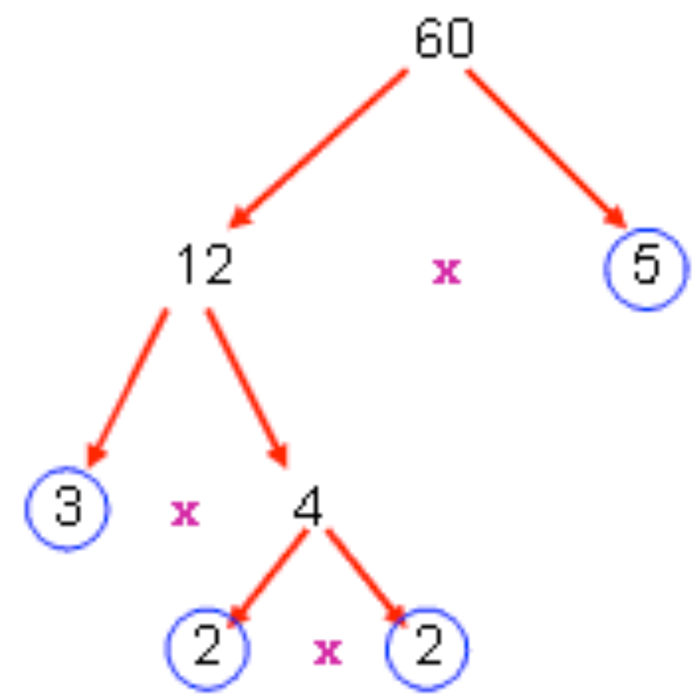
You can break the number up however you like:

6×10 or 12×5

Continue breaking up each new number into a multiplication

Stop when you reach a Prime Number and put a ring around it

Check your answer by multiplying all the numbers together



$3 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5 = 60$

Return to contents page

Look: Even though we started a different way, we still ended up with the same answer!
Now, it looks good if you write your answer starting with the smallest numbers:

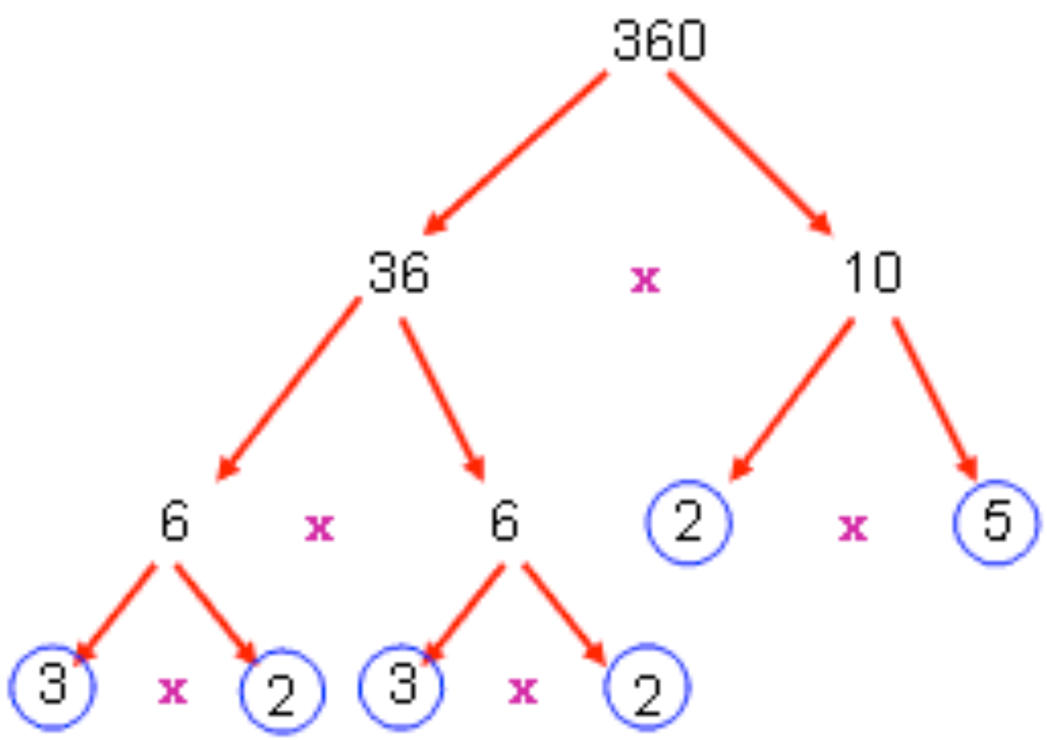
So: $60 = 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 5$

And if you want to be really posh, you can use indices:

So: $60 = 2^2 \times 3 \times 5$

Now we'll do a harder one, but the technique is just the same.

e.g. Express 360 as a product of its prime factors



You can break the number up however you like. I just went for 36 × 10 because it was easy to spot

Continue breaking up each new number into a multiplication

Stop when you reach a Prime Number and put a ring around it

Check your answer by multiplying all the numbers together

Write the numbers in order

If you can, use indices

$3 \times 2 \times 3 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5 = 360$

$360 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3 \times 5$

$360 = 2^3 \times 3^2 \times 5$

Return to contents page

2. Highest Common Factor

The Highest Common Factor (HCF) of two numbers, is the highest number that divides exactly into both

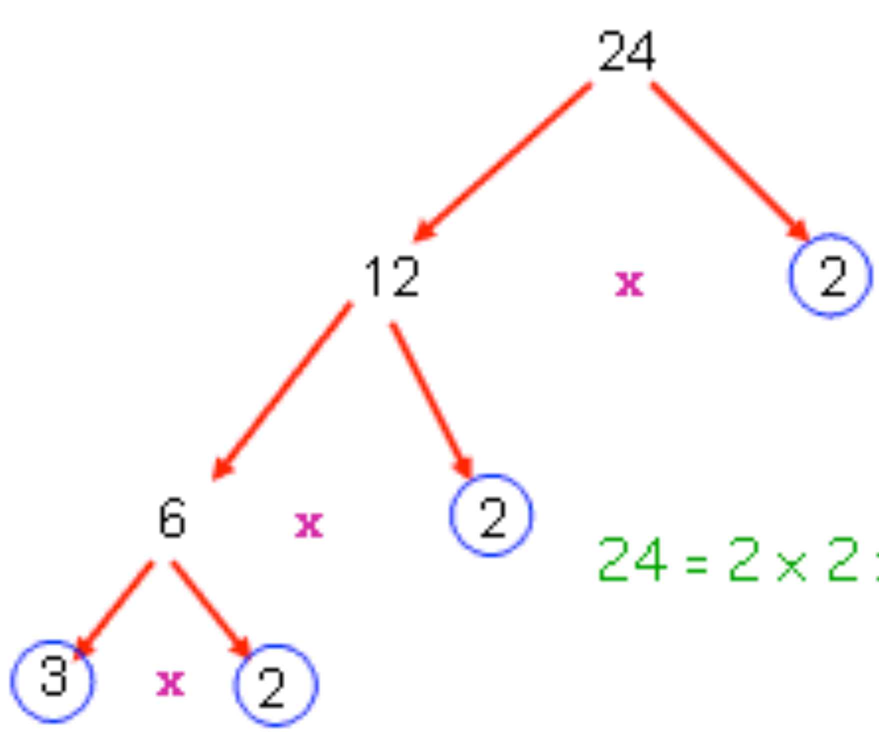
3. Lowest Common Multiple

The Lowest Common Multiple (LCM) of two numbers, is the lowest number that is in the times table of both your numbers

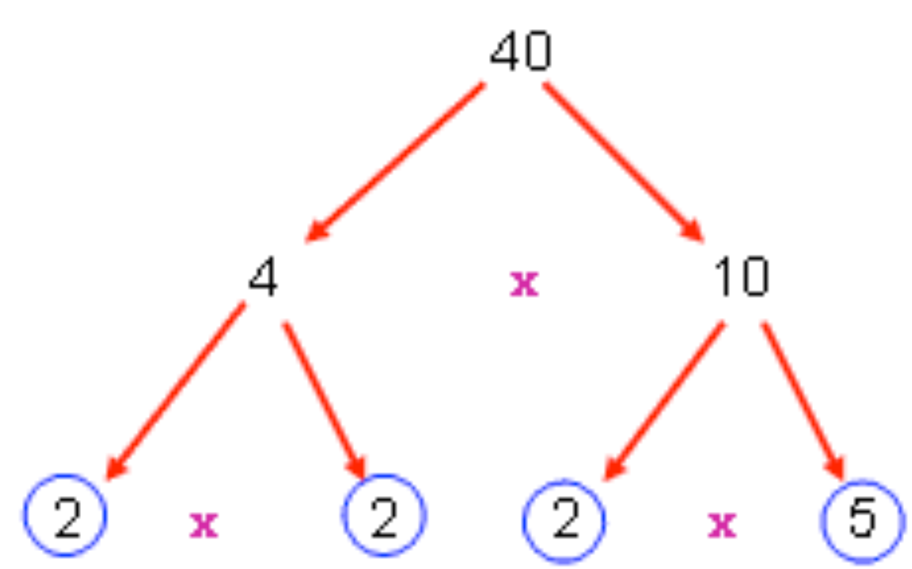
Now, you can find both of these by trial and error, but I will show you a better way!

e.g. Find the LCM and HCF of 24 and 40

First, use Factor Trees to express your numbers as products of their prime factors:



$24 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3$



$40 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5$

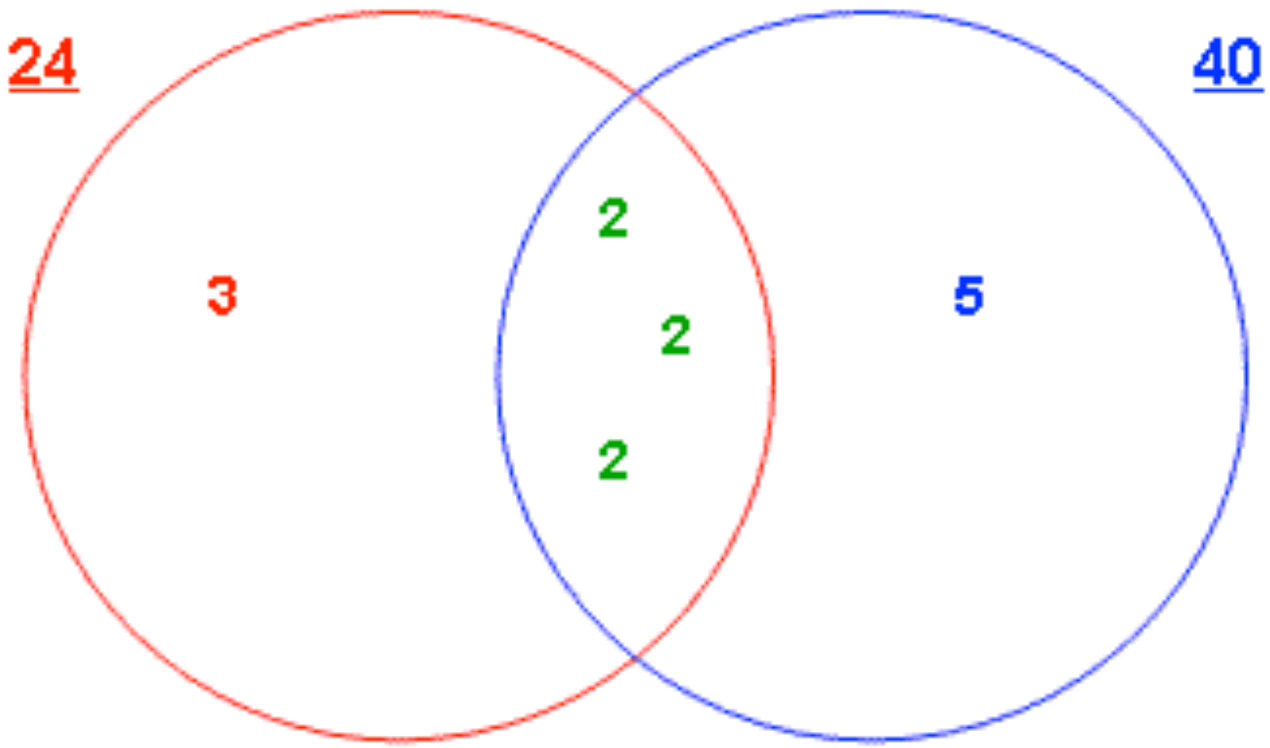
Return to contents page

Now, write your answers on top of each other, like this:

$$24 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3$$

$$40 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5$$

Draw two inter-locking circles, and label one 24 and the other 40



Any numbers that appear in both answers go in the middle (the three 2s).

The numbers left over go in the circle they belong to

Now, here is the clever bit:

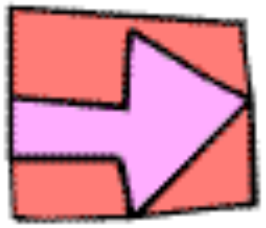
To get the Highest Common Factor you just multiply all the numbers in the middle

So, HCF $= 2 \times 2 \times 2 =$ **8**

To get the Lowest Common Multiple you just multiply every number you can see

So, LCM $= 3 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5 =$ **120**

Return to contents page



3. Bodmas

A question...

What is: **3 + 2 x 4** ?

Now, if you said **20**, then I am afraid you are wrong.
If you try the sum on your calculator – and so long as it is not one of those you get free in a cereal packet – then the answer that should appear on the screen is **11**

But why?...

Well, it's all to do with BODMAS, or BIDMAS depending on which one you prefer.
This is a set of rule which tells you which order you must do operations (like add, divide etc) in order to get questions like the one above correct.

So, what does it stand for?...

B	Brackets	If there are any brackets in your sum, work out what is inside them first. And remember: you must use the rules of Bodmas inside your brackets!

Return to contents page

O or I	Order or Indices	Next up you must look for powers, such as 2^3 and work them out
D	Divide	Now it's time to sort out your divisions. And remember: divisions can look like this: $\div$ or this: $\frac{9}{4}$
M	Multiply	Next comes the multiplications $\times$
A	Add	Then add the additions $+$
S	Subtract	And last but not least, the subtractions $-$

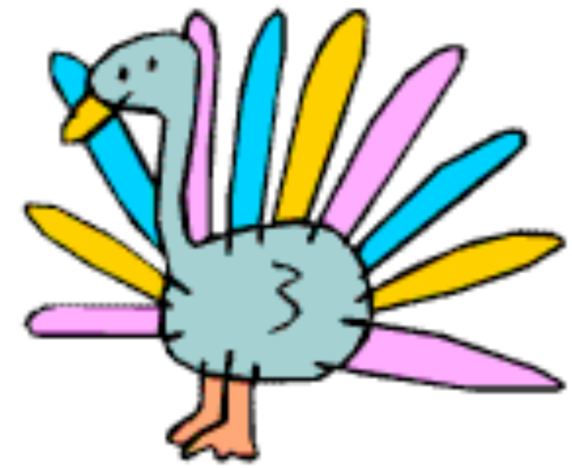
And so long as you follow these rules carefully, you shouldn't go wrong!

But let's go through three examples together...

Return to contents page

Example 1 – Quite Nice

$$20-(3+2)\times 3$$



1. The first thing we need to do is to sort those brackets out. $3+2=5$, so we are left with this new sum: → $20-5\times 3$

2. We have no powers and no divisions, so next up is our multiplication. $5\times 3=15$, leaving us with this: → $20-15$

3. And now life is easy! → 5

So, as I hope you can see, all we need to do is break down long, complicated sums into smaller, more manageable ones. And so long as we take our time, and write down each step, we should be okay.

But they do get harder...

Return to contents page

Example 2 – A Bit Trickier

$$3+(2\times 3^2-3)\div 5$$

1. Again, the first thing we need to do is to sort those brackets out. Let's concentrate on them and worry about the rest of the sum later: → $(2\times 3^2-3)$

2. We must make sure we use the same rules of Bodmas inside the brackets. So first we must deal with our power. Remember: 3^2 is 9, not 6! → $(2\times 9-3)$

3. No divisions, so next up is the multiplication: → $(18-3)$

4. Which leaves as a nice subtraction, and tells us the value of our brackets: → 15

5. Now we can return to our original problem, and thankfully it looks a lot nicer: → $3+15\div 5$

6. Keep your brain switched on at this point and remember to do the division first. → $3+3$

7. And even though you might have to go onto two hands to count your fingers, you should get the answer to this one correct → 6

Right, are you ready for this one...

Return to contents page

Example 3 – A Nightmare

$$\frac{10+2\times 3}{10-2^3}$$

1. Now, you might not think there are any brackets on this sum… but there are! Whenever the division line goes right across, it is like there are brackets on the top and the bottom, because the whole of the top must be divided by the whole of the bottom: → $\dfrac{(10+2\times 3)}{(10-2^3)}$

2. Right, let sort the top bracket out first: → $(10+2\times 3)$

3. Usual deal, multiplication first: → $(10+6)$

4. Which means the top of the division is easy enough to work out: → 16

5. Now we have the bottom to deal with: → $(10-2^3)$

6. We have to do the power first, and remember, 2^3 is 8, it is definitely not 6! → $(10-8)$

7. Which tells us that the bottom of the division is: → 2

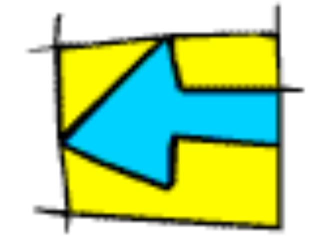
8. Which leaves us with a very nice division to do: → $\dfrac{16}{2}$

9. Which finally gives us our answer: → 8

Phew! And if you followed that, you deserve a break!

Return to contents page

4. Rounding and Approximations



A Question...

Imagine you are walking along the street and someone stops you and asks you to do this nice little sum in your head in 30 seconds...

$$\frac{6.0602^2}{3.1092\times 5.95}$$

If you are anything like my pupils, I can imagine what you might say, and I can't write it on this website...

But, with a little knowledge about rounding and approximations, you should be able to tell that person that the answer is about 2, and then ask them to kindly leave you alone

1. Rounding

Now, there are lots of degrees of accuracy you will need to know how to round to, but the way to tackle any question you could ever possibly be asked is always the same:

1. Circle the last digit you need - what I will call the Key Digit

2. Look at the unwanted digit to the right to it - if it is 5 or above add one on to your Key Digit, if it is less than five, leave your Key Digit alone.

3. Be very careful of the dreaded number 9...

Return to contents page

(a) decimal places

The most common degree of accuracy you are asked to round to is a number of decimal places.

Because mathematicians are lazy, this is normally shortened down to **dp**.

e.g. 5.96 (2dp) means that the answer was probably really long, but when rounded to two decimal places, it was 5.96

The thing you need to remember, and the thing that sounds really obvious, is that if the question asks for **two** decimal places, you must give **two**, no more, no less!

Example 1

Round 5.639 to 1dp

5 . 6 3 9

1. We start by putting a ring around our Key Digit. Now the question has asked for 1 decimal place, so our key digit is the 6, as it occupies the 1st decimal place

2. Next we look at the digit to the right to it – the unwanted number 3. It is less than 5, so we leave the key digit alone.

3. So, to one decimal place, our answer is:

5.6

Example 2

Round 12.0482 to 2dp

1 2 . 0 4 8 2

1. This time the Key Digit is in the 2nd decimal place, which makes it the 4

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is an 8, which is definitely 5 or above, so we must add one onto our Key Digit

3. So, to two decimal places, our answer is:

12.05

Return to contents page

Example 3

Round 25.72037 to 3dp

2 5 . 7 2 0 3 7

1. This time the Key Digit is in the 3rd decimal place, which makes it the 0

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is 3, which is definitely less than 5, so just leave our Key Digit alone

3. So, to three decimal places, our answer is:

25.720

Be careful: Some silly people will put 25.72 down as the answer thinking that the 0 makes no difference. But it does! The question has asked for 3dp, so give them 3dp!

Example 4

Round 3.7952 to 2dp

3 . 7 9 5 2

1. This time the Key Digit is in the 2^{nd} decimal place, which makes it the 9

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is a 5, which is 5 or above, so we must add one onto our Key Digit

But: if we add one to our key digit, we get 10! So, we must add one to the next digit as well, which is the 7

3. So, to two decimal places, our answer is:

3.80

(b) nearest whole, 10, 100, 1000 etc

These are the nicest types of rounding questions, and so long as you have your brain switched on, you shouldn't get too many of them wrong. But don't get cocky, as you can easily make mistakes!

Remember: the size of your rounded number should be a similar size to the number in the question, and you must use zeros to help you with this

Return to contents page

Example 1

Round 3.825 to the nearest whole number

3 . 8 2 5

1. Our Key Digit is always the degree of accuracy the question asks for, which in this case is whole numbers, so we need the 3.

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is 8, which is definitely more than 5, so we add one to our Key Digit.

3. So, to the nearest whole number, our answer is:

4

Example 2

Round 32,825.2 to the nearest hundred

3 2 8 2 5 . 2

1. We want the nearest hundred, so stick the ring around the digit in the hundreds column, which is the 8.

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is a 2, which is less than 5, so we leave our Key Digit alone.

3. So, to the nearest hundred, our answer is:

32,800

Example 3

Round 4,365,901 to the nearest thousand

4 3 6 5 9 0 1

1. We want the nearest thousand, so our Key Digit must be the number that represents the thousands which is the 5

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is 9, which is definitely more than 5, so we add one to our Key Digit.

3. So, to the nearest whole number, our answer is:

4,365,000

Example 4

Round 3,999 to the nearest ten

3 9 9 9

1. We want the nearest ten, so the Key Digit must be the 9 in the tens column

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is a 9, so we add one on, but we then need to add one on the next 9, and then the 3!

3. So, to the nearest ten, our answer is:

4,000

Return to contents page

(c) significant figures

In higher level SATs, and especially in GCSE and A Level, the nasty examiners are obsessed with Significant Figures.

Again, there is a lazy way of writing this, which is **sf** or **sig fig**.

Crucial: The first significant figure is always the first non-zero number you come across. The second significant figure is the number to the right of that, and so on…

Remember: the size of your rounded number should be a similar size to the number in the question, and you must use zeros to help you with this.

Example 1

Round 28.53 to 1 sig fig

2 8 . 5 3

1. The Key Digit has the be the first significant figure, which must be the 2, as it is the first non-zero number

2. Now we carry on as normal looking to the number to the right, which is an 8, so we add one on.

3. So, keeping the size of the answer the same as the question with a zero, to 1 sig fig the answer must be:

30

Example 2

Round 5,322 to 2 sig figs

5 3 2 2

1. The Key Digit is in the place of the 2nd significant figure, which is the 3

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is 2, which is definitely less than 5, so we leave our Key Digit alone

3. So, again using zeros to help us, to two sig figs, our answer is:

5300

Return to contents page

Example 3

Round 0.027 to 1 sig fig

0 . 0 2 7

1. Our first significant figure is the first non-zero number, which means it's the 2

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is 7, so we add one to our Key Digit.

3. No need for extra zeros here, so to the 1 significant figure our answer is:

0.03

Example 5

Round 4.0004 to 2 sig figs

4 . 0 0 0 4

1. The 1st sig fig is the 4, and so the 2nd is the 0 (it is after the 4, so it's significant).

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is 0, which is definitely less than 5, so we leave our Key Digit alone

3. So, to 2 sig figs, our answer is:

4.0

Example 4

Round 305,216 to 3 sig figs

3 0 5 2 1 6

1. The 1st sig fig is the 3, the 2nd is the 0 (it is after the 3, so it's significant), so the Key Digit is the 5

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is a 2, so we leave our Key Digit alone.

3. We need some zeros to make our answer the correct size, so to 3 sig figs::

305,200

Example 6

Round 0.089722 to 2 sig figs

0 . 0 8 9 7 2 2

1. Our 1st non zero number is the 8, so the Key Digit must be the 9.

2. The unwanted digit to the right of it is a 7, so we add one on, but that gives us 10, so we must add one to our 8 as well.

3. Keeping our answer the right size, we have:

0.090

Return to contents page

2. Approximations

Right, now that we are experts at rounding, we can use our skills to find approximate answers (or estimates) to horrible looking questions like the one at the start:

$$\frac{6.0602^2}{3.1092 \times 5.95}$$

Now, you would need to be a bit of a freak to do this in your head, but if you were to round each number to the nearest whole number, or 1 significant figure then you get:

$$\longrightarrow \frac{6^2}{3 \times 6}$$

And if you now use our BODMAS skills, you should be able to say:

$$\frac{6^2}{3 \times 6} \longrightarrow \frac{36}{3 \times 6} \longrightarrow \frac{36}{18} \longrightarrow 2$$

The actual answer on the calculator is pretty close: **1.98521838...**

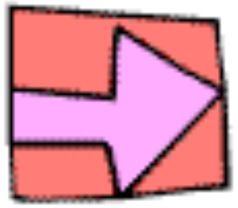
So, if we want to sound clever, we can say that:

$$\frac{6.0602^2}{3.1092 \times 5.95} \approx 2$$

Where the funny sign means: "approximately equal to"

So, always look out for ways to use your rounding skills to turn tricky looking sums into pretty easy ones!

Return to contents page



5. Decimals

Things you might need to be able to do with decimals...

This will vary with your age and what maths set you are in, but here is a list of some of the things you might need to be able to do with decimals:

1. Know the three types of decimals
2. Know how to add, subtract, multiply and divide using decimals
3. Understand the relationship between fractions, decimals and percentages
4. Know how to convert a recurring decimal into a fraction.

And if you are sitting comfortably, then I will begin...

1. The Three Types of Decimal

Here they are...

(a) Exact or Terminating

These are decimals that stop.

They do not go on forever, and so you can write down all their digits

e.g. 0.5, 0.276, 0.523894, 0.0000000004

Return to contents page

(b) Recurring

These are decimals that go on forever and ever, but some of the digits repeat.

e.g. 0.3333333... 0.454545454545..., 0.1489148914891489...,

It is impossible to write down all the digits, so we use the dot notation

We place a dot (or two dots) to show which digits repeat

Examples

0 . 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5 5... Here, only the 5 repeats, so we place the dot like this: → $0.\dot{5}$

0 . 1 4 3 1 4 3 1 4 3 1... Now it's the 1 4 3 repeating, so the following is needed: → $0.\dot{1}4\dot{3}$

0 . 3 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7... The 7 repeats, but the 3 does not, so it would be wrong to put a dot on the 3. We need this: → $0.3\dot{7}$

0 . 8 2 3 4 1 3 4 1 3 4 1... Here, only the 3 4 1 is repeating, so place the dots at the beginning and end of that group → $0.82\dot{3}4\dot{1}$

(c) Irrational

These are what I call dodgy decimals

They go on forever and ever, but the digits do not repeat in a regular pattern

e.g. pi, which is 3.1415926535897932...

Watch Out: Your calculator only has so much space, so some recurring or irrational decimals might look like the actually terminate!

Return to contents page

2. Working with Decimals

If you can add, subtract, multiply and divide whole numbers (integers), then you should be okay with decimals, so long as you are careful!

(a) Adding and Subtracting

The key thing here is to write the numbers out on top of each other and line up your decimal points. That way you won't make a daft mistake

Example 1

$12.875 + 0.34$

Write the numbers out on top of each other, and line up your decimal points

$$\begin{array}{r} 12.875 \\ +\ 0.34 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Now, so long as you remember how to add, and be careful when carrying numbers, you should get the answer of:

13.215

Example 2

$0.62 - 0.0159$

Again, write the numbers out on top of each other, and line up your decimal points

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.6200 \\ -\ 0.0159 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Sometimes I find it easier to fill in zeros on the top line to make subtracting easier.

and remember all your rules from primary school about borrowing from the number to the left

You should get: **0.6041**

Return to contents page

(b) Multiplying

There are a few different ways of doing this, so feel free to ditch my method if you find a better one, but basically if there is a whole number involved I do the sum as normal, and if there are two decimals, then I change the question to make it easier!

Example 1

7×1.36

Write the numbers out on top of each other, putting the whole number on the bottom

Remember: it doesn't matter which order you do multiplications

$$\begin{array}{r} 1\,.\,3\,6 \\ \times \quad 7 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Now, just multiply each digit in turn by 7, and remember to carry your numbers, and you should end up with:

9 . 5 2

Example 2

0.32×0.528

Now, I don't like the look of this at all, but if I multiply the 0.32 by 100 and the 0.528 by 1000, then I get a much easier sum:

32×528

Now, I do these kind of sums using the grid method, but feel free to use your own way:

x	500	20	8
30	15000	600	240
2	1000	40	16

$$\begin{array}{r} 15000 \\ 1000 \\ 600 \\ 240 \\ 40 \\ +\quad 16 \\ \hline 16896 \end{array}$$

Now, the answer to this question is 16,896, but to get the answer to the original question we must undo our changes, so divide by 100 and then divide by 1000

Which gives us: **0 . 1 6 8 9 6**

Return to contents page

(c) Dividing

Fortunately, questions about dividing with decimals do not come up all that often, but whenever they do I again use the same method:

1. Make the question easier by multiplying the numbers by 10, 100, or 1000
2. Do the easier sum
3. Remember to undo your changes by multiplying or dividing by 10, 100, or 1000 to get the actual answer

Example 75.92 ÷ 1.3

Right, let's sort those horrible numbers out first.

Multiply the 75.92 by 100 and the 1.3 by 10, and things should look a whole lot nicer → **7592 ÷ 13**

Now, it all depends how you like to do these. I write it out like this: 13)7592

And then I do a lot of talking to myself like this:

- How many 13s go into 7?... None, so carry the seven
- How many 13s go into 75?... Erm... 5, remainder 10, so carry the 10
- How many 13s go into 109?... Erm... erm... 8, remainder 5
- How many 13s go into 52?... 4 exactly!

$$13\overline{)7592}\ \text{ gives } 0584$$

→ So, our answer is 584, but remember we must undo our changes → Well, multiplying 75.92 by 100 made the answer 100 times too big, so we must divide by 100, BUT: multiplying 1.3 by 10 made the answer 10 times too small (as we were dividing), so we must multiply by 10

Which gives us: → **58.4**

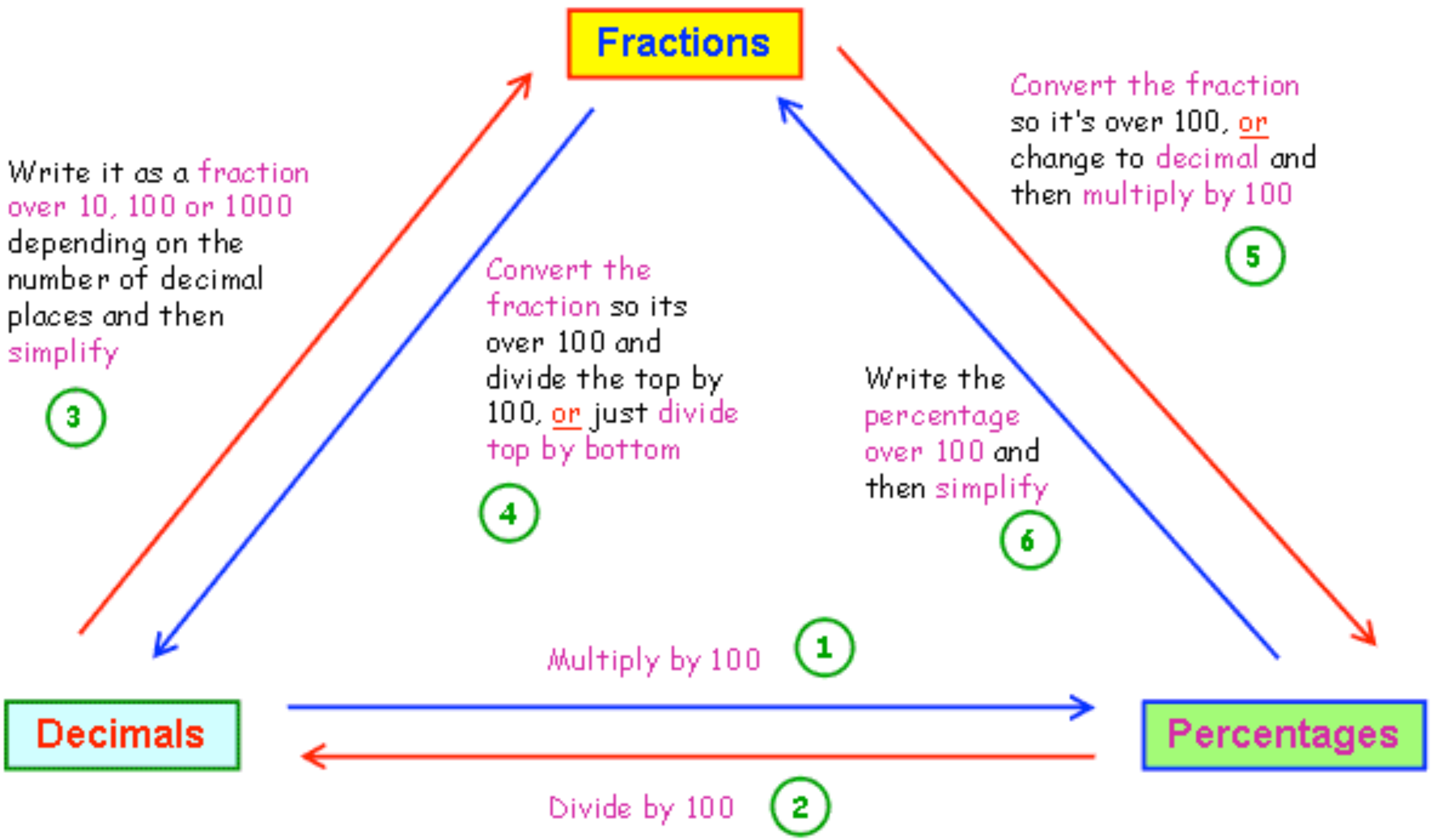
Return to contents page

3. Fractions, Decimals and Percentages

Fractions, Decimals and Percentages are all closely related to each other, and you need to be comfortable changing between each of them.

Hopefully this diagram will help.

Follow the arrows depending on what you need to change, and follow the numbers for examples below



Return to contents page

1 What is 0.364 as a percentage?

Just multiply by 100 and be careful with the decimal point!

0.364×100

$= 36.4\%$

2 Convert 8.3% into a decimal

Just divide by 100 and again be careful with the decimal point!

$8.3 \div 100$

$= 0.083$

3 Write 0.16 as a fraction

There are 2 decimal places, so write it over 100

$\frac{16}{100}$

Now carefully simplify

$\frac{16}{100} = \frac{8}{50} = \frac{4}{25}$

4 Write $\frac{13}{20}$ as a decimal

We need to change the bottom of the fraction to 100, remembering to do the same to the top

$$\frac{13}{20} \underset{\times 5}{\overset{\times 5}{=}} \frac{65}{100}$$

Divide the top of your fraction by 100 and you have your answer!

$= 0.65$

5 Write $\frac{5}{8}$ as a percentage

It's not easy to change this fraction over 100, so we must divide 5 by 8

$5 \div 8$

Use any method, but I do this:

$= 8\overline{)5.000}$ with quotient 0.625

0.625 is the answer as a decimal, so we must multiply by 100

0.625×100

$= 62.5\%$

6 What is 12.5% as a fraction?

Start by writing the percentage over 100

$\frac{12.5}{100}$

We need to simplify, but the decimal point makes it hard. So why not multiply top and bottom by 2!

$\times 2$ $\frac{25}{200}$

Now we can simplify as normal to get the answer:

$\frac{25}{200} = \frac{5}{40} = \frac{1}{8}$

Return to contents page

4. Convert a Recurring Decimal into a Fraction

As I hope you've seen, its not too bad to convert fractions into decimals, or terminating decimals into fractions, but what about recurring decimals that go on forever?

Warning: This is hard! But bare with me and I'll try to take you through an example:

Example Convert 0.165165165165... into a fraction

1. We start with a bit of algebra:

Let x = 0.165165165165....

2. We want to move the decimal point to the right so that the repeated block of digits appears in front of the decimal point, so... to move the point 3 places we must multiply by 1000!

$$0.165165165165\ldots \times 1000 = 165.165165165\ldots$$

3. Now, if 0.165165165... = x, then 165.165165165... must equal... 1000x!

$$1000x = 165.165165165165\ldots$$

$$x = 0.165165165165\ldots$$

4. This is the clever/hard bit. If we subtract the top from the bottom we get:

$$1000x - x = 999x$$

$$165.165165165 - 0.165165165 = 165$$

$$999x = 165$$

5. So, by dividing both sides by 999 we get:

$$x = \frac{165}{999}$$

Which, if you check on a calculator is correct!

Challenge: When you convert some fractions into decimals, such as $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{3}{10}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{11}{50}$ you get a terminating decimal, but with others such as $\frac{2}{3}$ $\frac{6}{11}$ $\frac{5}{12}$ $\frac{3}{20}$ $\frac{8}{41}$ You get a recurring decimal! What is the rule?

Return to contents page

6. Fractions

Things you might need to be able to do with fractions...

This will vary with your age and what maths set you are in, but here is a list of some of the things you might need to be able to do with fractions:

1. Know the all important fraction's lingo
2. Know how to find the fraction of a quantity
3. Know all about equivalent fractions so you can simplify
4. Understand proper and improper fractions
5. Know how to add, subtract, multiply and divide using decimals
6. Understand the relationship between fractions, decimals and percentages

And so, without further ado, let's get on with it...

1. Fraction's Lingo

Right, let's try and stop talking about the top and the bottom of a fraction, and instead go for something a bit fancier, like this:

$$\frac{3}{4}$$

numerator → 3

denominator → 4

Warning: every now and again, Mr Barton forgets to call them this, so watch out for "top" and "bottom" creeping into these notes

Return to contents page

2. Fraction of a Quantity

There is a simple method which always works with these types of questions:

1. Divide by the bottom (finds you the value of one fraction)
2. Multiply by the top (gives you the value of the number of fractions you need)

Example 1

What is $\frac{3}{4}$ of 24?

1. If you divide the quantity (24) by the denominator of the fraction (4), it tells you the value of $\frac{1}{4}$

$24 \div 4 = 6$ so, $\frac{1}{4} = 6$

2. But we don't want $\frac{1}{4}$, we want $\frac{3}{4}$

so, we must multiply our answer (6) by the numerator (3)

$6 \times 3 = 18$ so, $\frac{3}{4} = 18$

Example 2

Find $\frac{5}{7}$ of 2.436 Kg
(give your answer in grams)

Now, if before we start, let's change 2.436 Kg into grams so we get nicer numbers and so we are ready for our answer:

$2.436 \times 1000 = 2436$ so, 2.436kg = 2436g

Now we just do the same as before:

1. Divide by the bottom ($2436 \div 7$)

2. Multiply our answer by the top ($\times 5$)

$\frac{1}{7} = 348$ so, $\frac{5}{7} = 1740$

Remember: give units in your answer:

1740g

Return to contents page

3. Equivalent Fractions

Equivalent fractions are just fractions which have exactly the same value.

You need good knowledge of equivalent fractions when simplifying your answers, and also when adding and subtracting fractions.

Here is the rule:

Whatever you multiply or divide the top by, do the exact same to the bottom!

Example 1

$$\frac{2}{7} = \frac{?}{21}$$

Ask yourself: "what has been done to the 7 to make it 21?"

And then do the same to the top!

$$\frac{2}{7} \overset{\times 3}{\underset{\times 3}{=}} \frac{6}{21}$$

Example 2

$$\frac{49}{70} = \frac{7}{?}$$

Ask yourself: "what has been done to the 49 to make it 7?"

And then do the same to the bottom!

$$\frac{49}{70} \overset{\div 7}{\underset{\div 7}{=}} \frac{7}{10}$$

Example 3

Simplify: $\frac{48}{54}$

We are looking to make the fraction as simple as possible (i.e. contain the smallest possible whole numbers)

We need a number to divide both the top and the bottom by (a factor of both)

We stop dividing when the top and the bottom do not share any more factors

It doesn't matter how long it takes!

$$\frac{48}{54} \overset{\div 2}{\underset{\div 2}{=}} \frac{24}{27} \overset{\div 3}{\underset{\div 3}{=}} \frac{8}{9}$$

Return to contents page

4. Proper and Improper Fractions

In a proper fraction, the bottom is bigger than the top, like: $\frac{3}{4}$

In an improper fraction (top heavy), the top is bigger than the bottom, like: $\frac{9}{7}$

Sometimes, improper fractions are written as mixed number fractions, like: $3\frac{2}{7}$

You need to be able to switch between improper and mixed number fractions!

Example 1

Write: $22/5$ as a mixed number fraction

Okay, so here we have 22 lots of $1/5$

How many $1/5$ do we need to make one whole?

Well, if you think about a cake sliced into fifths, then we would need 5 slices to make a whole

So, how many wholes can we make out of our 22?

Well, 5 goes into 22... erm... 4 times, with a remainder of... erm... erm... 2!

So, our 22 makes 5 wholes with 2 parts left over

So...

$$\frac{22}{5} = 4\frac{2}{5}$$

Example 2

Write: $3\frac{5}{8}$ as an improper fraction

Right, now we have 3 whole ones, and 5 lots of $1/8$

How many lots of $1/8$ are then in each whole?...

Well, one whole is $8/8$, so there must be 8!

So, how many lots of $1/8$ in our 3 wholes?

$3 \times 8 = 24!$

But remember, we also have our 5 lots of $1/8$

So, altogether we have (24 + 5) lots of $1/8$

So...

$$3\frac{5}{8} = \frac{29}{8}$$

Return to contents page

5. Adding, Subtracting, Multiplying and Dividing Fractions

Warning: this is one of those topics everyone messes up!

Don't mix up your rules for adding and subtracting with those for multiplying and dividing!

(a) Adding and Subtracting

1. Change any mixed number fractions into improper (top heavy) fractions
2. Choose a number that both denominators go into (are factors of)
3. Use your skills of equivalent fractions to make both fractions have that chosen number as their denominator
4. Add/subtract the numerators together, keep the denominator the same, and simplify!

Why can't I just add the tops and the bottom together, cos that'd be dead easy?...

Imagine doing this question $\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{5}$

So, you want to add the tops and the bottoms... $\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{5}=\frac{2}{8}$

Simplify it: $\frac{2}{8}=\frac{1}{4}$

But look! We started off with $1/3$, we added something to it, we got $1/4$ for our answer, which is smaller than $1/3$

THIS IS ABSOLUTE RUBBISH!!!

(but people still do it!)

Example $3\frac{1}{3}-\frac{4}{5}$

1. Change the mixed number fraction: $3\frac{1}{3}=\frac{10}{3}$

2. Choose a number both denominators are factors of

3 and 5 are both factors of 15

3. Change both fractions so they have 15 on the bottom:

$$\frac{10}{3}\overset{\times 5}{=}\frac{50}{15} \qquad \frac{4}{5}\overset{\times 3}{=}\frac{12}{15}$$

4. Subtract tops, leave bottoms, simplify:

$$\frac{50}{15}-\frac{12}{15}=\frac{38}{15}=2\frac{8}{15}$$

Return to contents page

(a) Multiplying and Dividing

Good News: This is a lot easier than adding and subtracting!

How to Multiply fractions:

(1) Change any mixed number into improper (top heavy) fractions

(2) Multiply tops together and multiply bottoms together

(3) Simplify your answer

How to Divide fractions:

(1) Change mixed number fractions

(1) Flip the second fraction upside down

(2) Change the division sign to a multiply

(3) Multiply and simplify!

Example 1

$$\frac{2}{5} \times 1\frac{3}{4}$$

1. Change the mixed number fraction: $1\frac{3}{4} = \frac{7}{3}$

2. Multiply tops together and bottoms together:

$$\frac{2}{5} \times \frac{7}{4} = \frac{2 \times 7}{5 \times 4} = \frac{14}{20}$$

3. Simplify:

$$\frac{14}{20} = \frac{7}{10}$$

Example 2

$$3\frac{2}{7} \div \frac{5}{6}$$

1. Change the mixed number fraction: $3\frac{2}{7} = \frac{23}{7}$

2. Flip the second fraction: $\frac{5}{6} \rightarrow \frac{6}{5}$

3. Change sign to multiply: $\frac{23}{7} \times \frac{6}{5}$

4. Finish it off by multiplying and then simplifying!

$$\frac{23}{7} \times \frac{6}{5} = \frac{23 \times 6}{7 \times 5} = \frac{138}{35} = 3\frac{33}{35}$$

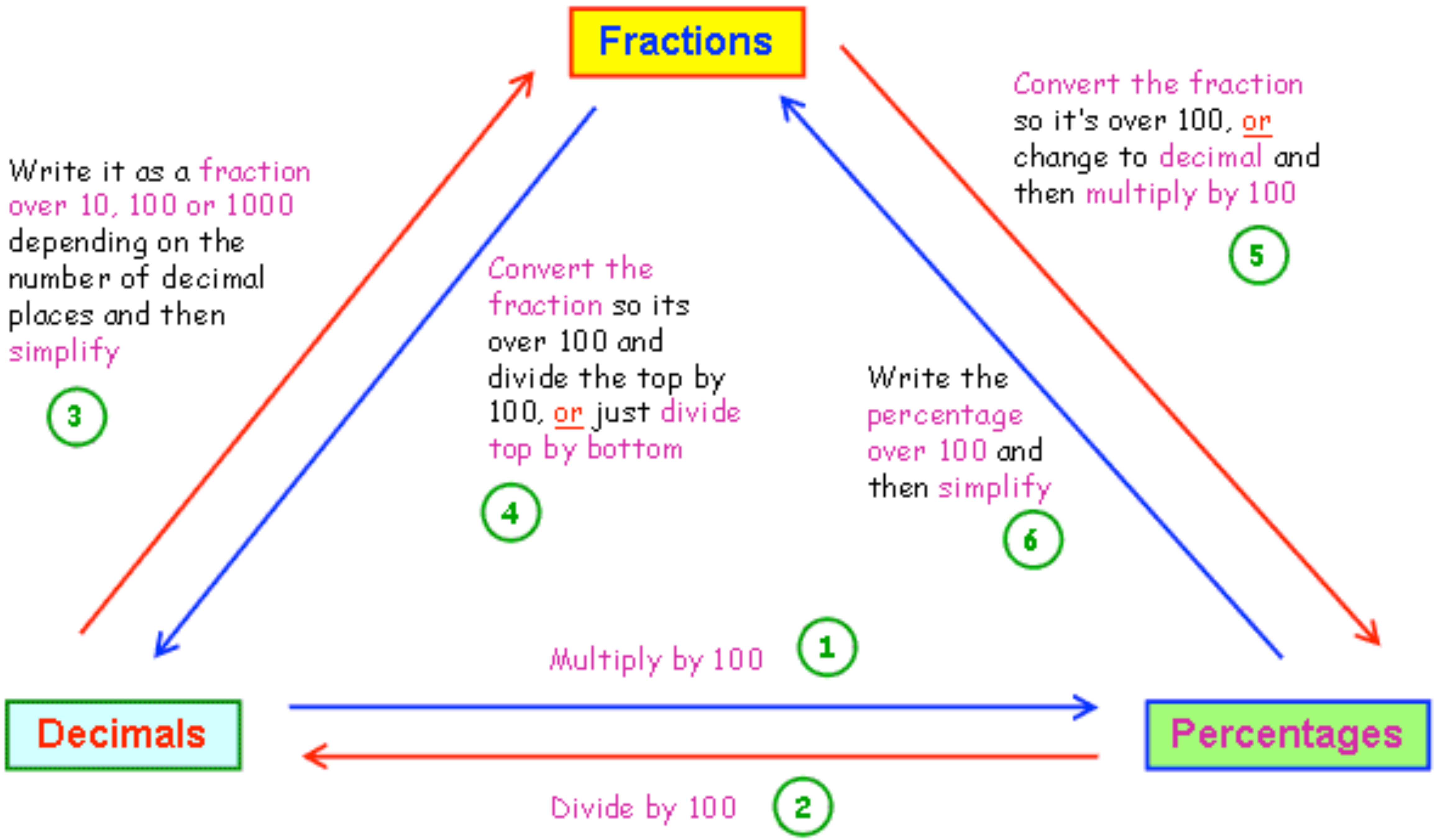
Return to contents page

5. Fractions, Decimals and Percentages

Fractions, Decimals and Percentages are all closely related to each other, and you need to be comfortable changing between each of them.

Hopefully this diagram will help.

Follow the arrows depending on what you need to change, and follow the numbers for examples below



Return to contents page

1 What is 0.364 as a percentage?

Just multiply by 100 and be careful with the decimal point!

0.364×100

$= 36.4\%$

2 Convert 8.3% into a decimal

Just divide by 100 and again be careful with the decimal point!

$8.3 \div 100$

$= 0.083$

3 Write 0.16 as a fraction

There are 2 decimal places, so write it over 100

$$\frac{16}{100}$$

Now carefully simplify

$$\frac{16}{100} = \frac{8}{50} = \frac{4}{25}$$

4 Write $\frac{13}{20}$ as a decimal

We need to change the bottom of the fraction to 100, remembering to do the same to the top

$$\overbrace{\frac{13}{20} = \frac{65}{100}}^{\times 5}$$

$\times 5$

Divide the top of your fraction by 100 and you have your answer!

$= 0.65$

5 Write $\frac{5}{8}$ as a percentage

It's not easy to change this fraction over 100, so we must divide 5 by 8

$5 \div 8$

Use any method, but I do this:

$$= 8\overline{)5.000}\ \text{giving}\ 0.625$$

0.625 is the answer as a decimal, so we must <u>multiply by 100</u>

0.625×100

$= 62.5\%$

6 What is 12.5% as a fraction?

Start by writing the percentage over 100

$$\frac{12.5}{100}$$

We need to simplify, but the decimal point makes it hard. So why not multiply top and bottom by 2!

$$\times 2 \quad \frac{25}{200}$$

Now we can <u>simplify</u> as normal to get the answer:

$$\frac{25}{200} = \frac{5}{40} = \frac{1}{8}$$

Return to contents page

7. Percentages

Things you might need to be able to do with percentages…

This will vary with your age and what maths set you are in, but here is a list of some of the things you might need to be able to do with percentages:

1. Understand what percentages are
2. Find the percentage of an amount in your head and with a calculator
3. Calculate percentage change
4. Calculate percentage increase
5. Calculate percentage decrease
6. Understand compound interest
7. Be able to calculate reverse percentages

It's a big one this one, so without further ado, let's get going…

1. What are percentages?

A percentage is just a fraction whose denominator (bottom) is 100.

So, if we say "32%", what we mean is $\frac{32}{100}$

Now, what is really important before we start is that you understand how to change back and forward from percentages to fractions and decimals.

e.g. You need to able to say that if someone got 23 out of 45 in a test, this is the same as getting 51.1% (1dp)

It's probably best to go back to 6. Fractions, or 5. Decimals, until you are happy with this

Return to contents page

2. Percentage of an Amount

For easy numbers, these sort of questions are fine to do armed merely with a pencil, some paper, and your brain. However, you also need to be able to them on your calculator.

(a) In Your Head

With a bit of knowledge about dividing things by 10 and 100, and some common sense, it's not too bad working out percentage questions in your head.

Example You have £320. What is (a) 15%, (b) 63%, (c) 17.5%

I always start these by writing down the percentages that I know and which might help me:

To find 10% → Divide by 10 → 320 ÷ 10 = 32 → 10% = £32

To find 1% → Divide by 100 → 320 ÷ 100 = 3.2 → 1% = £3.20

To find 50% → Divide by 2 → 320 ÷ 2 = 160 → 50% = £160

To find 20% → Double 10% → 32 × 2 = 64 → 20% = £64

To find 5% → Half 10% → 32 ÷ 2 = 16 → 5% = £16

To find 2.5% → Half 5% → 16 ÷ 2 = 8 → 2.5% = £8

And now we can build up our answers with a bit of simple addition!

(a) 15%

10%	£32
+ 5%	£16
15%	£48

(b) 63%

50%	£160
10%	£32
1%	£3.20
1%	£3.20
+ 1%	£3.20
63%	£201.60

(c) 17.5%

10%	£32
5%	£16
+ 2.5%	£8
17.5%	£56

Return to contents page

(b) On a Calculator

The previous method is fine for easy numbers, and you certainly need to know how to do it for non-calculator exam papers, but if you understand the following method, then life becomes so much easier

It all comes from the fact that percentages are just decimals in disguise.
As we found out in 5. Decimals, to turn a percentage into a decimal we divide by 100.
So, to find a percentage of something:

1. Turn the percentage into a decimal (divide by 100)
2. Multiply your amount by that decimal (use your calculator!)

Example 1

Find 23% of 135g

1. Turn 23% into a decimal:

$23 \div 100 = 0.23$

2. Multiply the amount (135g) by the decimal:

$135 \times 0.23 =$ 31.05g

Remember your units!

Example 2

Find 4% of £22.45

1. Turn 4% into a decimal:

$4 \div 100 = 0.04$

It's not 0.4!

2. Multiply the amount (£22.45) by the decimal:

$22.45 \times 0.04 =$ £0.90 (2dp)

Notice I have rounded my answer to 2dp as we are dealing with money

Example 3

Find 31.8% of 1,435,988

1. Turn 31.8% into a decimal:

$31.8 \div 100 = 0.318$

2. Multiply the amount (1,435,988) by the decimal:

$1{,}435{,}988 \times 0.318 =$ 456,644 (nearest whole number)

Here I've chosen to round to the nearest whole number as the numbers were pretty big

Return to contents page

3. Percentage Change

This is a little calculation that everyone forgets. Don't let it happen to you!

You use this when some amount has gone up or down, and you want to know by what percentage it has gone up or down by.

Formula:

$$\text{Percentage Change} = \frac{\text{New value} - \text{Old value}}{\text{Old Value}} \times 100$$

Example 1

After using mrbartonmaths.com, your mark in your maths test went from 34 to 46. What percentage increase is this?

Okay, so we just use the formula:

New Value = 46, Old Value = 34

So :

$$\text{Percentage Change} = \frac{46 - 34}{34} \times 100$$

$$= \frac{12}{34} \times 100$$

= 35.3% (1dp)

Example 2

What a bargain! Scientific calculators have been reduced in price from £4.99 to £3.50. What percentage decrease is this?

Again, so we just use the formula:

New Value = 3.50, Old Value = 4.99

So :

$$\text{Percentage Change} = \frac{3.50 - 4.99}{4.99} \times 100$$

$$= \frac{-1.49}{4.99} \times 100$$

= - 29.9% (1dp)

The minus sign just means it's a decrease

Return to contents page

4. Percentage Increase

Let me see if I can explain how to do these with a little example...

How would you find 23% of something with a calculator?... multiply by 0.23, right?
So, what would you multiply by to increase something by 23%?...
Well, it must have something to do with 0.23, but you need to add 23% onto the original.
Well, the original is 100%, and you need to add 23% onto it, which means you want... 123%
So, to increase something by 23% you need to... multiply by 1.23!

Method for Percentage Increase:
Multiply your amount by (**1** + whatever the percentage is as a decimal)

Example 1

Increase £235 by 17%

Okay, so what do we multiply 235 by?...

Well, 17% as a decimal is 0.17

So, we multiply by (1 + 0.17), which is 1.17!

235×1.17

$= £274.95$

Example 2

Whilst writing this website, my weight has increased by 3.5%. I used to be 87kg. What weight am I now?

Okay, so what do we multiply 87 by?...

Well, 3.5% as a decimal is... erm... 0.035

Be careful with that one!

So, we multiply by (1 + 0.035), which is 1.035!

87×1.035

$= 90.045$kg

Return to contents page

5. Percentage Decrease

Again, let me see if I can explain how to do these with a little example...

How would you find 18% of something with a calculator?... multiply by 0.18, right?
So, what would you multiply by to decrease something by 18%?...
Well, it must have something to do with 0.18, but you need to subtract 18% from the original.
Well, the original is 100%, and you need to subtract 18% from it, which means you want... 82%
So, to decrease something by 18% you need to... multiply by 0.82!
Another way to think about this is once you've taken 18% away, there is only 82% left, and we all know how to find 82%, don't we?...

Method for Percentage Decrease:
Multiply your amount by (**1** - whatever the percentage is as a decimal)

Example 1

Decrease 250g by 24%

Okay, so what do we multiply 250 by?...

Well, 24% as a decimal is 0.24

So, we multiply by (1 - 0.24), which is 0.76!

Which kind of makes sense, because if you lose 24%, you are left with 76%!

250×0.76

= 190g

Example 2

Since I took a break from teaching, my bank balance has dropped by 64.5%. It used to be £10.20. What is it now?

Okay, so what do we multiply 10.20 by?...

Well, 64.5% as a decimal is... erm... 0.645

So, we multiply by (1 - 0.645), which is... let me get my calculator... 0.355!

10.20×0.355

= £3.62 (2dp)

Return to contents page

6. Compound Interest

Everyone seems to hate compound interest, but if you understood Sections 4 and 5, then you are going to be flying! Try to follow this...

Example

The bank pays me a compound interest rate of 5% on my balance each year. At the start I have £30 in there. How much do I have after 25 years?

Now, what we definitely DO NOT do is to work out what 5% of £30 is, and the multiply this by 25!

Why?... Well, because you don't just earn 5% on the £30, you earn it on however much is in your bank at the end of each year, which is always growing!

Right, so each year my balance increases by 5%. Let's see what we've got...

End of Year **1** ⟶ 30×1.05 ⟶ £31.50
End of Year **2** ⟶ 31.50×1.05 ⟶ £33.075
End of Year **3** ⟶ 33.075×1.05 ⟶ £34.72875
End of Year **4** ⟶ 34.72875×1.05 ⟶ £36.4651975

Now, if we kept going like this, we would get the right answer, but it's going to take all day, and look at the size of the numbers! I can't be bothered writing all them down. No way.

But, think about what we are actually doing...

30×1.05... get the answer... $\times 1.05$... get the answer... $\times 1.05$... get the answer... $\times 1.05$... etc...

Which is just: $30 \times 1.05 \times 1.05 \times 1.05 \times 1.05 \times$...

How many times do we need to multiply by 1.05?... 25 times!

So, to work it out a quick way we can just do this sum: 30×1.05^{25}

And if you are good on your calculator, you should get: £101.59 (2dp)

Return to contents page

7. Reverse Percentages

I'll get straight to the point: no-one spots these, everyone messes them up, but if you are careful, and if you try your best to follow this example, you'll be fine!

Example

For some strange reason, ever since I decorated it with "I Love Maths" stickers, my car has gone down in value by 23%. It is now worth £654.50. How much was it worth before?

Now, the key to spotting questions like this are words such as "used to", "old" and "before" - words that suggest you need to work out something that happened in the past.

Think about this: my car used to be worth a certain amount (call it w), then it went down in value by 23%, and it is now worth £654.50. I think I can write that information like this:

$$w \times 0.77 = 654.50$$

The old value of the car

Decrease the old value by 23%

Gives you the new value

So now all we need to do is work out the value of w!

Well, if you divide both sides of the equation by 0.77 you get...

$$w = \frac{654.50}{0.77}$$

And so, using my calculator, w must equal... 850

So my car used to be worth £850

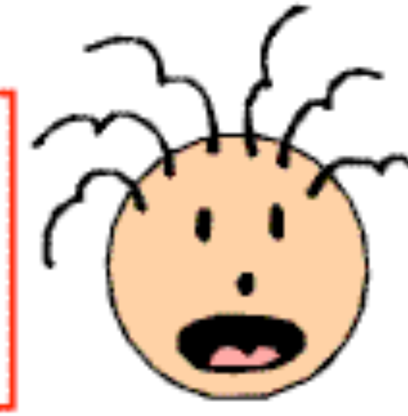
And the beauty of these questions is that you can check your answer by going back to the question:

The car used be worth £850, it's value fell by 23%.

Well... 850 × 0.77 = ... wait for it... £654.50, which is exactly what we were hoping for!

Return to contents page

8. Negative Numbers



WARNING

If you are not concentrating, negative numbers can trip up the best of mathematicians. So… have a glass of water, shake all other thoughts out of your head, sit down, take a deep breath, and let's begin…

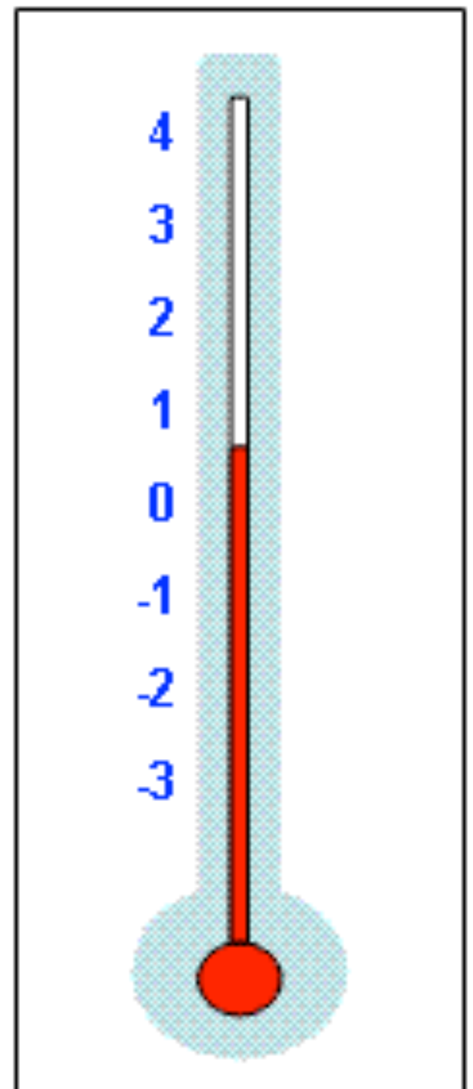
The Number Line

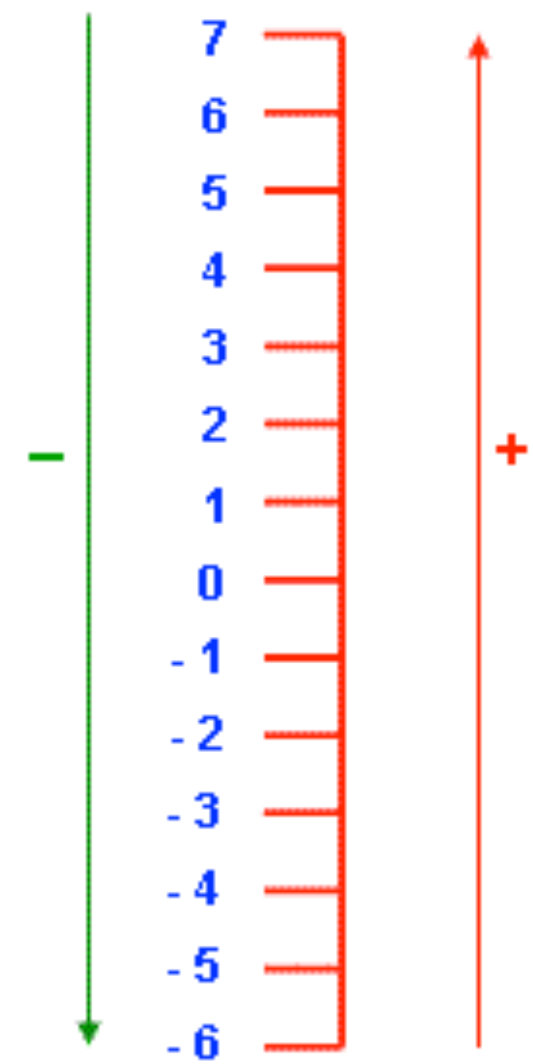
The key to negative numbers is the number line.

Now, I like to think of the number line going up and down, so when you add you go up, and when you subtract, you go down. Kind of like a thermometer.

If you ever find yourself stuck or unsure about a negative number question, just draw yourself a very quick number line, count the spaces with your finger, and you will be fine.

I still do this, and I'm… well, quite a bit older then you.





Return to contents page

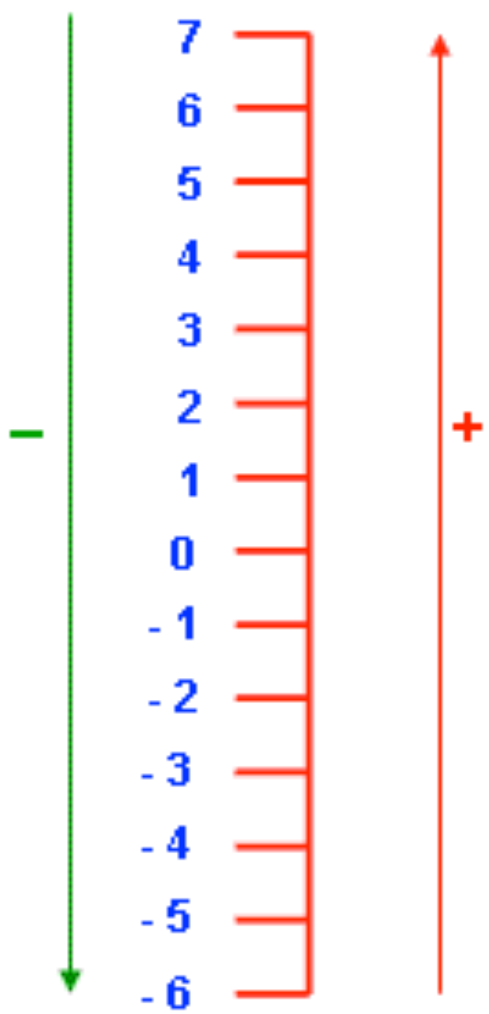
Adding and Subtracting when the Signs are NOT Touching

Where people seem to go wrong with negative numbers is that they learn the rule that two minuses make a plus.

Now, this rule is a good one, but must only be used when two signs (+ or -) are touching.

If no signs are touching, I would just use this rule

> Rule: If no signs are touching, use a number line (on paper or in your head), or think about money!



Example 1

2 - 7

Number Line: put your finger at 2 and move down 7 places

Money: if I have £2 in my bank and someone takes away £7, then how much do I have?

2 - 7 = **-5**

Example 2

-4 + 6

Number Line: put your finger at -4 and move up 6 places

Money: if I have £-4 in my bank (I am in debt) and someone gives me £6, then how much do I have?

-4 + 6 = **2**

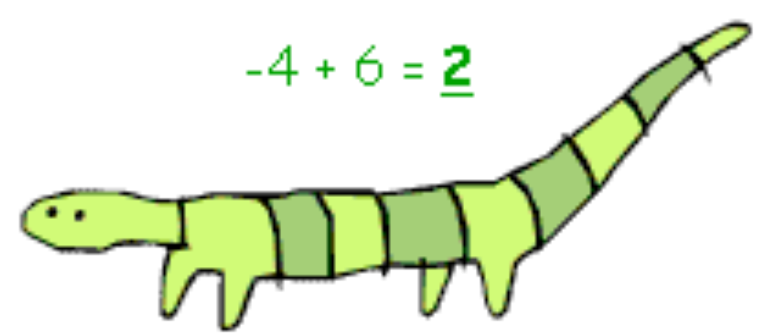
Example 3

-1 - 4

Number Line: put your finger at -1 and move down 4 places

Money: if I have £-1 in my bank (I am in debt) and someone takes away £4, then how much do I have?

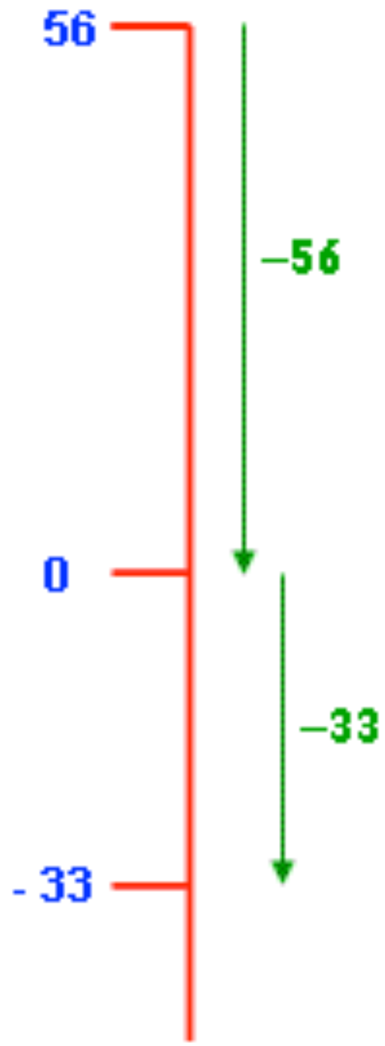
-1 - 4 = -**5**



Return to contents page

Now both these methods still work when the numbers become harder and the number line becomes too big to draw:

Example 4



56 - 89

Number Line: imagine your finger is as 56.

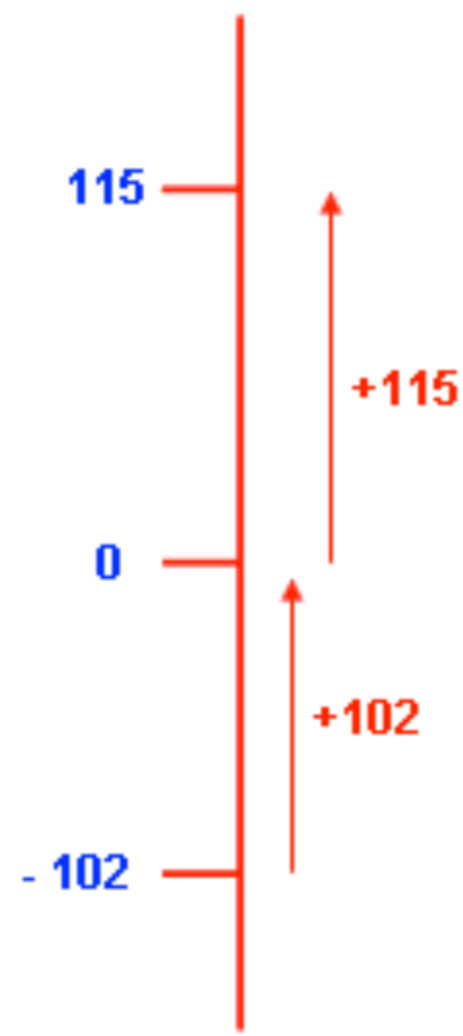
How far must you go down to get to zero?... 56 spaces, right?

And so, how much further down do you still have to go?... another 33 spaces!

Money: if I have £56 in my bank and someone takes away £89, then how much do I have?

56 - 89 = **-33**

Example 5



-102 + 217

Number Line: imagine your finger is as -102.

How far must you go up to get to zero?... 102 spaces, right?

And so, how much further up do you still have to go?... another 115 spaces!

Money: if I have £-102 in my bank and someone gives me £217, then how much do I have?

-102 + 217 = **115**

Return to contents page

Adding and Subtracting when the Signs ARE Touching

Okay, now it's time for our rule...

Rule: If two signs are touching (+'s or −'s next to each other), then replace the two signs with one sign using these rules:

+ and − = −	− and + = −
+ and + = +	− and − = +

Example 1

$-4 + -8$

Have you spotted the touching signs?...

Using our rule, we can change + and − to −

So, our sum becomes:

$-4 - 8$

Which is pretty easy using either number lines or money.

$-4 + -8 = \mathbf{-12}$

Example 2

$5 - -6$

Have you spotted the touching signs?...

Using our rule, we can change − and − to +

So, our sum becomes:

$5 + 6$

Which is pretty easy however you do it!

$5 - -6 = \mathbf{11}$

Example 3

$-22 - - 9$

Have you spotted the touching signs?...

Using our rule, we can change − and − to +

So, our sum becomes:

$-22 + 9$

Which is pretty easy using either number lines or money

$-22 - -9 = -\mathbf{13}$

Example 4

$-6 - 10$

Have you spotted the touching signs?...

I hope not, because there aren't any!

The two minuses are NOT touching

So our sum stays the same and we do it using either of our methods

$-6 - 10 = -\mathbf{16}$

Return to contents page

Multiplying and Dividing

As was the case with fractions, multiplying and dividing with negative numbers is a little bit easier than adding and subtracting, but you still have to concentrate!

> Rule: Do the sum as normal, ignoring the plus and minus signs and write down the answer
>
> Then, carefully count the number of minus signs in the question.
>
> If there is one the whole answer is negative, if there are two the answer is positive, if there are three the answer is negative, four means positive, and so on...

Example 1

$-20 \div 4$

Do the sum as normal, ignoring the minus signs

$20 \div 4 = 5$

Count the number of minus signs in the question... **1**!

One minus makes the whole answer negative

So:

$-20 \div 4 = \underline{\mathbf{-5}}$

Example 2

-6×-9

Do the sum as normal, ignoring the minus signs

$6 \times 9 = 54$

Count the number of minus signs in the question... **2**!

Two minuses makes the whole answer positive

So:

$-6 \times -9 = \underline{\mathbf{54}}$

Example 3

$-3 \times -2 \times -5$

Do the sum as normal, ignoring the minus signs

$3 \times 2 \times 5 = 30$

Count the number of minus signs in the question... **3**!

Three minuses makes the whole answer negative

So:

$3 \times 2 \times 5 = \underline{\mathbf{-30}}$

Example 4

$^{-88}/_{-4}$

Do the sum as normal, ignoring the minus signs

$^{88}/_{4} = 22$

Count the number of minus signs in the question... **2**!

Two minuses makes the whole answer positive

So:

$^{-88}/_{-4} = 22$

Return to contents page

Tricky Questions involving Negative Numbers

The people who write maths exams are nasty. Just when you think you have got a topic sorted, they chuck in a right stinker.

But do not panic. So long as you remember the rules we have discussed here, and you don't forget old BODMAS/BIDMAS, you will be fine!

Example 1

$$-2\times(-3+5)$$

Now, BIDMAS says we must sort out the brackets first:

$$-3+5=2$$

So now we have:

$$-2\times 2$$

And using our negative number rules, we should get the answer of:

= -4

Example 2

$$-3+-8\div 4-2$$

Now, BIDMAS says we must sort out the division first:

$$-8\div 4=-2$$

Putting that back in the question, we have:

$$-3+-2-2$$

Let's sort those two touching signs out:

$$-3-2-2$$

Using number lines, or money, we should get

= -7

Example 3

$$\frac{-4\times-3}{-3--9}$$

Now remember, even though we can't see any brackets, they are hidden on the top and bottom of the fraction:

$$\frac{(-4\times-3)}{(-3--9)}$$

So, the top gives us:

$$-4\times-3=12$$

And from the bottom:

$$-3--9$$

$$=-3+9=6$$

Leaving us with:

$$\frac{12}{6}$$

= 2

Return to contents page

9. Sequences

Things you might need to be able to do with sequences...

This will vary with your age and what maths set you are in, but here is a list of some of the things you might need to be able to do with sequences:

1. Spot and describe number sequences
2. Work out the nth term of linear sequences
3. Write out terms of sequences given the rule
4. Work out the nth term of quadratic sequences

It's quite a nice little topic this one... well, as far as maths topics go, anyway!

What is a sequence?

A sequences is just a set of numbers which follows a rule.

The rule may be very simple, or very complicated, but the important thing is that every single number in that sequence follows the same rule.

The reason this is important is that allows you to predict what number will come next, and even what number will come in 1,000,000 numbers time!

Return to contents page

1. Spotting and Describing Number Sequences

In these types of questions you will usually be given a set of numbers, and be asked to describe the rule (how to you get from one number to the next), and predict what the next couple of numbers will be.

Let's have a look at some sequences together:

1.	7	10	13	16	19	...	...		
2.	3	6	12	24	48	...	...		
3.	200	190	181	173	166	...	...		
4.	1	1	2	3	5	8	13	...	...

---

1. Here the numbers are going up by 3 every time, so the rule is something like: "add 3 to the previous number to get the next number", and so the next two numbers are 22 and 25

2. Here the numbers are doubling (or multiplying by 2), so the rule is something like: "double the previous number to get the next number", and so the next two numbers are 96 and 192

3. This one is a little tricky to spot, and even trickier to describe. I would go for something like: "subtract 10 from the 1^{st} number, 9 from the 2^{nd}, 8 from the 3^{rd}, and so on". So long as you are clear, you will get the marks. So, the next two numbers must be: 160 and 155

4. This is a sneaky one. It's a very famous sequence called "The Fibonacci Sequence". Here is the rule: "add the previous two numbers together to get the next number". That means what must come next are: 21 and 34

Return to contents page

2. Finding the nth term of Linear Sequences

Not the greatest sounding title in the world, hey?
Let's have a look at what each bit means, and you'll see it's not so bad:

nth term - well, term is just a posh word for the numbers in a sequence, and **n** is just the letter we use to describe the position of each term. So, n = 1 is the 1st term, and n = 5 is the 5th term. All "find the nth term" means is just to find a rule which allows us to work out what number lies at any position in our sequence.

linear sequences - these are just sequences where you either add or subtract the same number to get from term to term. For example, sequence 1. up above was a linear sequence because you added 3 each time, but number none of the other were (in 2. we multiplied, and in 3. and 4. we added or subtracted a different amount).

Now I have a method for finding the nth term of linear sequences:

1. Decide what you have to add or subtract to get from term to term (and make sure it is the same for each term!)

2. Write the times table of this number underneath the sequence (this gives you the number that goes in front of **n**)

3. Figure out what you have to do to your times table to get back to your sequence (this gives you the number at the end)

Return to contents page

Example 1

Find the nth term of the following sequence:

13 19 25 31 37 … …

1. Okay, now looking at the numbers I reckon you have to add 6 each time, but before I continue, I am just going to check each term to make sure… erm… yep, add 6 each time!

2. Adding 6 each time means two things: (1) 6 is the number in front of **n** in my rule, so I know there will be a **6n** involved (2) I need to write the 6 times table carefully under my sequence:

n	1	2	3	4	5	…	…
Sequence:	13	19	25	31	37	…	…
6n	6	12	18	24	30	…	…

Notice: I have also written **n** above the sequence, just to remind you that all **n** means is the position of the numbers in the sequence (n = 4 is the 4^{th} number in the sequence, which is 31). Also, notice how the 6 times table is just 6 times as big as **n**!

3. Now you ask yourself: "what do I have to do to get from my 6 times table, back to my sequence?"… well, if you look carefully at the numbers, you will see you must… add 7 each time!

So, our rule for the nth term is… $6n + 7$

Which basically says that our sequence is just the 6 times table, with 7 added each time.

Notice: you can check you are correct by testing out your rule. We know the 5^{th} term of the sequence is 37, but does are rule give us that?…

When n = 5 $6n + 7 \longrightarrow 6 \times 5 + 7 = \ldots 37!$ we are correct!

Return to contents page

Example 2

Find the nth term of the following sequence:

-20   -16   -12   -8   -4   …   …

1. Okay, I know there are nasty negatives, but if you look carefully you should be able to see that you have to add 4 each time.

2. Again, adding 4 means two things: (1) 4 is the number in front of **n** in my rule, so I know there will be a **4n** involved   (2) I need to write the 4 times table carefully under my sequence:

n	1	2	3	4	5	…	…
Sequence:	-20	-16	-12	-8	-4	…	…
4n	4	8	12	16	20	…	…

Notice: Again, I have put **n** on the top just to show you that that 4 times table is just 4 times as big as n!... that's all **4n** means, just get **n** and multiply it by 4!

3. Now you ask yourself: "what do I have to do to get from my 4 times table, back to my sequence?"… well, again you have to be careful, but I reckon you must… erm… subtract 24 each time!

So, our rule for the nth term is… $4n - 24$

Important: as well as checking, we can also use this rule to predict. For example, we can very quickly work out what the 100^{th} term would be without writing out the whole sequence:

When n = 100   4n - 24 ⟶ $4 \times 100 - 24$ = … 376!

Return to contents page

Example 3

Find the nth term of the following sequence:

21 16 11 6 1 ... ...

1. Okay, this time looking at the numbers I reckon you have to subtract 5 each time.

2. Now, just because we are subtracting, our method still works! Subtracting 5 still means two things: (1) -5 is the number going in front of the **n** (2) we need a times table... the -5 times table!

n	1	2	3	4	5	...	...
Sequence:	21	16	11	6	1	...	...
-5n	-5	-10	-15	-20	-25	...	...

Notice: the -5 times table is just the 5 times table but with each term negative

3. Now you ask yourself: "what do I have to do to get from my -5 times table, back to my sequence?"... well, be very careful because of the negatives, but you must... add 26 each time!

So, our rule for the nth term is... $-5n+26$

Important: Again, let's use our rule to predict. How about the 6th term:

When n = 6 -5n + 26 ⟶ -5 × 6 +26 = ... -4!

Well, the 6th term was the next one in our sequence, and I reckon if we had worked it out in our head we would have got -4, so I think we are correct!

Return to contents page

3. Writing out the Terms of a Sequence given the Rule

Now, so long as you understand what n means, you will be fine with this!
Just to re-cap, **n** is just the position of the term in the sequence.
So... if you want the 5th term, then **n** must be 5!

Example 1

Write out the first 5 terms of the sequence whose nth term rule is: $7n - 3$

Okay, to get out 1st term, **n** must equal 1. So we have:

When $n = 1$ $7n - 3 \longrightarrow 7 \times 1 - 3 = \dots \underline{4}$ so, 1st term is $\underline{4}$

Now to get out 2nd term, **n** must equal 2. So we have:

When $n = 2$ $7n - 3 \longrightarrow 7 \times 2 - 3 = \dots \underline{11}$ so, 1st term is $\underline{11}$

And if you keep this going, you end up with the first 5 terms: 4 11 18 25 32

Notice: the gap between each term is +7... which is what we would have expected from the 7n!

Example 2

Write out the first 5 terms of the sequence whose nth term rule is: $n^2 + 10$

Looks hard, but same technique! To get out 1st term, **n** must equal 1. So we have:

When $n = 1$ $n^2 + 10 \longrightarrow 1^2 + 10 = \dots \underline{11}$ so, 1st term is $\underline{11}$

Now to get out 2nd term, **n** must equal 2. So we have:

When $n = 2$ $n^2 + 10 \longrightarrow 2^2 + 10 = \dots \underline{14}$ so, 1st term is $\underline{14}$

And if you keep this going, you end up with the first 5 terms: 1 14 19 26 35

Return to contents page

4. Work out the nth term of Quadratic Sequences

Now, not all sequences are nice little linear ones.

If you have a look at the last example, you will see that the terms do not go up by the same amount, and if you look at the nth term rule, you will see why... it's quadratic!

Now, there is a really complicated method for finding the nth term of quadratics, but 9 times out of 10, a much simpler method works, so long as you know your square numbers!

1. Write out the square numbers (n^2) underneath your sequence

2. Work out what you have to do to the square numbers to get back to your sequence

Example

Find the nth term of the following sequence:

-2 1 6 13 22 ... ...

1. The terms are NOT going up by the same amount each time, so we need the square numbers...

n	1	2	3	4	5	...	...
Sequence:	-2	1	6	13	22	...	...
n^2	1	4	9	16	25	...	...

2. What do you have to do to get from your square numbers back to your original sequence?... well, I reckon you need to... subtract 3!

So, our nth term rule is:

$$n^2 - 3$$

Return to contents page

10. Surds

What on earth is a surd and why do we need them?...

Let's get it out of the way before we start... yes, I know, "surd" sounds a little bit like a rude word, and my pupils never tire of reminding me of that every lesson...

What are they?... Surds are just numbers left in square-root form, like $\sqrt{3}$ or $\sqrt{7}$

But why do we need them?... Because such numbers are irrational, and if we tried to write them out as decimals, they would go on forever!

The Two Important Rules of Surds

Everything we are going to look at in this section is based around these two crucial rules:

Rule 1

$$\sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{ab}$$

If you have a surd and you multiply it by another surd, then the answer is just the same as the surd of the original two numbers (a and b) multiplied together

e.g. $\sqrt{7} \times \sqrt{5} = \sqrt{7 \times 5} = \sqrt{35}$

Rule 2

$$\sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{a} = a$$

If you multiply a surd by itself, then the answer is just the original number before it was square-rooted

e.g. $\sqrt{8} \times \sqrt{8} = \sqrt{8 \times 8} = \sqrt{64} = 8$

Return to contents page

1. Simplifying Single Surds

Okay, this is probably the nicest type of surd question you could get asked.
You need to make the number under the square root sign as small as possible
And it's nice and easy so long as you know your square numbers!

Method

1. Split up the number being square-rooted into a product of at least one square number
2. Use Rule 1 to simplify your answer

Remember: Square Numbers: 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81, 100...

Example 1

Simplify: $\sqrt{50}$

Okay, so we need to split up 50. We ask ourselves: "which square number is a factor of 50?"

Well, if you look along the list above, you should notice that... 25 is!

$50 = 25 \times 2$ So, using Rule 1... $\sqrt{50} = \sqrt{25} \times \sqrt{2}$

Now, because we've chosen a square number, that's going to simplify nicely...

$\sqrt{25} = 5$ So... $\sqrt{50} = 5 \times \sqrt{2} = 5\sqrt{2}$

Example 2

Simplify: $\sqrt{45}$

Okay, so this time we need to split up 45. We ask ourselves: "which square number is a factor of 45?"

Well, if you look along the list above, you should notice that... 9 is!

$45 = 9 \times 5$ So, using Rule 1... $\sqrt{45} = \sqrt{9} \times \sqrt{5}$

Now, because we've chosen a square number, that's going to simplify nicely...

$\sqrt{9} = 3$ So... $\sqrt{45} = 3 \times \sqrt{5} = 3\sqrt{5}$

Return to contents page

2. Simplifying more than one Surd (Multiplying)

Again this is fairly easy so long as you could understand the previous section

Method

1. Deal with each surd individually
2. Split up the numbers being square-rooted into a product of at least one square number
3. Use Rule 1 to simplify your answers
4. When simplifying the whole answer, treat your whole numbers and surds separately

Remember: Square Numbers: 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81, 100...

Example Simplify: $\sqrt{90} \times \sqrt{20}$

Okay, let's deal with each surd individually and split them up exactly like we did in the previous section:

$$90 = 9 \times 10 \longrightarrow \sqrt{90} = \sqrt{9} \times \sqrt{10} \longrightarrow \sqrt{90} = 3 \times \sqrt{10} = 3\sqrt{10}$$

$$20 = 4 \times 5 \longrightarrow \sqrt{20} = \sqrt{4} \times \sqrt{5} \longrightarrow \sqrt{20} = 2 \times \sqrt{5} = 2\sqrt{5}$$

So... $\sqrt{90} \times \sqrt{20} = 3\sqrt{10} \times 2\sqrt{5}$

To simplify further we multiply our whole number and our surds separately

$3 \times 2 = 6$ and... $\sqrt{10} \times \sqrt{5} = \sqrt{50}$ So... $3\sqrt{10} \times 2\sqrt{5} = 6\sqrt{50}$

And if you wanted to be really clever, we can simplify even further...

$\sqrt{50} = \sqrt{25} \times \sqrt{2} = 5\sqrt{2}$ So... $6\sqrt{50} = 6 \times 5\sqrt{2} = 30\sqrt{2}$

Return to contents page

3. Simplifying more than one Surd (Dividing)

Good News: Do these in exactly the same way as the Multiplying ones!

Example Simplify: $\dfrac{\sqrt{60}\times\sqrt{20}}{\sqrt{12}}$

Okay, let's dealwith each surd individually and split them up because we're good at that!...

$60 = 4 \times 15 \longrightarrow \sqrt{60} = \sqrt{4} \times \sqrt{15} \longrightarrow \sqrt{60} = 2 \times \sqrt{15} = 2\sqrt{15}$

$20 = 4 \times 5 \longrightarrow \sqrt{20} = \sqrt{4} \times \sqrt{5} \longrightarrow \sqrt{20} = 2 \times \sqrt{5} = 2\sqrt{5}$

$12 = 4 \times 3 \longrightarrow \sqrt{12} = \sqrt{4} \times \sqrt{3} \longrightarrow \sqrt{12} = 2 \times \sqrt{3} = 2\sqrt{3}$

So...

$$\frac{\sqrt{60}\times\sqrt{20}}{\sqrt{12}} = \frac{2\sqrt{15}\times 2\sqrt{5}}{2\sqrt{3}}$$

Let's sort out the multiplication on the top line like we did before...

$2 \times 2 = 4$ and... $\sqrt{15}\times\sqrt{5} = \sqrt{75}$ So... $2\sqrt{15}\times 2\sqrt{5} = 4\sqrt{75}$

But we can be clever again and go a wee bit further...

$\sqrt{75} = \sqrt{25}\times\sqrt{3} = 5\sqrt{3}$ So... $4\sqrt{75} = 4\times 5\sqrt{3} = 20\sqrt{3}$

So (after what seems like ages) we are left with:

$$\frac{\sqrt{60}\times\sqrt{20}}{\sqrt{12}} = \frac{20\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{3}}$$

But wait a minute! We can use division to simplify, just like we used multiplication...

$20 \div 2 = 10$ and... $\sqrt{3} \div \sqrt{3} = 1$

So... $\dfrac{20\sqrt{3}}{2\sqrt{3}} = 10 \times 1 = 10$

Return to contents page

4. Simplifying more than one Surd (Adding and Subtracting)

Just like when we are adding and subtracting fractions, there is a little twist!...

Twist

We can only add and subtract surds of the same type

So... we must use our simplifying skills to change them into the same type!

Example 1 Simplify: $\sqrt{12}+\sqrt{27}$

Now, one thing is for certain: the answer is definitely NOT: $\sqrt{39}$ No way! No such rule! Don't forget!

We need to simplify the surds to see if that helps

$12 = 4 \times 3 \longrightarrow \sqrt{12} = \sqrt{4} \times \sqrt{3} \longrightarrow \sqrt{12} = 2 \times \sqrt{3} = 2\sqrt{3}$

$27 = 9 \times 3 \longrightarrow \sqrt{27} = \sqrt{9} \times \sqrt{3} \longrightarrow \sqrt{27} = 3 \times \sqrt{3} = 3\sqrt{3}$

So...

$\sqrt{12}+\sqrt{27} = 2\sqrt{3}+3\sqrt{3}$

Look, our surds are now of the same type! They are both: $\sqrt{3}$

So we can now just add our whole numbers, because 2 lots of something, plus 3 lots of something must equal 5 lots of something! So we have our answer...

$$2\sqrt{3}+3\sqrt{3} = 5\sqrt{3}$$

Example 2 Simplify: $\sqrt{63}-\sqrt{28}$

Now, one thing is for certain: the answer is definitely NOT: $\sqrt{35}$ No way! No such rule! Don't forget!

We need to simplify the surds to see if that helps

$63 = 9 \times 7 \longrightarrow \sqrt{63} = \sqrt{9} \times \sqrt{7} \longrightarrow \sqrt{63} = 3 \times \sqrt{7} = 3\sqrt{7}$

$28 = 4 \times 7 \longrightarrow \sqrt{28} = \sqrt{4} \times \sqrt{7} \longrightarrow \sqrt{28} = 2 \times \sqrt{7} = 2\sqrt{7}$

So...

$\sqrt{63}-\sqrt{28} = 3\sqrt{7}-2\sqrt{7}$

Look, our surds are now of the same type! They are both: $\sqrt{7}$

So we can now just subtract our whole numbers, because 3 lots of something, minus 2 lots of something must equal 1 lot of something! So we have our answer...

$$3\sqrt{7}-2\sqrt{7} = \sqrt{7}$$

Return to contents page

5. Rationalising the Denominator!

Warning: This is hard, and should only be attempted by the very brave...

What does Rationalising the Denominator mean?...

Basically, it is considered a bit untidy in the fussy world of mathematics to have a surd on the bottom of a fraction (the denominator). So, if we can get rid of all the surds off the bottom of a fraction, we get rid of all the irrational numbers, and so we rationalise the denominator!

Method

Multiply the top and the bottom of the fraction by the same carefully chosen expression!

Example 1 – Single Surd   Rationalise the denominator of: $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$

Okay, so we don't like the look of that $\sqrt{3}$ on the bottom

What could we multiply it by to make it disappear?... Well, using Rule 2... how about by itself!

Be careful: Remember, whatever we multiply the bottom of the fraction by, we must also do to the top, otherwise the value of the fraction changes, so we will have changed the question!

$$\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \times \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}}$$

Using our Rules of Fractions, we just multiply the tops together, and then the bottoms together →

$$2 \times \sqrt{3} = 2\sqrt{3}$$

And using Rule 2...

$$\sqrt{3} \times \sqrt{3} = 3$$

So, we are left with our answer! $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3}$

And if you check them on the calculator, you will see they give the same answer!

Return to contents page

Example 2 – Surd with Other Numbers

Rationalise the denominator of: $\frac{5}{3-\sqrt{2}}$

Trick

For questions like this, the thing you multiply both the top and the bottom of the fraction by is just the expression on the bottom, but with the sign changed!

Why, I hear you ask?... Well, it's all to do with the difference of two squares...

Okay, so let's multiply the top and the bottom of the fraction by... change the sign... $3+\sqrt{2}$

$$\frac{5}{3-\sqrt{2}} \times \frac{3+\sqrt{2}}{3+\sqrt{2}}$$

Again, we multiply tops and bottoms together, but we also use our methods of expanding brackets (see the Algebra section)

Tops $\longrightarrow$ $5\times(3+\sqrt{2})$ $\longrightarrow$ $15+5\sqrt{2}$

Bottoms Use FOIL $\longrightarrow$ $(3-\sqrt{2})\times(3+\sqrt{2})$ $\longrightarrow$ $9+3\sqrt{2}-3\sqrt{2}-2$

Now look what happens when we collect up our terms and simplify $\longrightarrow$ $9-2=7$

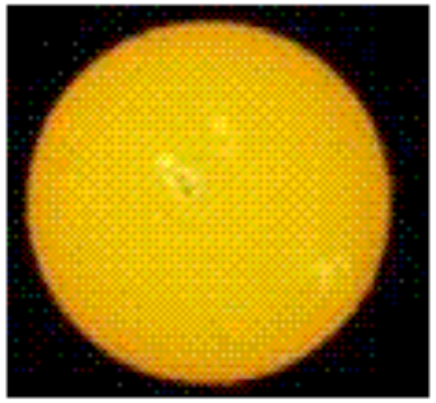
The middle two terms cancel out, and we are left with a very nice (and rationalised) denominator!

So... our answer must be... $\frac{5}{3-\sqrt{2}} = \frac{15+5\sqrt{2}}{7}$

And if you check them on the calculator, you will see they give the same answer!

Return to contents page

11. Standard Form



What is Standard Form and why do we need it?...

How heavy do you reckon the sun is?...

I'll tell you, its about: 2 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 kg

Now, I don't know about you, but I can't be bothered either counting or writing out all those zeros... well, fear not, because that is why we have standard form!

Standard form is just a convenient way of writing out really big or really small numbers.

Something really big like 2 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 000 kg is written as:

$$2 \times 10^{30} \text{ kg}$$

And something really small like: 0.000000000000000022 seconds is written as

$$2.2 \times 10^{-17} \text{ seconds}$$

Return to contents page

The Big Facts about Standard Form

When a number is written in standard form, it looks like this:

a number x 10 $\boxed{}$ a number

This number (the power) tells you how many places to move your decimal point

This number must always be between 1 and 10

If there is no sign here, then it is a hidden plus, the number is very big and we move the decimal point to the right

If this sign is negative, the number is small and you move the decimal point to the left

Return to contents page

1. Writing Numbers in Standard Form

Method

1. Place you finger where the decimal point is (it may be hidden!)

2. Count backwards or forwards the number of places you have to move to make the starting number between 1 and 10

3. Write your answer in standard form

Example 1 2300000000

Now, with whole numbers like this, the decimal point is hidden at the end:

2 3 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 .

Now, all we need to do is count how many places we need to move the decimal point until we create a number between 1 and 10

Well, I reckon the number we want is 2.3...

2 . 3 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 .

We have moved the decimal point 9 places, so our answer is...

$$2.3 \times 10^{9}$$

Example 2 0.00004623

Now, with decimals like this we can see the decimal point quite clearly!

0 . 0 0 0 0 4 6 2 3

Now, all we need to do is count how many places we need to move the decimal point until we create a number between 1 and 10

Well, I reckon the number we want is 4.623...

0 . 0 0 0 0 4 . 6 2 3

We have moved the decimal point 5 places, so our answer is...

$$4.623 \times 10^{-5}$$

Return to contents page

2. Changing From Standard Form

Method

Same thing as before, but this time you kind of need to work backwards.

Crucial: It is so easy to check your answer and so easy to make a mistake, so **check**!

Example 1 1.02×10^6

Okay, so we can see where the decimal point is, and the **6** flying in the air says we must move it 6 places to the right!

1.0 2 0 0 0 0

So, it looks like our answer is...

1 0 2 0 0 0 0

But don't take my word for it. Do what we did in the last section, and use your finger to work back from the answer

If you start with 1 0 2 0 0 0 0 and move your finger back 6 places, do you end up with... 1.02×10^6

Yes, so you've definitely got it right!

Example 2 7.6×10^{-5}

Okay, so we can see where the decimal point is, and the **-5** flying in the air says we must move it 5 places to the left!

Just like with the previous example, fill in the gaps with zeros...

0.0 0 0 0 7.6

So, it looks like our answer is...

0 0 0 0 0 7 6

Again, its so easy to check, so do it!

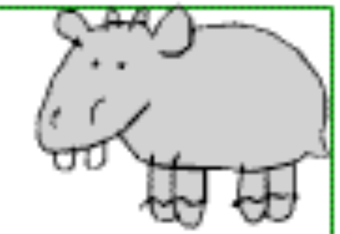
If you start with 0 0 0 0 0 7 6 and move your finger 5 places, do you end up with...

7.6×10^{-5}

Yes, so you've definitely got it right!

Return to contents page

3. Multiplying and Dividing with Standard Form



Method

This is actually quite nice. All you need to do is...

Multiply/Divide your big numbers, Add/Subtract your powers

Example 1 $(8 \times 10^7) \times (5 \times 10^2)$

Okay, let's follow our method:

Multiply our Big Numbers:

$$8 \times 5 = 40$$

Add our Powers...

$$10^7 \times 10^2 = 10^9$$

So, it looks like our answer is...

$$40 \times 10^9$$

Problem: This answer is NOT in Standard Form, because 40 is not between 1 and 10

So we must use our brains to change it...

$$40 \times 10^9 = 4 \times 10^{10}$$

Our extra zero... goes here!

Example 2 $\dfrac{3 \times 10^5}{5 \times 10^2}$

Okay, let's follow our method:

Divide our Big Numbers:

$$3 \div 5 = 0.6$$

Subtract our Powers...

$$10^5 \div 10^2 = 10^3$$

So, it looks like our answer is...

$$0.6 \times 10^3$$

Problem: This answer is NOT in Standard Form, because 0.6 is not between 1 and 10

So we must use our brains to change it...

$$0.6 \times 10^3 = 6 \times 10^2$$

We need to borrow a zero... from here!

Return to contents page

4. Adding and Subtracting with Standard Form

Method

Unfortunately, there is no easier way to do this than...

Write out the numbers in full and then add or subtract the old fashioned way!

Example 1 $(2.3\times10^4) + (4.31\times10^5)$

Okay, so first we must change both numbers into standard form:

$(2.3\times10^4) \longrightarrow 23000$

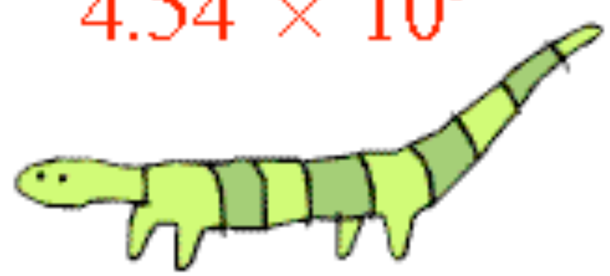
$(4.31\times10^5) \longrightarrow 431000$

Now we line our digits up carefully and add...

$$\begin{array}{r} 431000 \\ +\ \ 23000 \\ \hline 454000 \end{array}$$

Usually you will then be asked to convert your answer back into Standard Form...

$454000 = 4.54 \times 10^5$



Example 2 $(8.32\times10^{-3}) - (3.8\times10^{-4})$

Okay, so first we must change both numbers into standard form:

$(8.32\times10^{-3}) \longrightarrow 0.00832$

$(3.8\times10^{-4}) \longrightarrow 0.00038$

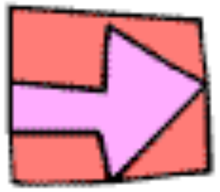
Now we line our digits up carefully and subtract...

$$\begin{array}{r} 0.00832 \\ -\ \ 0.00038 \\ \hline 0.00794 \end{array}$$

Usually you will then be asked to convert your answer back into Standard Form...

$0.00794 = 7.94 \times 10^{-3}$

Return to contents page



12. Ratio

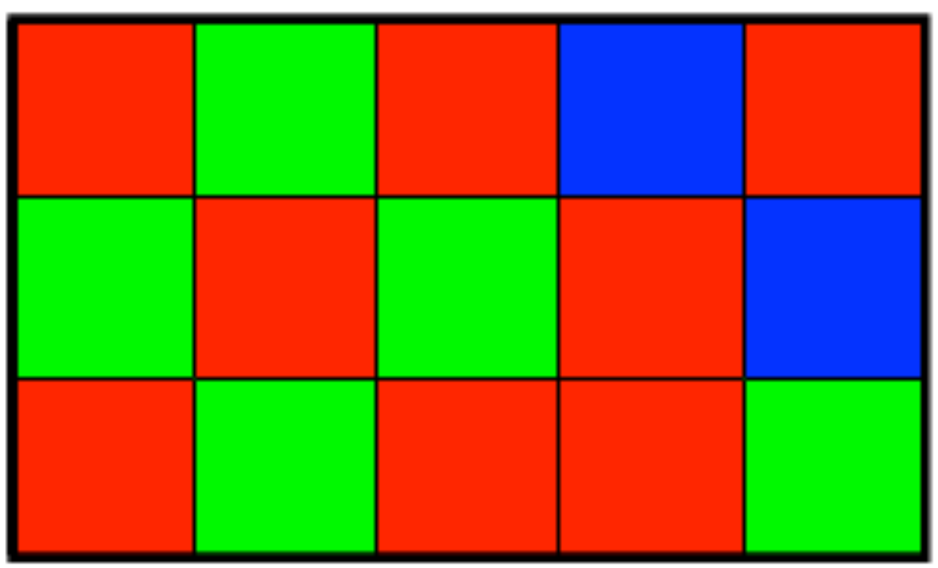
What are Ratios and Why do we need them?...

Ratios are just a nice easy way of showing the relative sizes of something, whether it be quantities of money, lengths of desks, amount of time, pretty much anything you can measure can be expressed as a ratio.

Ratios are also very closely linked to Fractions, and they behave in a very similar way. So... if you can understand fractions, you'll be flying here!

1. Writing Ratios

There is a funny way of ratios that requires the use of a colon **:** let me show you...



The ratio of red squares to green squares is:

8 : 5

Because for every 8 red squares, there are 5 green:

The ratio of green squares to red squares is:

5 : 8

The ratio of blue squares to red squares is:

2 : 8

Return to contents page

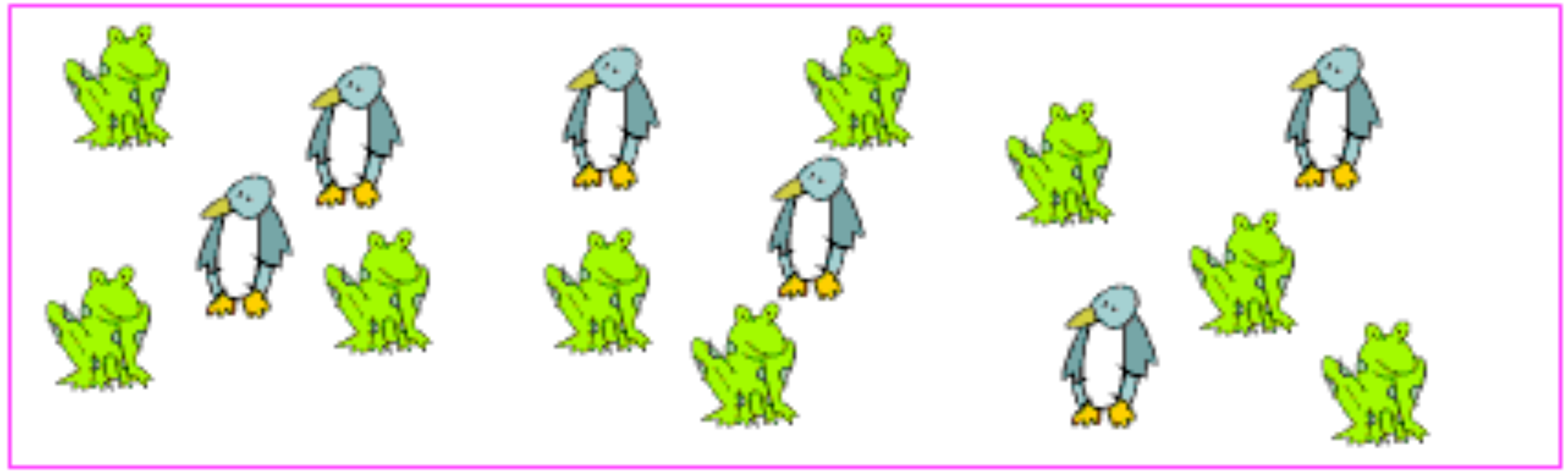
2. Simplifying Ratios

For the whole box, the ratio of frogs to penguins is:

9 : 6

But, can you see that for every 3 frogs, there are 2 penguins?... So, it's also:

3 : 2



Method for Simplifying Ratios

Just like with fractions, whatever you multiply/divide one side by, make sure you do the exact same to the other side!

Keep dividing until each side has no common factors

Example 1 Simplify 14 : 21

Okay, we are looking for factors common to both sides... how about **7**!

Divide both sides by 7...

$$\div 7 \quad 14 : 21 \rightarrow 2 : 3 \quad \div 7$$

Check for other common factors to make it even simpler?... No, so we're done!

Example 2 Simplify 60 : 45

Okay, we are looking for factors common to both sides... how about **15**!

Divide both sides by 15...

$$\div 15 \quad 60 : 45 \rightarrow 4 : 3 \quad \div 15$$

Check for other common factors to make it even simpler?... No, so we're done!

Return to contents page

3. "1 to n" and "n to 1"!

Sometimes the mean examiners aren't happy with you merely simplifying a ratio, they want it expressed as either 1 : n or n : 1.

Sounds hard, but so long as you can simplify ratios, and you remember that **n** is just a number, you'll be fine!

Example 1 Express 8 : 14 in the form 1 : n

Right, what this question is asking you to do is to change 8 : 14 into 1 : n, where n is just a number for you to find.

Now, the important thing here is that you stick to the rule: whatever you multiply/divide one side by, do the exact same to the other side.

We need to change the 8 into 1, so we must divide by... erm... **8**!

÷8 8 : 14 ÷8

1 : ?

Dividing our other side by 8 gives us our final answer...

1 : 1.75

Example 1 Express 0.3 : 0.15 in the form n : 1

Again, we just need to change 0.3 : 0.15 into n : 1, sticking to our rule.

Problem: what on earth do we divide 0.15 by to give us 1?... Well, anything divided by itself is 1, so how about by 0.15!

÷0.15 0.3 : 0.15 ÷0.15

? : 1

So, to get the other side, we just divide 0.3 by 0.15, which gives us our answer...

2 : 1

Return to contents page

4. Classic Ratio Questions

The types of questions on ratio that you usually get in the exam sound really nasty, but all they require is a little knowledge of what we have done before.

Remember: Whatever you multiply/divide one side by, do the same to the other!

Example

Mr Barton has conned his Mum into making him a cake. It says on the packet that the ingredients must be mixed in the following ratios:

Flour (g)	:	Butter (g)	:	Eggs	:	Sugar (g)
400	:	220	:	3	:	25

(a) If my Mum has 1000g of flour, how much butter does she need?

(b) If she has 2 eggs, how much sugar does she need?

Always set these sort of questions out the same way – write the original ratios on the top, write the new amount you know on the bottom, and ask yourself: "what do I need to do to get from my original amount to my new amount?"

(a) This is what we've got:

flour : butter

$$\times 2.5 \quad \begin{array}{c} 400 : 220 \\ 1000 : ? \end{array} \quad \times 2.5$$

$1000 \div 400 = 2.5$

How do I get from 400 to 1000?... I multiply by 2.5!, so let's do the same to the butter!

$$220 \times 2.5 = \underline{550\text{g}}$$

(b) This is what we've got:

eggs : sugar

$$\times 2/3 \quad \begin{array}{c} 3 : 25 \\ 2 : ? \end{array} \quad \times 2/3$$

$2 \div 3 = 2/3$

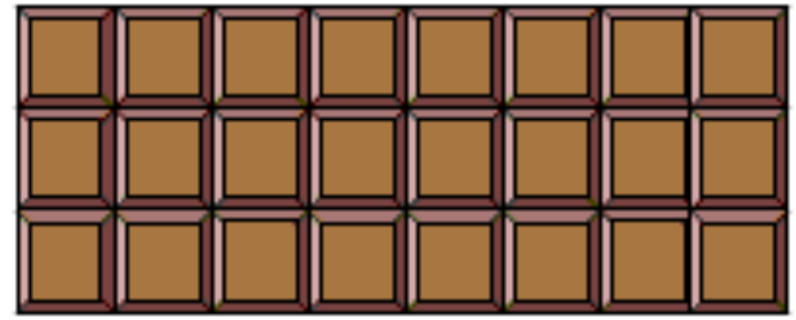
How do I get from 3 to 2?... I multiply by $2/3$ so let's do the same to the sugar!

$$25 \times 2/3 = 16\frac{2}{3}\text{ g}$$

Return to contents page

5. Sharing in a Given Ratio

For baking me the cake, I decide to share this bar of chocolate with my Mum in the ratio 5 : 3 (I am the 5, of course). How many pieces does each of us get?



Method for Sharing Ratios

1. Add up the total number of parts you are sharing between

2. Work out how much one part gets

3. Use this to work out how much everybody gets!

Example 1

The Chocolate Example!

1. Okay, so I get 5 parts, and my Mum gets 3 parts, so in total there are… 8 parts!

2. There are 24 pieces of chocolate all together, so each part must be worth…

$$24 \div 8 = 3 \text{ pieces}$$

3. I have 5 parts, so I get:

$$3 \times 5 = 15 \text{ pieces}$$

And Mum's 3 parts get her:

$$3 \times 3 = 9 \text{ pieces}$$

Look: 15 + 9 = 24!

Example 2

Share £845 in the ratio 8 : 3 : 2

1. Okay, so in total there are… 13 parts!

2. We have £845 to share, so each part receives…

$$845 \div 13 = £65$$

3. How much does each person get?…

8 parts $65 \times 8 = £520$

3 parts $65 \times 3 = £195$

2 parts $65 \times 2 = £130$

Look: 520 + 195 + 130 = £845!

Return to contents page

13. Proportion

$\propto$

What does proportion mean, and what's that funny fish symbol?

If two variables are proportional to each other, it just means that they are related to each other in a specific way.

The funny fish symbol $\propto$ just means "is proportional to"

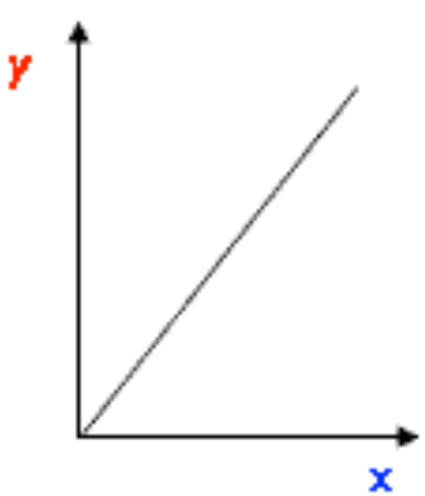
1. Two types of Proportion

Again, how many of these you need to worry about depends on your maths set, and your exam board, and stuff like that, but here are the two main types of proportion:

(a) Direct Proportion

Both variables increase or decrease together

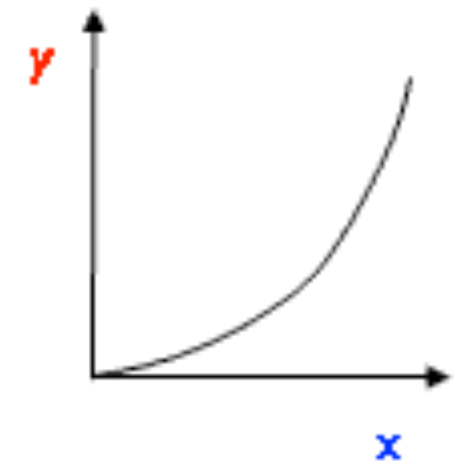
(i) Linear

Graph	Fancy Lingo	Example
	$y \propto x$ y is proportional to x y is directly proportional to x y varies directly as x varies	x could be the number of KitKat Chunkys that you buy y could be the total cost of those KitKat Chunkys As the number you buy increases, so too does the total cost

Return to contents page

(ii) Quadratic

Graph



Fancy Lingo

$$y \propto x^2$$

y is proportional to x^2

y is directly proportional to x^2

y varies directly as x^2 varies

Example

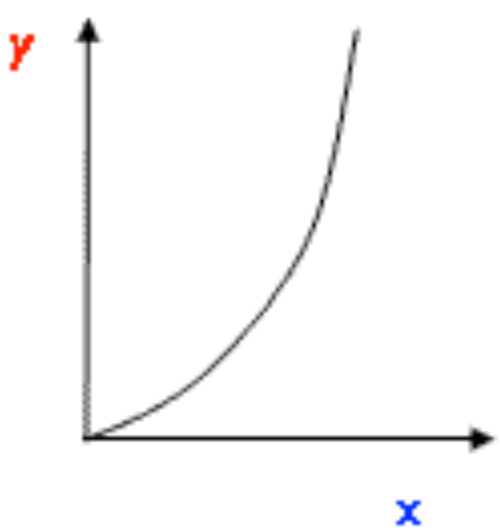
x could be the amount of money you spend advertising a gig

y could be the number of people who turn up to the gig

As the amount of advertising increases, word of mouth quickly spreads, and the number of people who go to the gig goes up by a lot.

(iii) Cubic

Graph



Fancy Lingo

$$y \propto x^3$$

y is proportional to x^3

y is directly proportional to x^3

y varies directly as x^3 varies

Example

x could be the amount of time you spend on mrbartonmaths.com

y could be your maths exam mark

As the amount of time you spend revising on the site increases, everything begins to fall into place, and your marks just get higher and higher with each extra minute!

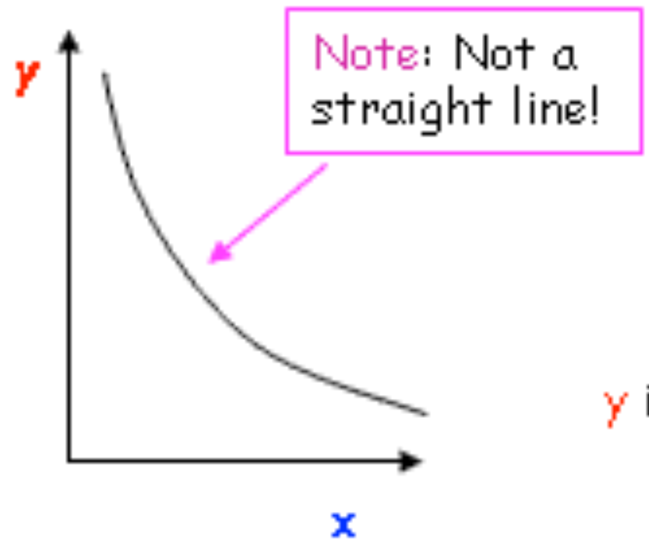
Return to contents page

(b) Inverse Proportion

As one variable goes up, the other goes down

(i) Inverse

Graph



Fancy Lingo

$$y \propto {}^{1}\!/_{x}$$

y is inversely proportional to x

Example

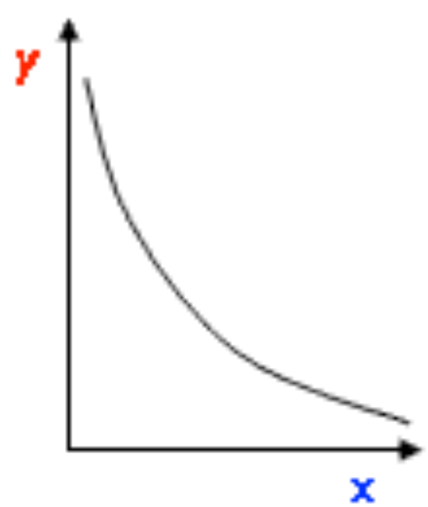
x could be the number of people you convince to join you on a road trip

y could be the amount each person must pay for petrol

As the number of people in the car increases, the amount everyone has to pay falls

(ii) Quadratic Inverse

Graph



Fancy Lingo

$$y \propto {}^{1}\!/_{x^2}$$

y is inversely proportional to x^2

Example

x could be the number of hours you spend watching Big Brother

y could be your number of brain cells

As the hours increase, your brain cells disappear and an increasing rate!

Return to contents page

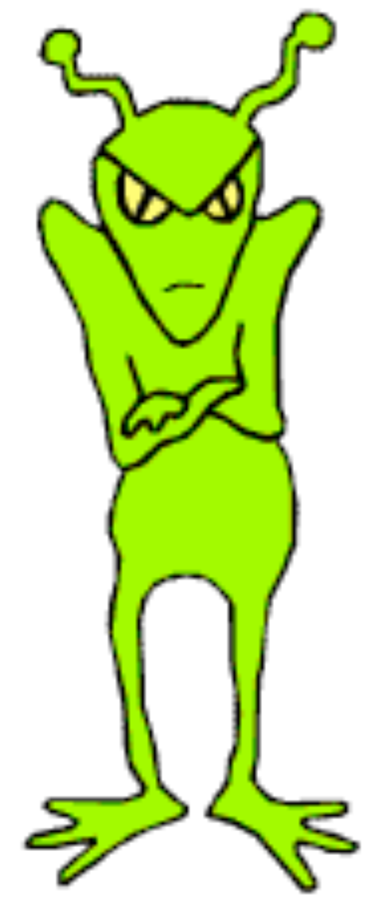
2. How to tackle proportion questions

Whatever the question, whatever the type of proportion, this method will never let you down... hopefully!

Method

1. Decide on the type of Proportion

- Direct or Indirect?
- Linear, Quadratic or Cubic?



2. Write the expression with the funny fish sign

3. Make the expression into an equation by using **=** and **k**

4. Use the numbers they give you to find out the value of **k**

5. Write down the formula

6. Answer the questions!

And now I'll take you through some pretty nasty examples, but each time we will use the same method, and everything will be fine... I promise!

Return to contents page

Example 1

y is directly proportional to x. Given that y = 12 when x = 4, calculate the value of:
(a) y when x = 6 (b) x when y = 66

1. Okay, we're in luck! The question has told us that we are dealing with direct proportion, and unless it says otherwise, we can also assume that it is linear.

2. The expression to say that y is directly proportional to x is: $y \propto x$

3. Okay, this is the key bit. As I said at the start, proportional means related to in a specific way. Indeed, once you decide what kind of proportion you are dealing with, all you need to do to get from x to y is to multiply by a number, which we call **k**.

Rule: Replace the $\propto$ sign with **=** and multiply the right hand side by **k**

$$y \propto x \longrightarrow y = kx$$

4. Now we use the numbers in the question and put them in our formula... when y = 12, x = 4

$$12 = 4k$$

And a little bit of rearranging gives us the value of **k** $k = {}^{12}\!/_{4} = 3$

5. So now we have our formula: $y = 3x$

6. And now life is easy because we just need to substitute in numbers and maybe (for b) rearrange!!

(a) Find y when x = 6

$$y = 3x \longrightarrow y = 3 \times 6$$

So... $y = 18$

(b) Find x when y = 66

$$y = 3x \longrightarrow x = {}^{y}\!/_{3} \longrightarrow x = {}^{66}\!/_{3}$$

So... $x = 22$

Return to contents page

Example 2

The variables p and q are related so that p is directly proportional to the square of q. Complete the table of values

p	0.5	2	
q		12	27

1. Again, we're in luck! The question has told us that we are dealing with direct proportion, and it also mentions the word "square" which means we are dealing with quadratic.

2. The expression to say that p is directly proportional to the square of q is: $p \propto q^2$

3. Rule: Replace the $\propto$ sign with **=** and multiply the right hand side by **k**

$$p \propto q^2 \longrightarrow p = kq^2$$

4. Now we look at the table and see what it tells us.... Well, it looks like when p = 2, q = 12, so let's put that information into our formula!

$$2 = 12^2 k \longrightarrow 2 = 144k$$

And a little bit of rearranging gives us the value of **k** $k = 2/144 = 1/72$

Note: I prefer a fraction to the horrible decimal

5. So now we have our formula: $p = \dfrac{1}{72}q^2$

6. And now life is easy because we just need to substitute in numbers and maybe (for b) rearrange!!

(a) Find p when q = 27

$$p = \frac{1}{72}q^2 \longrightarrow p = \frac{1}{72}27^2 \longrightarrow p = \frac{1}{72}\times 729$$

So... $p = 10.125$

(b) Find q when p = 0.5

$$p = \frac{1}{72}q^2 \longrightarrow q^2 = 72p \longrightarrow q^2 = 72\times 0.5 \longrightarrow q^2 = 36$$

So... $q = 6$

Return to contents page

Example 3

> z is inversely proportional to t. Given that when t = 0.3 the value of z = 16, find the value of z when t = 0.5

1. Happy days! The question has told us that we are dealing with inverse proportion, and unless it says otherwise, we can also assume that there are no nasty squares or cubes around.

2. The expression to say that z is inversely proportional to t is: $z \propto \frac{1}{t}$

3. Rule: Replace the $\propto$ sign with **=** and multiply the right hand side by **k**, but be careful here!

$$z \propto \frac{1}{t} \longrightarrow z = \frac{k}{t}$$

> Note: We are multiplying by k, so it goes on the top!

4. Now we use the numbers in the question and put them in our formula... when z = 16, t = 0.3

$$16 = \frac{k}{0.3}$$

And a little bit of rearranging gives us the value of **k** $\quad k = 0.3 \times 16 = 4.8$

5. So now we have our formula: $z = \frac{4.8}{t}$

6. And now life is easy because we just need to substitute in numbers:

(a) Find z when t = 0.5

$$z = \frac{4.8}{t} \longrightarrow z = \frac{4.8}{0.5} \longrightarrow$$ **So...** $z = 9.6$

Return to contents page

Example 4 - Nightmare!!!

(a) Describe the variation using $\propto$
(b) Find the equation connecting the two variables

y	5	125
x	5	25

1. Okay, we have a problem! The question doesn't tell us what type of proportion we are dealing with… but wait a minute, as x goes up (from 5 to 25), so does y (from 5 to 125), so it must be Direct.

Now, look at this…

x 25 or x 5^2

y	5	125
x	5	25

x 5

But what type of direct proportion?…

Well, to get from the first x value (5) to the second (25), you must multiply by 5. But for the y values, you must multiply by 25. Now, 25 is 5^2, so we must be talking quadratic proportion

(a) The expression to say that y is directly proportional to the square of x is: $y \propto x^2$

3. For the equation, we do what we always do… Rule: Replace the $\propto$ sign with **=** and multiply the right hand side by **k**

$$y \propto x^2 \longrightarrow y = kx^2$$

4. Now we have two sets of values to choose from to find k! I am going to choose the second, but it doesn't matter, the answer will be the same… when y = 125, x = 25

$$y = kx^2 \longrightarrow 125 = k25^2 \longrightarrow 125 = k625 \longrightarrow k = \frac{125}{625} \longrightarrow k = 0.2$$

(b) So… the equation is: $y = 0.2x^2$

Which works with both sets of values in the table!

Return to contents page

Algebra

1. The Rules of Algebra

Let's just get one thing clear before we start...

Algebra really isn't anything to be afraid of, I promise

If anything, dealing with letters is a lot easier than just dealing with numbers.

Why?... because, as you will see, letters are always cancelling each other out, meaning the questions get easier and easier the more you get into them,

And... quite often you can know for sure if your answer is correct, or not!

So, take a deep breath, think positive thoughts, and let's give this Algebra thing a go...

What is Algebra and Why do we need it?

- On a simple level, Algebra is just maths with letters... but it is a lot more than that!

- By bringing in letters as well as numbers we can work out things that numbers alone would not allow us to.

- In Algebra, letters are called "Unknowns". Basically, we stick a letter in to stand for something when we don't know it's true value.

- Now, this could be anything from the price of Nintendo Wii, the number of hours you spend watching TV in a week, or the speed you walk to school in the morning.

- If we don't know what it is, call it a letter – any letter you like – and let's let algebra figure everything out for us.

And the whole of Algebra – right up to A Level and beyond – is built around 3 rules...

Return to contents page

The Lingo You Need:

Term – this is basically any part of an expression or equation that involves a letter

e.g. 4m -2r and p are all terms

Expression – this is kind of like a collection of terms, maybe with a few numbers chucked in e.g. $4m + 2r$ and $8z - 5p + 6q^2 - 7$ are all expressions

Equation – this is just the same as an expression, but with an equals sign

e.g. $4m + 2r = 7$ and $8z - 5p + 6q2 - 7 = a$

Rule 1: You can add or subtract LIKE TERMS but you cannot add or subtract DIFFERENT TERMS.

Okay, so by a LIKE TERM I mean a term that contains the exact same letter (or letters) as another term

e.g. $m + m = 2m$ $3p + 2p = 5p$ $16t^2 - 4t^2 = 12t^2$ $10pq - 7pq = 3pq$

3 lots of something, plus 2 lots of something, gives you 5 lots of something

16 lots of something, minus 4 lots of something, gives you 12 lots of something

BUT...

$m + p$ Does Not = mp $3r + 2t$ Does Not = $5rt$

Because the terms are different!

Return to contents page

Simplifying Expressions

Now, once you have got to grips with Rule 1, it allows you to simplify nasty looking expressions into nice simple ones... which is called, believe it or not... simplifying.

To Simplify and Expression: Draw boxes around all the LIKE TERMS and deal with each set of like terms on their own.

Example 1

Simplify: $4m + 2p - m + 6p$

Okay, let's draw boxes around all the LIKE TERMS

Remember: Draw around the sign in front on the term as well!

$\boxed{4m}\ \boxed{+\ 2p}\ \boxed{-\ m}\ \boxed{+\ 6p}$

So, let's see what we've got:

$4m - m = 3m$

$2p + 6p = 8p$

Which gives us our answer of: $3m + 8p$

Note: if you cannot see a sign in front of a term, then just assume it is a PLUS

Example 2 - Tricky!

Simplify: $4t^2 - 5t - 2t - 3t^2$

Okay, let's draw boxes around all the LIKE TERMS

Remember: t and t^2 are DIFFERENT!

$\boxed{4t^2}\ \boxed{-\ 5t}\boxed{-\ 2t}\ \boxed{-\ 3t^2}$

So, let's see what we've got:

$4t^2 - 3t^2 = t^2$

Note: write this instead of $1\,t^2$

$-5t - 2t = -7t$

Note: see how important it is you remember how to work with NEGATIVE NUMBERS!

Which gives us our answer of: $t^2 - 7t$

Return to contents page

Rule 2: When Multiplying with Algebra, we need to remember the following things:

1. We CAN multiply different terms and like terms together
2. Always multiply the numbers together first
3. Put the letters in alphabetical order
4. Leave out the Multiplication Sign

Example 1

Simplify: $5b \times 2c \times 3a$

1. Okay, each of the three terms is different, but we are multiplying, so it's not a problem!
2. Let's multiply the numbers together first:

$$5 \times 2 \times 3 = 30$$

3. Now let's deal with the letters, remembering to write them in alphabetical order and leave out the multiplication sign

$$b \times c \times a = bca = abc$$

4. Putting them together, and again leaving out the multiplication sign, gives us our answer:

$$30abc$$

Example 2

Simplify: $4r \times -3p \times 3r \times q$

1. Again, no problem with the different terms
2. Let's multiply the numbers together first, being very careful with our negatives!:

$$4 \times -3 \times 3 \times 1 = -36$$

Note: there was no number in front of the q, which means it is just a 1!

3. Now let's deal with the letters:

$$r \times p \times r \times q = pqrr = pqr^2$$

Remember: if you multiply something by itself, it just means you are squaring it!

4. Which together gives us: $-36pqr^2$

Return to contents page

Rule 3: When Dividing with Algebra, the rules are just the same as when multiplying, but instead of a division sign like this ÷ we tend to write divisions as fractions!

Crucial: When dividing, watch for things cancelling out and disappearing!

Example 1

Simplify: $$\frac{20xyz}{4z}$$

1. Okay, just like when multiplying, different terms are no problem!

2. Let's divide the numbers first:

$$20 \div 4 = 5$$

3. Now let's deal with the letters:

$$xyz \div z = xy$$

What happened there? well, when you divide the z on the top by the z on the bottom you are left with **1** (just like if you divide anything by itself you get 1). But multiplying or dividing by 1 does not make a difference to our answer, so we can say that the z cancelled out!

4. So, our answer is: $5xy$

Example 2 - Nightmare!

Simplify: $$\frac{5a^2b}{35ab^3}$$

1. Different terms, no problem.

2. Dividing the numbers first:

$$5 \div 35 = \frac{5}{35} = \frac{1}{7}$$

Note: when you don't get a nice answer like in Example 1, you need to use Fractions!

3. Now let's deal with the letters (this requires a bit of knowledge about INDICES):

the a on the bottom wipes out one a on top, but still leaves an a behind on the top

the b^3 on the bottom wipes out the b on the top, and still leaves a b^2 behind on the bottom.

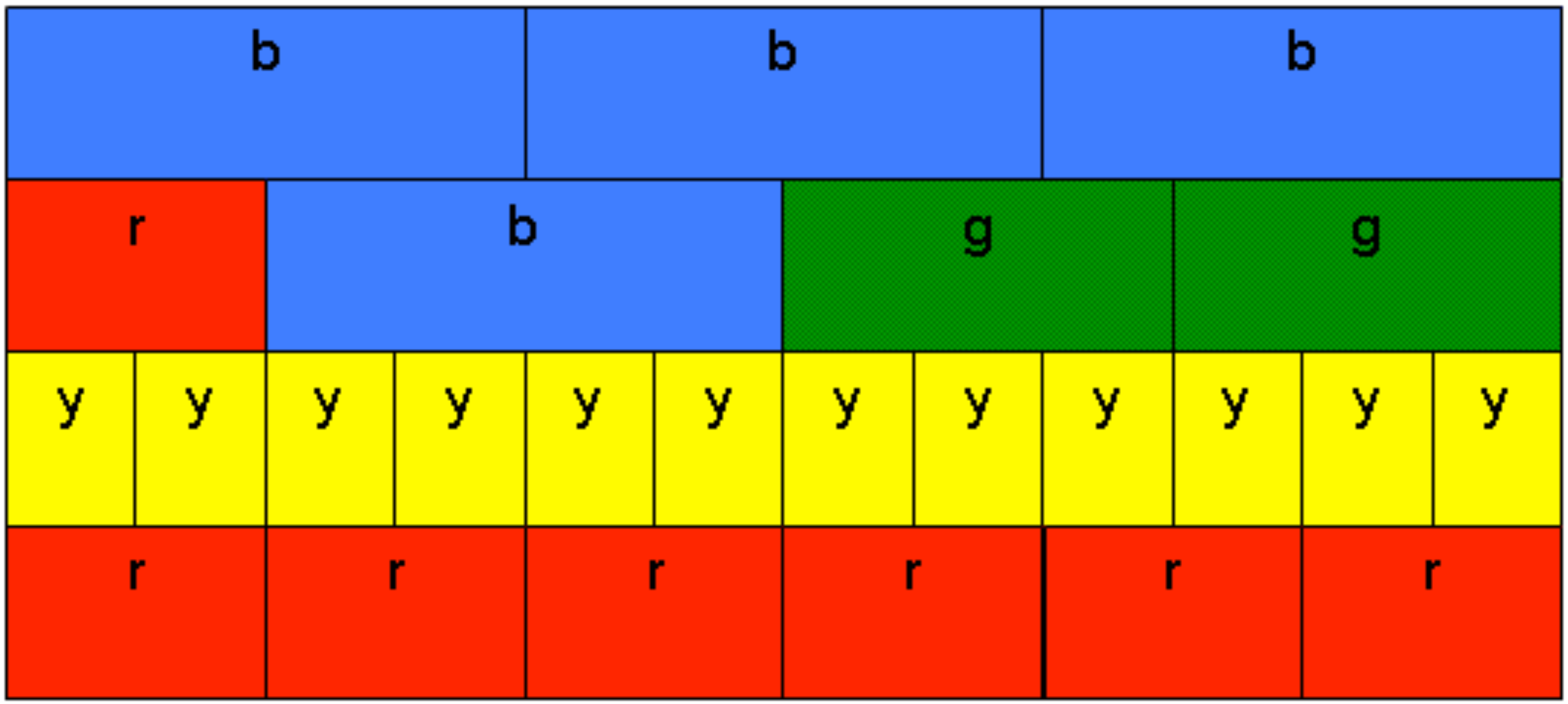
4. So, our answer is: $$\frac{a}{7b^2}$$

Return to contents page

Forming your own Expressions

Now, once you have got to grips with Rules 1 - 3, you should be able to have a go at forming your very own algebraic expressions.

Have a look at the following diagram and see if you can figure out where I have got the expressions below from. I am sure you could make up some much better ones.



$b = 2r$ $b = 4y$ $2g = 3r$ $b + r = 6y$ $3r - 3y = g$

Return to contents page

Now sometimes you are told a story and asked to form an expression using the information you are given. No problem, so long as you understood Rules 1 - 3

Once upon a time, in the Land of Algebra

Mr Barton has been sent has been sent on a shopping trip by his girlfriend and he is trying to figure out how much money he needs to bring.

A glance down the list reveals he needs 5 pears, 2 tins of beans, and a box of chocolates.

What is the total cost of these items?

Well, until I get there I don't know how much each item will cost, so I'll need to make up some letters... hmm... how about **p** for the price of pears, **b** for the price of beans, and **g** for the price of the box of chocolates (because I know she likes Galaxy!). It does not matter at all which you choose!

So what's the total cost so far?...

Well, 5 pears and each one costs **p** → **5p**

2 tins of beans each costing **b** → **2b**

and a box of chocolates costing **g** → **g**

So, Total Cost $= 5p + 2b + g$

Note: the terms are DIFFERENT so don't try and add them together!

Then I get a text saying we need two more tins of beans and one less pear. Now how much will it cost?

So, Total Cost $= 5p + 2b + g + 2b - p = 4p + 4b + g$

Then she announces that her parents are coming around, so we need twice as much of everything! Cost?

So, Total Cost $= 2 \times (4p + 4b + g) = 8p + 8b + 2g$

Return to contents page

Substitution

One other thing the Rules of Algebra allow you to do is to substitute numbers into expressions. For this, you need to remember our friends BODMAS and Negative Numbers!

If: $a = 2$ $b = 5$ $c = -3$ $d = -10$

Work out the values of the following expressions:

$$3ab$$

Well this means:

$$3 \times a \times b$$

Using our values:

$$3 \times 2 \times 5 = 30$$

$$2ac - acd$$

Okay, so we have to do our multiplications first

$$2ac = 2 \times 2 \times -3 = -12$$
$$acd = 2 \times -3 \times -10 = 60$$

So together we have: $-12 - 60 = -72$

$$6cb$$

Well this means:

$$6 \times c \times b$$

Using our values:

$$6 \times -3 \times 5 = -90$$

$$5ad^2$$

Okay, we must sort out our power first:

$$d^2 = -10 \times -10 = 100$$

Now we can multiply together

$$5 \times 2 \times 100 = 1000$$

Return to contents page

2. Single Brackets

Once Upon A Time…

I once heard my very first teaching mentor in Nottingham explaining a very nice way of thinking about brackets.

He said to think of the brackets as a canoe, and to think of the term outside them as a wave. Now, as you know, when you are in a canoe, there is no place to hide from the wave, and the person at the back gets just as wet as the person at the front and those in the middle.

Which brings us nicely onto the single most important rule of brackets…

Key Rule: you must multiply EVERYTHING inside the bracket by the term on the outside

And so long as you remember this, as well as your Rules of Algebra and how to deal with Negative Numbers, then this topic should hold no fear for you!

I am going to take you through 4 pretty easy examples to make sure your knowledge of negative numbers and the rules of algebra is up to scratch, and then it's time for a few stinkers!

Return to contents page

Example 1

$$3(2a+6)$$

Okay, so remember, the 3 is multiplying the 2a AND the +6.

Sometimes drawing on arrows helps you remember this, and a box is useful too...

$$3\,(2a \boxed{+\;6})$$

And so we get...

$$3 \times 2a = 6a$$

$$3 \times 6 = 12$$

Now, we are close to our answer, but we are missing... a SIGN

You must remember your rules for multiplying with negative numbers

The 3 and the front is really +3, and the second term in the bracket is +6, and two positives multiplied together give a POSITIVE so...

$$3(2a+6) = 6a+12$$

Example 2

$$5(7d-4)$$

Okay, so remember, the 5 is multiplying the 7a AND the -4.

Let's get those arrows going again, and a box too to remind us that the 2[nd] term in the bracket is a -4

$$5\,(7d \boxed{-\;4})$$

And so we get...

a positive × a negative

$$5 \times 7\text{d} = 35a$$

$$5 \times -4 = -20$$

And now we have our answer, but notice again how important it was to get the sign correct.

If I had £1 for each time I have seen 35a + 20, or just 35a 20 for questions like this, Mr Barton would be loaded!

Anyway, the correct answer...

$$5(7d-4) = 35d-20$$

Return to contents page

Example 3

$$-4(t+2)$$

Okay, so remember, the -4 is multiplying the t AND the +2.

Arrows and boxes...

$$-4\ (t\ \boxed{+\ 2})$$

And so we get...

a negative × a positive

$$-4 \times t = -4t$$

$$-4 \times 2 = -8$$

So long as you are good with negative numbers, you should have been able to get those signs correct!

$$-4(t+2) = -4t-8$$

Example 4

$$-10(2c-4)$$

Okay, so remember, the -10 is multiplying the 2c AND the -4.

Arrows and boxes...

$$-10\ (2c\ \boxed{-\ 4})$$

Be careful with your signs...

$$-10 \times 2c = -20c$$

$$-10 \times -4 = 40$$

a negative × a negative

The 2nd multiplication always catches people out. Remember, two negatives multiplied together give a POSITIVE!

$$-10(2c-4) = -20c+40$$

Time for the stinkers...

Return to contents page

Example 5

$$5a(2b - c)$$

Okay, so remember, the 5a is multiplying the 2b AND the -c.

Arrows and boxes...

$$5a\ (2b\ \boxed{-\ c})$$

You need Rules of Algebra and Negative Numbers for this...

$$5a \times 2b = 10ab$$

$$5a \times -c = -5ac$$

If you didn't follow any of that, make sure you go back and read over the 1. Rules of Algebra notes again!

Example 6

$$7ar(10st + 2b - 5)$$

Okay, so remember, the 7ar is multiplying the 10st AND the +2b AND the -5.

Arrows and boxes...

$$7ar\ (10st\ \boxed{+\ 2b}\ \boxed{-\ 5})$$

Be careful with your signs and letters...

$$7ar \times 10st = 70arst$$

$$7ar \times 2b = 14abr$$

$$7ar \times -5 = -35ar$$

Again, if you missed any of that, you know what to do...

$$5a(2b - c) = 10ab - 5ac \qquad 7ar(10st + 2b - 5) = 70arst + 14abr - 35ar$$

Too easy for you?...

Return to contents page

Example 7

$$4r(2r-9t)$$

Okay, so remember, the 4r is multiplying the 2r AND the -9t.

Arrows and boxes…

$$4r\ (2r\ \boxed{-\ 9t})$$

You definitely need your Rules of Algebra for this…

$$4r \times 2r = 8rr = 8r^2$$

$$4r \times -9t = -36rt$$

The first one was the tricky bit there! Something, multiplied by itself, becomes squared!

$$4r(2r-9t) = 8r^2 - 36rt$$

Example 8

$$2ab(4a-3ab^2)$$

Okay, so remember, the 2ab is multiplying the 4a AND the $-3ab^2$

Arrows and boxes…

$$2ab\ (4a\ \boxed{-\ 3ab^2})$$

How well do you know your algebra?…

$$2ab \times 4a = 8aab = 8a^2b$$

$$2ab \times -3ab^2 = -6aabbb = -6a^2b^3$$

That's about as difficult as they get!

$$2ab(4a-3ab^2) = 8a^2b - 6a^2b^3$$

And I think that'll do!

Return to contents page

3. Factorising

What on earth does Factorising mean?...

Very simply, factorising is the opposite of what we did in the previous section – 2. Brackets

Factorising just means: putting back into brackets

How to Factorise

1. Look for the highest common factors in each term (they could be letters or numbers)
2. Place these common factors outside the bracket
3. Write down what is now left inside the bracket – ask yourself: what do I need to multiply the term outside the bracket by to get my original term?
4. Check carefully that there are no more common factors in your bracket
5. Check your answer by expanding your brackets – it takes 2 seconds and it means you have definitely got the question correct!

Let's make sure we understand about Factors...

The key to successful factorising is understanding factors, and if it helps, why not just write down what each term means in full and then it's dead easy to spot the factors...

$$12a \longrightarrow 12 \times a$$

$$6y^2 \longrightarrow 6 \times y \times y$$

$$7pq^2 \longrightarrow 7 \times p \times q \times q$$

Return to contents page

Example 1

Factorise: $7a+21$

1. Okay, so we're on the hunt for common factors in both numbers and letters:

Numbers: 7 and 21 ⟶ Highest Factor = 7

Letters: there are no letters in the 2nd term, so we can't take any letters outside the bracket!

2. So we have...

$$7\ (\ ?\ +\ ?\ )$$

3. Now we have to figure out...

$$7 \times ? = 7a \longrightarrow a$$

$$7 \times ? = 21 \longrightarrow 3$$

Which gives us... $7(a + 3)$

4. Check there are no more common factors left inside the bracket...erm... nothing is common to both a and 3, so we're fine!

5. Expand the answer (on paper or in your head) to make sure you get the original question!

Example 2

Factorise: $10p+15pq$

1. Okay, so we're on the hunt for common factors in both numbers and letters:

Numbers: 10 and 15 ⟶ Highest Factor = 5

Letters: p and p q ⟶ Highest Factor = p

2. So we have...

$$5p\ (\ ?\ +\ ?\ )$$

3. Now we have to figure out...

$$5p \times ? = 10p \longrightarrow 2$$

$$5p \times ? = 15pq \longrightarrow 3q$$

Which gives us... $5p\ (2 + 3q)$

4. Check there are no more common factors left inside the bracket...erm... nothing is common to both 2 and 3q, so we're fine!

5. Expand the answer (on paper or in your head) to make sure you get the original question!

Return to contents page

Example 3

Factorise: $24c^2 + 16c$

1. Okay, so we're on the hunt for common factors in both numbers and letters:

Numbers: 24 and 16 ⟶ Highest Factor = 8

Letters: c^2 and c ⟶ Highest Factor = c

Remember: c^2 is just $c \times c$

2. So we have...

$$8c\,(\;?\;+\;?\;)$$

3. Now we have to figure out...

$$8c \times ? = 24c^2 \longrightarrow 3c$$
$$8c \times ? = 16c \longrightarrow 2$$

Which gives us... $8c(3c + 2)$

4. Check there are no more common factors

5. Expand the answer (on paper or in your head) to make sure you get the original question!

NOTE:

A very common mistake is not to take out the highest common factor.

For example, imagine we were doing Example 3, but for the numbers we thought the highest common factor was 2...

Numbers: 24 and 16 ⟶ Highest Factor = 2

Letters: c^2 and c ⟶ Highest Factor = c

We would get...

$$2c\,(\;?\;+\;?\;)$$

And then...

$$2c \times ? = 24c^2 \longrightarrow 12c$$
$$2c \times ? = 16c \longrightarrow 8$$

Which gives us... $2c(12c + 8)$

But, so long as we remember to always check there are no more common factors, we'll be fine, because a quick glance at this answers shows us that 12 and 8 have a common factor of 4!

Return to contents page

Example 4

Factorise: $18bc - 45b^2$

1. Okay, so we're on the hunt for common factors in both numbers and letters:

Numbers: 18 and 45 $\longrightarrow$ Highest Factor = 9

Letters: b c and b² $\longrightarrow$ Highest Factor = b

Remember: b^2 is just $b \times b$ and $b\,c$ is just $b \times c$

2. So we have...

$$9b\ (\ ?\ -\ ?\ )$$

3. Now we have to figure out...

$$9b \times ? = 18bc \longrightarrow 2c$$

$$9b \times ? = 45b^2 \longrightarrow 5b$$

Which gives us... $9b(2c - 5b)$

4. Check there are no more common factors

5. Expand the answer (on paper or in your head) to make sure you get the original question!

Example 5 - Nightmare!

Factorise: $18a^2b - 6ab + 30ab^2$

1. Okay, so we're on the hunt for common factors in both numbers and letters:

Numbers: 18 6 and 30 $\longrightarrow$ Highest Factor = 6

Letters: $a^2\,b$ $a\,b$ and $a\,b^2$ $\longrightarrow$ Highest Factor = a b

Remember: a^2b is just $a \times a \times b$ and $a\,b^2$ is just $a \times b \times b$

2. So we have...

$$6ab\ (\ ?\ -\ ?\ -\ ?\ )$$

3. Now we have to figure out...

$$6ab \times ? = 18a^2b \longrightarrow 3a$$

$$6ab \times ? = 6ab \longrightarrow 1$$

$$6ab \times ? = 30ab^2 \longrightarrow 5b$$

Which gives us... $6ab(3ac - 1 + 5b)$

4/5. Check for common factors and Expand the answer to make sure you are correct!

Return to contents page

4. Solving Linear Equations

What on earth does Solving Equations mean?

Let's look at each of these three words in turn...

Equations – these are just the same as expressions (what we have looked at in the last 3 sections, but with an equals sign (=) thrown in for good measure

Linear – this just means we don't have to worry about annoying powers... just yet!

Solving – this means we must find the value of the unknown which makes the equation balance

Now, there are a lot of different ways to solve equations, and if you are happy with the way that you have been taught, then stick to it, but this is the way I do them...

How Mr Barton Solves Equations

Golden Rule: Whatever you do to one side of the equation, you must do exactly the same to the other side to keep the equation in balance

Aim: To be left with your unknown letter on one side of the equals sign, and a number on the other side

Method:

By doing the same to both sides of the equation...

1. If they are not already, get all your unknown letters on one side of the equation (NOT on the bottom of fractions and avoiding negatives).
2. Begin unwrapping your unknown letter, by thinking about the order that things were done to the letter
3. Use inverse operations to do this until you are left with just your unknown letter on one side, and the answer on the other
4. Check your answer using substitution and you should never ever get one of these wrong!

Return to contents page

What are Inverse Operations?...

Inverse operations are the key to solving equations as they allow you to unwrap all the things surrounding your unknown letter and leave you with a simple answer.

Inverse operations are just operations which are the opposite of each other, and as such they cancel each other out.

Here are the main ones you need to know....

$$+ \quad \rightleftarrows \quad -$$

$$\times \quad \rightleftarrows \quad \div$$

$$\sqrt{} \quad \rightleftarrows \quad 2$$

power of 2

Now, the way I am going to set out these first few examples may seem very long and painful, but if you can do it this way for the simple ones, there is no reason why you can do the same for the nightmare stinker ones at the end...

Return to contents page

Example 1 $7p - 3 = 32$

1. Right, here we go... now our unknown letter (p) only appears on the left hand side of the equation, there is no negative sign in front of it, and it is not on the bottom of a fraction, so that's a good start!

2. Okay, what order were things done to p...

$$p \xrightarrow{\times 7} 7p \xrightarrow{-3} 7p-3$$

3. And so now we can unwrap, starting with the last operation, and doing the inverse (opposite) to both sides:

Add three to both sides

Notice how the +3 cancels out the -3!

Divide both sides by 7

Notice how dividing by 7 cancels out the 7 multiplying the p

$$7p - 3 = 32$$

$+3$

$$7p - 3 + 3 = 32 + 3$$

$$\rightarrow \quad 7p = 35$$

$\div 7$

$$\frac{7p}{7} = 35 \div 7$$

$$\rightarrow \quad p = 5$$

4. We have our answer, but it's so easy to check if we are right, that we might as well do it.

Just substitute p = 5 into the questions, and hope the equation balances...

When p = 5...

$$7p - 3 = 7 \times 5 - 3 = 35 - 3 = 32!$$

Return to contents page

Example 2 $2(3r + 6) = 36$

1. Okay, so let's do our checks... our unknown letter (r) only appears on the left hand side of the equation, there is no negative sign in front of it, and it is not on the bottom of a fraction, so we are good to go... after we expand the brackets, of course...

2. Okay, what order were things done to r...

$$r \xrightarrow{\times 6} 11r \xrightarrow{+12} 6r + 12$$

3. And so now we can unwrap, starting with the last operation, and doing the inverse (opposite) to both sides:

Subtract twelve from both sides

Notice how the -12 cancels out the +12!

Divide both sides by 6

Notice how dividing by 6 cancels out the 6r!

$$2(3r + 6) = 36$$

$$\rightarrow \quad 6r + 12 = 36$$

Note: if this bit confused you, have another read of 1. Rules of Algebra

-12

$$6r + 12 - 12 = 36 - 12$$

$$\rightarrow \quad 6r = 24$$

$\div 6$

$$\frac{6r}{6} = 24 \div 6$$

$$\rightarrow \quad r = 4$$

4. We have our answer, but it's so easy to check if we are right, that we might as well do it.

Just substitute r = 4 into the questions, and hope the equation balances...

When r = 4...

$$2(3r + 6) = 2(3 \times 4 + 6) = 2(12 + 6) = 2 \times 18 = 36!$$

Return to contents page

Example 3 $\quad 6+\frac{k}{5} = -1$

1. Okay, so our unknown letter (k) only appears on the left hand side of the equation, there is no negative sign in front of it, and it is not on the bottom of a fraction. Phew!

2. Okay, what order were things done to k...

$$k \xrightarrow{\div 5} \frac{k}{5} \xrightarrow{+6} 6+\frac{k}{5}$$

3. And so now we can unwrap, starting with the last operation, and doing the inverse (opposite) to both sides:

Subtract six from both sides

Again, look at the cancelling out!

Multiply both sides by 5

It all cancels out!

$$6+\frac{k}{5} = -1$$

Note: just because k is not written first, doesn't change the order in which things are done to k! Think: BODMAS!

-6

$$6+\frac{k}{5}-6 = -1-6$$

$$\rightarrow \frac{k}{5} = -7$$

$\times 5$

$$\frac{k}{5}\times 5 = -7\times 5$$

$$\rightarrow k = -35$$

We have our answer, but it's so easy to check if we are right, that we might as well do it.

Just substitute k = -35 into the questions, and hope the equation balances...

When k = -35...

$$6+\frac{k}{5} = 6+\frac{-35}{5} = 6+-7 = 6-7 = -1!$$

Return to contents page

Example 4 $\quad 24 - 3m = 6$

1. Okay, so let's do our checks… our unknown letter (m) only appears on the left hand side of the equation, it's not on the bottom of a fraction, but wait… it's got a negative sign in front of it!

This is going to make life difficult, but we can sort it out by using inverse operations to cancel out the -3m…

We just need to add 3m to both sides!

And now we have an equation just like all the others!

$$24 - 3m = 6$$

$+3m$

$$24 - 3m + 3m = 6 + 3m$$

$$\rightarrow \quad 24 = 6 + 3m$$

2. Okay, what order were things done to m…

$$m \xrightarrow{\times 3} 3m \xrightarrow{+6} 6 + 3m$$

3. And so now we can unwrap, starting with the last operation, and doing the inverse (opposite) to both sides:

Subtract six from both sides

The 6s on the right hand side will cancel!

-6

$$24 - 6 = 6 + 3m - 6$$

$$\rightarrow \quad 18 = 3m$$

Divide both sides by 3

$\div 3$

$$18 \div 3 = \frac{3m}{3}$$

$$\rightarrow \quad 6 = m \quad \text{or} \quad m = 6$$

Substitution to check our answer: When m = 6…

$$24 - 3m = 24 - 3 \times 6 = 24 - 18 = 6!$$

Return to contents page

Example 5 $7y + 3 = 10y - 6$

1. Okay, we have trouble right away! All of the unknowns (y) are NOT on the same side.

$$7y + 3 = 10y - 6$$

No problem, we just need a bit of inverse operations.

Top Tip: Collect your letters on the side which starts off with the most letters... so the right hand side!

So, we just need to subtract $7y$ from both sides!

And now we have an equation just like all the others!

$-7y$

$$7y + 3 - 7y = 10y - 6 - 7y$$

$$\rightarrow \quad 3 = 3y - 6$$

Note: if this bit confused you, have another read of 1. Rules of Algebra

2. Okay, what order were things done to y...

$$y \xrightarrow{\times 3} 3y \xrightarrow{-6} 3y - 6$$

3. And so now we can unwrap, starting with the last operation, and doing the inverse (opposite) to both sides:

Add six to both sides

$+6$

$$3 + 6 = 3y - 6 + 6$$

The 6s on the right hand side will cancel!

$$\rightarrow \quad 9 = 3y$$

Divide both sides by 3

$\div 3$

$$9 \div 3 = \frac{3y}{3}$$

$$\rightarrow \quad 3 = y \quad \text{or} \quad y = 3$$

Substitution to check our answer balances!: When $y = 3$...

Left hand side $7y + 3 = 7 \times 3 + 3 = 24$

Right hand side $10y - 6 = 10 \times 3 - 6 = 24$

Return to contents page

Example 6 $\dfrac{25}{g-1} = 5$

1. Problem! Our unknown letter (g) is on the bottom of a fraction!

$$\frac{25}{g-1} = 5$$

The only way we are going to get that g off the bottom of the fraction is to realise that the 25 is being divided by g - 1 and use inverse operations…

So, we just need to multiply both sides by (g - 1)

$\times(g-1)$

$$\frac{25}{g-1} \times (g-1) = 5 \times (g-1)$$

And expand the brackets on the right hand side

$$\rightarrow\ 25 = 5(g-1)$$

And now we have an equation just like all the others!

$$\rightarrow\ 25 = 5g - 5$$

2. Okay, what order were things done to g…

$$g \xrightarrow{\times 5} 5g \xrightarrow{-5} 5g-5$$

3. And so now we can unwrap, starting with the last operation, and doing the inverse (opposite) to both sides:

Add five to both sides

$+6$

$$25 + 5 = 5g - 5 + 5$$

The 5s on the right hand side will cancel!

$$\rightarrow\ 30 = 5g$$

Divide both sides by 5

$\div 5$

$$30 \div 5 = \frac{5g}{5}$$

$$\rightarrow\ 6 = g \quad \text{or} \quad g = 6$$

Substitution to check our answer is correct!: When g = 6…

$$\frac{25}{g-1} = \frac{25}{6-1} = \frac{25}{5} = 5$$

Return to contents page

5. Double Brackets

You knew it was coming...

Just when you have got your head around how to expand single brackets, your lovely maths teacher announces it's time to have a go at expanding double brackets.

But the good news is that it's no more difficult than single brackets, you don't need to learn any new skills, and you get loads more marks for doing it!

Skills you need for success...

If you know about these things, you will be fine:

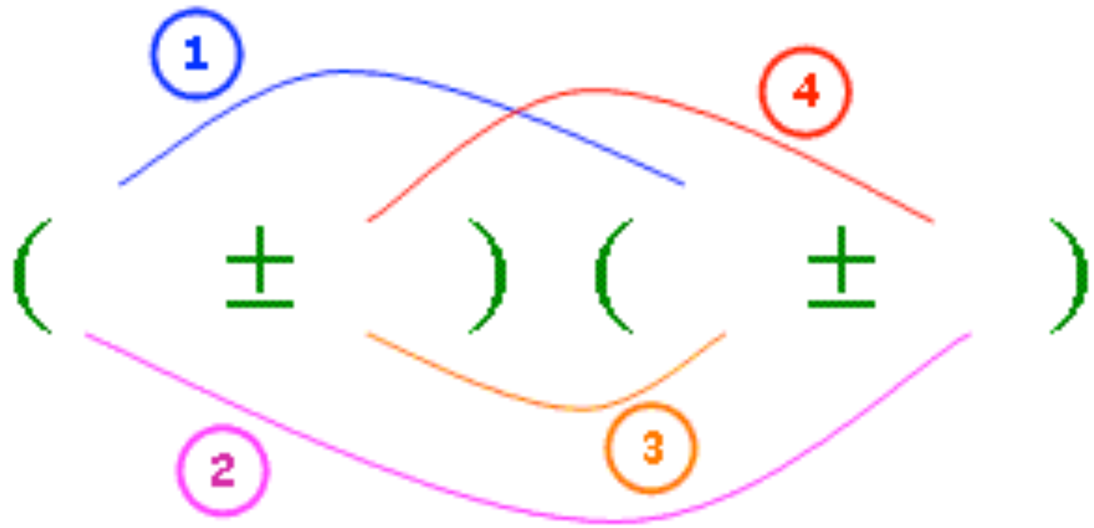
- How to expand single brackets (see Algebra 2. Single Brackets)
- Rules of Algebra (see Algebra 1. Rules of Algebra)
- Rules of Negative Numbers (see Number 8. Negative Numbers)

Return to contents page

It's all about FOIL…

Now, like with most things in maths, there are a lot of different ways of expanding double brackets, and if you are happy with your way, then just stick to it, but here is how I do it.

FOIL basically tells me the order in which I need to multiply terms, because the most common mistake people make when expanding double brackets is to miss a few terms out!



Some people call this the smiley face method!

1. **First** — Multiply together the first terms in each bracket – remembering to include the signs in front of them
2. **Outer** — Multiply together the terms on the outside each bracket – remembering to include the signs in front of them
3. **Inner** — Multiply together the terms on the inside each bracket – remembering to include the signs in front of them
4. **Last** — Multiply together the last terms in each bracket – remembering to include the signs in front of them

Return to contents page

Example 1

$$(a + 6)(a + 4)$$

Until you get really comfortable, there is nothing wrong with drawing the smiley face on to remind you what to multiply!

$$(a + 6)(a + 4)$$

First $a \times a = a^2$

Outer $a \times 4 = 4a$

Inner $6 \times a = 6a$

Last $6 \times 4 = 24$

Now we write down our answers, in order, remembering if there is no sign in front of our term it's just a disguised plus!

$$a^2 \boxed{+ 4a + 6a} + 24$$

Notice that the middle terms simplify to give...

$$a^2 + 10a + 24$$

Example 2

$$(p + 10)(p - 8)$$

Time for the smiley face...

$$(p + 10)(p - 8)$$

Be really careful with the NEGATIVES...

First $p \times p = p^2$

Outer $p \times -8 = -8p$

Inner $10 \times p = 10p$

Last $10 \times -8 = -80$

Now we write down our answers, in order, making sure we get all the signs correct!

$$p^2 \boxed{- 8p + 10p} - 80$$

Notice that the middle terms simplify to give...

$$p^2 + 2p - 80$$

Return to contents page

Example 3

$$(t - 9)(t + 2)$$

Let's draw our smiley face...

$$(t - 9)(t + 2)$$

Again, we must watch those NEGATIVES...

First $t \times t = t^2$

Outer $t \times 2 = 2t$

Inner $-9 \times t = -9t$

Last $-9 \times 2 = -18$

Once again, the signs are the key to success!

$$t^2 \boxed{+ 2t - 9t} - 18$$

Carefully simplify the middle terms...

$$t^2 - 7t - 18$$

Example 4

$$(m - 7)(m - 9)$$

Time for another smiley face...

$$(m - 7)(m - 9)$$

Be so, so, so careful with the NEGATIVES...

First $m \times m = m^2$

Outer $m \times -9 = -9m$

Inner $-7 \times m = -7m$

Last $-7 \times -9 = 63$

Writing down our answers, we get...

$$m^2 \boxed{- 9m - 7m} + 63$$

You have to know your Rules of Negative Numbers inside out for this next bit...

$$m^2 - 16m + 63$$

Return to contents page

Let's take a moment to reflect...

Just before we look at a few more difficult ones (which, by the way, follow the exact same rules as these), I just want to draw your attention to the answers we got...

$$(a + 6)(a + 4) \longrightarrow a^2 + 10a + 24$$

$$(p + 10)(p - 8) \longrightarrow p^2 + 2p - 80$$

$$(t - 9)(t + 2) \longrightarrow t^2 - 7t - 18$$

$$(m - 7)(m - 9) \longrightarrow m^2 - 16m + 63$$

Now, look at the numbers in the questions and the numbers in the answers.

Can you see a quick way of getting from one to the other?...

Don't worry if you can't, but if you can then you are one step ahead, because that is the key to success at 6. More Factorising, which is coming up soon...

But for now, how about some tricky expanding double bracket questions?...

Return to contents page

Example 5

$$(5g - 9)(g + 3)$$

Let's draw our smiley face...

$$(5g - 9)(g + 3)$$

Again, we must watch those NEGATIVES, and we must know our Rules of Algebra!

First $5g \times g = 5g^2$

Outer $5g \times 3 = 15g$

Inner $-9 \times g = -9g$

Last $-9 \times 3 = -27$

As always, the signs are the key to success!

$$5g^2 \boxed{+ 15g - 9g} - 27$$

Carefully simplify the middle terms...

$$5g^2 + 6g - 27$$

Example 6

$$(3c - 4)(2c - 5)$$

Are you still feeling happy?...

$$(3c - 4)(2c - 5)$$

NEGATIVES and Rules of Algebra again...

First $3c \times 2c = 6c^2$

Outer $3c \times -5 = -15c$

Inner $-4 \times 2c = -8c$

Last $-4 \times -5 = 20$

Writing down our answers, we get...

$$6c^2 \boxed{- 15c - 8c} + 20$$

Carefully simplify the middle terms...

$$6c^2 - 23c + 20$$

Return to contents page

Example 7

$$(a + b)(c - d)$$

Let's draw our smiley face...

$$(a + b)(c - d)$$

Again, we must watch those NEGATIVES, and we must know our Rules of Algebra!

First	$a \times c = ac$
Outer	$a \times -d = -ad$
Inner	$b \times c = bc$
Last	$b \times -d = -bd$

As always, the signs are the key to success!

$$ac - ad + bc - bd$$

Can we simplify the middle two (or indeed, any) of the terms?... NO because there are NO LIKE TERMS!

Example 8 - because I am feeling nasty...

$$(7ab + 3bc)(5a^2 - 2c)$$

Are you still smiling now?...

$$(7ab + 3bc)(5a^2 - 2c)$$

Okay, you would be really unlucky to ever get one as hard as this, but there's no reason we can't do it

First	$7ab \times 5a^2 = 35a^3b$
Outer	$7ab \times -2c = -14abc$
Inner	$3bc \times 5a^2 = 15a^2bc$
Last	$3bc \times -2c = -6bc^2$

Phew! Writing down our answers, we get...

$$35a^3b - 14abc + 15a^2bc - 6bc^2$$

Can we simplify the middle two (or indeed, any) of the terms?... NO because there are NO LIKE TERMS!

Return to contents page

Last one, I promise...

How would you do this one?...

$$(a-7)^2$$

If you said: "well, it's dead easy, isn't it, the answer is just...

$$a^2-49$$

Then please never say that again... because it's wrong!

Remember: squaring something means multiplying it by itself.
So, this question could actually be written as...

$$(a-7)(a-7)$$

Which means we can go back to our friend FOIL, and everyone is happy!
Incidentally, if you want to check you can still do these, the final simplified answer is...

$$a^2-14a+49$$

Can you see how we could have reached that answer a quicker way?...

TO BE CONTINUED on a maths website near you...

Return to contents page

6. More Factorising – Quadratics

Again, you knew it was coming...

Just like we had to expand double brackets, it should come as no surprise that we have to factorise expressions back into double brackets as well!

There is a bit of a trick to this, and to discover it, let's look back at our answers from 5. Expanding Brackets...

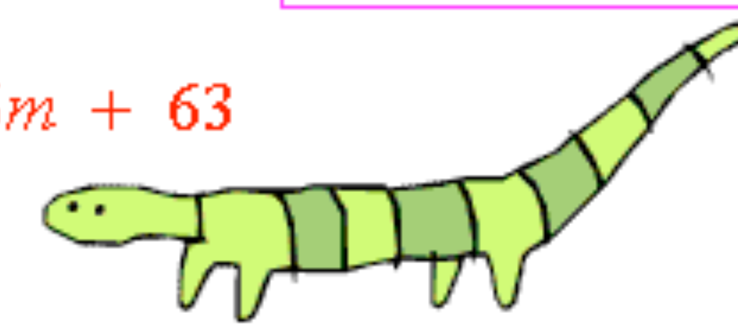
$$(a + 6)(a + 4) \longrightarrow a^2 + 10a + 24$$

$$(p + 10)(p - 8) \longrightarrow p^2 + 2p - 80$$

$$(t - 9)(t + 2) \longrightarrow t^2 - 7t - 18$$

$$(m - 7)(m - 9) \longrightarrow m^2 - 16m + 63$$

Note: These answers are called Quadratic Expressions because they have a squared term in them



Focus your attention on the numbers...

if you can see how to get from the numbers in the questions to the numbers in the answers...

then you should be able to see how to get from the answer back to the question...

and if you can do that, then you can already factorise quadratic expressions!

Return to contents page

How to Factorise Quadratic Expressions

Factorising quadratics means you want to get from:

$$x^2 \boxed{\pm\ ?}\,x \boxed{\pm\ ?} \quad \text{to} \quad (x \boxed{\pm\ ?})\,(x \boxed{\pm\ ?})$$

To be able to do this you need to be able to solve a little puzzle

If you look back at the examples, you will see that ...

$$(x \boxed{\pm\ ?})\,(x \boxed{\pm\ ?})$$

$$+$$

$$x^2 \boxed{\pm\ ?}\,x \boxed{\pm\ ?}$$

$$\times$$

$$(x \boxed{\pm\ ?})\,(x \boxed{\pm\ ?})$$

In other words, the two numbers in the bracket (including their sign) must...

ADD TOGETHER to give you the number (and sign) in front of the x...

And...

MULTIPLY TOGETHER to give you the number (and sign) at the end

So... if you can discover what two numbers solve that little puzzle, then you can factorise quadratics... and practice makes perfect!

Return to contents page

Example 1

$$x^2 + 11x + 24$$

Okay, here the question we must ask ourselves…

$$x^2 \boxed{+\ 11}x \boxed{+\ 24}$$

Which two numbers multiply together to give 24 and add together to give 11?

Now, if you find it helps, you can write down all the pairs of numbers which multiply together to give 24, and see which one also adds up to 11…

1×24	$1 + 24 = 25$	✗
2×12	$2 + 12 = 14$	✗
3×8	$3 + 8 = 11$	√

Once we have our pair, we just write them in the brackets, remembering that no sign is just a disguised plus!

$$(x + 3)(x + 8) \text{ or } (x + 8)(x + 3)$$

Why not expand the brackets to make doubly sure you are correct!

Example 2

$$p^2 + 2p - 15$$

Okay, here the question we must ask ourselves…

$$p^2 \boxed{+\ 2}p \boxed{-\ 15}$$

Which two numbers multiply together to give -15 and add together to give 2?

Again, nothing wrong with writing down pairs that multiply together to give -15, but be careful of your negatives!

1×-15	$1 + -15 = -14$	✗
-1×15	$-1 + 15 = 14$	✗
3×-5	$3 + -5 = -2$	✗
-3×5	$-3 + 5 = 2$	√

Once we have our pair, we just write the numbers in the brackets, making sure we get our signs in the correct place!

$$(p - 3)(p + 5) \text{ or } (p + 5)(p - 3)$$

Again, expanding the brackets is a good check!

Return to contents page

Example 3

$$k^2 - 13k - 14$$

Okay, here the question we must ask ourselves...

$$k^2 \boxed{-\ 13}\,k \boxed{-\ 14}$$

Which two numbers multiply together to give -14 and add together to give -13?

Unless you can do it in your head, just write down pairs of numbers that multiply together to give -14:

-1	×	14	-1	+	14	=	13	✗
1	×	-14	1	+	-14	=	-13	√

Once we have our pair, we just write the numbers in the brackets, making sure we get our signs in the correct place!

$$(k + 1)(k - 14) \text{ or } (k - 14)(k + 1)$$

If you expand the brackets you will definitely know that you are correct!

Example 4

$$v^2 - 9v + 18$$

Okay, here the question we must ask ourselves...

$$v^2 \boxed{-\ 9}\,v \boxed{+\ 18}$$

Which two numbers multiply together to give 18 and add together to give -9?

Now, switch on your brain here... we CAN'T be talking two positive numbers, as how will they add up to give -9?... so we need two negatives!

-1	×	-18	-1	+	-18	=	-19	✗
-2	×	-9	-2	+	-9	=	-11	✗
-3	×	-6	-3	+	-6	=	-9	√

People tend to mess these up, but we won't, because we know that two negatives multiplied together gives a positive!

$$(v - 3)(v - 6) \text{ or } (v - 6)(v - 3)$$

Again, expanding the brackets is a good check!

Return to contents page

What abut this funny looking one?...

$$x^2 - 16$$

Okay, looks a bit strange, but let's ask ourselves the same question as we always do...

Which two numbers multiply together to give -16 and add together to give... erm...well... erm... **0**?

Remember, it is the number in front of the x which tells us what the numbers must add together to make, but we don't have any x's, so the sum of our two numbers must be... **0!**

Think of the expression like this is it helps... $x^2 + 0x - 16$

So, isn't it true that for two numbers to add together to give zero, they must be the same number, but of opposite sign, so they cancel each other out!

So, which two numbers do we need?... 4 and -4! Expand it to check!

$$x^2 - 16 \longrightarrow (x + 4)(x - 4)$$

Expressions like this are called "the difference of two squares", and are always factorised in a similar way. Look at these three examples and see if you can see how I got the answers...

$$a^2 - 25 \longrightarrow (a + 5)(a - 5)$$

$$p^2 - 100 \longrightarrow (p + 10)(p - 10)$$

$$4t^2 - 49 \longrightarrow (2t + 7)(2t - 7)$$

Return to contents page

When things get a little tricky...

Okay, whilst it was not so tricky to spot how to factorise those types of quadratics, what about when there is a number in front of the squared term?...

Let's look back at two examples we did in 5. Expanding Double Brackets, to see if we can spot where the numbers come from...

$$(5g - 9)(g + 3) \longrightarrow 5g^2 + 6g - 27$$

$$(3c - 4)(2c - 5) \longrightarrow 6c^2 - 23c + 20$$

Any ideas?... It's not easy to spot, is it?

I think the best thing I can do is to try and take you through two examples as carefully as I can...

Are you ready?....

Return to contents page

Example 1 $2x^2 - x - 3$

Okay, let's start by thinking what the first terms in the two brackets must be?...

Do you agree that they would have to be **2x** and **x**, otherwise we would not get out **$2x^2$**!

How about the numbers at the end of each bracket?...

Well, they would have to be a pair of numbers which multiply together to give -3!

I set out this information in a table like this:

The first terms in the brackets

2x	-1	3	1	-3
x	3	-1	-3	1

All the pairs of numbers which multiply to give -3

Next I multiply DIAGONALLY, and I am looking for a pair of numbers which will add up to the amount of x's I need... which from the question is **-1x**!

2x	-1	3	-3	1
x	3	-1	1	-3

(2x × 3) + (x × -1) = 6x + -1x = 5x **x**

(2x × -1) + (x × 3) = -2x + 3x = 1x **x**

(2x × 1) + (x × -3) = 2x + -3x = -1x √

The pair I want is the 3rd column of numbers along

Now, to get my answer, I just put the two terms from the top row in the first bracket, and the two terms from the second row in my second bracket...

$$(2x - 3)(x + 1)$$

You have done so much work here, that it is definitely worth checking you are correct by expanding the brackets!

Return to contents page

Example 2 $8x^2 - 2x - 15$

Okay, again let's start by thinking what the first terms in the two brackets must be?...

Problem: They could be either: **8x** and **x**, or the could be **4x** and **2x**. Both, when multiplied together, would give us the **$8x^2$** that we need!

So this time we need two tables!

The first terms in the brackets

All the pairs of numbers which multiply to give -15

8x	-1	15	1	-15	-3	5	3	-5
x	15	-1	-15	1	5	-3	-5	3

4x	-1	15	1	-15	-3	5	3	-5
2x	15	-1	-15	1	5	-3	-5	3

And once again I must just keep I multiplying DIAGONALLY (in my head if I can), looking for a pair of numbers which will add up to the amount of x's I need... which from the question is **-2x**!

After a long search, I reckon the pair with the rings around them is what I need!

$(4x \times -3) + (2x \times 5) = -12x + 10x = -2x$

As before, to get my answer I just put the two terms from the top row in the first bracket, and the two terms from the second row in my second bracket...

$$(4x + 5)(2x - 3)$$

Return to contents page

7. Solving Quadratic Equations

The three ways to solve quadratic equations…

Again, it will depend on your age and maths set as to how many of these you need to know, but here are the three ways which we can solve quadratic equations:

1. Factorising
2. Using the Quadratic Formula
3. Completing the Square

Which ever way you choose (or are told to do!), you must remember the Golden Rule:

The Golden Rule for Solving Quadratic Equations: You should always get TWO answers…
Note: in actual fact one (or even both) answer may not exist, but you don't need to worry about that until A Level!

Why on earth do I get two answers?…

This is all to do with the fact that quadratics contain squares, and what happens when we square negative numbers…

Imagine you were trying to think solve this equation: $x^2 = 25$

Well, $x = 5$ is definitely a solution that works, but there is another…erm… erm…
What about $x = -5$!… Because when you square a negative number, you get a positive answer!
And that's why we get two solutions when quadratics are involved!

Return to contents page

1. Solving by Factorising

This is by far the easiest and quickest way to solve a quadratic equation, and if you are not told otherwise, then always spend a minute or so seeing if the equation will factorise.

Note: For the rest of this section, I am going to assume you are comfortable with what was covered in Algebra 6. More Factorising. Please go back and have a quick read if not.

Method

1. Re-arrange the equation to make it equal to zero

2. Factorise the quadratic equation

3. Think what value of the unknown letter would make each of your brackets equal to zero

4. These two numbers are your answers!

Why on earth does that work?

Imagine, after following steps **1.** and **2.**, you find yourself looking at this...

$$(x - 4)(x + 3) = 0$$

Think about what we have got here... we have two things $(x - 4)$ and $(x + 3)$ that when multiplied together (disguised multiplication sign between the brackets) equal zero

Well... if two things multiplied together equal zero, then at least one of them must be zero!

So... you ask yourself: "what value of x makes the first bracket equal to zero?"... **4**!

And... "what value of x makes the second bracket equal to zero?"... **- 3**!

So we have our answers:

$$x = 4 \quad \text{or} \quad x = -3$$

Return to contents page

Example 1

$$x^2 - 3x - 28 = 0$$

Okay, let's go through each stage of the method:

1. The equation is already equal to zero, so that is a bonus!

2. Let's factorise the left hand side, like the good old days...

$$x^2 - 3x - 28 \rightarrow (x - 7)(x + 4)$$

And so, in terms of our equation, we have:

$$(x - 7)(x + 4) = 0$$

3. Right, we need to pick some values of x to make each of the brackets equal to zero:

$$(x - 7)(x + 4) = 0$$

$$x = 7 \qquad x = -4$$

4. So, we have our answers...

$$x = 7 \quad \text{or} \quad x = -4$$

Example 2

$$2x^2 + 5x = 3$$

1. Problem: the equation is NOT equal to zero... but if we subtract 3 from both sides, we're good to go!

$$2x^2 + 5x - 3 = 0$$

2. This is one of the tricky factorisations...

$$2x^2 + 5x - 3 \rightarrow (2x - 1)(x + 3)$$

And so, in terms of our equation, we have:

$$(2x - 1)(x + 3) = 0$$

3. Right, we need to pick some values of x to make each of the brackets equal to zero:

$$(2x - 1)(x + 3) = 0$$

$$x = 1/2 \qquad x = -3$$

4. So, we have our answers...

$$x = 1/2 \quad \text{or} \quad x = -3$$

Return to contents page

2. Solving by using the Quadratic Formula

The good news is that the quadratic formula can solve every single quadratic equations

The bad news is that it looks complicated and it's fiddly to use!

The Quadratic Formula:

+ or - this is where the 2 answers come from

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

Note: To be able to use this formula, you must be very good at using your calculator. Practice to make sure you can get the answers I get below, and if not then ask you teacher!

What do the letters stand for?...

The letters are just the coefficients (the numbers in front of) the unknowns in your equation:

Remember: as always, you must include the signs of the numbers as well!

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

Example

$$5x^2 - 8x + 12 = 0 \longrightarrow a = 5 \qquad b = -8 \qquad c = 12$$

Never Ever Forget: Before you start sticking numbers into the formula, you must make sure that you rearrange your equation to make it equal to zero!

Return to contents page

Example 1

$$x^2 - 4x + 2 = 0$$

What a nice looking equation. I bet it factorises… erm… erm… no it doesn't!

So we'll have to use the formula.

It's already equal to zero, so we just need to figure out what our a, b and c are:

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$
$$x^2 - 4x + 2 = 0$$

$$a = 1 \qquad b = -4 \qquad c = 2$$

Note: a = 1, and not 0! Remember, the 1 is hidden!

Stick the numbers in our formula…

$$x = \frac{--4 \pm \sqrt{-4^2 - 4\times 1\times 2}}{2\times 1}$$

And if you are careful with your calculator, you should get…

$x = 3.41$ or $x = 0.59$ (2dp)

Pressing the buttons on the calculator

You'll be amazed how many people throw away easy marks because they can't use their calculator properly!

Here is one order of buttons you could press to get you the correct answer!

(-) ((-) 4) + √ (

Top Tip: always put any negative numbers in brackets or calculators tend to do daft things!

Change this to minus to work out the 2nd answer!

((-) 4) x² - 4 X

1 X 6) = 6.828427125

This gives you the value of the top of the fraction

÷ (2 X 1) =

3.414213562

Changing the sign to minus gives the other answer of…

0.585786437

Return to contents page

Example 2

$$5x^2 = 10 - 3x$$

It's not going to factorise, and it's not equal to zero!

So before we use the formula we must… add 3x and subtract 10 from both sides to give us:

$$5x^2 + 3x - 10 = 0$$

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$
$$5x^2 + 3x - 10 = 0$$

$$a = 5 \qquad b = 3 \qquad c = -10$$

Stick the numbers in our formula…

$$x = \frac{-3 \pm \sqrt{3^2 - 4\times5\times-10}}{2\times5}$$

And if you are careful with your calculator, you should get…

$x = 1.15$ or $x = -1.75$ (2dp)

Pressing the buttons on the calculator

Okay, this time we'll work out the answer that uses the minus on top of the fraction instead of the plus…

((-) 3) - √ (

Top Tip: always put any negative numbers in brackets or calculators tend to do daft things!

Change this to plus to work out the 2nd answer!

3 x² - 4 X 5 X

((-) 1 0)) = -17.45683229

This gives you the value of the top of the fraction

÷ (2 X 5) =

-1.745683229

Changing the sign to plus gives the other answer of…

1.145683229

Return to contents page

3. Solving by Completing the Square

How would you factorise this?...

$$x^2 + 10x$$

It doesn't look like it can be done, but what about if I write it like this...

$$(x + 5)^2$$

Now that is certainly factorised as it is in brackets, but is it the correct answer?...
Let's expand the brackets using FOIL to find out...

$$(x + 5)^2 = (x+5)(x+5) = x^2 + 5x + 5x + 25 = x^2 + 10x + 25$$

It's close! In fact, our factorised version is just 25 too big! So, we can say...

$$x^2 + 10x = (x + 5)^2 - 25$$

And that is completing the square... the square is the **$(x + 5)^2$**, and the **$- 25$** completes it!

Method for Completing the Square

1. If the number in front of the x^2 is NOT 1, then take out a factor to make it so

2. Complete the Square using this fancy looking formula:

$$x^2 + bx = (x + b/2)^2 - (b/2)^2$$

Note: b, is just the number (with sign!) in front of the x, like 10 in the example above!

3. If you need to solve the equation, use SURDS ... Crucial: When you square root, you must take both the positive and the negative to make sure you get TWO answers!

Return to contents page

Example 1 Complete the square and solve:

$$x^2 - 4x = 21$$

1. The number in front of x^2 is 1, so we're fine!

2. Let's use the formula on the left hand side:

$$x^2 + bx = (x + b/2)^2 - (b/2)^2$$

$$x^2 - 4x = (x - 4/2)^2 - (-4/2)^2$$

$$\longrightarrow \quad (x - 2)^2 - 4$$

So now we have: $(x - 2)^2 - 4 = 21$

3. Well, so long as you are good at solving equations, you'll be fine from here...

+4	$(x - 2)^2 = 25$
√	$x - 2 = \pm\sqrt{25} = \pm 5$
+2	$x = \pm 5 + 2$

So... $x = 5 + 2 = 7$ **Or** $x = -5 + 2 = -3$

Example 2 Complete the square and solve:

$$4x^2 - 8x = 21$$

1. The number in front of x^2 is 4, so we must take out a factor of 4 to sort things out!

$$4(x^2 - 2x) = 21$$

2. Use the formula on the terms in the brackets:

$$x^2 - 2x = (x - 2/2)^2 - (-2/2)^2$$

$$\longrightarrow \quad (x - 1)^2 - 1$$

So now we have: $4\left[(x - 1)^2 - 1\right] = 21$

Expanding: $4(x - 1)^2 - 4 = 21$

3. Time to solve...

+4	$4(x - 1)^2 = 25$
÷4	$(x - 1)^2 = 6.25$
√	$x - 1 = \pm\sqrt{6.25} = \pm 2.5$
+1	$x = \pm 2.5 + 1$

$x = 2.5 + 1 = 3.5$ **Or** $x = -2.5 + 1 = -1.5$

Return to contents page

8. Simultaneous Equations

What are Simultaneous Equations?

Simultaneous Equations are two equations, each containing two unknown letters, and you have to use both equations, in a clever way, to find the value of your unknown letters!

Key Point: The values you find for your unknown letters must make BOTH equations balance – and once again this is another Algebra topic where you can check your answers and guarantee that you have got it right! I told you Algebra wasn't so bad...

Skills you need to have mastered before we start...

In this section I am going to assume that you are an world expert on the following things:

- How to solve equations (see Algebra 4. Solving Equations)
- Rules of Algebra (see Algebra 1. Rules of Algebra)
- Rules of Negative Numbers (see Number 8. Negative Numbers)

If this is not the case, go back now and have a quick read through!

Please Note: The graphical method for solving simultaneous equations is discussed in Graphs 1. Straight Line Graphs

How Mr Barton Solves Simultaneous Equations

1. If you need to, re-arrange your equations so they are in the same form

2. Write one equation underneath the other, lining up your unknown letters

3. Choose one of the unknown letters and use your algebra skills to change one or both of the equations to make sure there are the same number (don't worry about sign) of your chosen letter in each equation. Your chosen letter becomes your Key Letter.

4. Put a box around your Key Letters and their sign

5. Follow this rule:

If the signs are the same, subtract the two equations

If the signs are different, then add the two equations

6. If you have done this correctly, your Key Letter should cancel out and you should be left with just one equation with one unknown

7. Solve this equation to work out the value of the unknown letter

8. Choose one of the original equations and substitute in the answer you found in **7.** to work out the value of the other letter... and try to pick the equation that will make life easy for yourself!

9. Check your answers are correct using the equation you did not choose in **8.** !

Return to contents page

Example 1 $3x + y = 19 \qquad x + y = 9$

1. Good news! Our equations are in the same form: some x's and some y's, equal a number!

2. Let's write the second equation underneath the first...

3. Okay, so we need to pick either the x's or the y's to be our Key Letter. Well... notice how there are already the same number of y's in both equations (there is a disguised 1 in front of both), so let's pick the y's to make life easier for ourselves!

4. Put a box around our Key Letters, and their signs:

5. The signs of our Key Letters are the same (both +) so we must Subtract equation 2 from equation 1.

6. Our Key Letters have cancelled out, leaving us with a nice looking equation: $2x = 10$

7. Solve it:

8. Use this value in one of the original equations (I'll chose 1) to find the value of the other unknown letter:

9. And now we have our two answers: $x = 5 \quad y = 4$

But we may as well check them using equation 2

2 $x + y = 9$ $\xrightarrow{x = 5,\ y = 4}$ $5 + 4 = 9$

1 $3x + y = 19$

2 $x + y = 9$

$$
\begin{array}{rrcl}
 & ① \; 3x \boxed{+ y} & = & 19 \\
- & ② \; x \boxed{+ y} & = & 9 \\
\hline
 & 2x & = & 10
\end{array}
$$

$\boxed{\div 2} \rightarrow x = 5$

1 $3x + y = 19$

$\boxed{x = 5} \rightarrow 15 + y = 19$

$\boxed{- 15} \rightarrow y = 4$

Return to contents page

Example 2 $3x - 2y = 3 \qquad 2x + 2y = 12$

1. Good news! Our equations are in the same form: some x's and some y's, equal a number!

2. Let's write the second equation underneath the first...

3. Okay, so we need to pick either the x's or the y's to be our Key Letter. Well... notice how there are already the same number of y's in both equations (there 2 – don't worry about the sign!), so let's pick the y's to make life easier for ourselves!

4. Put a box around our Key Letters, and their signs:

5. The signs of our Key Letters are different (- and +) so we must Add equation 2 to equation 1

6. Our Key Letters have cancelled out, leaving us with a nice looking equation: $5x = 15$

7. Solve it:

8. Use this value in one of the original equations (I'll chose 2) to find the value of the other unknown letter:

9. And now we have our two answers: $x = 3 \quad y = 3$

But we may as well check them using equation 1

$$(1)\quad 3x - 2y = 3 \quad \boxed{\begin{matrix} x = 3 \\ y = 3 \end{matrix}} \rightarrow 9 - 6 = 3$$

$$(1)\quad 3x - 2y = 3$$
$$(2)\quad 2x + 2y = 12$$

$$\begin{array}{lrcl} & (1)\quad 3x & \boxed{-\ 2y} & = 3 \\ + & (2)\quad 2x & \boxed{+\ 2y} & = 12 \\ \hline & 5x & & = 15 \end{array}$$

$$\boxed{\div 5} \rightarrow x = 3$$

$$(2)\quad 2x + 2y = 12$$

$$\boxed{x = 3} \rightarrow 6 + 2y = 12$$

$$\boxed{-\ 6} \rightarrow 2y = 6$$

$$\boxed{\div 2} \rightarrow y = 3$$

Return to contents page

Example 3 $2x + 3y = 7 \qquad 3x + 5y = 18$

1. Good news! Our equations are in the same form: some x's and some y's, equal a number!

2. Let's write the second equation underneath the first...

3. Okay, bad news. We don't have the same number of either unknown. No problem, though! Why not make the number of x's the same by... multiplying 1 by **3** and... multiplying 2 by **2**
Note: We could have made the y's the same if we had liked!

4. Put a box around our Key Letters, and their signs:

5. The signs of our Key Letters are the same (disguised +) so we must Subtract equation 2 from equation 1.

6. Our Key Letters have cancelled out, leaving us with a nice looking equation: $-y = -15$

7. Solve it (people seem to mess these ones up...)

8. Use this value in one of the original equations (I'll chose 2) to find the value of the other unknown letter:

9. And now we have our two answers: $x = -19 \quad y = 15$

But we may as well check them using equation 1

$$\text{1} \quad 2x + 3y = 7 \quad \boxed{\begin{matrix} x = -19 \\ y = 15 \end{matrix}} \rightarrow -38 + 45 = 7$$

$$\text{1} \quad 2x + 3y = 7$$
$$\text{2} \quad 3x + 5y = 18$$

$$\text{1} \times 3 \rightarrow 6x + 9y = 21$$
$$\text{2} \times 2 \rightarrow 6x + 10y = 36$$

$$\begin{array}{rr} \text{1} & \boxed{6x} + 9y = 21 \\ - \quad \text{2} & \boxed{6x} + 10y = 36 \\ \hline & -y = -15 \end{array}$$

$$\boxed{\div -1} \rightarrow y = 15$$
$$\text{2} \quad 3x + 5y = 18$$
$$\boxed{y = -15} \rightarrow 3x + 75 = 18$$
$$\boxed{-75} \rightarrow 3x = -57$$
$$\boxed{\div 3} \rightarrow x = -19$$

Return to contents page

Example 4 $7x - 2y = -20 \qquad 3x = 6 - 4y$

1. Bad news! Look at that 2nd equation! Might just have to add 4y to both sides to sort that mess out!

2. Let's write the second equation underneath the first...

3. Okay, bad news. We don't have the same number of either unknown. No problem, though! Why not make the number of y's the same by... multiplying 1 by **2**. The signs will be different, but who cares?

4. Put a box around our Key Letters, and their signs:

5. The signs of our Key Letters are different (- and +) so we must Add equation 2 to equation 1.

6. Our Key Letters have cancelled out, leaving us with a nice looking equation: $17x = -34$

7. Solve it (be careful with negatives!)

8. Use this value in one of the original equations (I'll chose 2) to find the value of the other unknown letter:

9. And now we have our two answers: $x = -2 \quad y = 3$

But we may as well check them using equation 1

1 $7x - 2y = -20$ [x = -2, y = 3] $\rightarrow -14 - 6 = -20$

1 $7x - 2y = -20$

2 $3x + 4y = 6$

1 $\times 2 \rightarrow 14x - 4y = -40$

1 $14x \boxed{-4y} = -40$

\+ 2 $3x \boxed{+4y} = 6$

$17x = -34$

[÷ 17] $\rightarrow x = -2$

2 $3x + 4y = 6$

[x = -2] $\rightarrow -6 + 4y = 6$

[+ 6] $\rightarrow 4y = 12$

[÷ 4] $\rightarrow y = 3$

Return to contents page

Quadratics and Simultaneous Equations?

One other thing you might be asked to do is to solve a pair of simultaneous equations where one of them is a quadratic!

Here is how I do these ones...

How Mr Barton Deal With Quadratics

1. Re-arrange your linear equation so that it is y = or x =

2. Substitute the linear into the quadratic, being really careful about squares and negatives!

3. Your quadratic should now only have one unknown letter in it (hopefully!). So rearrange it into a nice form and then solve it by either factorising, or using the Quadratic Formula.

Remember: You will get TWO pairs of answers!

4. Use each of your answers to substitute back into one of the original equations to find TWO values for the other unknown letter.

5. Check each of these values are correct by subbing into the other original equation

Example 1 $y = x^2$ $y = 2x + 3$

Return to contents page

1. Good news, the linear equation 2 is already in a very nice form

2. Let's substitute 2 into our quadratic expression

Remember: this means that every time we see **y** in equation 1 we must replace it with $2x + 3$

3. Okay, so now we have our quadratic, with only one unknown letter in it (x), instead of two!

Let's re-arrange to make it equal to zero

Now, let's cross our fingers and hope it factorises... YES!

We solve these in the usual way to get: $x = -1$ and 3

4. Now it's time to substitute each of our answers into one of the original equations (I choose 2) to find our two values for y, which gives us our answers: $y = 1$ and 9

5. But let's check these by subbing into equation 1

$\boxed{x = -1 \quad y = 1}$ $y = x^2 \rightarrow 1 = (-1)^2 \rightarrow 1 = 1$

$\boxed{x = 3 \quad y = 9}$ $y = x^2 \rightarrow 9 = (-3)^2 \rightarrow 9 = 9$

1 $y = x^2$

2 $y = 2x + 3$

2 $\rightarrow$ 1 $2x + 3 = x^2$

$\boxed{-2x} \rightarrow 3 = x^2 - 2x$

$\boxed{-3} \rightarrow 0 = x^2 - 2x - 3$

$(x + 1)(x - 3) = 0$

$x = -1 \qquad x = 3$

$\boxed{x = -1} \rightarrow y = -2 + 3$

$\rightarrow y = 1$

$\boxed{x = 3} \rightarrow y = 6 + 3$

$\rightarrow y = 9$

Return to contents page

9. Inequalities

What are Inequalities?

Inequalities are just another time-saving device invented by lazy mathematicians.
They are a way of representing massive groups of numbers with just a couple of numbers and a fancy looking symbol.

Good News: So long as you can solve equations and draw graphs, you already have all the skills you need to become an expert on inequalities!

1. What those funny looking symbols mean

$<$ means "is less than"

$\leq$ means "is less than or equal to"

$>$ means "is greater than"

$\geq$ means "is greater than or equal to"

For Example:

1. $x < 5$	Means x is less than 5	So x could be 4, 0.6, -23... but NOT 5!
2. $p \geq 100$	Means p is greater than or equal to 100	So p could be 104, 10000, 201.5... AND 100!
3. $m > -2$	Means x is greater than -2	So x could be -1.9, 0, 4.3... but NOT -2!

Return to contents page

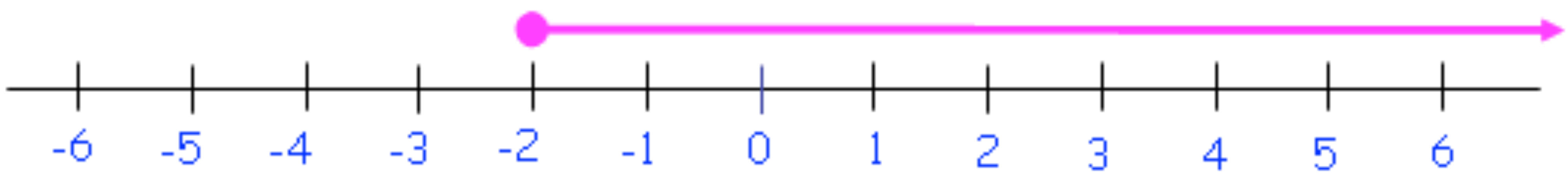
2. Representing Inequalities on a Number line

These are very common questions, and pretty easy ones too.

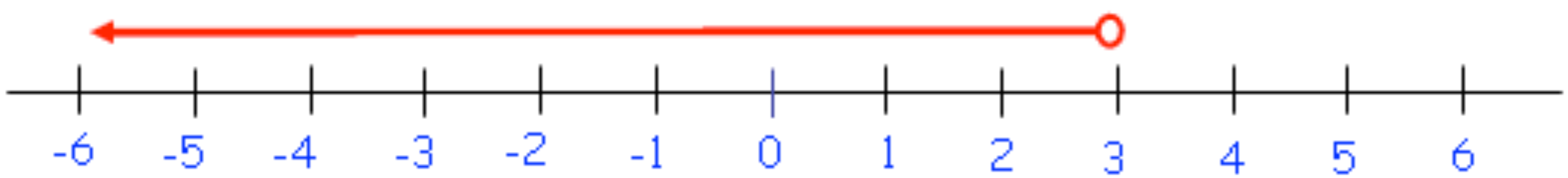
Method:

- Draw a line over all the numbers for which the inequality is true (the ones you can see, anyway)
- At the end of these lines, draw a circle, and colour it in if the inequality can equal the number, and leave it blank if it cannot.

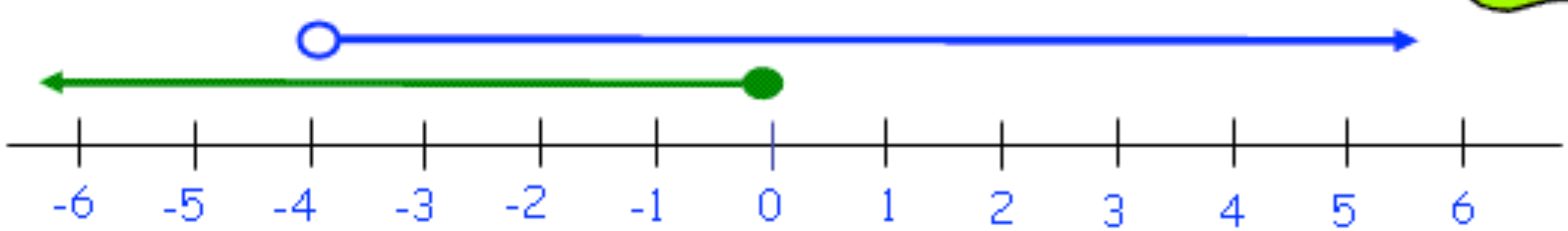
$x \geq -2$



$x < 3$



$x > -4$ and $x \leq 0$



Return to contents page

3. Solving Linear Inequalities

Good News: The rule for solving linear inequalities is exactly the same as that for solving linear equations – whatever you do to one side of the inequality, do exactly the same to the other

Just one thing: if you multiply or divide by a NEGATIVE, the inequality sign swaps around!

Why on earth does the sign swap around?

Imagine you have the inequality that says: 8 is greater than 5: $8 > 5$

Let's multiply both sides by 4... $\boxed{\times 4} \rightarrow 32 > 20$ which is still true!

Now, let's divide both sides by -2... $\boxed{\div -2} \rightarrow -16 > -10$ which is NOT true!

And the only way to make the inequality true is to switch the sign around!... $-16 < -10$

Example 1 $6x + 3 \geq 27$

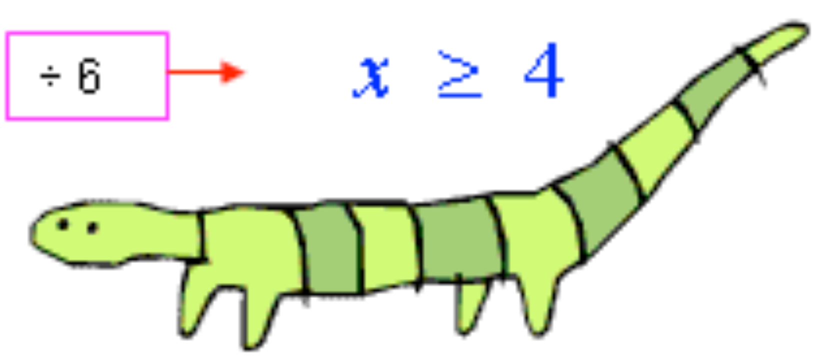
1. Okay, so just like when solving equations, we unwrap our unknown letter, by thinking about what was the last thing done to it, and doing the inverse to both sides!

2. Just need to divide both sides by 6, and we have our answer... and because 6 is positive, no need to swap any signs around!

$$6x + 3 \geq 27$$

$$\boxed{-3} \rightarrow 6x \geq 24$$

$$\boxed{\div 6} \rightarrow x \geq 4$$



Return to contents page

Example 2 $5x - 6 < 2x + 9$

1. Again, we do exactly the same as we would if this was an equation. Start by collecting all your x's on the side which starts off with the most x's!

2. Now we have a nice easy inequality to unwrap!

3. Which gives us our answer

$$5x - 6 < 2x + 9$$

$$\boxed{-2x} \rightarrow 3x - 6 < 9$$

$$\boxed{+6} \rightarrow 3x < 15$$

$$\boxed{\div 3} \rightarrow x < 5$$

Example 3 $-2(5x - 4) > 98$

1. Let's get those brackets expanded, being extremely careful with our negative numbers!

2. Now we begin to unwrap!

3. Notice here that we are dividing by a negative number, and so we must make sure we remember to switch our inequality sign around!

$$-2(5x - 4) > 98$$

$$\rightarrow -10x + 8 > 98$$

$$\boxed{-8} \rightarrow -10x > 90$$

$$\boxed{\div -10} \rightarrow x < -9$$

Return to contents page

Example 4 $-4 < 3x + 5 \leq 8$

1. This looks complicated, but all you are trying to do is unwrap the unknown letter in the middle, and whatever you do the middle, you must also do to both ends!

2. Careful unwrapping gives us our answer:

3. But what does that mean?... Well, it may become clearer when written like this:

So, x must be greater than -3 and less than or equal to 1, so x must be between -3 and 1!

$$-4 < 3x + 5 \leq 8$$

$$\boxed{-5} \rightarrow -9 < 3x \leq 3$$

$$\boxed{\div 3} \rightarrow -3 < x \leq 1$$

$$x > -3 \quad \text{and} \quad x \leq 1$$

4. Solving Linear Inequalities Graphically

The examiners love asking these ones, and my pupils hate doing them!

Basically, you are given one or more inequalities and you are asked to show the region on a graph which satisfies them all (i.e. every inequality works for every single point in your region)

Now, before we go on, I am going to assume you are an expert on drawing straight line graphs. If this is not the case, read Graphs 1. Straight Line Graphs before carrying on...

Method

1. Pretend the inequality sign is an equals sign and just draw your line

2. Look at the inequality sign and decide whether your line is dashed or solid

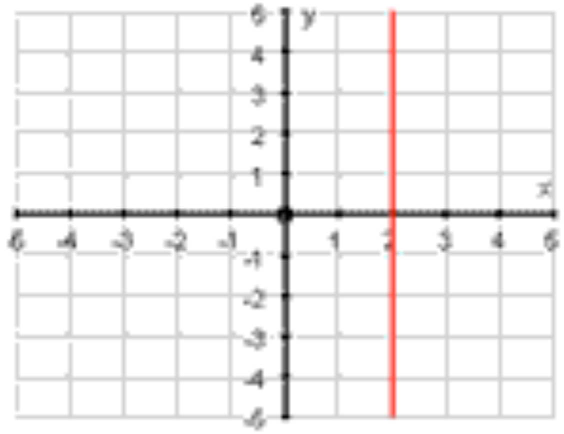
3. Pick a co-ordinate on either side of the line to help decide which region you want

Return to contents page

e.g. 1 $x \leq 2$

1. Draw the line $x = 2$

2. Notice it is a solid line as x CAN be 2

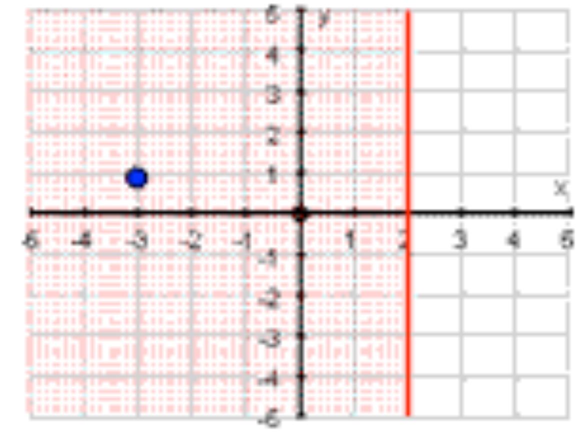


3. Choose a co-ordinate on one side of the line: e.g. (-3, 1).

$x = -3 \qquad y = 1$

$x \leq 2 \rightarrow -3 \leq 2 \quad \surd$

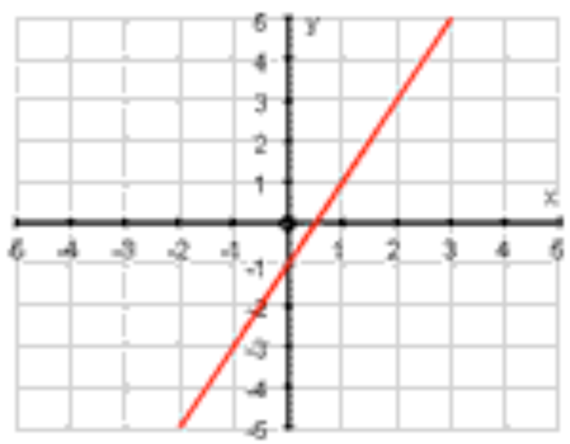
So our point is on the side of the line we want!



e.g. 2 $y > 2x - 1$

1. Draw the line $y = 2x - 1$

2. Notice it is a dashed line as y CANNOT be 2x - 1



3. Choose a co-ordinate on one side of the line: e.g. (4, 2).

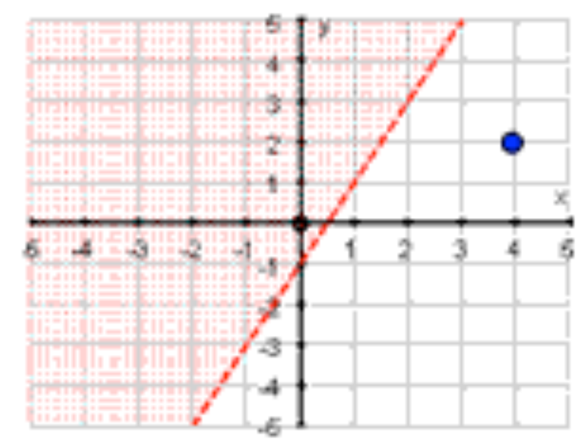
$x = 4 \qquad y = 2$

$y > 2x - 1$

$\rightarrow 4 > 8 - 1$

$\rightarrow 4 > 7 \quad \times$

So we want the other side of the line!



Return to contents page

e.g. 3 $x \geq 1$ $y > 2$ $5x+8y \leq 40$

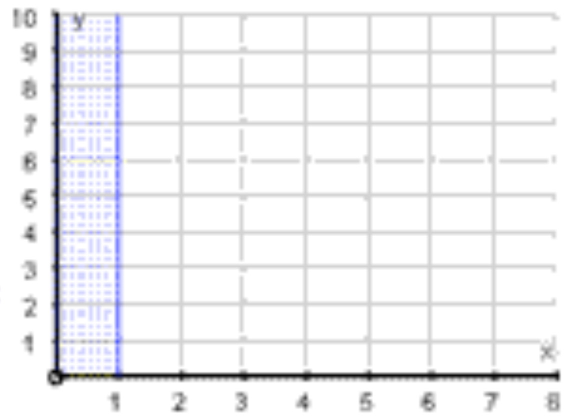
For questions like this, just deal with each inequality in turn, shading as you go!

Note: When you have got more than one inequality like this, it's normally best to shade the region you DON'T WANT, so you can leave the region you do want blank!

$x \geq 1$

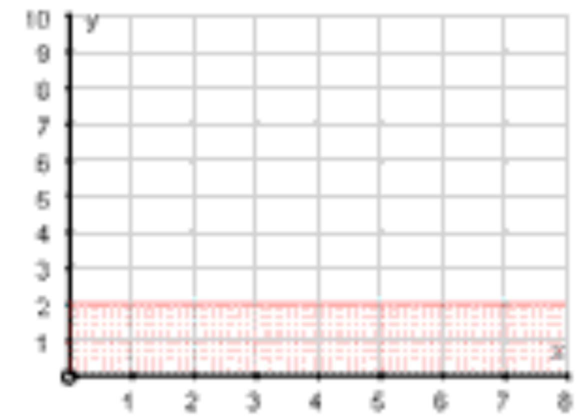
You should be able to do this one all in one.

The points where x is greater than 2 are to the right, so shade the left!



$y > 2$

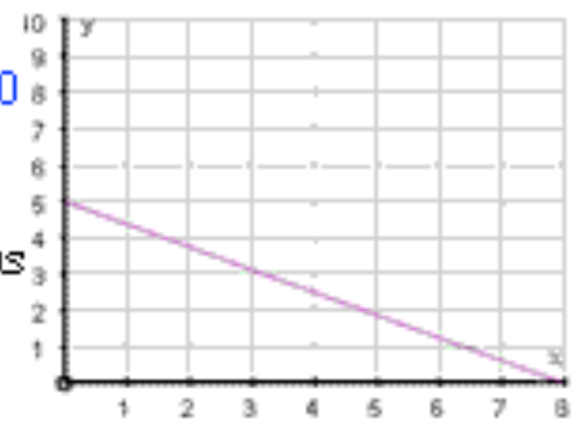
The big y values are all above the line, so let's shade the ones we don't want below the line!



$5x+8y \leq 40$

1. Draw the line 5x+8y = 40

2. Notice it is a solid line as 5x+8y CAN be equal to 40



3. Choose a co-ordinate on one side of the line: e.g. (2, 1).

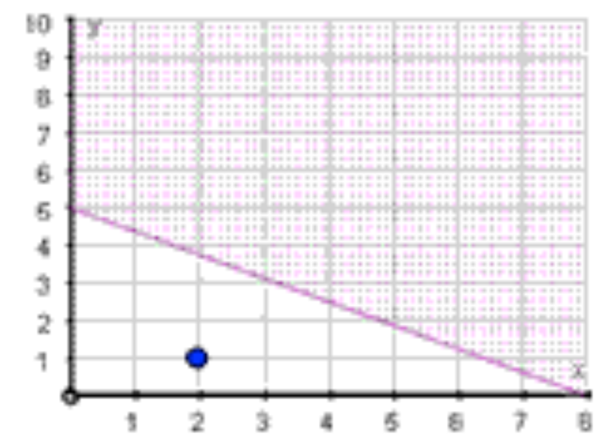
$x = 2$ $y = 1$

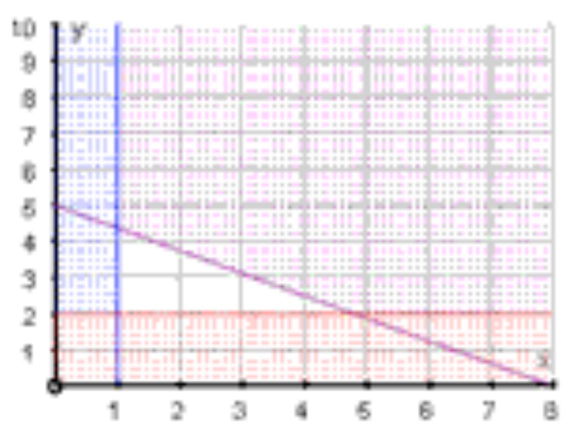
$5x+8y < 40$

$10+8 < 40$

$18 > 7$ √

So we shade the other side





Putting it all together leaves us the blank region in the middle that satisfies all the inequalities!

Return to contents page

5. Solving Quadratic Inequalities – warning, these are hard!

Now, I have a way of doing these which may be different to how you have been taught, so feel free to completely ignore my method... but I must admit I think it's pretty good!

How Mr Barton Solves Quadratic Inequalities

1. Do the same to both sides to make the quadratic inequality as simple as possible

2. Sketch the simplified quadratic inequality

3. Use the sketch to find the values which satisfy the inequality

Example $2x^2 + 3 \geq 53$

1. Okay, so let's use our algebra skills to get this quadratic inequality as simple as possible:

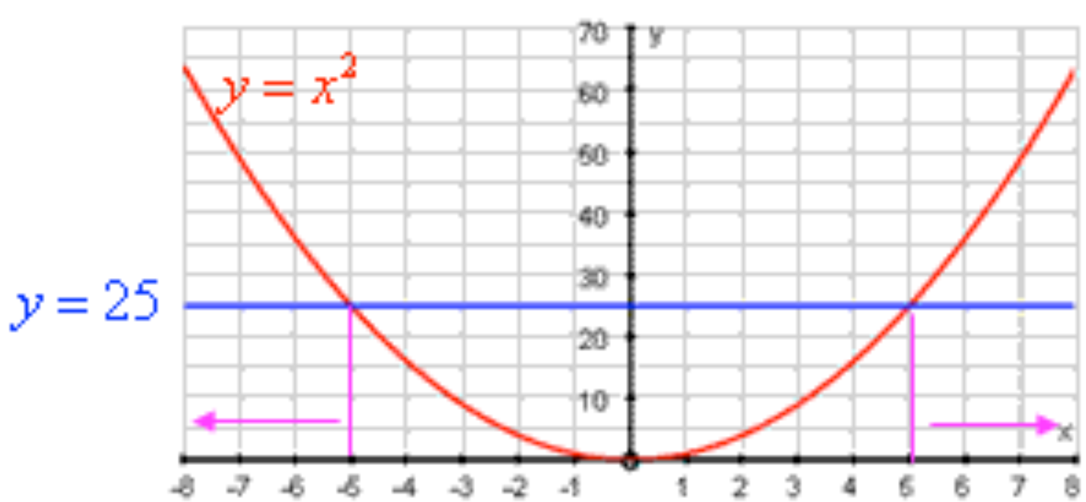
$$2x^2 + 3 \geq 53$$

$$\boxed{-3} \rightarrow 2x^2 \geq 50$$

$$\boxed{\div 2} \rightarrow x^2 \geq 25$$

2. Now, let's think about what this inequality is saying: "we want all the values of x where x^2 is greater than our equal to 25"

Let's sketch that!



Now all we need to ask ourselves is: "for what values of x is x^2 bigger than 25?"... Well, from our graph it looks like the answer is when x is either bigger than 5 or smaller than -5, which gives our answer:

$$x \geq 5 \quad \text{or} \quad x \leq -5$$

Return to contents page

10. Indices

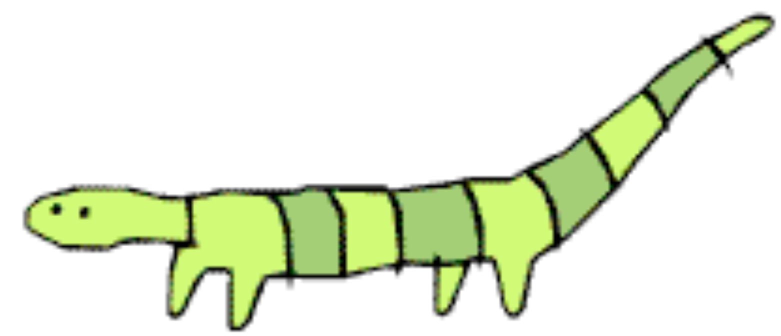
What are Indices?

Indices are just a fancy word for "power"

They are the little numbers or letters that float happily in the air next to a number or letter

A bit of indices lingo:

The base → 5^4 ← The index or power



Two things you must remember about indices...

1. Indices only apply to the number or letter they are to the right of - the base

e.g. in abc^2, the squared only applies to the c, and nothing else. If you wanted the squared to apply to each term, it would need to be written as $(abc)^2$.

2. Indices definitely do not mean multiply

e.g. 6^3 definitely does not mean 6×3, it means $6 \times 6 \times 6$!

Return to contents page

Rule 1 – The Multiplication Rule

Using fancy notation: $a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$

What it actually means: Whenever you are multiplying two terms with the same base, you can just add the powers!

Numbers: If there are numbers IN FRONT of your bases, then you must multiply those numbers together as normal

Examples

$x^3 \times x^4 = x^7$ √ Classic wrong answer: x^{12} ×

$2^5 \times 2^3 = 2^8$ √ Classic wrong answer: 4^8 ×

$3p^4 \times 2p^5 = 6p^9$ √ Classic wrong answer: $6p^{20}$ ×

$2ab^2c \times 5ab^2c^3 = 10a^2b^4c^4$ √

Remember: if a base does not appear to have a power, the power is a disguised 1!

e.g. $2ab^2c = 2a^1b^2c^1$

Return to contents page

Rule 2 – The Division Rule

Using fancy notation: $a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$ Or $\dfrac{a^m}{a^n} = a^{m-n}$

What it actually means: Whenever you are dividing two terms with the same base, you can just subtract the powers!

Numbers: If there are numbers IN FRONT of your bases, then you must divide those numbers as normal

Examples

$x^{12} \div x^4 = x^8$ √ Classic wrong answer: x^3 ×

$\dfrac{5^7}{5^3} = 5^4$ √ Classic wrong answer: 1^4 ×

$\dfrac{20k^{10}}{5k^5} = 4k^5$ √ Classic wrong answer: $4k^2$ ×

Return to contents page

Rule 3 – The Power of a Power Rule

Using fancy notation: $(a^m)^n = a^{m \times n}$

What it actually means: Whenever you have a base and it's power raised to another power, you simply multiply the powers together but keep the base the same!

Numbers: If there is a number IN FRONT of your base, then you must raise that number to the power

Examples

$(x^5)^3 = x^{15}$ √ Classic wrong answer: x^8 ×

$(2^3)^2 = 2^6$ √ Classic wrong answer: 4^6 ×

$(3a^4)^3 = 27a^{12}$ √ Classic wrong answer: $9a^{12}$ ×

$(2a^3b^2c)^5 = 32a^{15}b^{10}c^5$ √

Return to contents page

Examples Using all Three Rules

Rule 1: $a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$

Rule 2: $\dfrac{a^m}{a^n} = a^{m-n}$

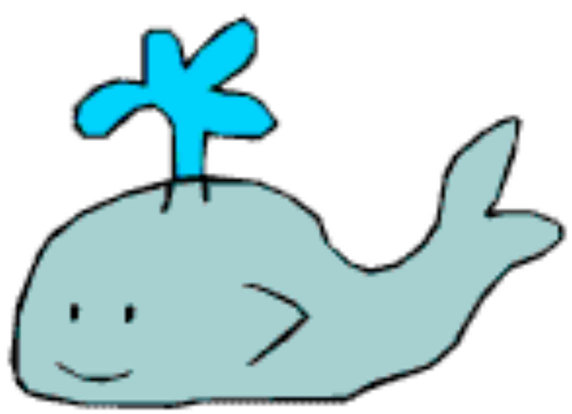
Rule 3: $(a^m)^n = a^{m \times n}$

1. $\dfrac{x^3 \times (x^2)^4}{x^5} \xrightarrow{\text{Rule 3}} \dfrac{x^3 \times x^8}{x^5} \xrightarrow{\text{Rule 1}} \dfrac{x^{11}}{x^5} \xrightarrow{\text{Rule 2}} x^6$

2. $\dfrac{(5^3)^2 \times (5^2)^{10}}{(5^5)^2 \times 5} \xrightarrow{\text{Rule 3}} \dfrac{5^6 \times 5^{20}}{5^{10} \times 5^1} \xrightarrow{\text{Rule 1}} \dfrac{5^{26}}{5^{11}} \xrightarrow{\text{Rule 2}} x^{15}$

3. $\dfrac{(5v^4)^2 \times (2v^5)^4}{50v} \xrightarrow{\text{Rule 3}} \dfrac{25v^8 \times 16v^{20}}{50v} \xrightarrow{\text{Rule 1}} \dfrac{400v^{28}}{50v^1}$

$\xrightarrow{\text{Rule 2}} 8v^{27}$



Return to contents page

Rule 4 – The Zero Index

Using fancy notation: $a^0 = 1$

What it actually means: Anything to the power of zero is 1!

Examples $x^0 = 1$ $17^0 = 1$ $5x^0 = 5 \times 1 = 5$

Rule 5 – Negative Indices

Using fancy notation: $a^{-m} = \dfrac{1}{a^m}$

What it actually means: A negative sign in front of a power is the same as writing "one divided by the base and power". The posh name for this is the RECIPROCAL

Watch out! Only the power and base are flipped over, nothing else!

Examples $x^{-2} = \dfrac{1}{x^2}$ $5^{-4} = \dfrac{1}{5^4}$ $5a^{-3} = \dfrac{5}{a^3}$

$(\frac{1}{3})^{-1} = (\frac{3}{1})^1 = 3$ $(\frac{1}{4})^{-2} = (\frac{4}{1})^2 = 16$ $(\frac{2}{3})^{-3} = (\frac{3}{2})^3 = \frac{27}{8}$

Return to contents page

Rule 6 – Fractional Indices

Using fancy notation: $a^{\frac{1}{n}} = \sqrt[n]{a}$

What it actually means: When a power is a fraction it means you take the root of the base... and which root you take depends on the number on the bottom of the fraction!

The main ones:

$a^{\frac{1}{2}} = \sqrt{a}$ The power of a half means take the square-root!

$a^{\frac{1}{3}} = \sqrt[3]{a}$ The power of a third means take the cube-root!

Examples

$64^{\frac{1}{2}} = \sqrt{64} = 8$

$27^{\frac{1}{3}} = \sqrt[3]{27} = 3$ Because $3^3 = 27$

$32^{\frac{1}{5}} = \sqrt[5]{32} = 2$ Because $2^5 = 32$

For ones like the last two it is worth learning your powers of 2 and 3:

$2^2 = 4$ $3^2 = 9$

$2^3 = 8$ $3^3 = 27$

$2^4 = 16$ $3^4 = 81$

$2^5 = 32$

$2^6 = 64$

Return to contents page

Flip It, Root It, Power It!

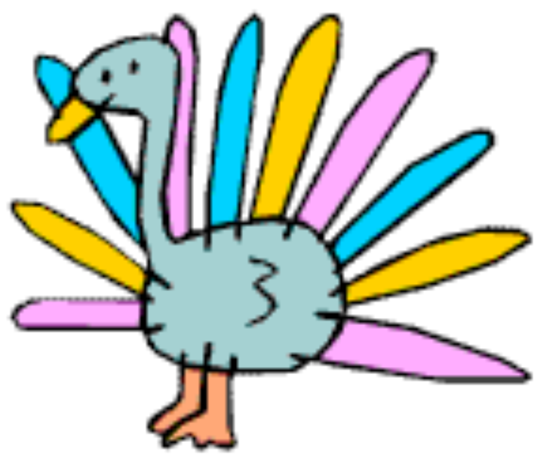
Sometimes you get asked some indices questions that look an absolute nightmare, but if you just deal with each aspect in turn, then you will be fine:

1. Flip It - If there is a negative sign in front of your power, flip the base over and we're positive!
2. Root It - If your power is a fraction, then deal with the bottom of it by rooting your base
3. Power It - When all that is sorted, just raise your base to the remaining power and you're done!

Examples

1. $8^{-\frac{2}{3}} \xrightarrow{\text{Flip it}} \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} \xrightarrow{\text{Root It}} \left(\frac{\sqrt[3]{1}}{\sqrt[3]{8}}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2$

$\xrightarrow{\text{Power It}} \frac{1^2}{2^2} = \frac{1}{4}$



2. $\left(\frac{1}{64}\right)^{-\frac{5}{6}} \xrightarrow{\text{Flip it}} 64^{\frac{5}{6}} \xrightarrow{\text{Root It}} (\sqrt[6]{64})^5 = 2^5$

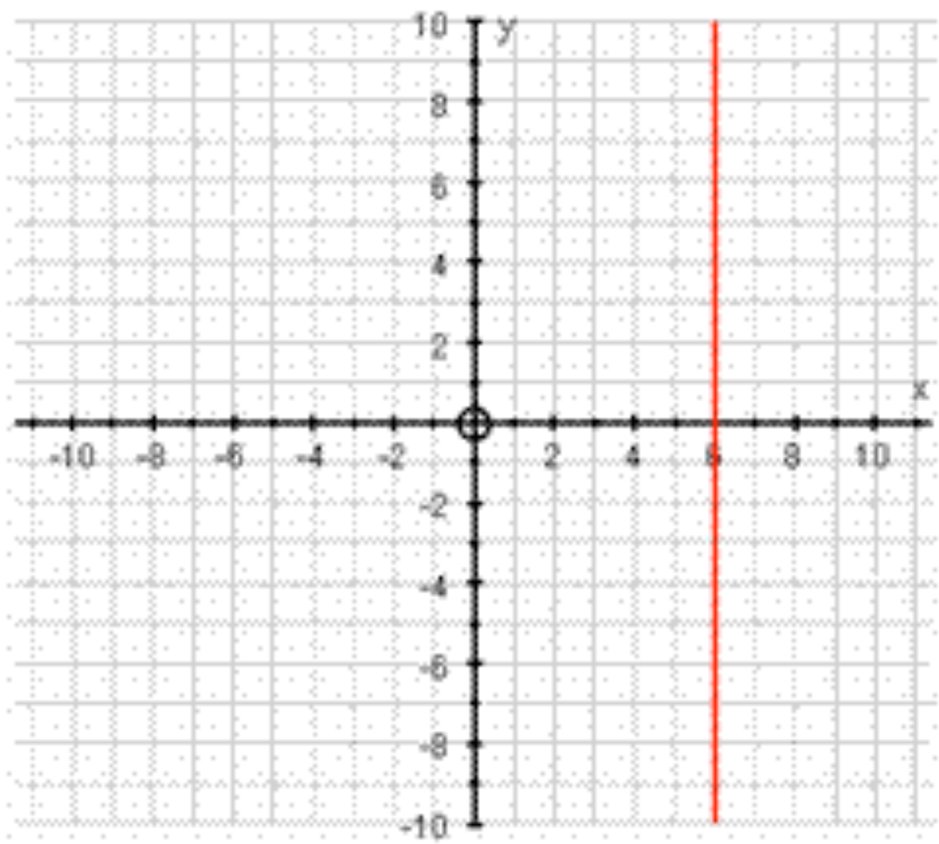
$\xrightarrow{\text{Power It}} 32$

Return to contents page

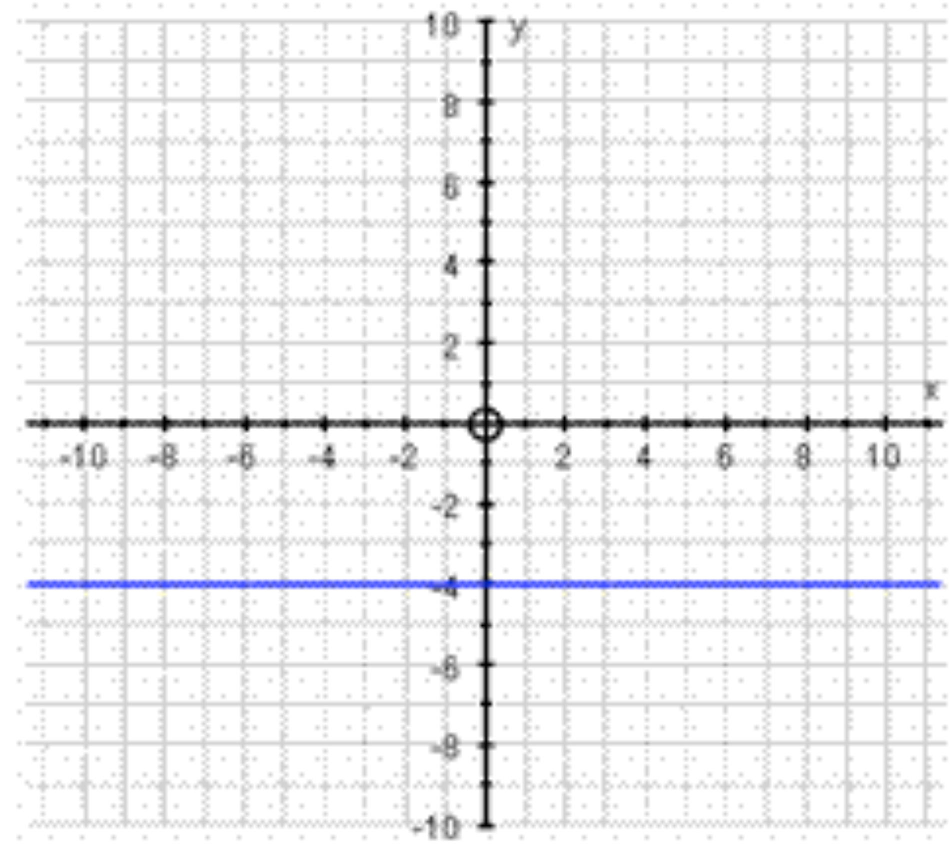
1. Straight Line Graphs

1. The ones you should know, but which everyone mixes up

You need to learn how to recognise and draw horizontal and vertical lines.
I have put two examples below... have a look at them and get them fixed into your brain!



Every single point on this line has an x co-ordinate of 6, so the equation of the line is: **x = 6**



Every single point on this line has a y co-ordinate of -4, so the equation of the line is: **y = -4**

Note: The equation of the x axis is **y = 0**... and the equation of the y axis is **x = 0**!

Return to contents page

2. What does the Equation of a Straight Line actually mean?

The equation of a straight line is just a way of writing the relationship between the x co-ordinates and the y co-ordinates that lie on that line.

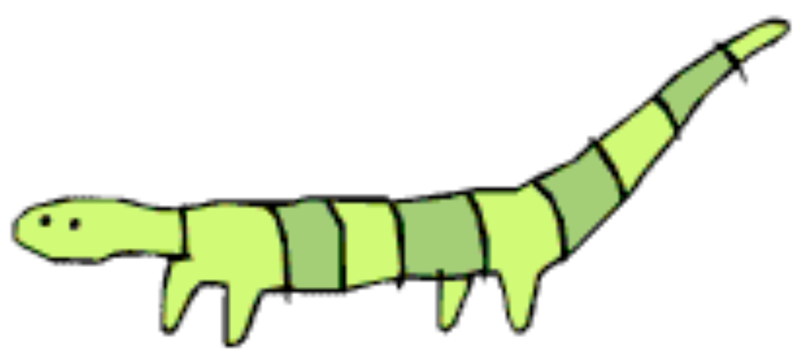
Example: **$y = 2x - 1$**

This says that the relationship between all the x co-ordinates and all the y co-ordinates is:
"get your x co-ordinate, multiply it by 2, subtract 1, and you get your y co-ordinate"

So...If a pair of co-ordinates has this relationship... such as (5, 9)... then it's on the line

If it doesn't... such as (3, 2)... then it does not lie on the line

What you end up with is just a straight line that goes through all the co-ordinates which share that relationship



Return to contents page

3. Drawing Straight Line Graphs from their Equation

As well as the horizontal and vertical lines, there are 2 other types of straight line graph equation, but they both follow the same general method:

1. Choose a sensible value of x... one that is small enough to fit on the paper, and easy enough for you to work out

2. Carefully substitute it into the equation to get your y value

3. Do this 4 times so you have four points

4. Join them up with a straight line

Crucial: If one of your points does not lie on the straight line, then I'm afraid you have made a mistake... but at least you know which one is wrong so it should be easy to fix!

Number 1 Classic Mistake People Make:

Messing up their negative numbers... you must be very careful when substituting negative x's

One Final Top Tip

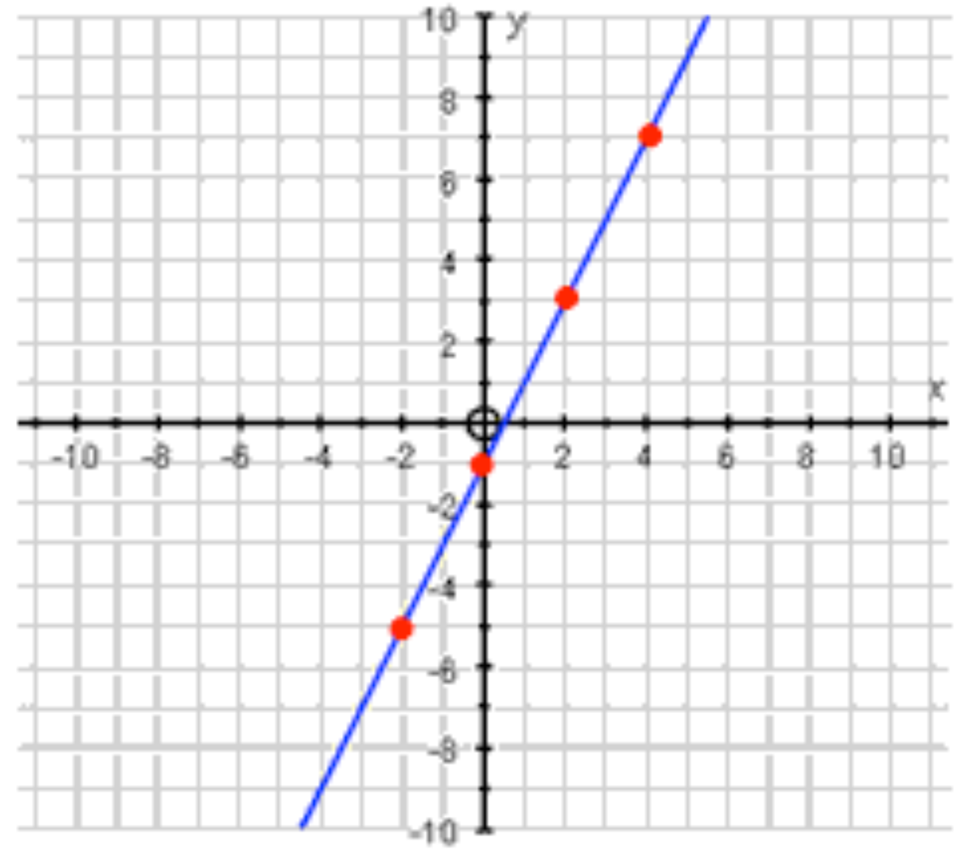
Pick $x = 0$ as one of your points, as it is often nice and easy to work out the y value!

Return to contents page

[Type 1: y =](#)

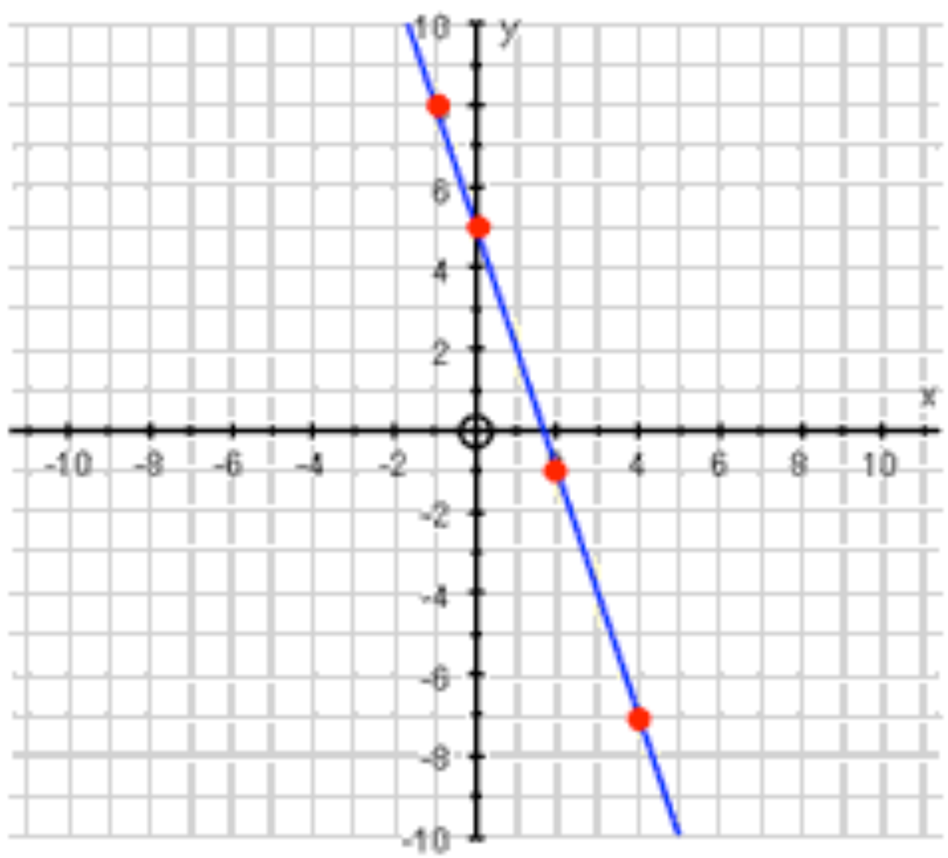
$$y = 2x - 1$$

x	0	2	4	-2
y	-1	3	7	-5



$$y = -3x + 5$$

x	0	2	4	-1
y	5	-1	-7	8



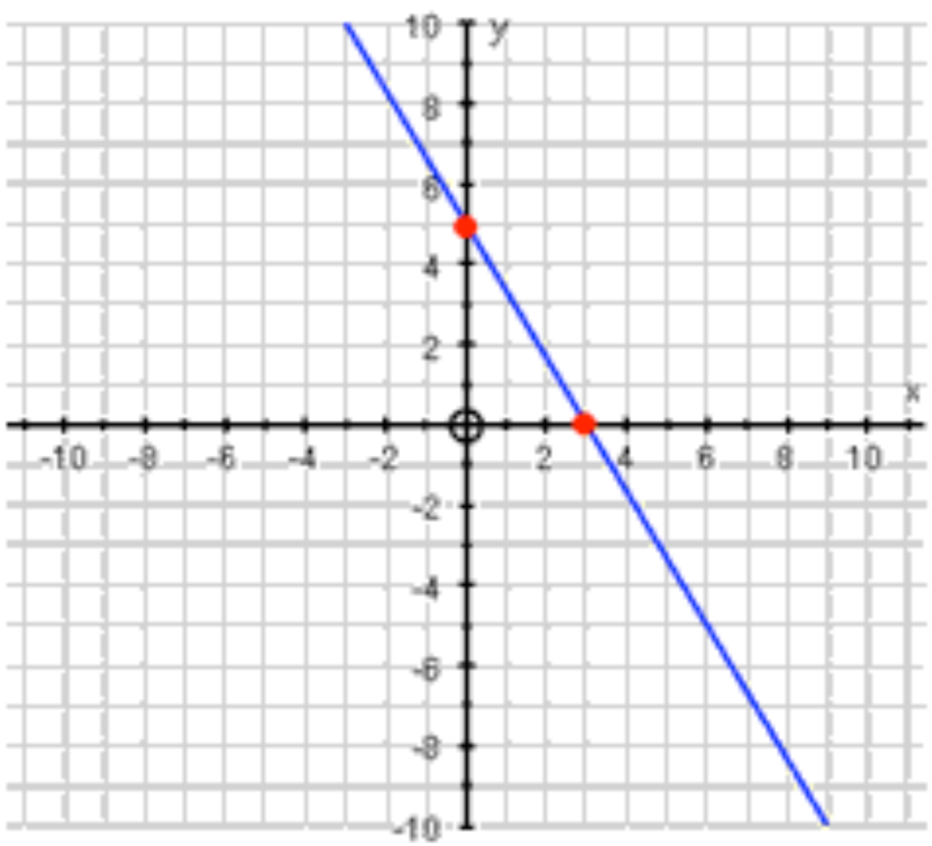
[Return to contents page](#)

Type 2: x + y = number

The technique for these is just the same – you still want to find points that lie on the line – but unless you can spot a good pair that works, try substituting **x = 0** to get a y co-ordinate, and then **y = 0** to get an x co-ordinate!

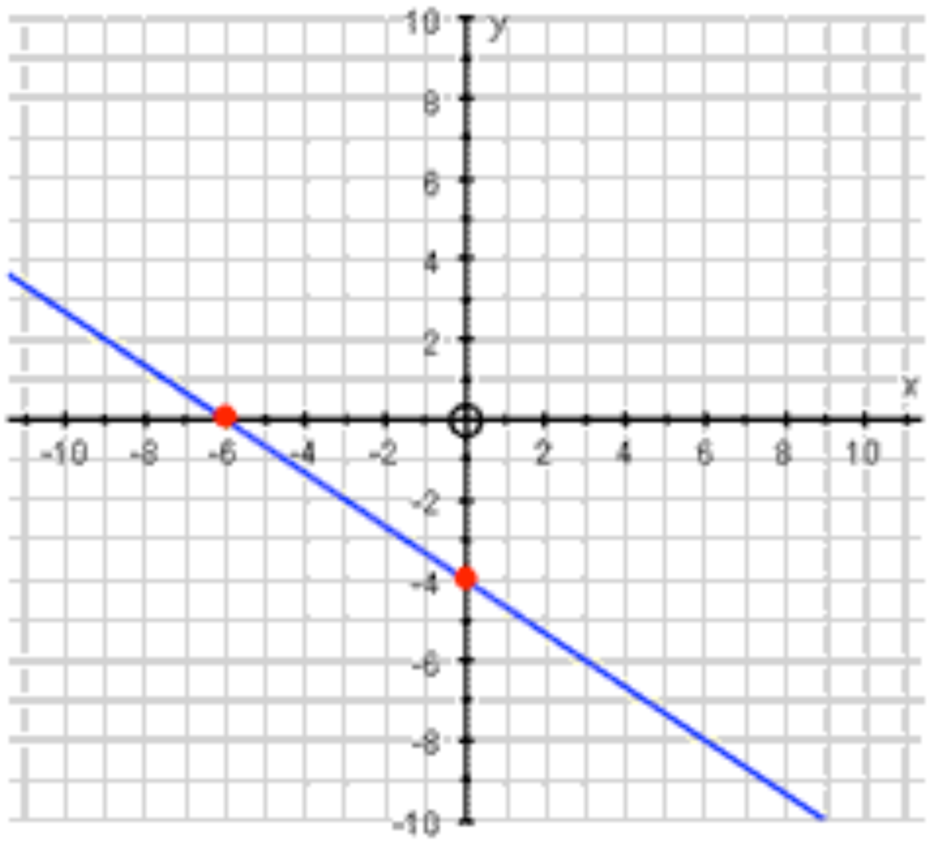
$$5x + 3y = 15$$

x	0	3
y	5	0



$$4x + 6y = -24$$

x	0	-6
y	-4	0



Return to contents page

4. What can we learn from the Equation of a Line: $y = mx + c$

The more Type 1 lines you draw, the more you should start noticing the link between the equation of the line, and what the line actually looks like

These are the Big Facts that you need to know!

$$y = mx + c$$

m

- This number tells you the gradient/steepness of the line
- The bigger the number, the steeper the line
- If the number is positive, the line slopes upwards
- If it is negative, the line slopes downwards
- Parallel lines have the same gradient

+ c

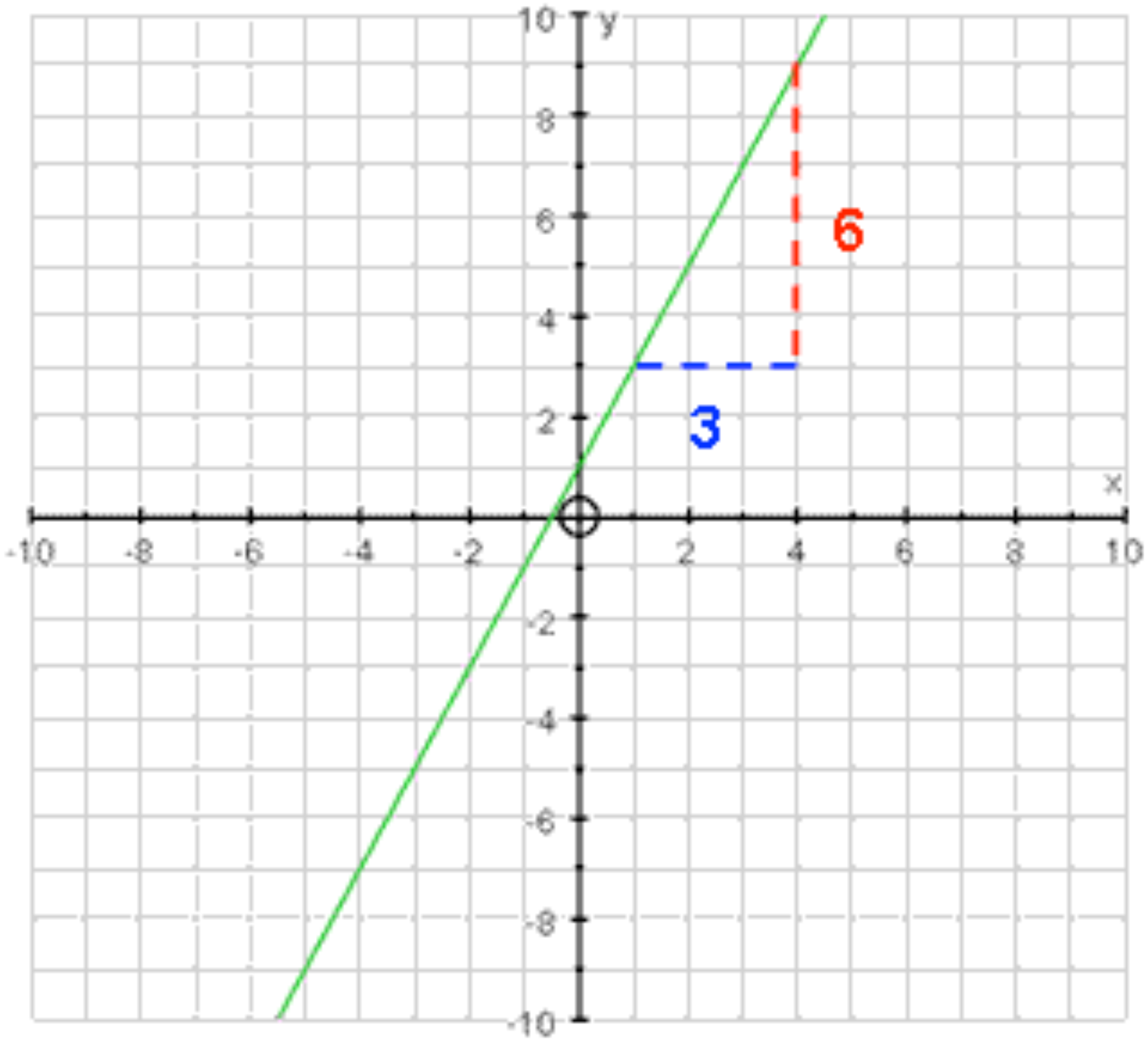
- This number tells you where the line crosses the y axis
- Its posh name is the y intercept

Classic Mistake: If the equation is NOT in the form: $y = mx + c$, you must first re-arrange it before you start saying what the gradient and intercept are!

Return to contents page

5. Working Out the Equation of a Line

Using our knowledge of $y = mx + c$, we can actually work backwards and figure out the equation of a straight line just by looking at it!



First we must work out the gradient of the line, and we do this by drawing a right-angled triangle anywhere on the line and using this lovely formula:

$$\text{Gradient} = \frac{\text{Change in } y}{\text{Change in } x}$$

$$\text{Gradient} = \frac{6}{3} = 2$$

Now all we need is our y-intercept, which is just the place the line crosses the y axis... which is (0, 1)!

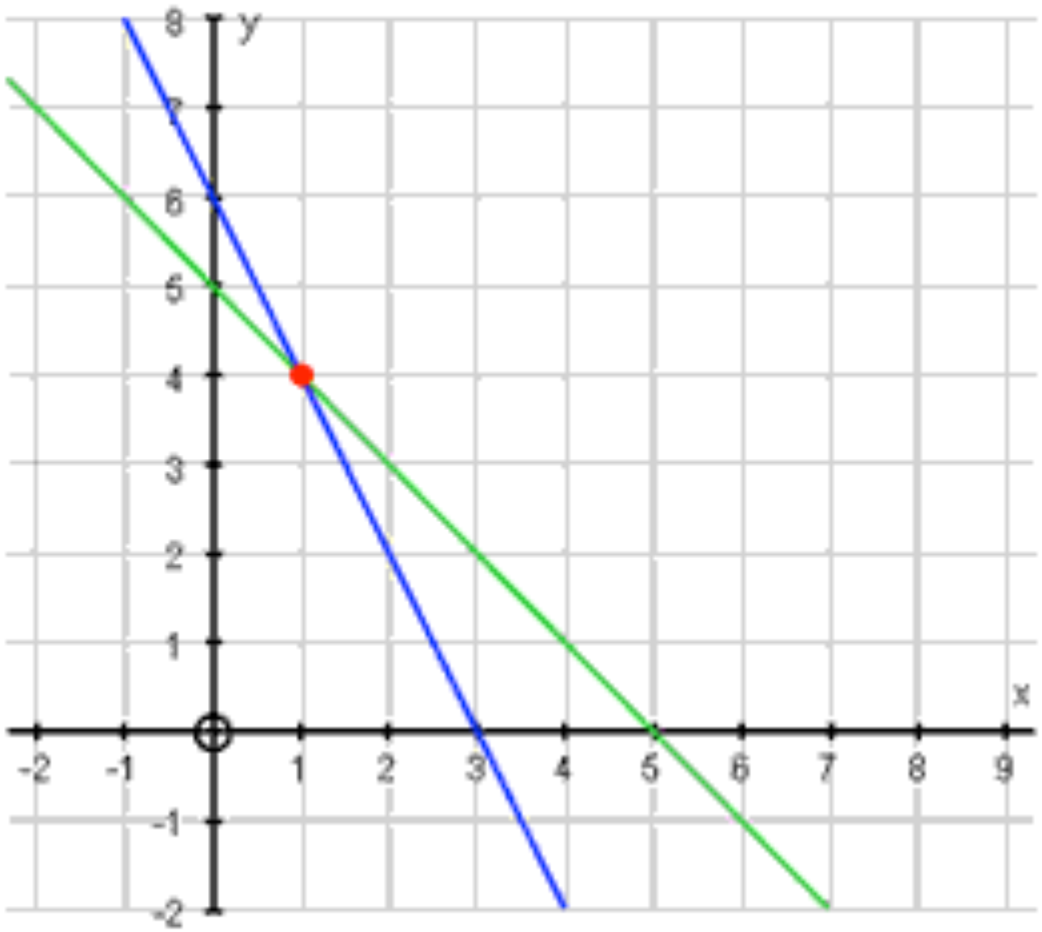
So, our equation must be... $y = 2x + 1$

Return to contents page

6. Using Straight Line Graphs to Solve Simultaneous Equations

As I mentioned in Algebra 8, it is possible to use straight line graphs to solve simultaneous equations

All you need to do it to carefully plot both lines, and the point where they cross is your answer... but remember you want $x =$ and $y =$



Example: Solve the following pair of simultaneous equations graphically:

$x + y = 5$ and $2x + y = 6$

$$x + y = 5$$

x	0	5
y	5	0

$$2x + y = 6$$

x	0	3
y	6	0

So, our solution must be... $x = 1$ and $y = 4$

Return to contents page

2. Quadratics and Cubics

1. What does the Equation of a Curve actually mean?

The equation of a curve, whether it be a quadratic, a cubic, or anything else, is just a way of expressing the relationship between the x co-ordinates and the y co-ordinates that lie on that curve.

Example: $y = x^2 + 3x - 9$

This says that the relationship between all the x co-ordinates and all the y co-ordinates is: "get your x co-ordinate, square it, add on three lots of your x co-ordinate, subtract 9, and you get your y co-ordinate"

So...If a pair of co-ordinates has this relationship... such as (2, 1)... then it's on the curve

If it doesn't... such as (5, 4)... then it does not lie on the curve

What you end up with is just a curve that goes through all the co-ordinates which share that relationship

Return to contents page

2. Drawing Curves from their Equation

The method is identical to how we drew straight lines

1. Choose a sensible value of x... one that is small enough to fit on the paper, and easy enough for you to work out

2. Carefully substitute it into the equation to get your y value

3. Do this enough times to see the shape of the curve

4. Join them up with a smooth curve (don't have any sharp, pointy bits)

Crucial: You are more likely to get the shape of the curve right if you have a good knowledge of what shapes different equations make! Have a quick read though 3. Shapes of Graphs before you carry on!

Number 1 Classic Mistake People Make:

Messing up their negative numbers... you must be very careful when substituting negative x's, whether you are doing this on a calculator or in your head (see the next 2 sections)

One Final Top Tip

Pick $x = 0$ as one of your points, as it is often nice and easy to work out the y value!

Return to contents page

3. Substituting Numbers in your Head

If you are asked to draw a curve on a non-calculator paper, then you will need to be very careful

Things to remember

1. What order you must do operations – remember BODMAS??

2. All you rules of negative numbers!

Example

If I was trying to substitute $x = -2$ into $y = x^2 - 4x + 2$, then this is what I would be saying to myself in my head:

- Okay, let's deal with the squared term first…
- $(-2)^2$ is equal to… 4, because when you square a negative you get a positive…
- Next up is 4x… which is 4 multiplied by x…
- Which is $4 \times (-2)$…
- Which is equal to -8
- So, I have… $4 - -8 + 2$
- Well, those two minuses are touching, so they become a plus
- So I have… $4 + 8 + 2$…
- Which equals 10
- So, the point I need to plot has the co-ordinates **(-2, 10)**

Return to contents page

4. Substituting Numbers using a Calculator

Whilst having a calculator makes doing tricky sums much easier, it also means you are likely to get much more difficult numbers to work with, and if you are not careful, calculators can do some daft things!

Things to remember

1. Always put your negative numbers in brackets
2. Always do each calculation twice to make sure you didn't press a wrong button!

Example

If I was trying to substitute $x = -4$ into $y = x^3 + 2x^2 - 6x + 2$, then this is the order I would press the buttons:

[( ] [-] [4] [ )] [x^3]   [+]   [2] [X] [( ] [-] [4] [ )] [x^2]

x^3 $2x^2$

[-]   [6] [X] [( ] [-] [4] [ )]   [+]   [2]

$6x$ 2

And if you do all that, you should get a y value of... **-6**

Return to contents page

5. Using Curves to Solve Equations

Seeing as you have taken all that time drawing a beautiful curve, you may as well use it to solve an equation

Method

1. If it isn't already, re-arrange the equation so all the letters are on the left, and there is either a number or a zero on the right hand side
2. Draw the graph of the left hand side of the equation
3. On your graph, draw a horizontal line through whatever number was on the right hand side of your equation
4. Mark on the points where this horizontal line crosses your curve
5. The x co-ordinates of these points are the solutions to the equation

Note: If there is a zero on the right hand side of the equation, you are just looking for the points where the curve crosses the x axis!

6. Putting it all Together

What follows now are three examples of drawing graphs and then using them to solve equations

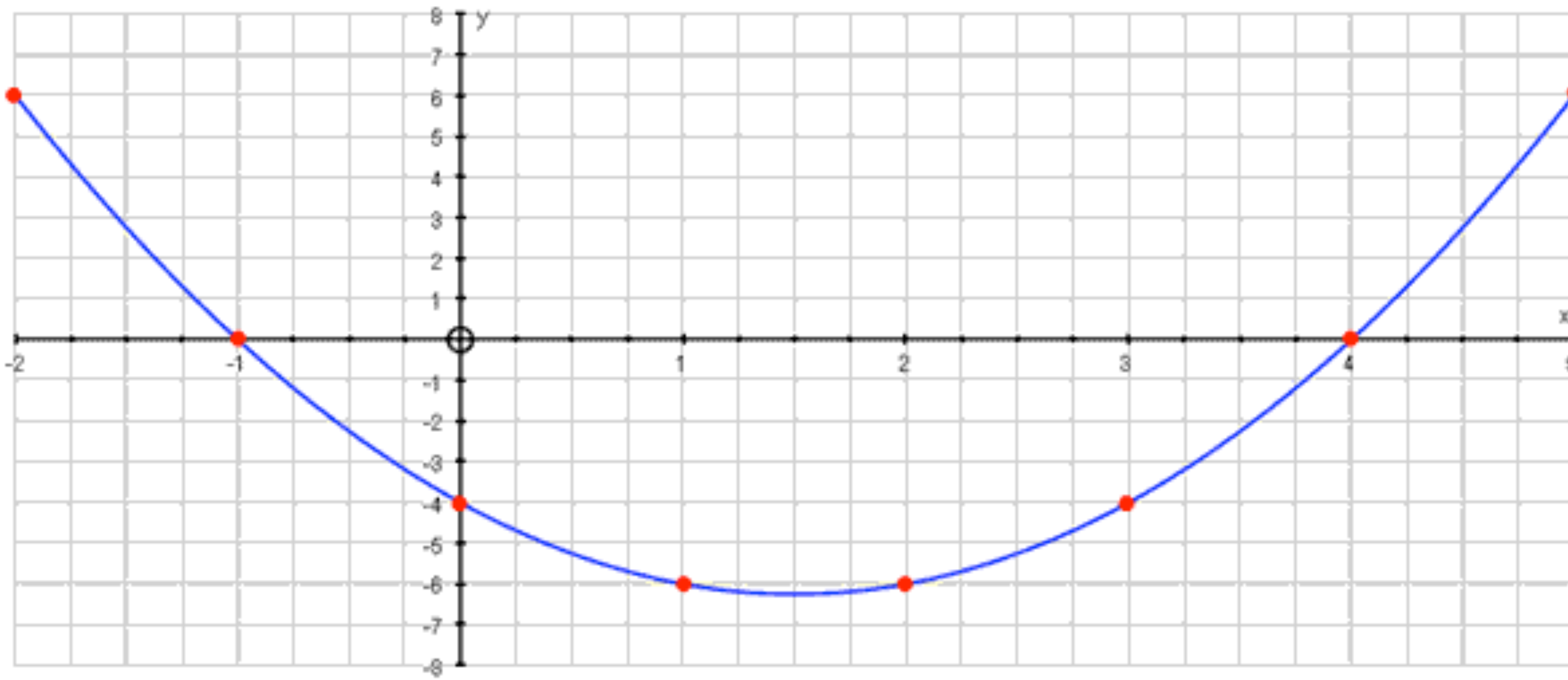
I suggest you make sure you can get each of the numbers in the table yourself... both in your head and on a calculator!

Return to contents page

Example 1

$$y = x^2 - 3x - 4$$

x	-2	-1	0	1	2	3	4	5
y	6	0	-4	-6	-6	-4	0	6



Use the graph to solve: $x^2 - 3x - 4 = 0$

We are looking for where the curve crosses the x axis, which gives us solutions of:

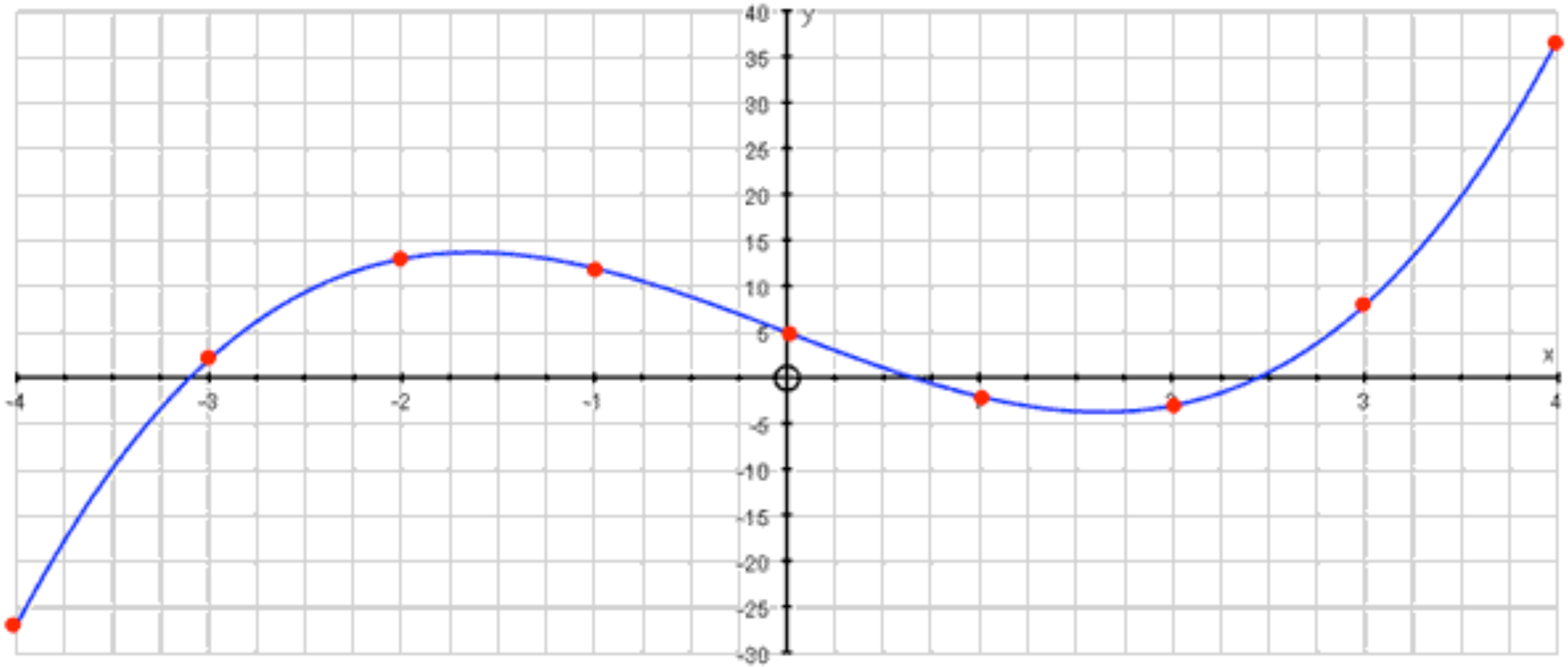
$x = -1$ and $x = 4$

Return to contents page

Example 2

$$y = x^3 - 8x + 5$$

x	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3	4
y	-27	2	13	12	5	-2	-3	8	37



Use the graph to solve: $x^3 - 8x + 5 = 0$

Again, we are looking for where the curve crosses the x axis, which gives us solutions of:

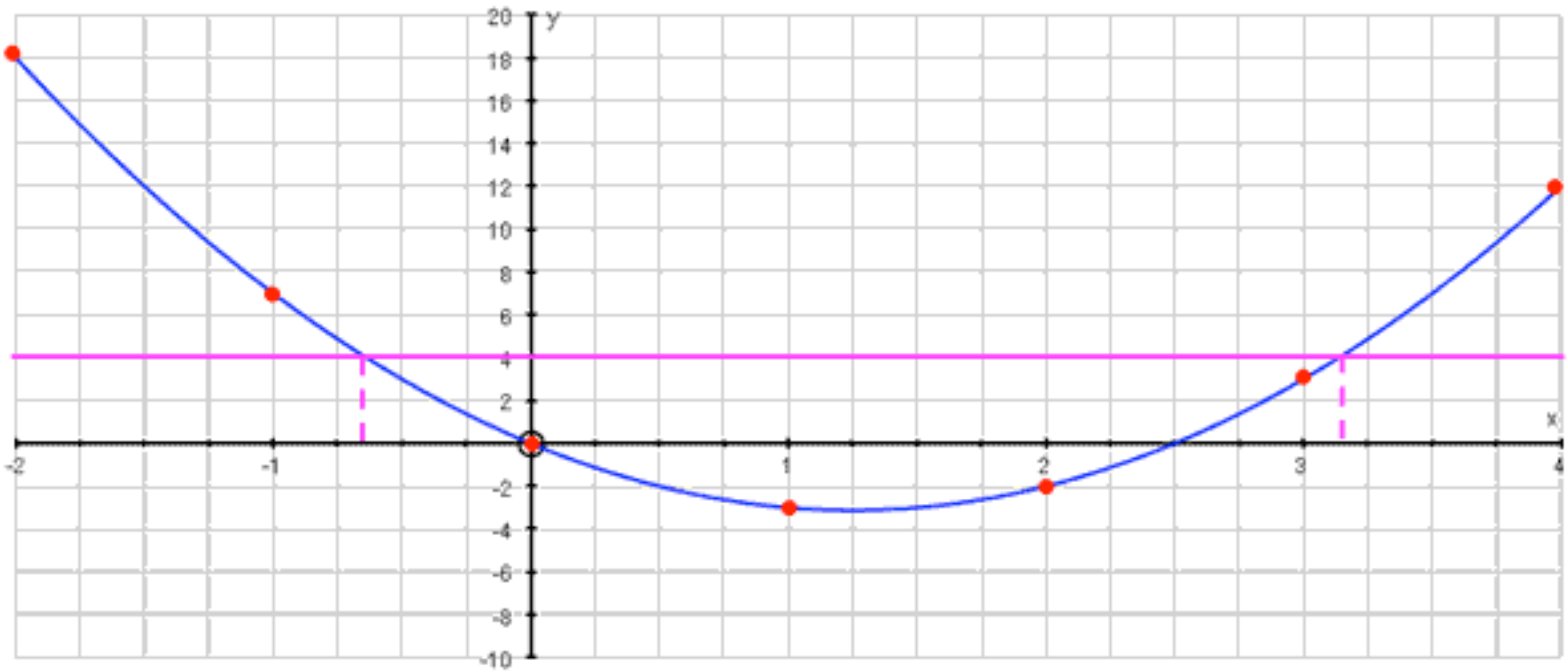
x = -3.1 x = 0.7 and x = 2.5 ... these are only rough answers, but that doesn't matter!

Return to contents page

Example 3

$y = 2x^2 - 5x$

x	-2	-1	0	1	2	3	4
y	18	7	0	-3	-2	3	12



Use the graph to solve: $2x^2 - 5x = 4$

We must draw in the line y = 4 and read off the x co-ordinates of where the line hits the curve

x = -0.7 and x = 3.2

Return to contents page

3. Shapes of Graphs

The Importance of knowing the Shapes of Graphs...

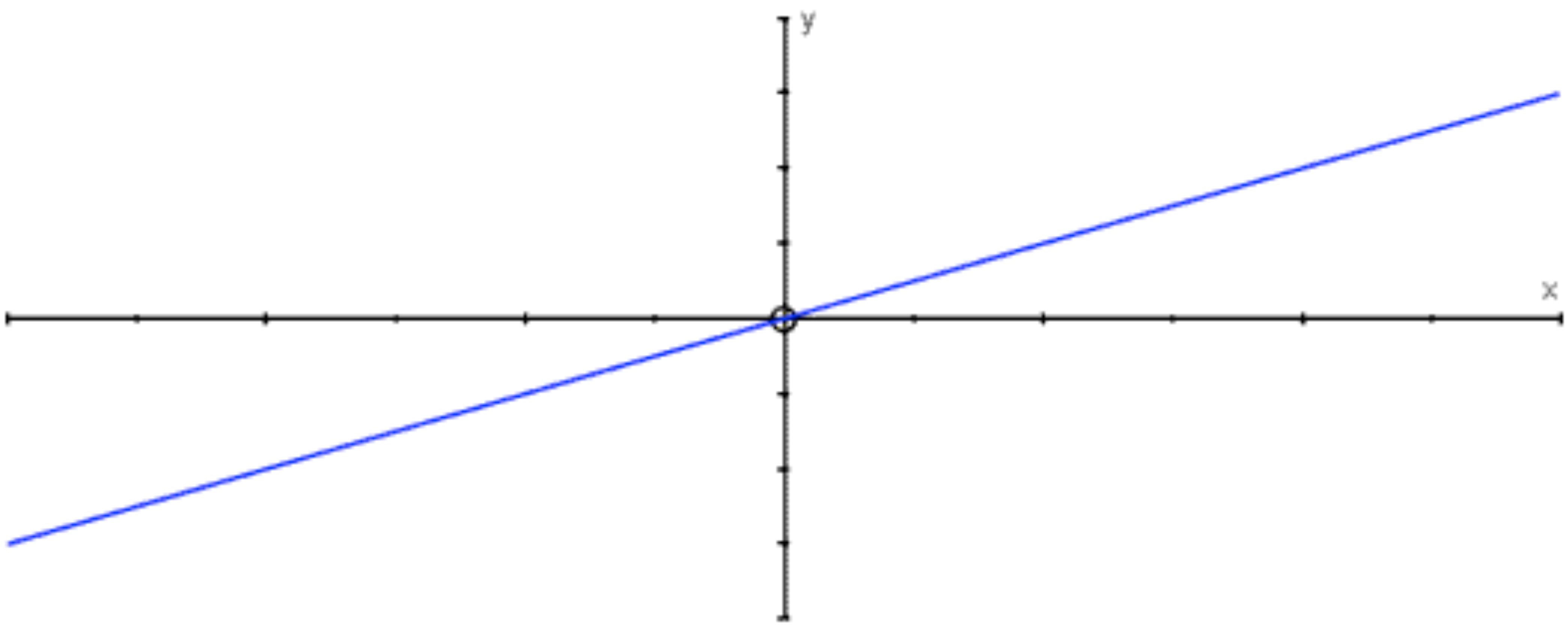
If you can look at the equation of a graph and already have a pretty good idea of what shape it will be, you are more likely to spot any silly errors when plotting it

NOTE: What follows are general shapes of graphs – learn to spot the key features of each!

1. Positive x

Equation: Highest power of x is **1**, and the x term is positive

Examples: $y = 2x + 3$ $y = x - 8$ $y = 5x$ $y = 9x - 6$

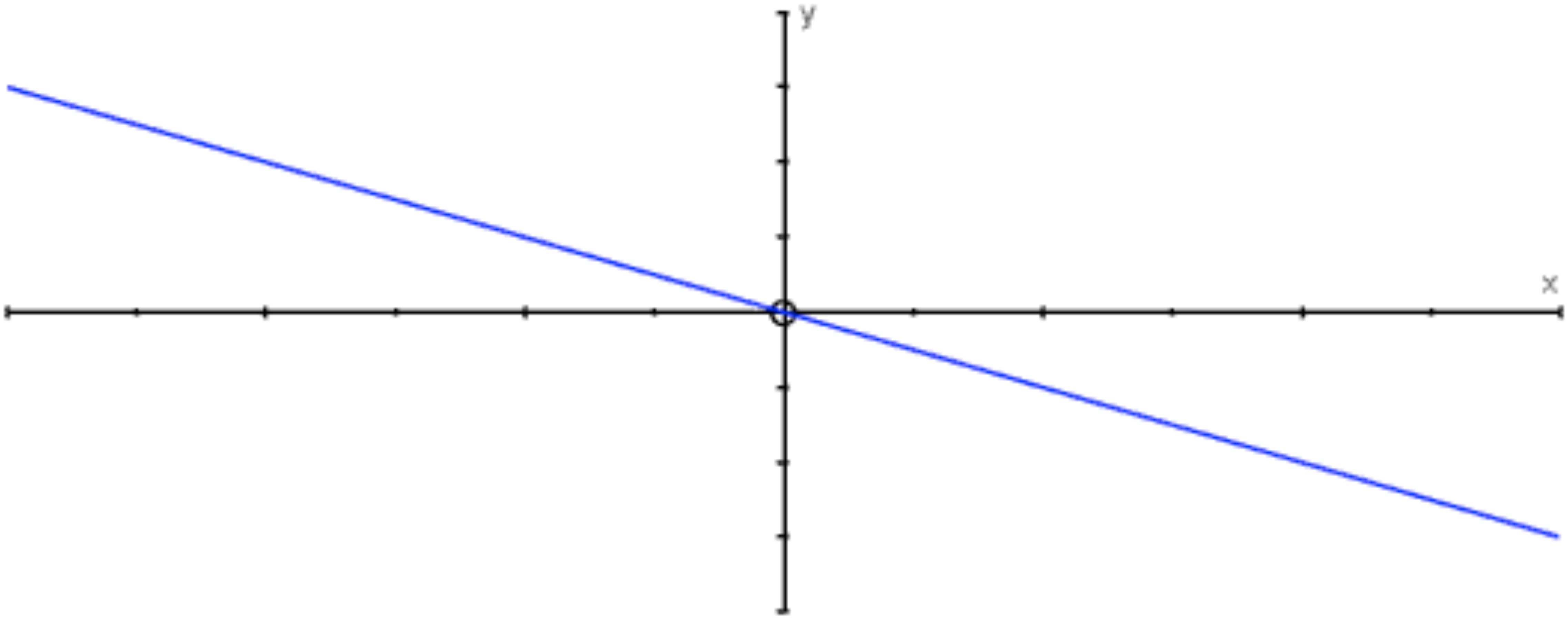


Return to contents page

2. Negative x

Equation: Highest power of x is **1**, and the x term is negative

Examples: $y = -5x + 3$ $y = -x - 3$ $y = -7x$ $y = 5 - 6x$

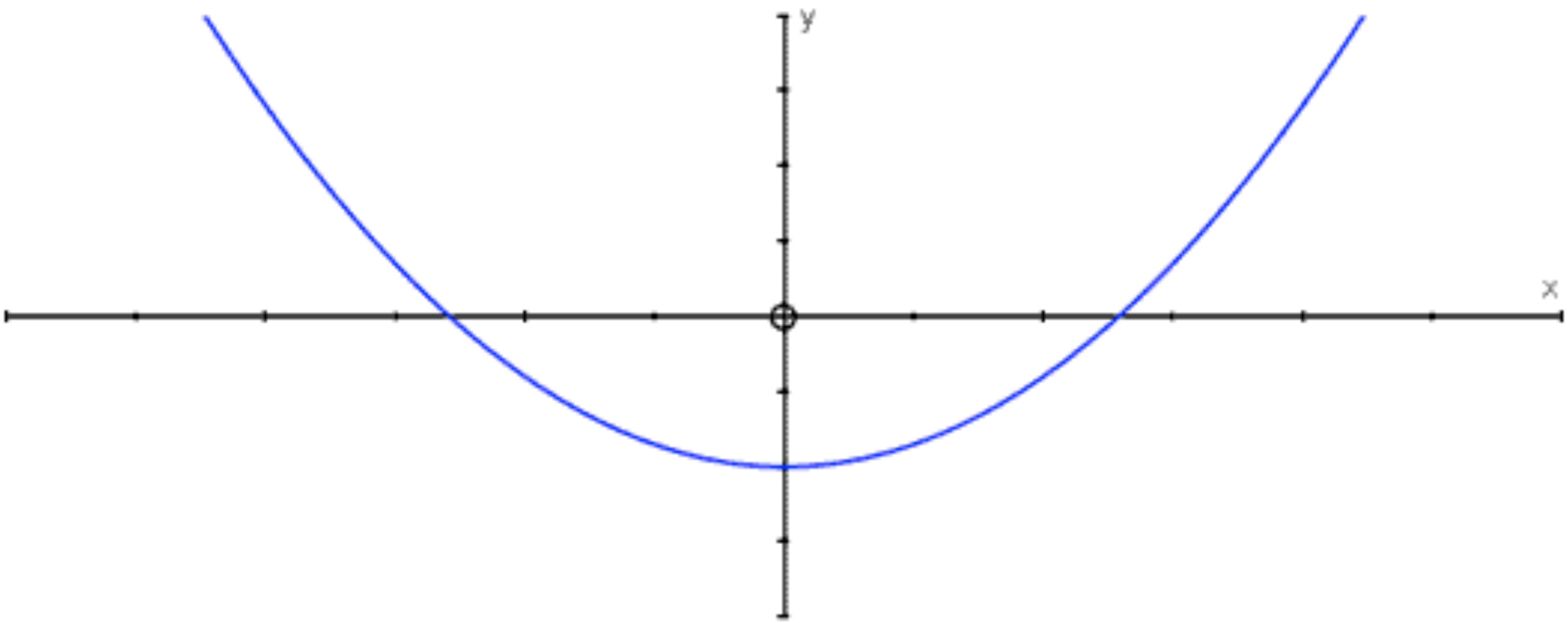


Return to contents page

3. Positive x^2

Equation: Highest power of x is **2**, and the x^2 term is positive

Examples: $y = x^2$ $y = x^2 + 5$ $y = x^2 - 3x + 2$ $y = 3x^2 + 2x - 6$

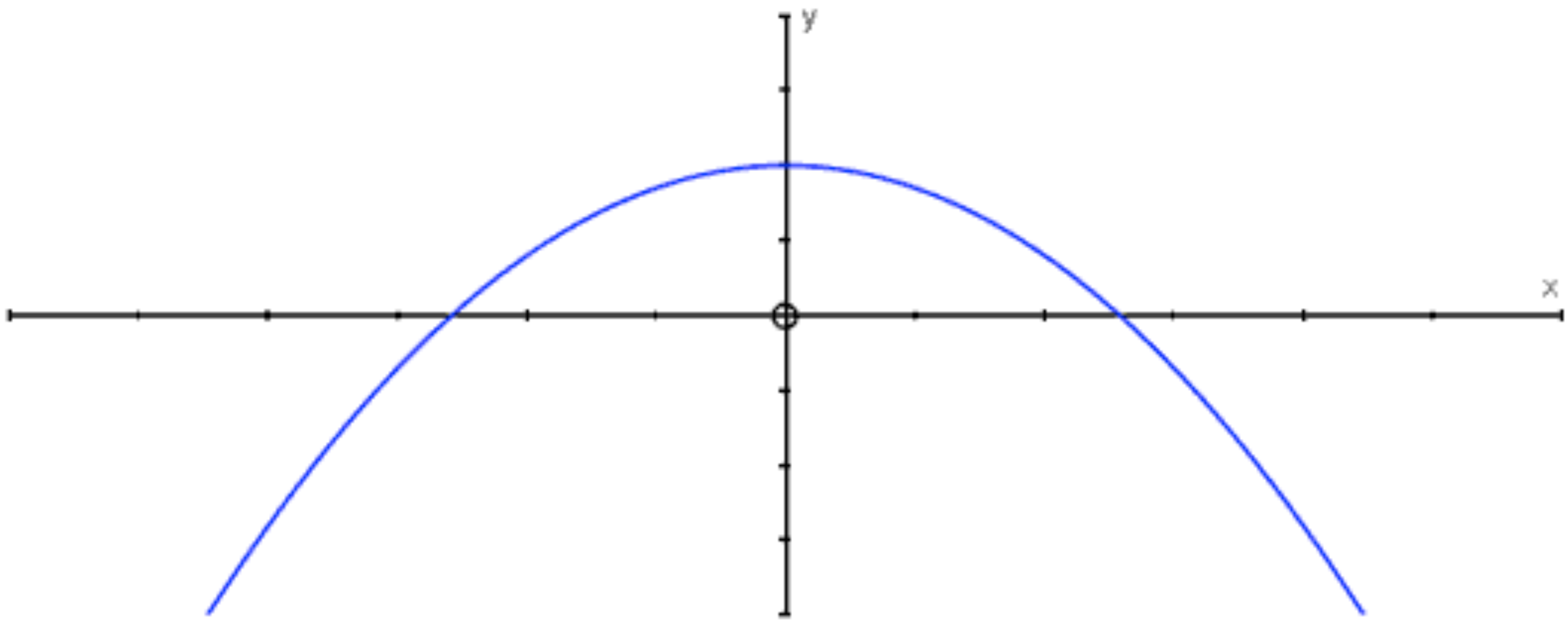


Return to contents page

4. Negative x^2

Equation: Highest power of x is **2**, and the x^2 term is negative

Examples: $y = -x^2$ $y = -2x^2 + 4$ $y = -2(x^2 - 5x + 5)$ $y = 5 + 3x - x^2$

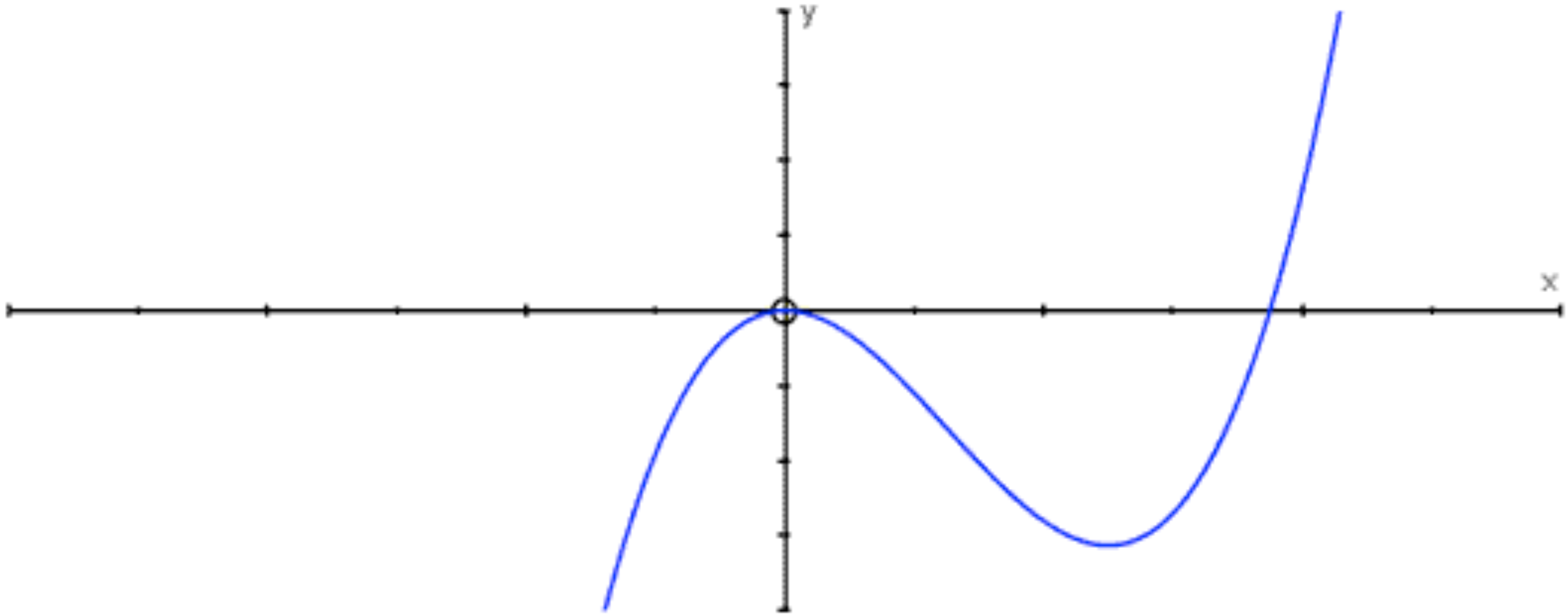


Return to contents page

5. Positive x^3

Equation: Highest power of x is **3**, and the x^3 term is positive

Examples: $y = x^3$ $\quad y = x^3 + 10$ $\quad y = x^3 - 2x^2 - 4x + 2$ $\quad y = 2x^3 - 6x$

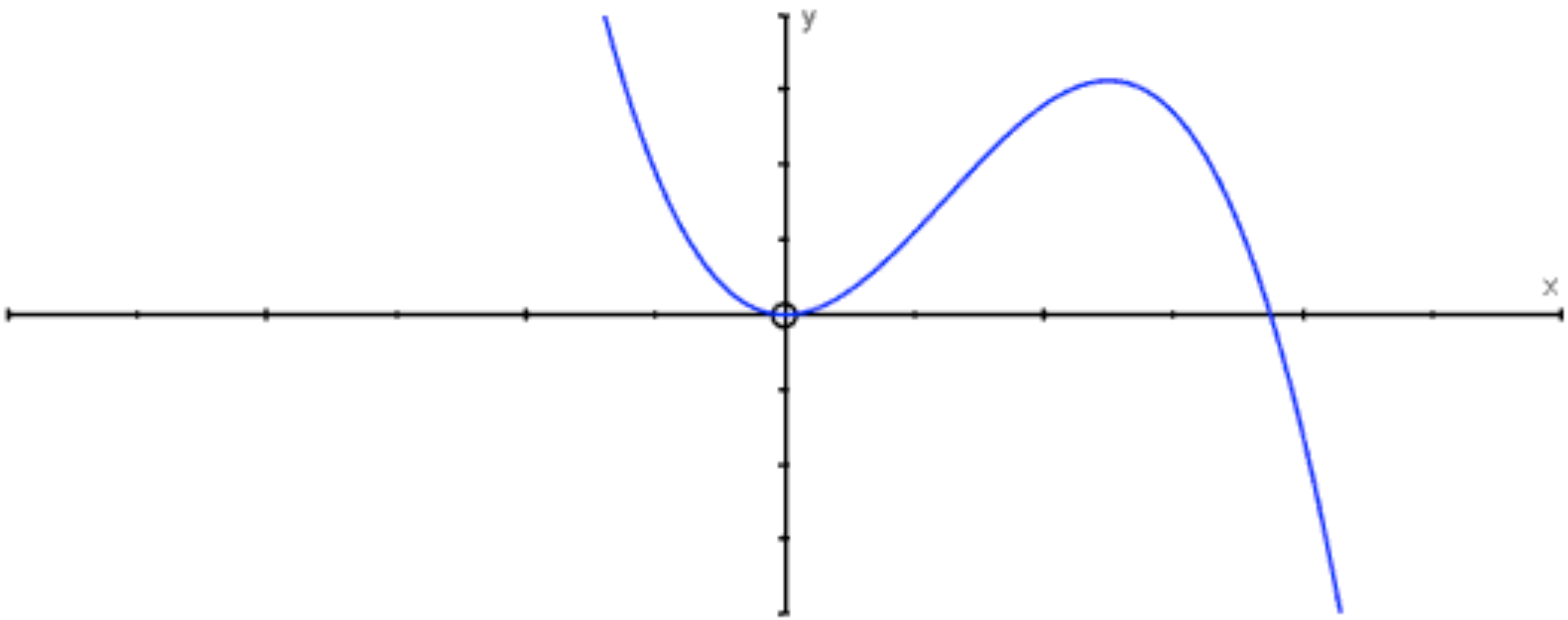


Return to contents page

6. Negative x^3

Equation: Highest power of x is **3**, and the x^3 term is negative

Examples: $y=-x^3$ $y=-5x^3+2$ $y=-4x^3+x^2+5$ $y=5+3x+5x^2-x^3$

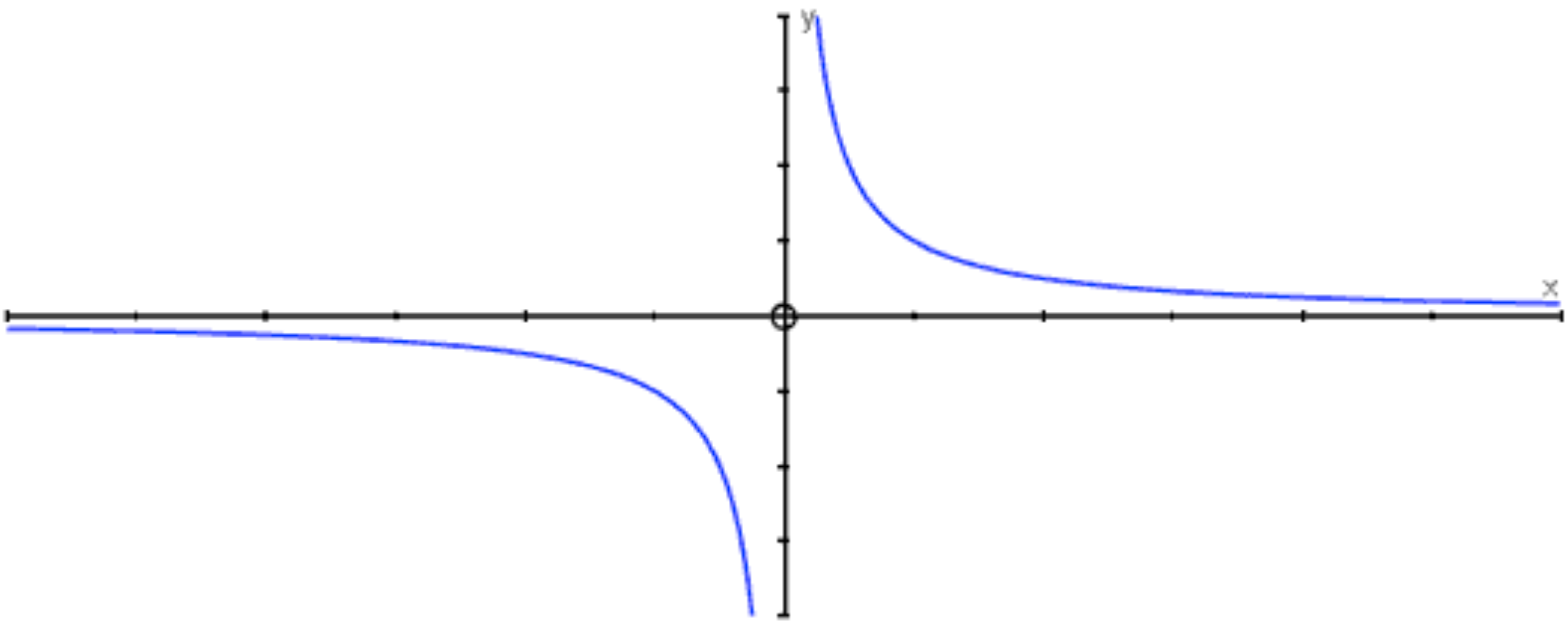


Return to contents page

7. Positive Reciprocal

Equation: Contains a fraction with a positive x on the bottom

Examples: $y = \frac{1}{x}$ $y = \frac{5}{x}$ $y = \frac{7}{2x}$ $y = \frac{3}{4x} + 2$

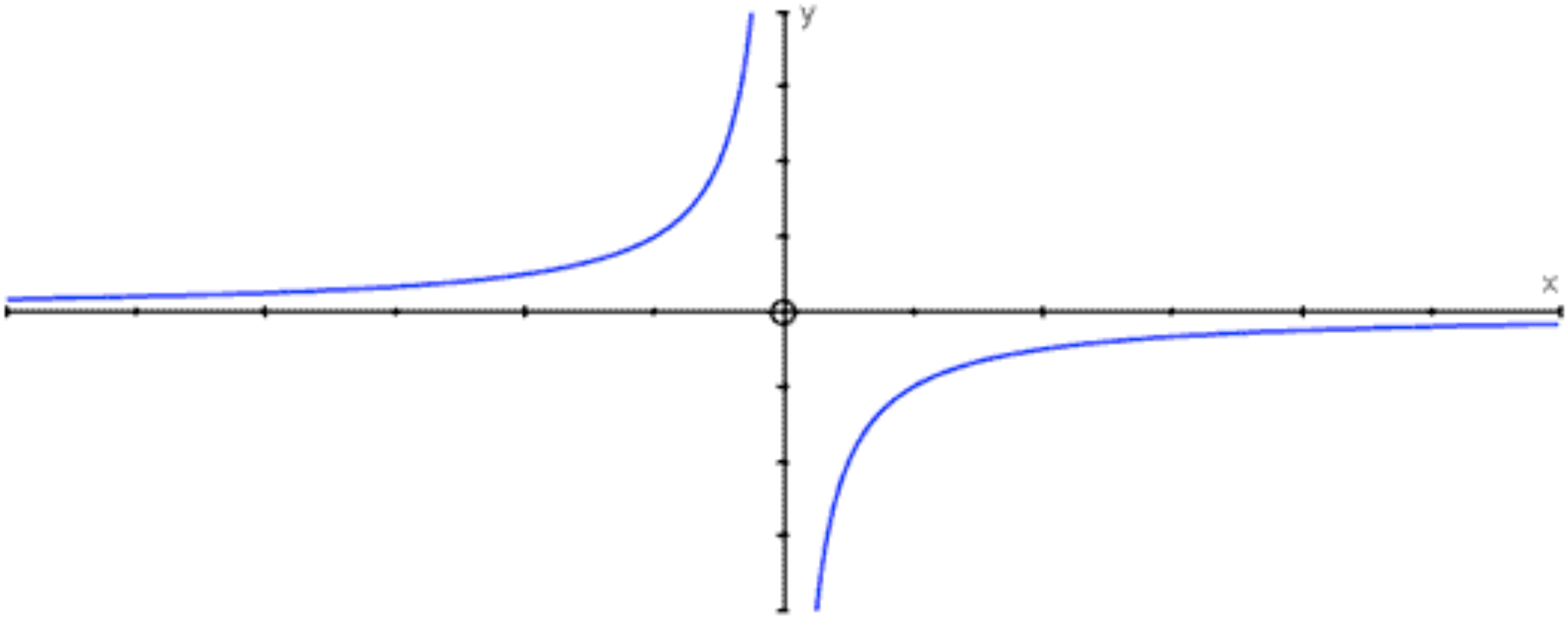


Return to contents page

8. Negative Reciprocal

Equation: Contains a fraction with a negative x on the bottom

Examples: $y = -\frac{1}{x}$ $y = \frac{5}{-x}$ $y = -\frac{7}{2x}$ $y = 2 - \frac{2}{x}$



Return to contents page

4. Travel Graphs and Story Graphs

Interpreting Travel Graphs and Story Graphs

Often you will be presented with a "real life" graph and asked a few question based upon it.

Now, the temptation is to rush in and write down the first thing that you see...

But don't!

Just take a few moments, and ask yourself these questions before your pen touches the paper!

1. Look carefully at both **axis** to see what the variables are

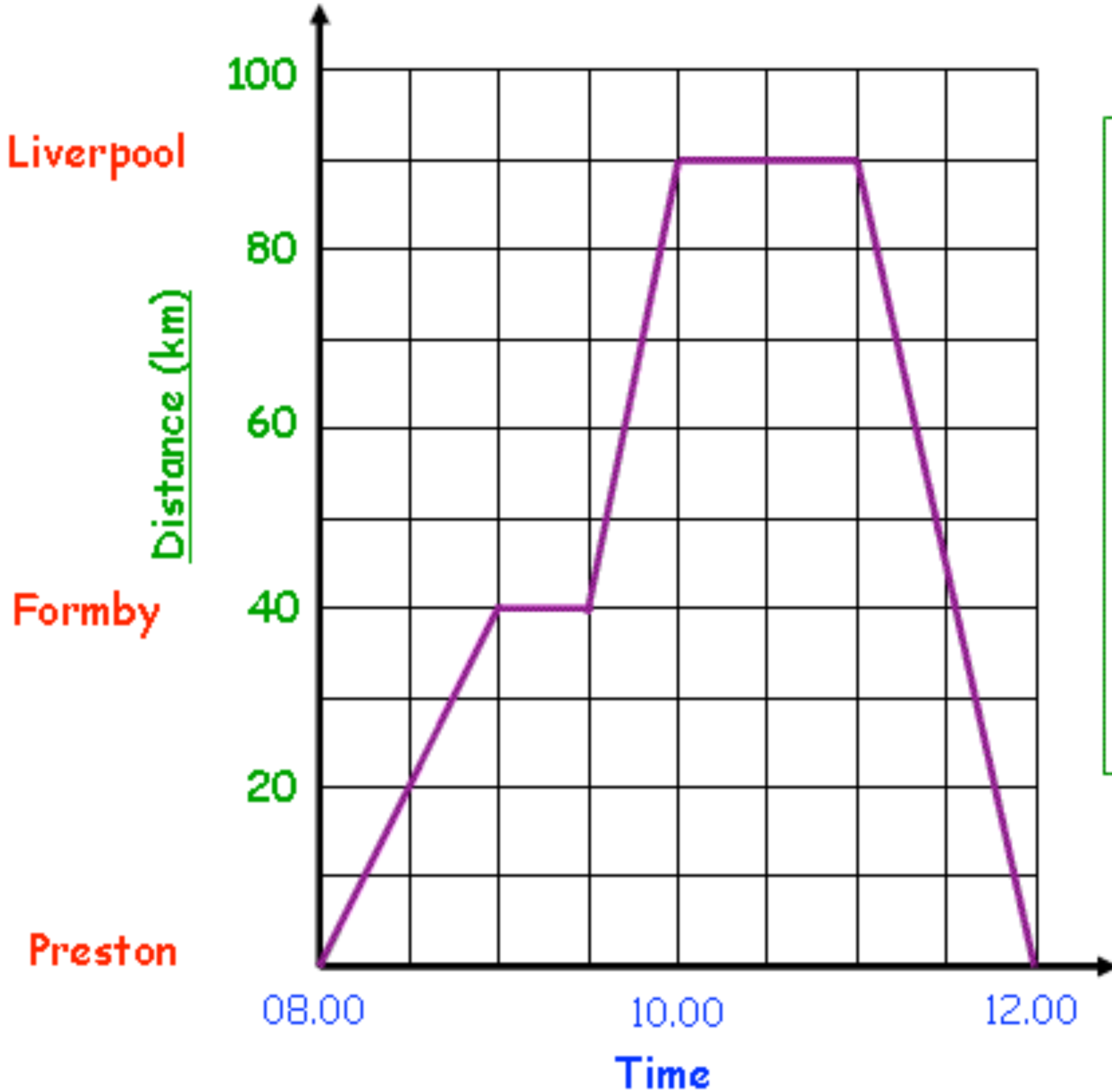
2. Look at the **scale** carefully so you can accurately read the graph

3. Look at the **gradient** of the graph:
   - What does a horizontal line mean?
   - What does a positive/negative slope mean?

4. Always **read** the question extremely careful and **check** your answer!

Return to contents page

Example 1 – Travel Graph



The graph on the left shows a journey made by a family in a car between Preston, Formby and Liverpool. Look at the graph and then answer the following questions:

(a) What time did the family arrive in Liverpool?

(b) What is the distance from Formby to Liverpool?

(c) How long did the family spend not moving?

(d) What was the average speed on the journey home?

Return to contents page

Before we begin...

Okay, let's get to the bottom of what this graph is showing us by asking ourselves those key questions:

1. Look carefully at both **axis** to see what the variables are

Okay, so we have distance in kilometres going up the y axis, and time in hours going along the x axis

2. Look at the **scale** carefully so you can accurately read the graph

On the y axis every square represents 10km, and on the x axis every square is 30 minutes (quarter of an hour)

3. Look at the **gradient** of the graph:

- What does a horizontal line mean?

  A horizontal line means that time is still passing, but the distance travelled isn't changing... so the family must have stopped moving!

- What does a positive/negative slope mean?

  Positive slopes mean the family is travelling from Preston towards Liverpool, and a negative slope means they are on their way back home!

Note: If you wanted to be really clever (and why not!) you could say that the family are travelling faster between Formby and Liverpool than between Preston and Formby.
Why?... well, notice how the line is steeper, meaning they are travelling more distance in less time, so they must be going quicker!

4. Okay, now we have a really good understanding of the graph, so we can answer all the questions... and hopefully it will be dead easy!

Return to contents page

Answering the Questions:

(a) What time did the family arrive in Liverpool?

The line first hits Liverpool at 10.00

(b) What is the distance from Formby to Liverpool?

Formby is 40km from Preston, Liverpool is 90km from Preston, so the distance from Formby to Liverpool must be 50km!

(c) How long did the family spend not moving?

As we discussed, when the family is not moving we see a horizontal line. Well, that happens twice, firstly at Formby for 30 minutes, and then at Liverpool for 60 minutes, giving us a grand total of 90 minutes… or one and a half hours!

(d) What was the average speed on the journey home?

Okay, this is the tricky one. To answer it you need to know that:

Average Speed = Distance Travelled ÷ Time Taken

Which means on the journey home we have:

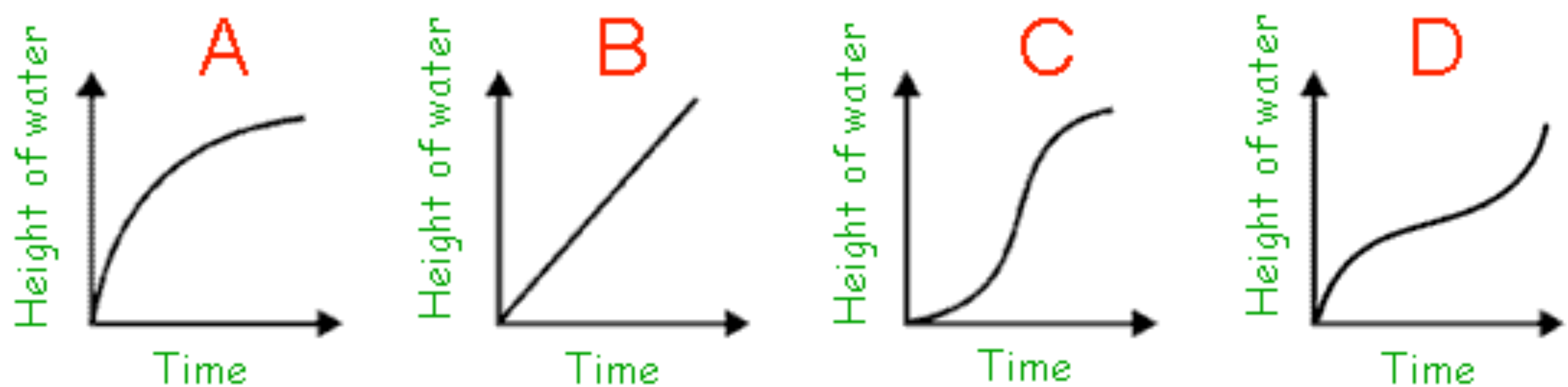
Average Speed = 90 km ÷ 1 hour

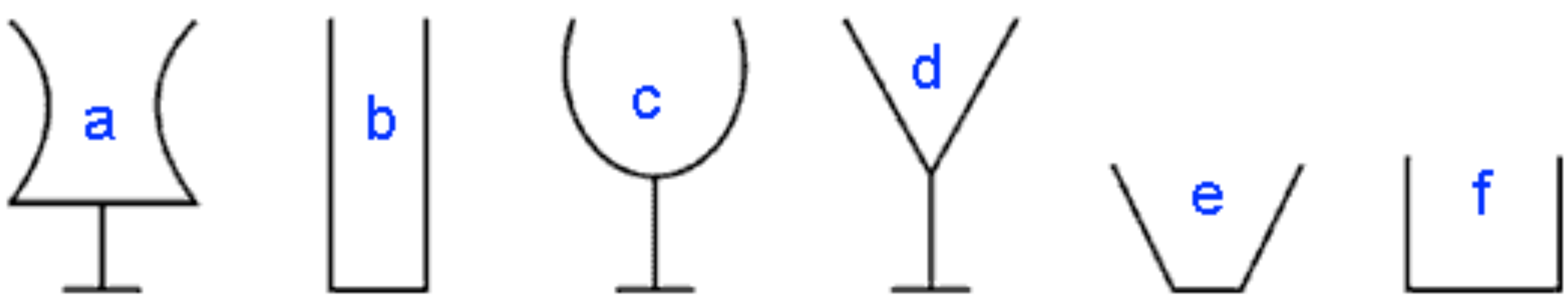
= 90 km/hr

Return to contents page

Example 2 – Story Graph

Water is poured into various glasses at a constant rate. The graphs below are sketches showing how the height of water in the glasses changes over time. Match up the shape of the glasses with their graphs
Note: Each graph can represent more than one glass.





Return to contents page

Before we begin…

Okay, this is a bit trickier, so once more let's get to the bottom of what these graphs are showing us by asking ourselves those key questions:

1. Look carefully at both **axis** to see what the variables are
Okay, so we have height of water going up the y axis, and time going along the x axis

2. Look at the **scale** carefully so you can accurately read the graph
There is no scale, so this doesn't matter
Note: This is also the reason why more than one glass can match to each graph!

3. Look at the **gradient** of the graph:
Okay, I am going to change the questions slightly here as this is the key to this problem:

What does a straight line mean?
The height of the water is changing by the same amount as time passes... so the sides of the glass must be straight!

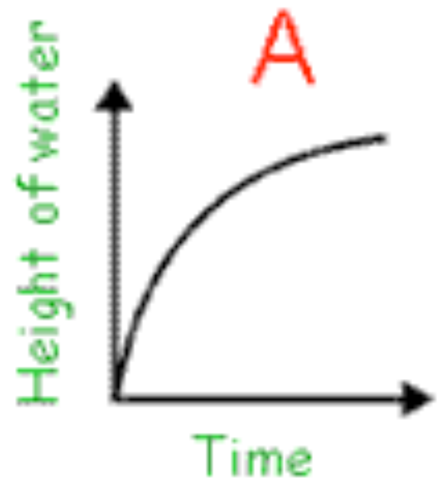
What does a curved line mean?
Well, it depends on the shape of the curve, but generally a curved line means that the height of the water is not changing by the same amount, so the sides of the glass must also be curved

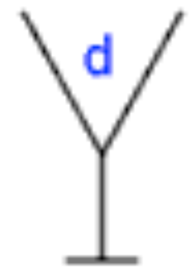
4. Okay, like I say, this question is a lot trickier than the first, so have a go at it and then have a look at my answers.

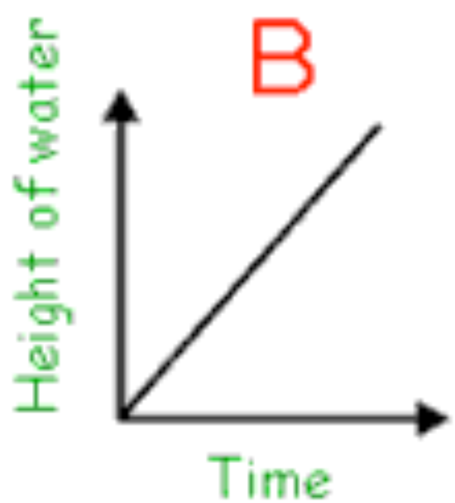
Try to picture that water dropping constantly into those glasses and what the height of the water will be doing!

Return to contents page

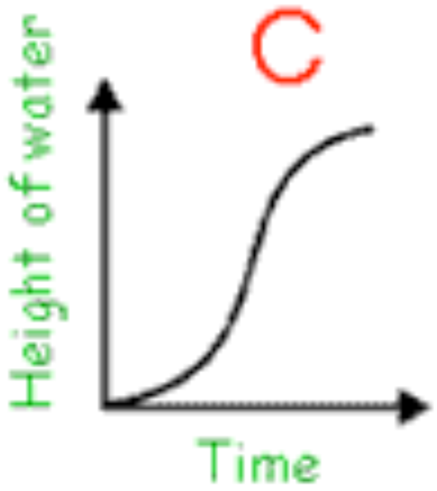
Answering the Question:

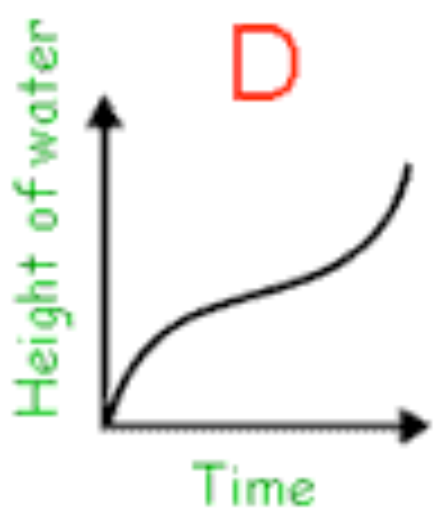


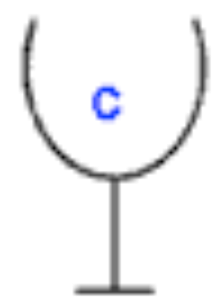




Return to contents page







Return to contents page

Shape, Space and Measure

1. Angle Facts

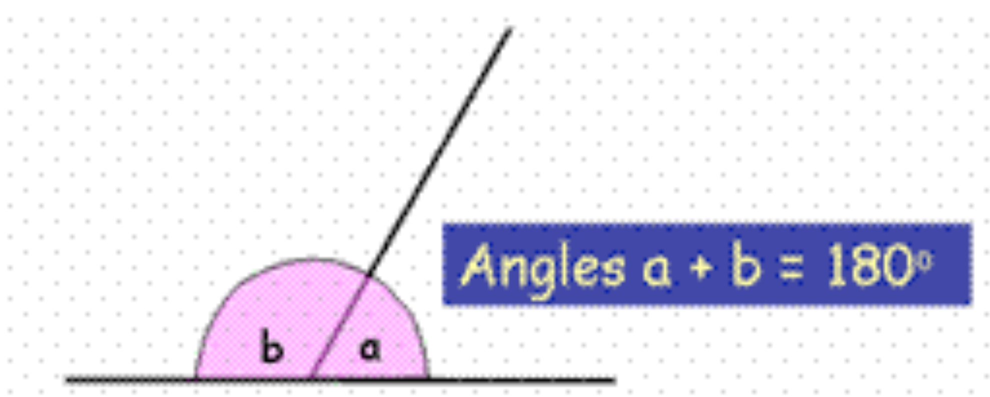
Three things you should Learn about Angle Facts:

1) What each of the facts say
2) How to spot them
3) How to show you are using angle facts in your answers

And if you can do all these, then it's goodbye to another topic off our list!

Fact 1: Angles on a Straight Line

Fact: Angles on a straight line add up to 180^0

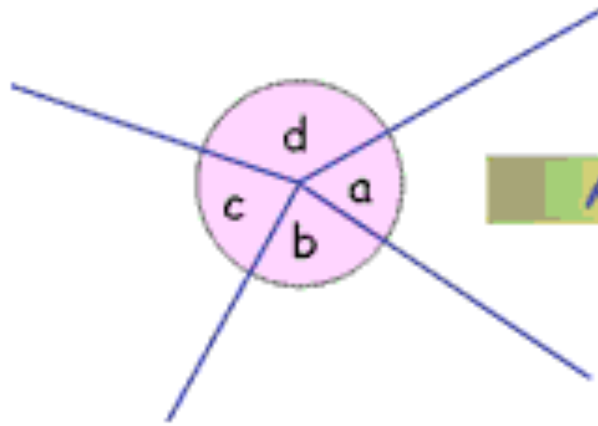


How to spot it: Find any continuous straight line, with another straight line joining it or cutting across it

Return to contents page

Fact 2: Angles around a Point

Fact: Angles around a point add up to 360^0

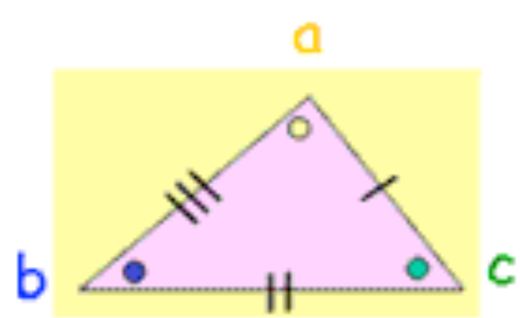


Angle $a + b + c + d = 360^0$

How to spot it: If you have a collection of lines all crossing at one point, then it's time to use this rule!

Fact 3: Angles in a Triangle

Fact: The interior (inside) angles of a triangle add up to 180^0



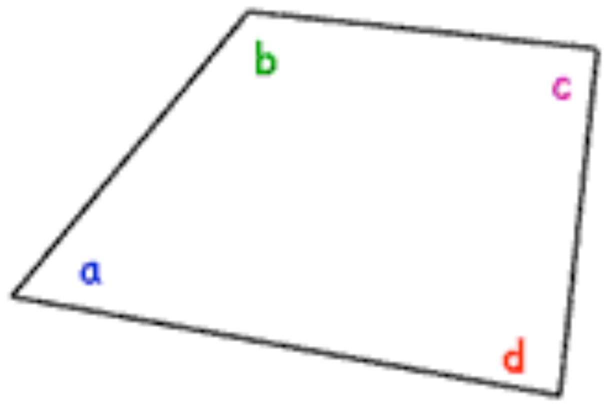
$a + b + c = 180^0$

How to spot it: Find any type of triangle (equilateral, isosceles, right-angled, or scalene) and all the angles inside will add up to 180^0

Return to contents page

Fact 4: Angles in a Quadrilateral

Fact: Interior (inside) angles of a quadrilateral add up to 360^0

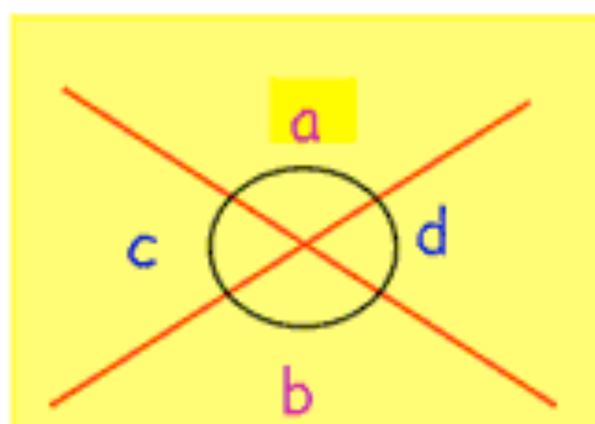


$a + b + c + d = 360^0$

How to spot it: Find any 4 sided shape (square, rectangle, trapezium, kite, etc.) and the inside angles will add up to 360^0

Fact 5: Opposite Angles

Fact: Opposite Angles are equal



$a = b$

$c = d$

How to spot it: Find two continuous straight lines crossing at a point. The pairs of angles opposite each other will be equal

Note: Using Fact 2, all the angles around that point will add up to 360^0

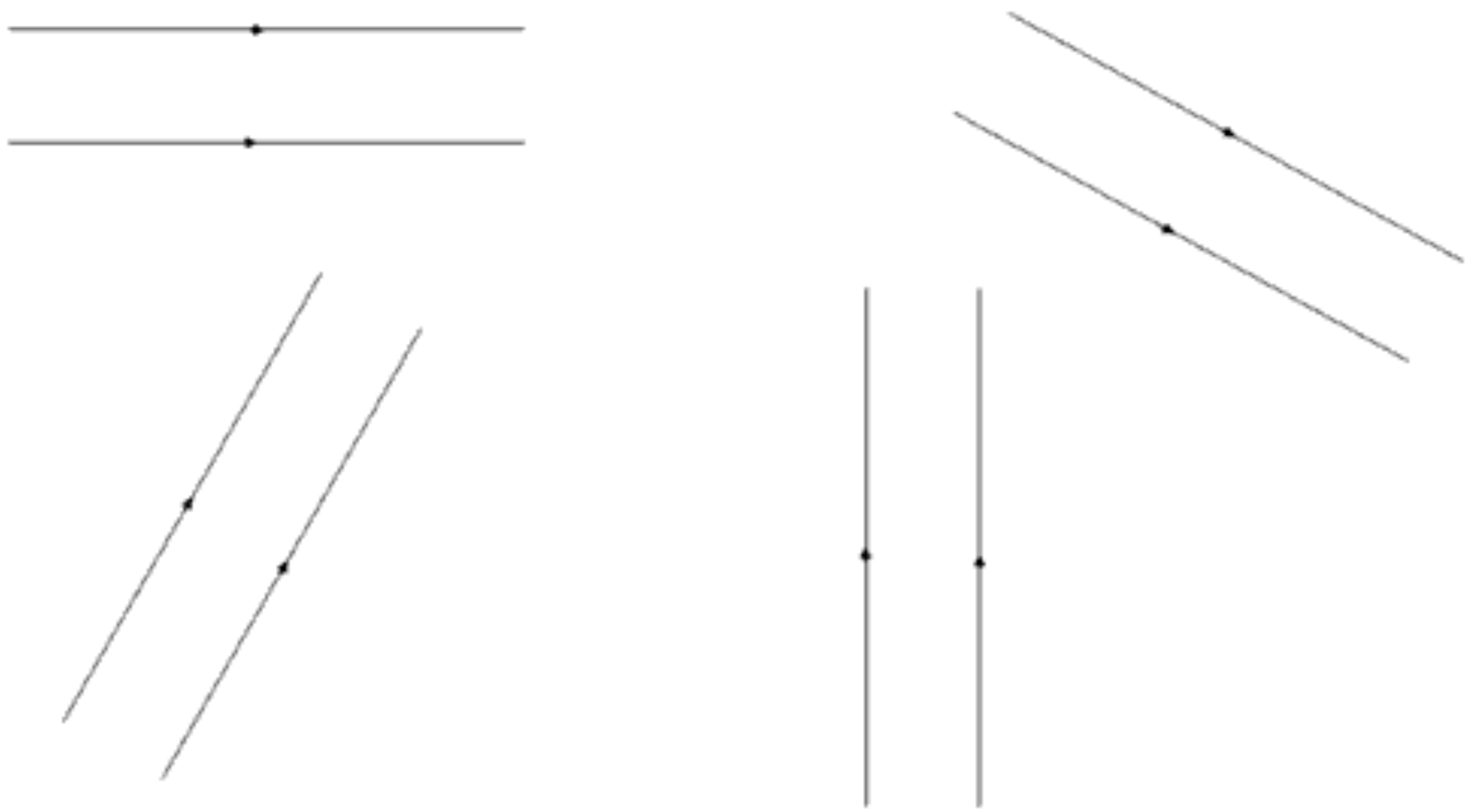
Return to contents page

A Quick Note on Parallel Lines

For these next 3 Angle Facts, you need to be comfortable with Parallel Lines...

Parallel lines are lines which never meet, and always keep a perfectly equal distance apart.

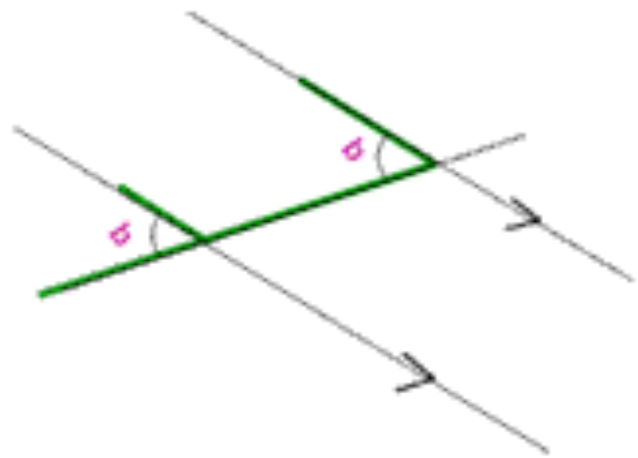
Remember: Only assume lines are parallel if they have those little arrows on them:

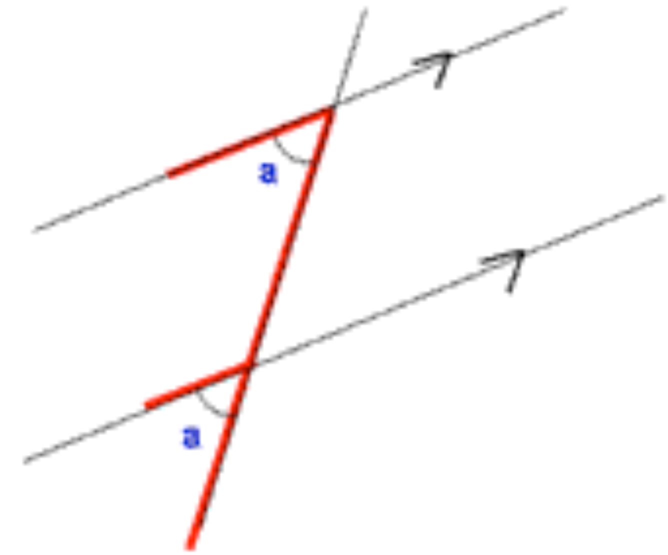


Return to contents page

Fact 6: Corresponding Angles

Fact: Corresponding Angles are equal



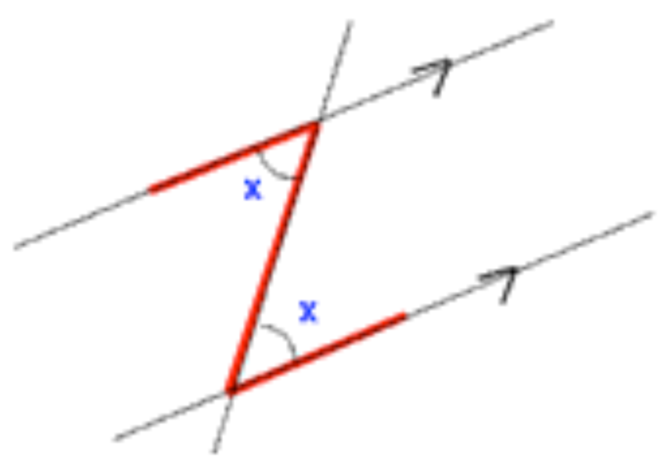


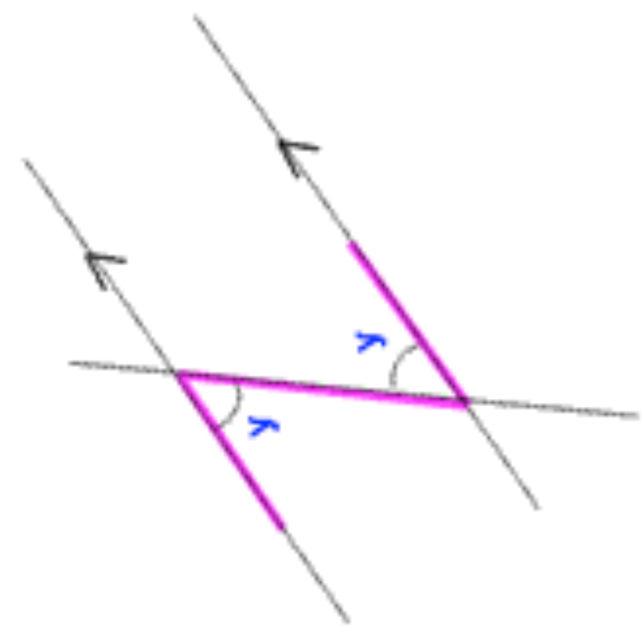
How to spot it: Look for the **F** shape, the angles underneath the arms of the F are equal

Note: The arms of the F must definitely be Parallel lines!

Fact 7: Alternate Angles

Fact: Alternate Angles are equal





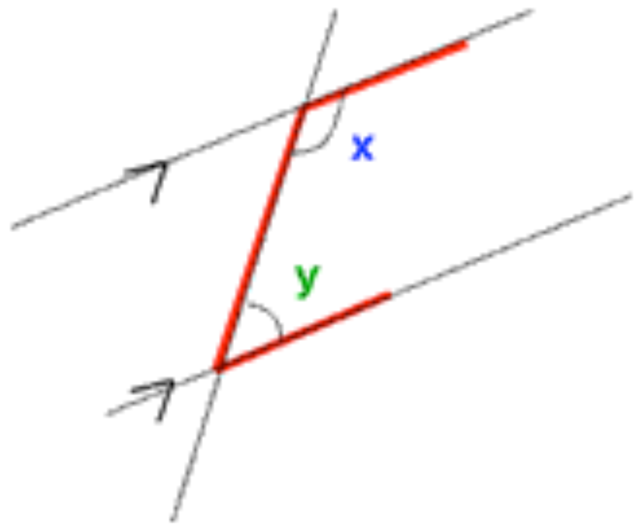
How to spot it: Look for the **Z** shape, the angles "inside" the Z are equal

Note: The top and bottom of the Z must be Parallel Lines!

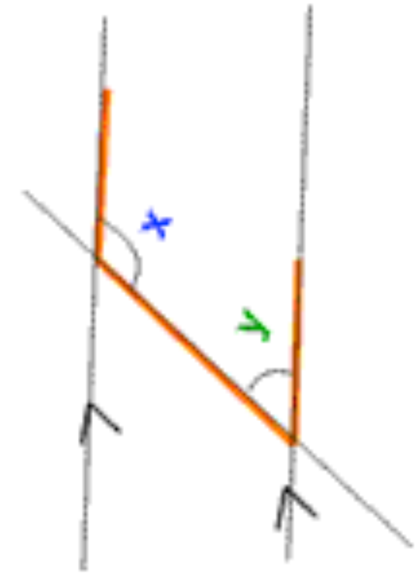
Return to contents page

Fact 8: Interior Angles

Fact: Interior Angles add up to 180^0



$$x + y = 180^0$$



How to spot it: Look for the **C** shape, the angles underneath the top and bottom of the C add up to 180^0

Note: The top and bottom of the C must definitely be Parallel lines!

Tips for Answering Angle Questions

1. Always write down the name of each of the Angle Facts you have used to get your answer (even if there are more than one)

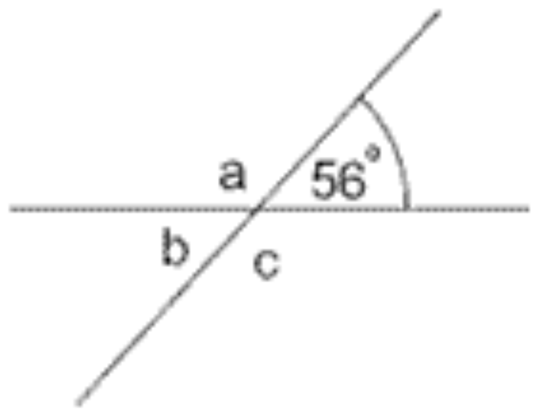
2. Parallel Lines are only parallel if they have the little arrows to say so!

3. If you have lots of labelled angles to find and you just don't know where to start, sometimes it's a good idea to go in alphabetical order!

4. Often there are lots of different ways of working out the answer

Return to contents page

Example 1



$a = 180 - 56 = 124^0$

(Fact 1 – angles on a straight line)

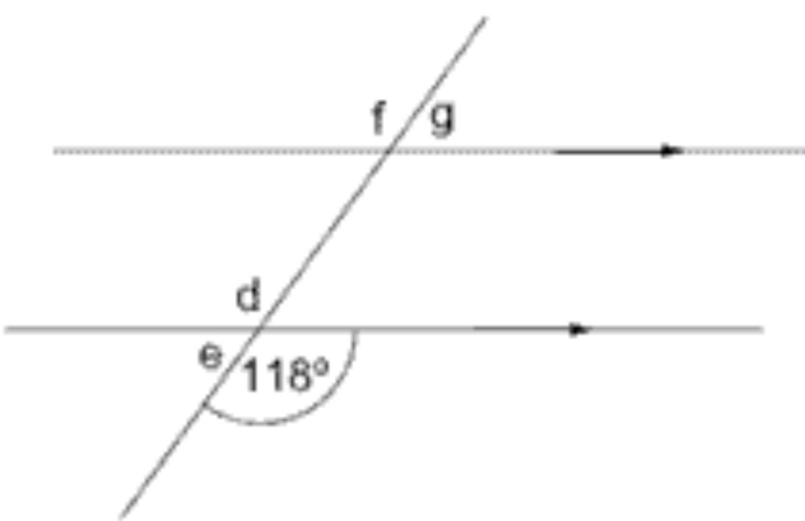
$b = 56^0$

(Fact 5 – opposite angles)

$c = 360 - 56 - 124 - 56 = 124^0$

(Fact 2 – angles around a point)

Example 2



$d = 118^0$

(Fact 5 – opposite angles)

$e = 180 - 118 = 62^0$

(Fact 1 – angles on a straight line)

$f = 118^0$

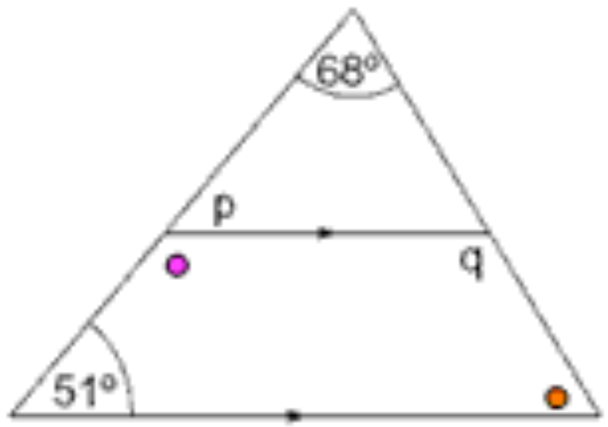
(Fact 6 – corresponding angles)

$g = 180 - 118 = 62^0$

(Fact 1 – angles on a straight line)

Return to contents page

Example 3



$p = 51^0$

(Fact 6 – corresponding angles)

To work out q:

● = 180 – 51 = 129^0 (Fact 1 – angles on a straight line)

● = 180 – 51 – 68 = 61^0 (Fact 3 – angles in a triangle)

q = 360 – 51 – 129 – 61 = 119^0

(Fact 4 –angles in a quadrilateral)

Example 4

r = 180 – 106 – 35 = 39^0

(Fact 3 – angles in a triangle)

s = 39^0

(Fact 6 – corresponding angles)

t = 180 – 39 = 141^0

(Fact 8 – interior angles)

Return to contents page

2. Polygons

One of Mr Barton's Top 10 Maths Jokes

What did the pirate (who was also a very keen mathematician) say when his parrot flew away?... "Poly-gon!"... you can't beat a maths joke, hey?... anyway...

What are Polygons?

A Polygon is any closed shape which has three or more sides.

Regular Polygons

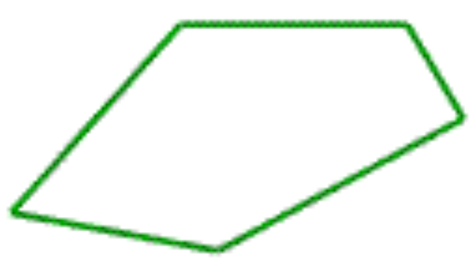
All their sides are the same length, and all their angles are the same size

e.g. squares, equilateral triangles, regular octagons...

Irregular Polygons

You've guessed it... these do not have equal length sides and angles

Rectangle, kites and trapeziums are an irregular polygons, but so too are shapes like this:

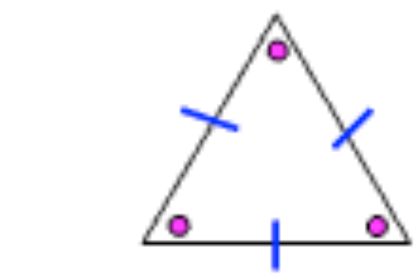


Two types of Polygons that you must be especially clued up about are quadrilaterals and triangles

Return to contents page

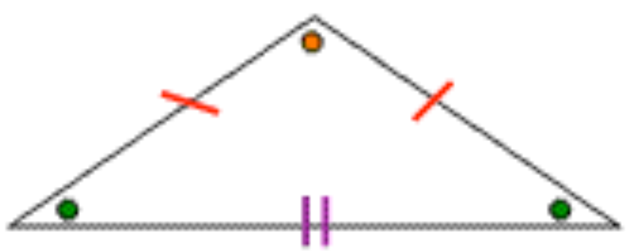
1. Triangles

There are 4 types of triangles you need to be on the look-out for and you must know the properties of (what is special about) each of them



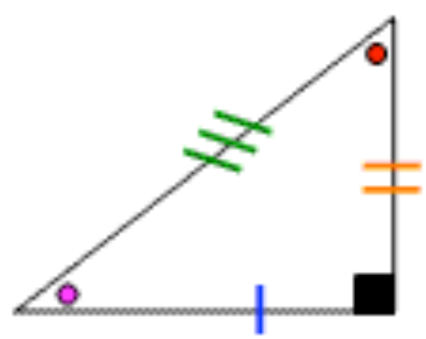
Equilateral

- All angles are equal (60° each)
- All sides are the same length
- Three lines of symmetry



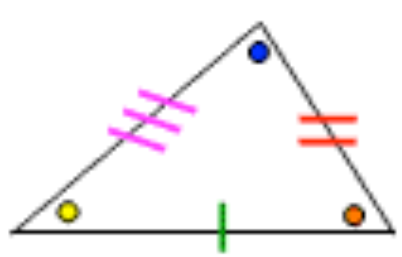
Isosceles

- Two angles are equal
- Two sides are the same length
- One line of symmetry



Right Angled

- One angle is 90°
- All sides may be different lengths
- All angles may be different
- May have 0 or 1 line of symmetry



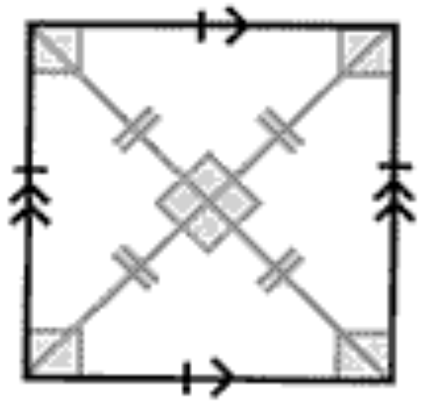
Scalene

- All angles are different sizes
- All sides are different lengths
- No lines of symmetry

Return to contents page

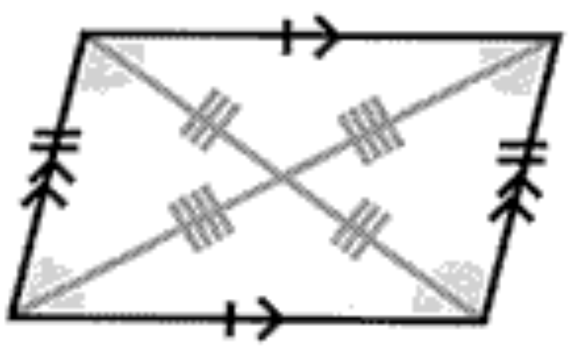
2. Quadrilaterals

A Quadrilateral is any four-sided shape. There are lots of quadrilaterals flying around, and it is important that you know the properties of each... so here they are!



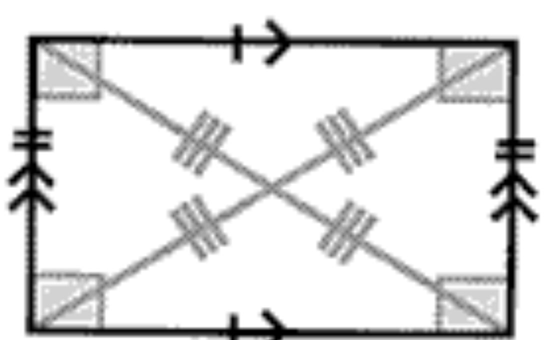
Square

- All angles are right-angles (90^o each)
- All sides are the same length
- Two pairs of parallel lines
- Four lines of symmetry



Parallelogram

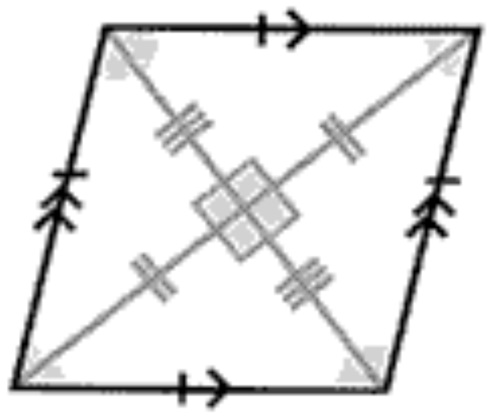
- Opposite angles are equal
- Opposite sides are the same length
- Two pairs of parallel sides
- May have no lines of symmetry



Rectangle

- All angles are right-angles (90^o each)
- Opposite sides are the same length
- Opposite sides are parallel
- Has two lines of symmetry

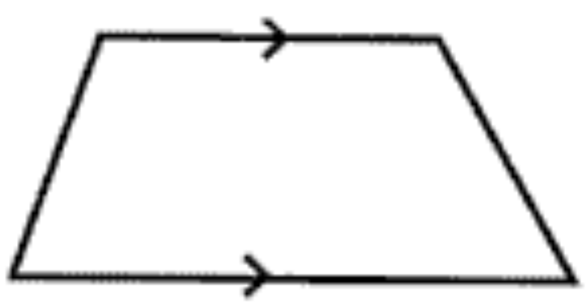
Return to contents page



Rhombus

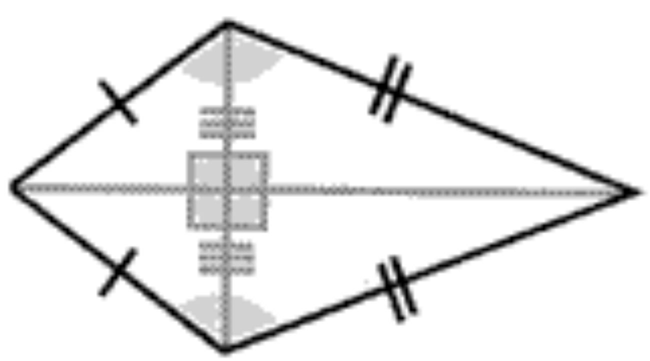
- Opposite angles are equal
- All sides are the same length
- Opposite sides are parallel
- Two lines of symmetry

Notice: Each of the four shapes above are very similar... in fact, they are all just special types of parallelograms! See how they each have two pairs of parallel sides... and then it just certain other properties that make them different shapes!



Trapezium

- All angles may be different sizes
- All sides may be different lengths
- Opposite sides are parallel
- May have no lines of symmetry



Kite

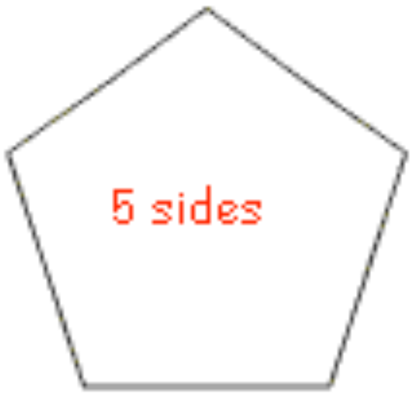
- One pair of equal angles
- Adjacent sides are the same length
- No pairs of parallel sides
- One line of symmetry

Return to contents page

3. Other Polygons

As soon as you get above 4 sides, the names of the polygons start to get a bit weird. Here are some of the main ones you should learn.

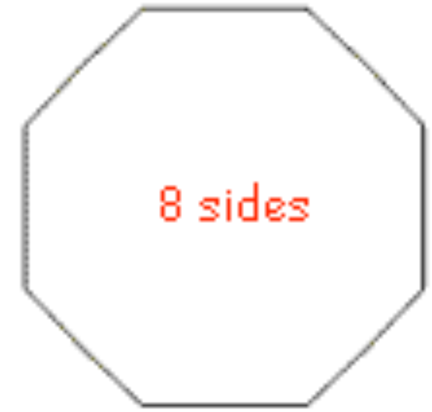
Notice: Each of the shapes below are regular polygons as all the sides and angles are the same... but any 8 sided shape is still an octagon, it may just be an irregular one!



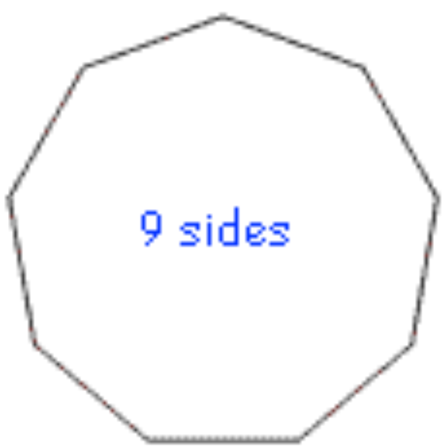
Pentagon

Hexagon

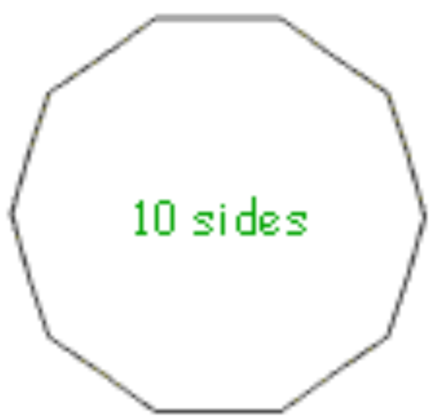
Heptagon / Heptagon



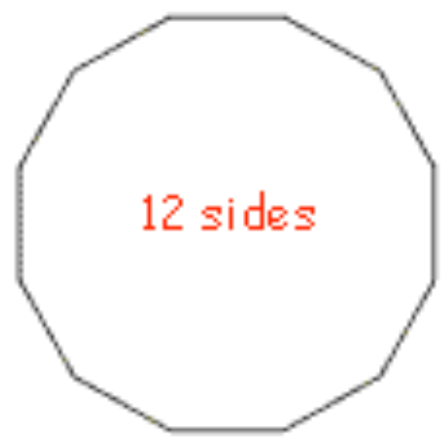
Octagon



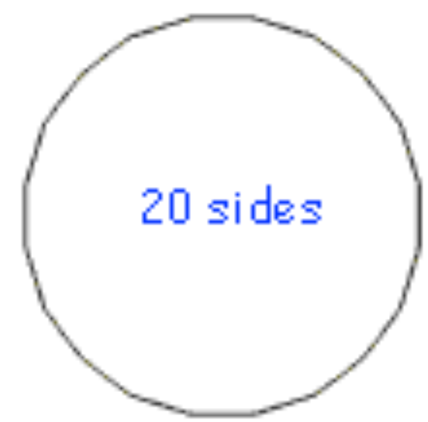
Nonagon



Decagon



Dodecagon



Icosagon

Return to contents page

4. Interior Angles of Polygons

An interior angle is any angle inside the polygon

If we are told the number of sides a polygon has, we can work out the total sum of all the interior angles using this little formula:

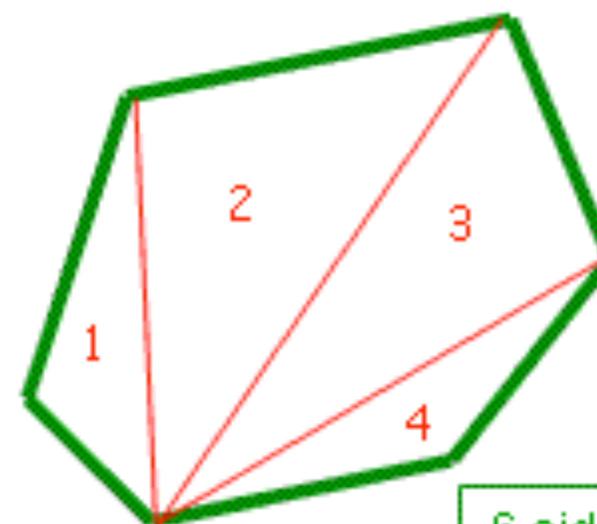
Sum of all interior angles = (Number of sides of polygon – 2) x 180

Why?

Well, it's all to do with triangles...

We know that the sum of the interior angles of any triangle is 180^0, right?

Well... we can split any polygon up into triangles, like this...



And there will always be 2 fewer triangles than there are sides!

6 sides

4 triangles

For Regular Polygons

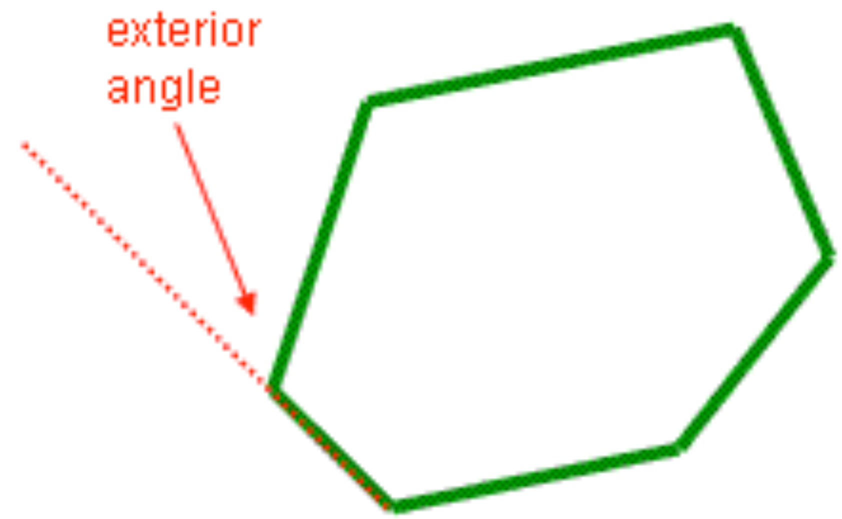
Because all angles are equal in regular polygons, you can work out the size of each interior angle like this:

Size of each interior angle = Sum of all interior angles ÷ Number of sides

Return to contents page

5. Exterior Angles of Polygons

An exterior angle is an angle outside the polygon made by extending one of the sides...



And here is the fact!

Sum of all exterior angles = 360^0

Why?

Well, if you keep moving around the polygon, extending the sides and measuring each exterior angle, by the time you get back to where you started you have made... a circle! Which, as we all know, contains 360^0

For Regular Polygons

If all interior angles are equal for regular polygons, then all exterior angles are equal too, so to work out the size of each one, we do this...

Size of each exterior angle = 360^0 ÷ Number of sides

Note: If you know the sizes of the exterior angles of a regular polygon, then you can also work out the sizes of the interiors by remembering that angles on a straight line add up to 180^0

Size of each interior angle = 180^0 – Size of each exterior angle

Return to contents page

6. Massive Table of Facts

Using the formulae we have talked about, it is possible to work out pretty much any angle fact about any size polygon. Have a practice to make sure you can get the numbers in this table...

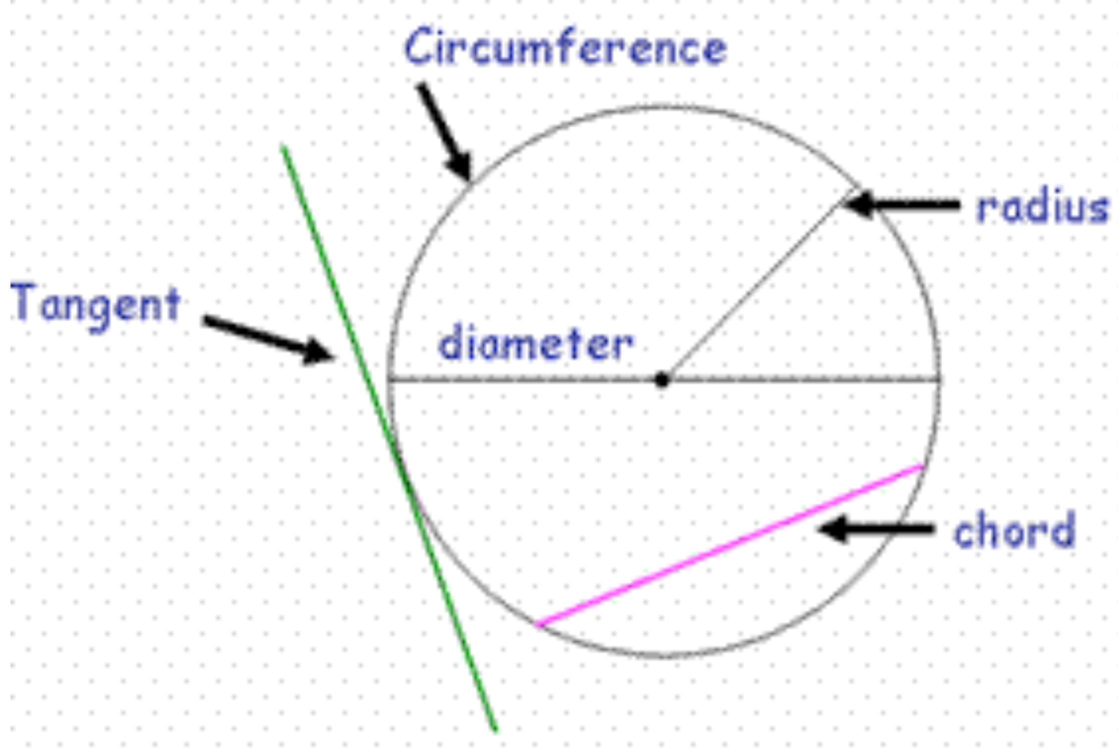
Name of Polygon	Number of Sides	Total Sum of Interior Angles	Size of each Interior Angle if Regular	Total Sum of Exterior Angles	Size of each Exterior Angle if Regular
Triangle	3	180	60	360	120
Quadrilateral	4	360	90	360	90
Pentagon	5	540	108	360	72
Hexagon	6	720	120	360	60
Heptagon	7	900	128.6 (1dp)	360	51.4 (1dp)
Octagon	8	1080	135	360	45

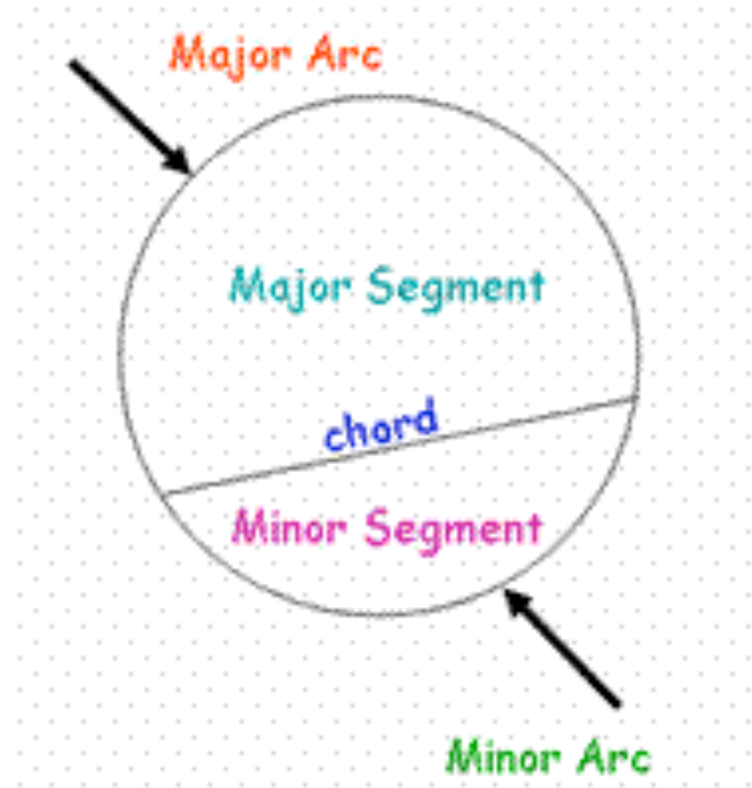
Return to contents page

3. Circle Theorems

Parts of a Circle...

Before we start going through each of the circle theorems, it is important we know the names for each part of the circle, as we will be using these terms in this section.





Three things you should Learn about Circle Theorems:

1) What each of the theorems say
2) How to spot them
3) How to show you are using circle theorems in your answers

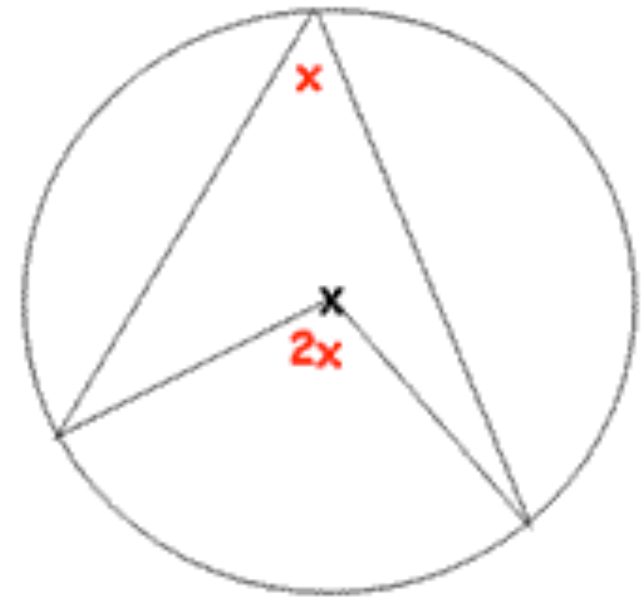
And if you can do all these, then that's a pretty tricky topic all sorted!

Return to contents page

Theorem 1: Angle at the Centre

Fact: The angle at the centre is twice as big as the angle at the circumference made by the same arc or chord

How to spot it: Start with two points (could be the ends of a chord). If you go point-centre-point, the angle you make will be twice as big as if you go point-circumference-point

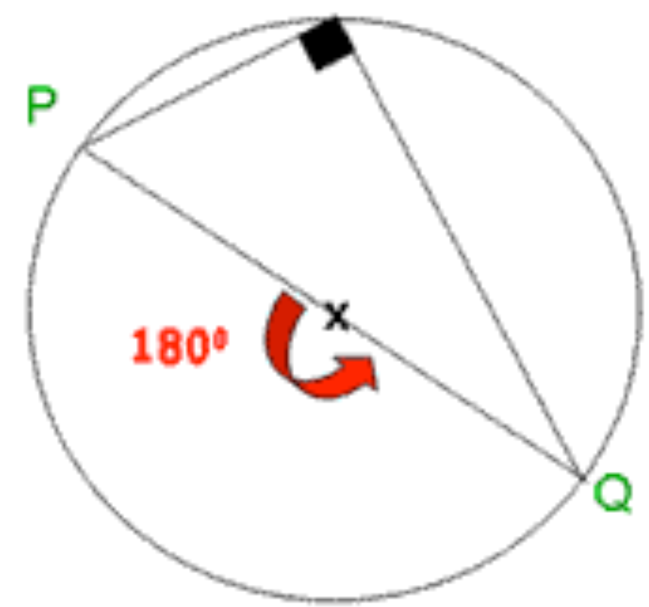


Theorem 2: Angles in a Semi-Circle

Fact: The angle made at the circumference in a semi circle is a right angle (90^0)

How to spot it: Look for a triangle whose base is the diameter of the circle (a line going through the centre). The angle at the circumference in this triangle will always be a right angle

Note: This theorem is just a special case of Theorem 1, because the angle at the centre when you have a straight line is 180^0, so the angle at the circumference must be half of this!

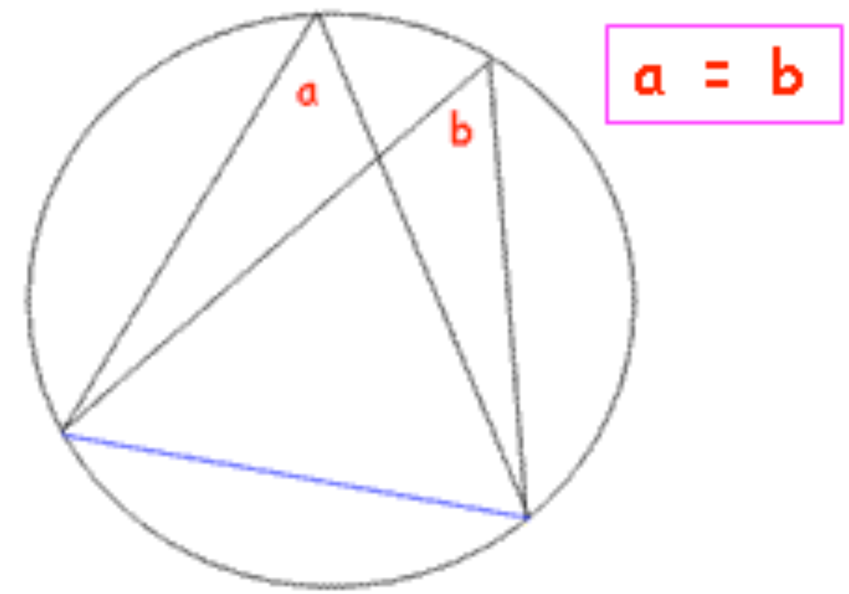


Return to contents page

Theorem 3: Angles in the Same Segment

Fact: Angles in the same segment of a circle are equal to each other

How to spot it: Start with two points (could be the ends of a chord). If you go point-circumference-point, the angle you make will be exactly the same as if you go point-circumference-point... so long as you stay in the same segment of the circle!

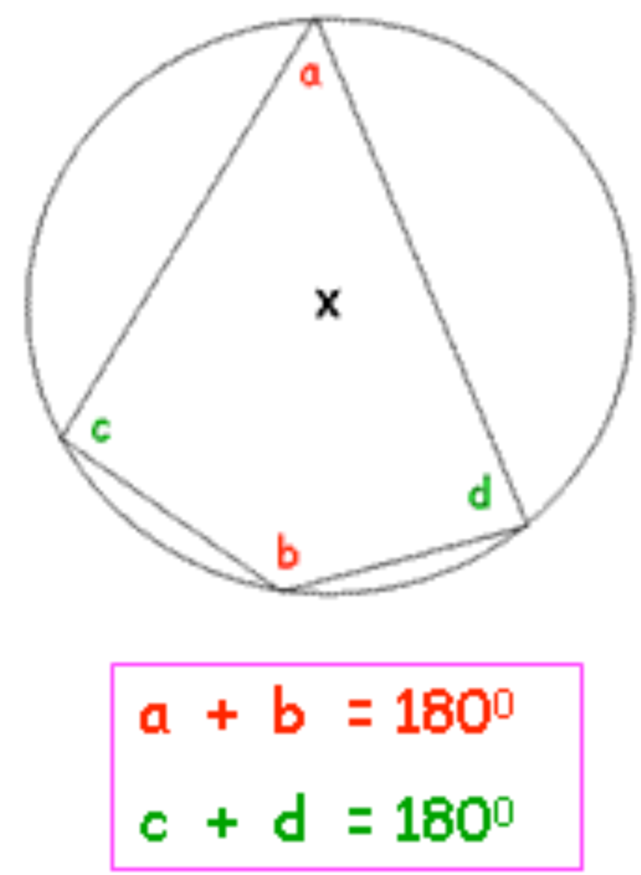


Theorem 4: Cyclic Quadrilateral

Fact: The opposite angles in a cyclic quadrilateral add up to 180^0

How to spot it: Look for a four-sided shape with each of the corners on the circumference. The opposite angles in this shape will always add up to 180^0

Note: Just like any other quadrilateral, the sum of all the interior angles is still 360^0

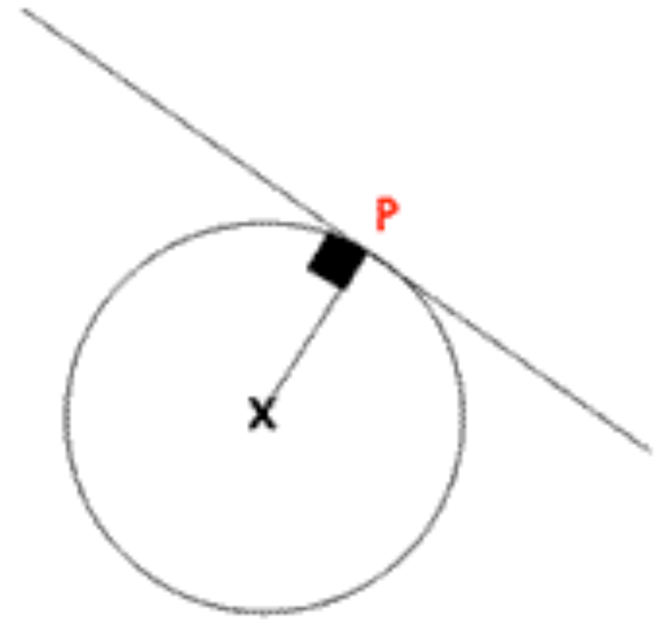


Return to contents page

Theorem 5: Tangent

Fact: The angle made by a tangent and the radius is a right-angle (90^0)

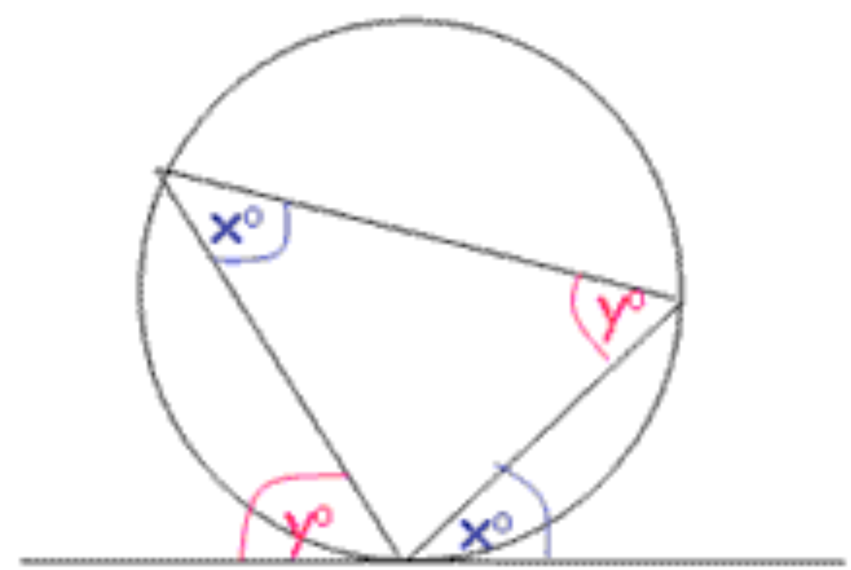
How to spot it: A tangent is a straight line that only touches a circle in one place. If you draw a line from that one place to the centre of a circle, then the angle you form is always a right-angle!



Theorem 6: Alternate Segment Theorem

Fact: The angle between a tangent and a chord at the point of contact is equal to the angle made by that chord in the other segment of the circle.

How to spot it: Look for a tangent and a chord meeting at the same point. The angle they make is exactly the same as the angle at the circumference made by that chord – imagine the chord is the base of a triangle, and the angle you want is at the top of the triangle!



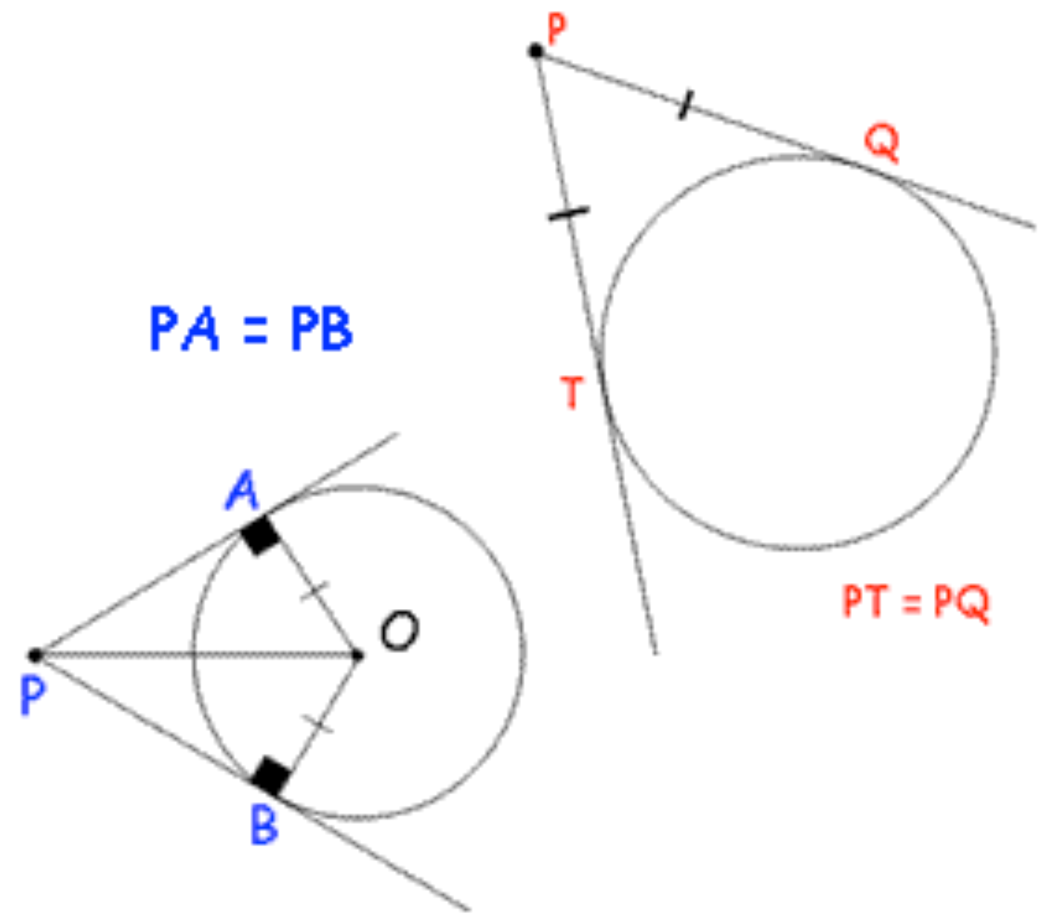
Return to contents page

Theorem 7: Two Tangents

Fact: From any point outside the circle, you can only draw two tangents to the circle, and these tangents will be equal in length.

How to spot it: Look for where the tangents to a circle meet. The lengths between where they touch the circle and the point at which they meet will always be the same

Note: More often than not, this theorem leads to some isosceles triangles, so be on the look out!



Tips for Answering Circle Questions

1. Always write down the name of each of the Circle Theorems you have used to get your answer (even if there are more than one)

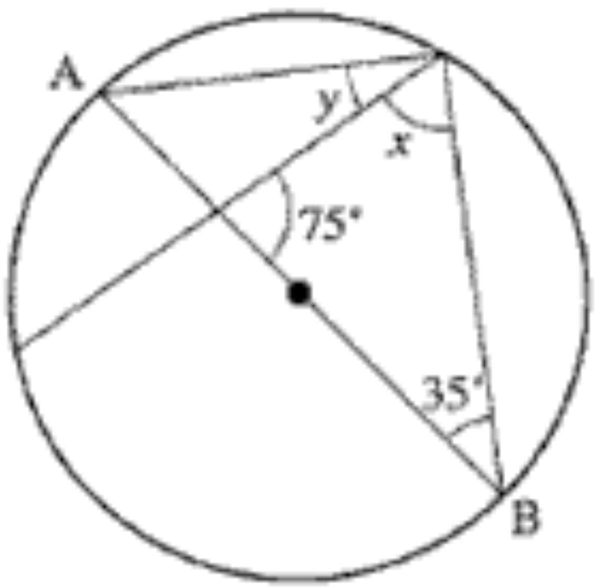
2. An angle is not a right-angle just because it looks like one! You must be able to prove it using a circle theorem, or be told it in the question!

3. To be good at circle theorems, you also need to be good at your Angle Facts – for a refresher, see 1. Angle Facts before carrying on!

4. Often there are lots of different ways of working out the answer

Return to contents page

Example 1



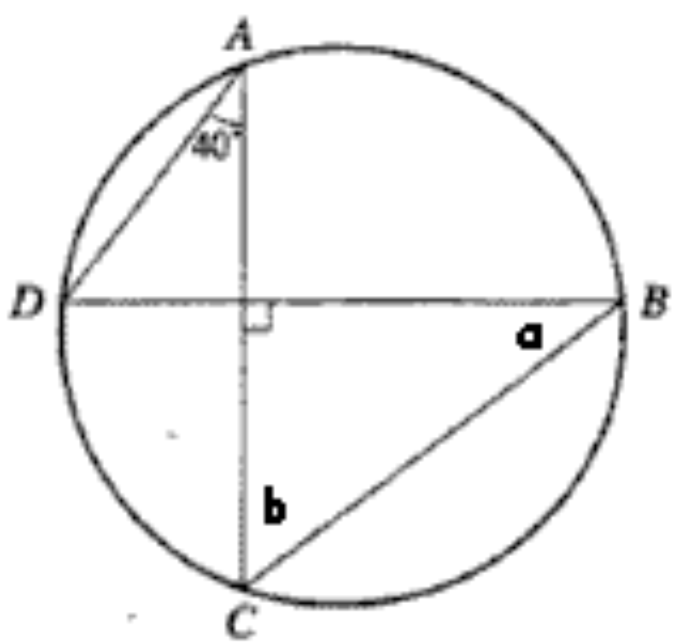
$x = 180 - 75 - 35 = \underline{70^0}$

(angles in a triangle)

$y = 90 - 70 = \underline{20^0}$

(Theorem 2 – angles in a semi-circle)

Example 2



$a = \underline{40^0}$

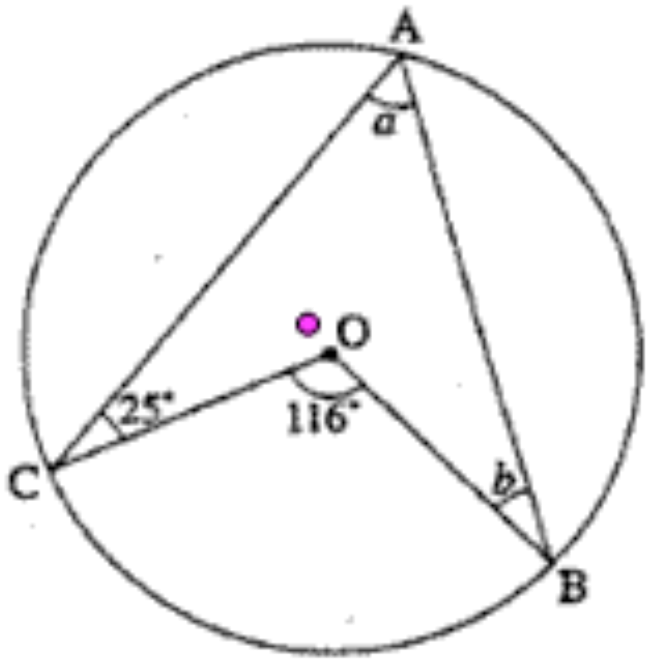
(Theorem 3 – angles in the same segment)

$b = 180 - 90 - 40 = \underline{50^0}$

(angles in a triangle)

Return to contents page

Example 3



a = 88⁰

(Theorem 1 – angle at the centre)

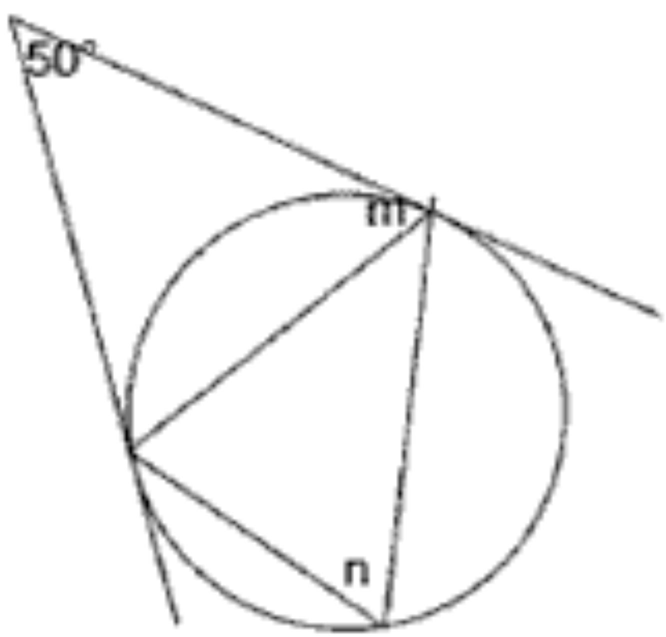
To work out b:

● = 360 – 116 = 244⁰ (angles around a point)

b = 360 – 244 – 25 – 88 = 3⁰ (angles in a quadrilateral)

Note: Lots of people would just put 25⁰ because it looks like it... but that would be a load of rubbish!

Example 4



m = (180 – 50) ÷ 2 = 65⁰

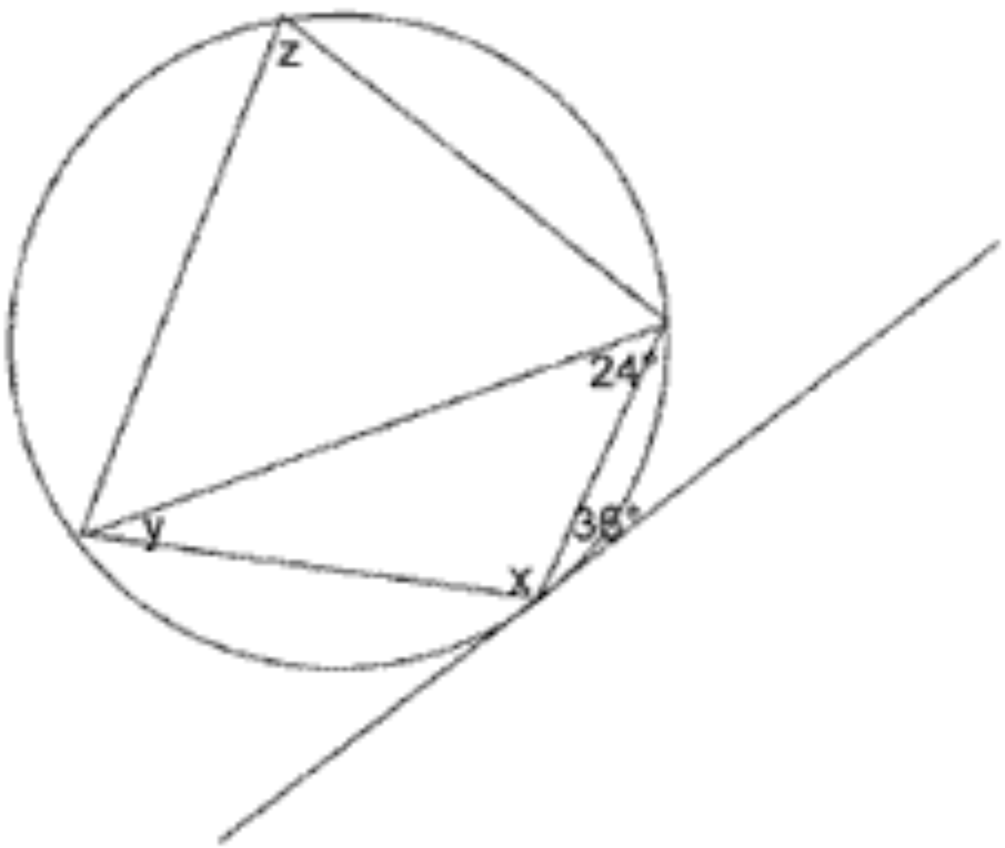
(Theorem 7 – two tangents, isosceles triangle)

n = 65⁰

(Theorem 6 – alternate segment)

Return to contents page

Example 5



$y = \underline{36^0}$

(Theorem 6 – alternate segment)

$x = 180 - 36 - 24 = \underline{120^0}$

(angles in a triangle)

$z = 180 - 120 = \underline{60^0}$

(Theorem 4 – cyclic quadrilateral)

Return to contents page

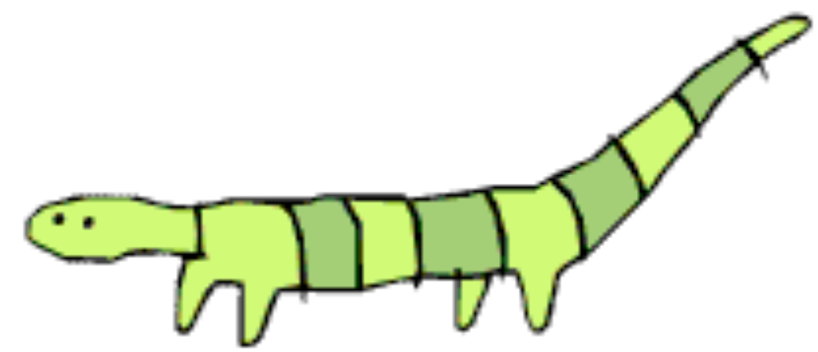
4. Loci

What on earth is Loci?

- Loci is all about tracing the paths of points as they move following certain rules

- It has many real-life applications, especially for architects and builders who want to make sure things go in the right place and they don't run out of room

- Note: If you are one of those people who doesn't like the number and algebra bits of maths, then this could be the very topic for you!



What we are going to do in this section

- Instead of going through how to do things like draw angle-bisectors, I am going to pick out a few of the classic type of Loci questions I have seen come up in exams in the past and take you through, step-by-step, how to do each one.

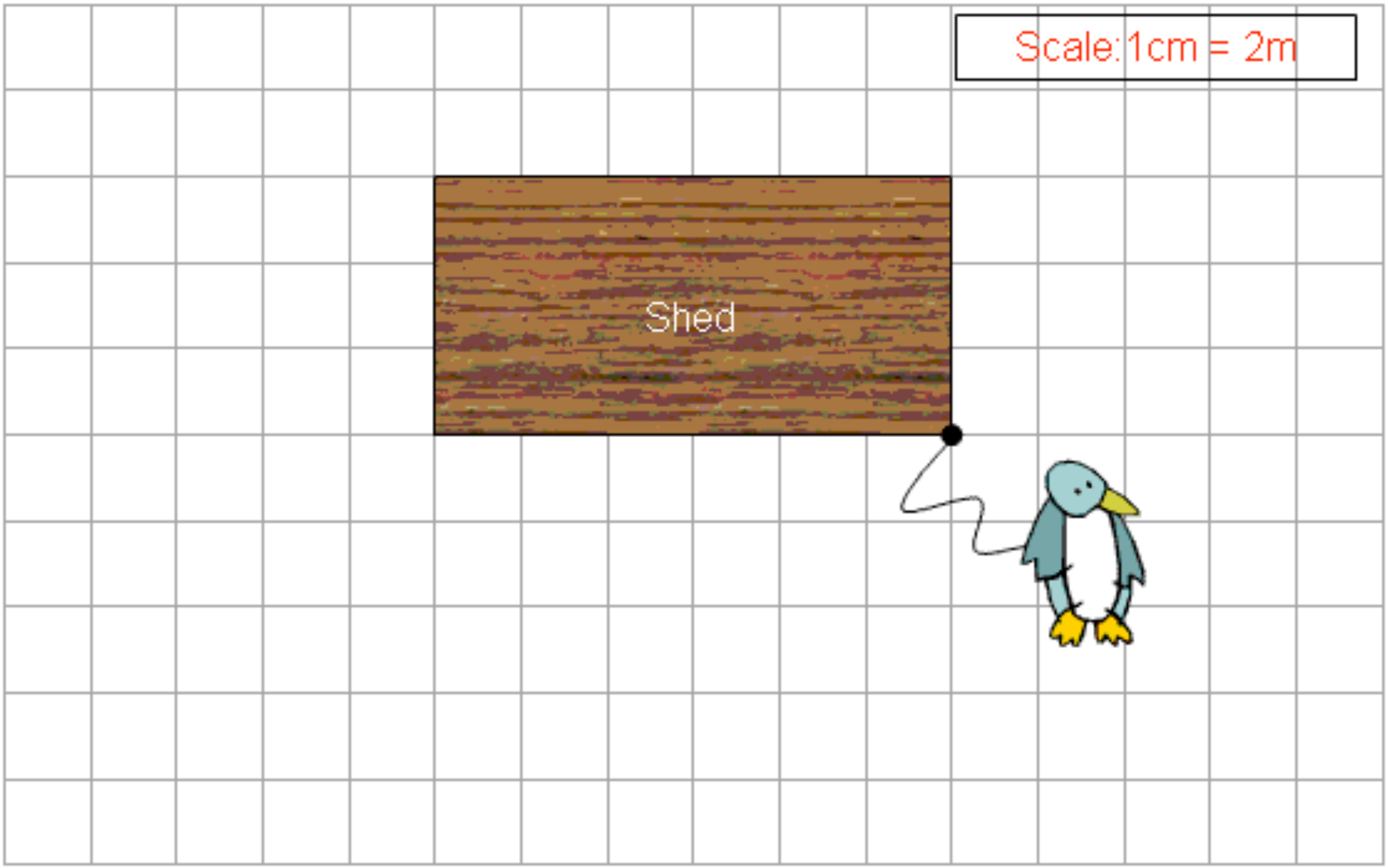
NOTE: It is probably worth while reading through 8. Constructions before carrying on, as some of the skills you need are explained in greater detail there!

Return to contents page

Example 1

My pet penguin has been tied up by a 10 metre rope to the corner of the shed as shown below. Draw and shade the area which my penguin can move

Skills needed: drawing circles with compass



Return to contents page

Steps:

1. Firstly, we need to sort out our scale – every 1cm square is equal to 2metres in real life – so the 10m rope our penguin is tied to is in fact… 5cms long!

2. Now, we want to see how far our penguin can go in all directions. So, we must draw a circle with our compass (radius 5cm) and with the centre at the point on the shed where the penguin is tied.

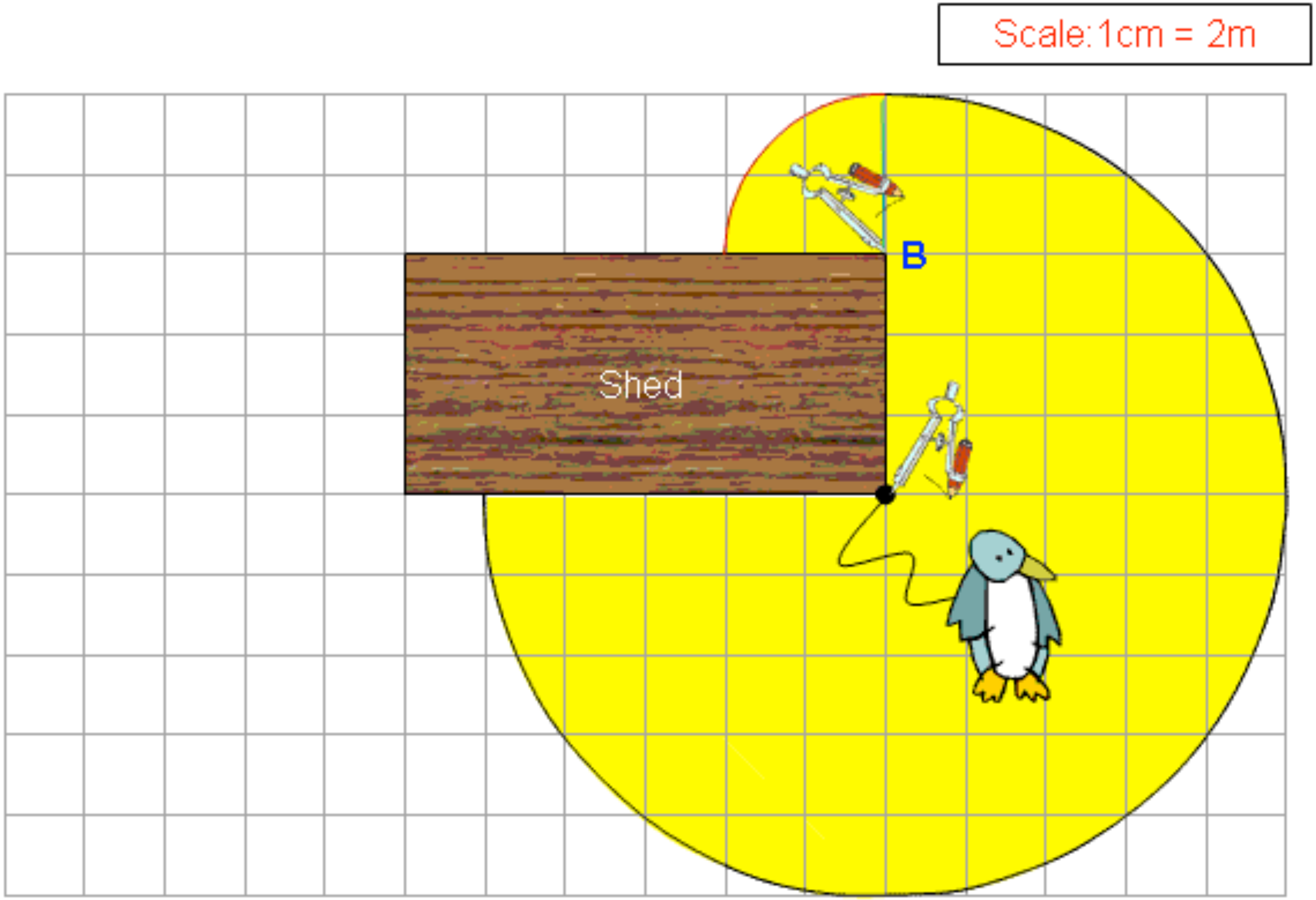
Watch Out! But that's not the full story… because walls of the shed prevent the penguin from going quite as far upwards – he cannot walk through walls!

He can go along the side of the shed to point B, which is 3cms away, and once he has reached this point, he can go another 2cms in any direction.

3. So… we must now set our compass again and draw a circle with radius 2cm and centre at point B.

4. We now have the area where the penguin can walk, so we can shade it in!

Return to contents page

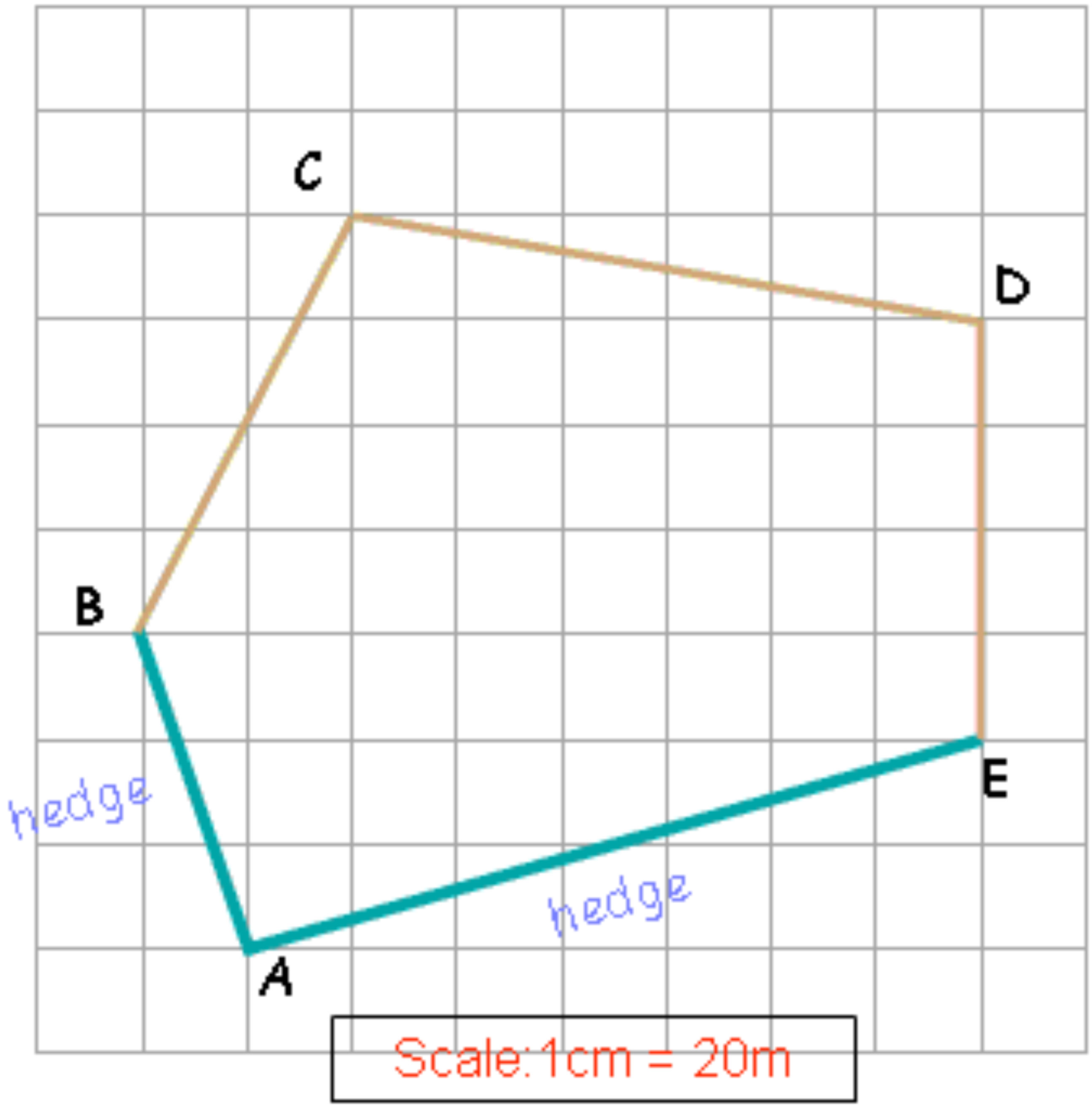


Return to contents page

Example 2

A farmer wants to lay a water pipe across his field so that it is equidistant from two hedges. He also wants to connect a sprinkler in the exact centre of the pipe, that waters the field for 40 metres in all directions.

Skills needed: bisecting angles and bisecting lines

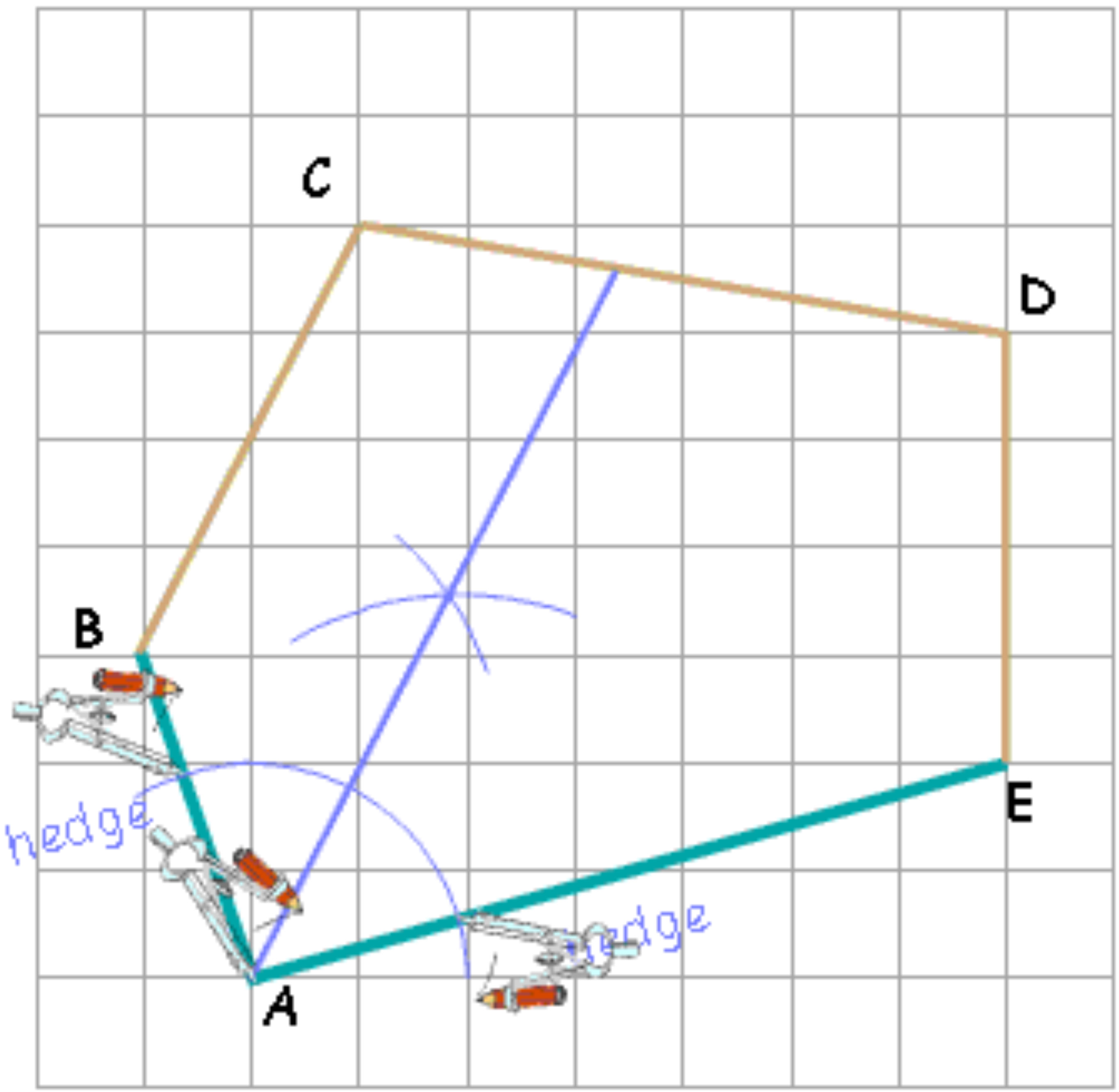


(a) Show the position of the pipe inside the field.

(b) Mark the point of connection for the sprinkler.

(c) Show the area of the field that is watered by the sprinkler.

Return to contents page



(a) Show the position of the pipe inside the field.

Steps:

1. Firstly, we need to realise what the question is asking... the pipe must always be the same distance from line AB as line AE... well, the only way to do that is to bisect the angle at A!

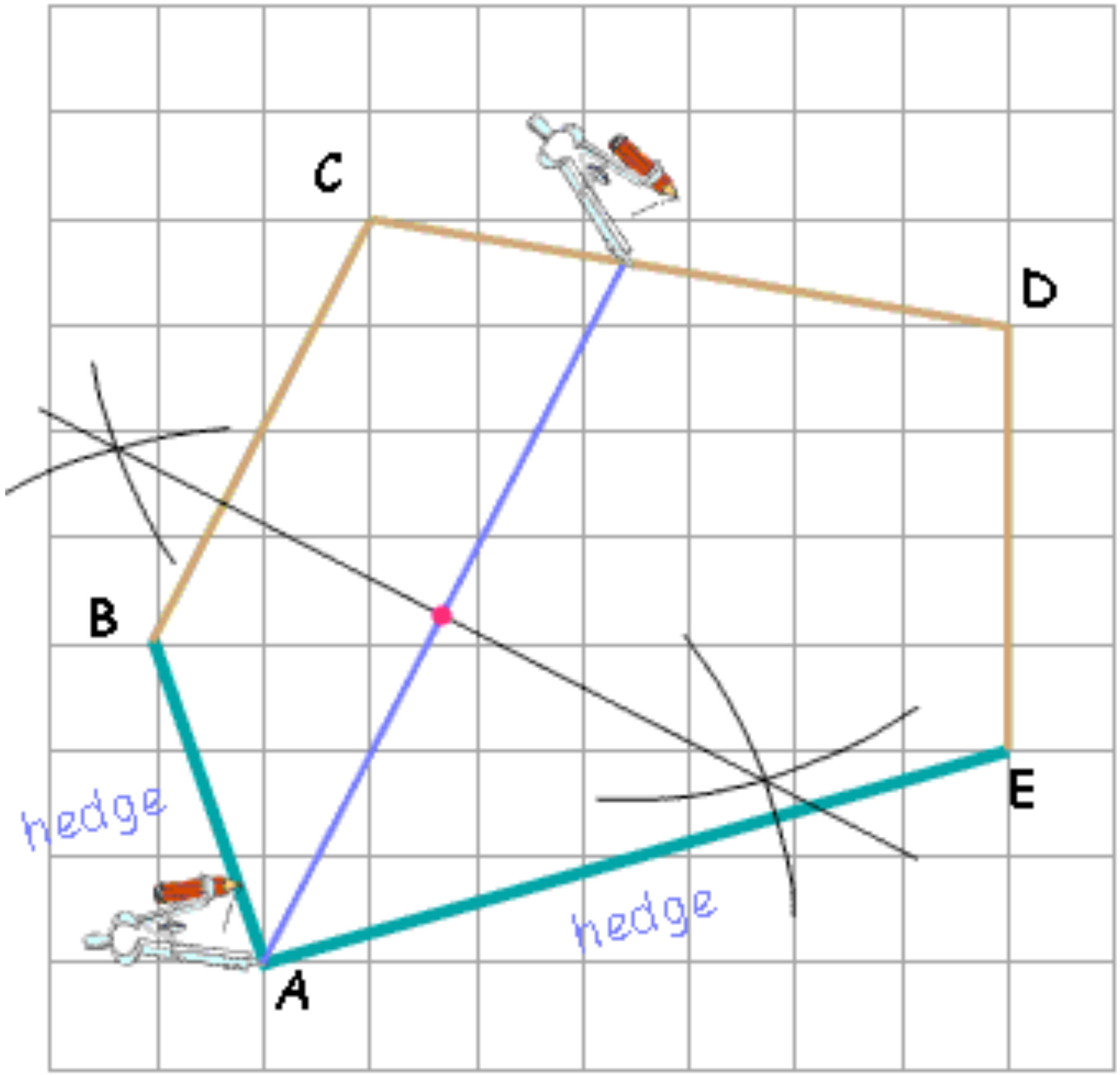
2. Place the pointy bit of your compass at A and mark a point on AE and AB

3. Now place your pointy bit on each of these new points and draw two arcs in the centre of the shape

4. Mark a new point where these two arcs cross

5. Draw a line that starts at A and goes through this crossing point and voila!... There is your pipe!

Return to contents page



(b) Mark the point of connection for the sprinkler.

Steps:

1. Okay, so we have to find the exact centre of the pipe. Now it might be tempting to try to do it with your ruler... but that's no fun, and more importantly, it's not accurate! Instead, we must bisect the line

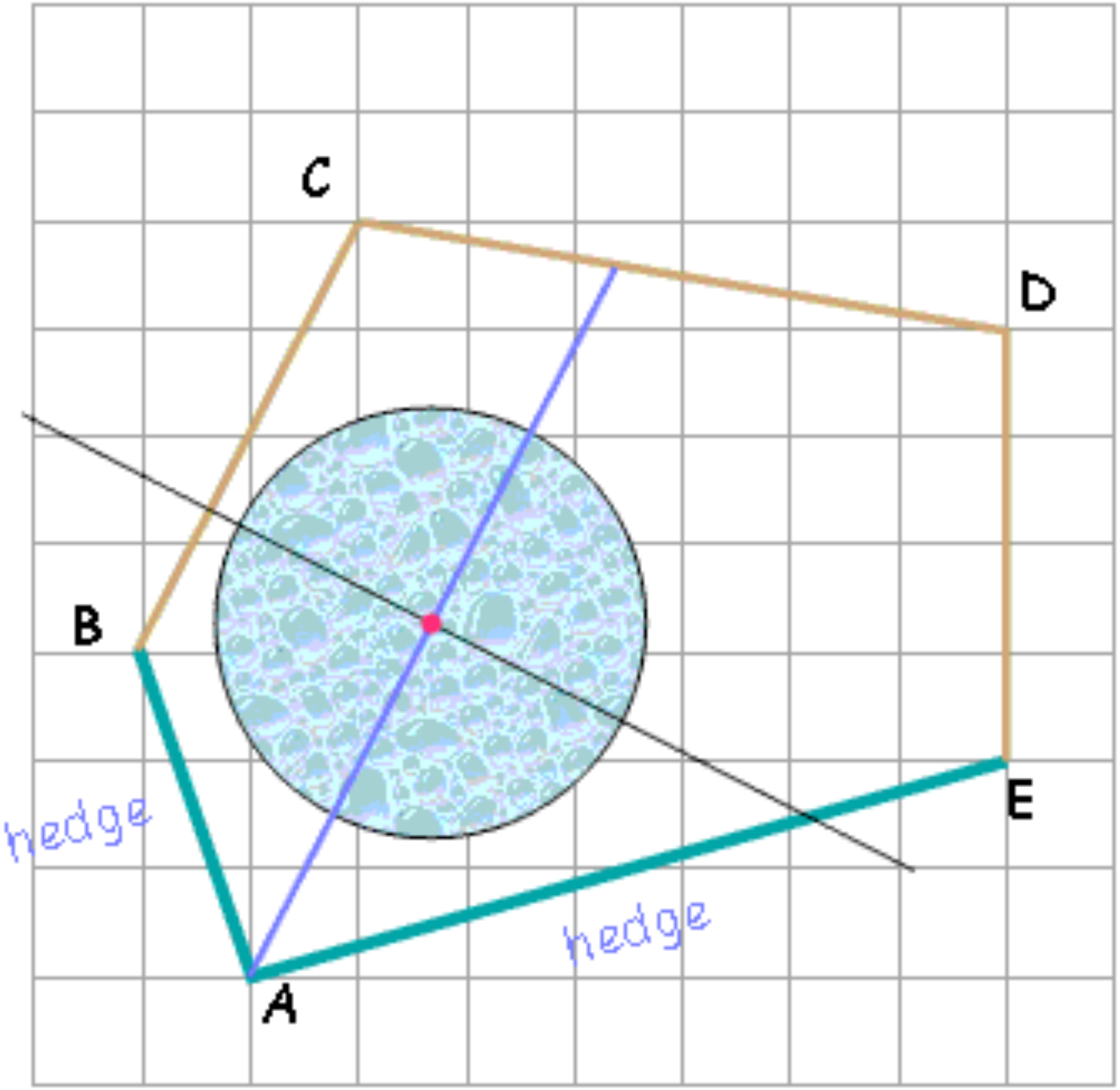
2. Place the pointy bit of your compass at A draw an arc on the right and an arc on the left

3. Place the pointy bit of the compass at the other end of the pipe and do the same.

4. Mark two points where these arcs cross

5. Draw a line through the two crossing points and where it hits the pipe is the exact centre!

Return to contents page

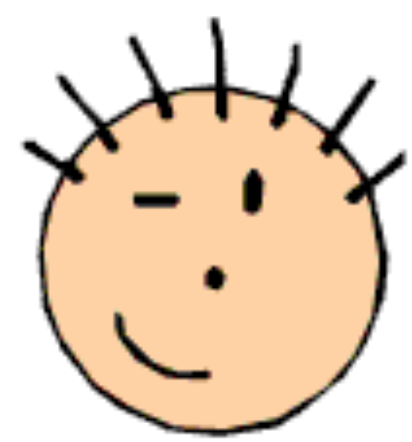


Scale: 1cm = 20m

(c) Show the area of the field that is watered by the sprinkler.

Steps:

1. First we must check our scale... 1cm = 20m, and we want to water 40m... so that is 2cm on our drawing!
2. The water can travel 2cm in all directions, so we must draw a circle
3. Place the pointy bit of the compass at the centre of the pipe and draw a circle with radius 2cm
4. Shade in the circle and you are done!



Return to contents page

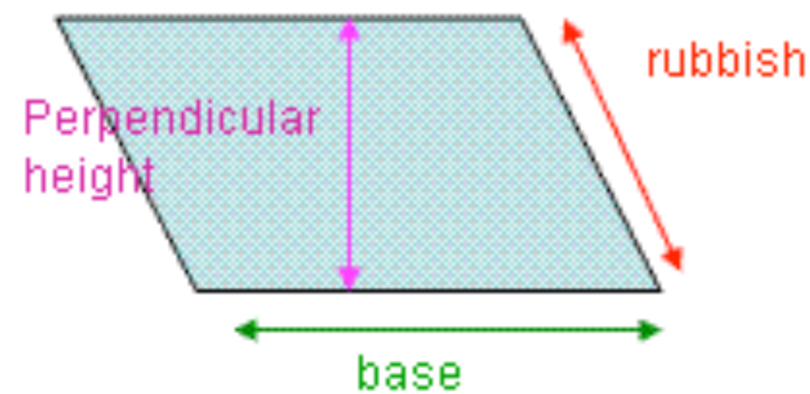
5. Area

A Quick Word about Area

- Working out the areas of shapes is easy... so long as you remember the formulas!
- Sometimes you will be given them in exams, but more often they need to be fixed in your head!

NEVER FORGET every time you work out an area, give your answer as SQUARED UNITS
e.g. m^2, cm^2, km^2, mm^2 etc

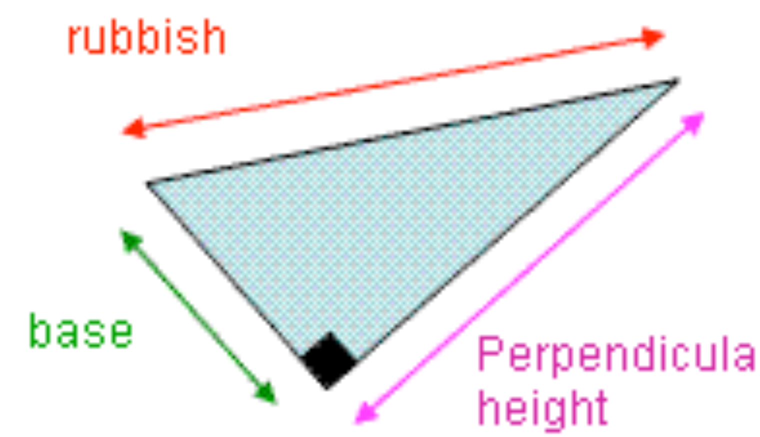
The Importance of Perpendicular Height



- As you will see, most of the formulas for area involve multiplying the base of the shape by it's height... but it's not just any old height!

- The height must be perpendicular to the base!

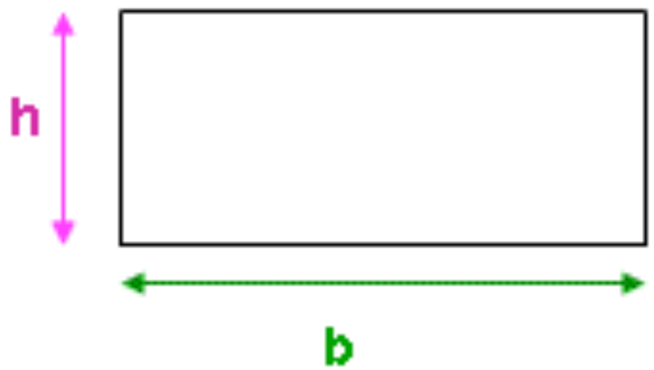
- What? All that means is that the height you measure must be at right angles (90^0) to the base



- So... if the base is horizontal (flat), then the height you want is vertical (straight up), not any slanted height that they may give you in the question to try and trip you up!

Return to contents page

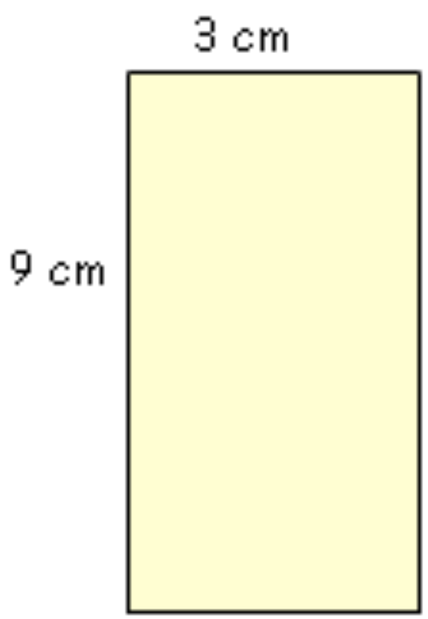
1. Rectangle



$$\text{Area} = b \times h$$

What to do: Multiply the base by the height!

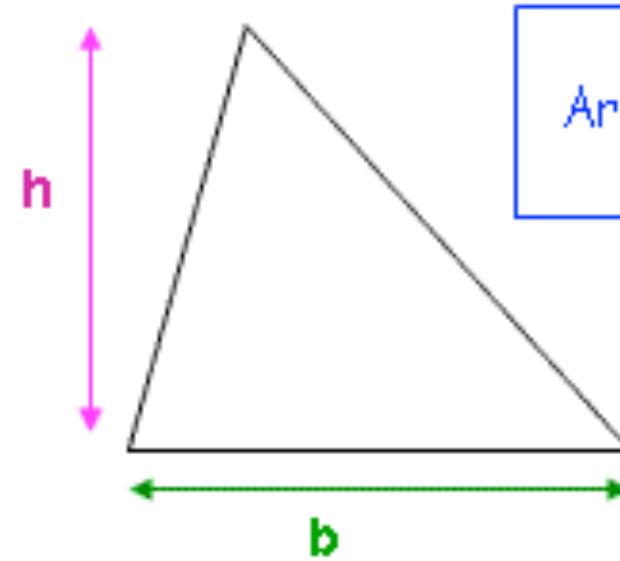
Example



$$\text{Area} = 9 \times 3$$

$$= \underline{27\text{cm}^2}$$

2. Triangle



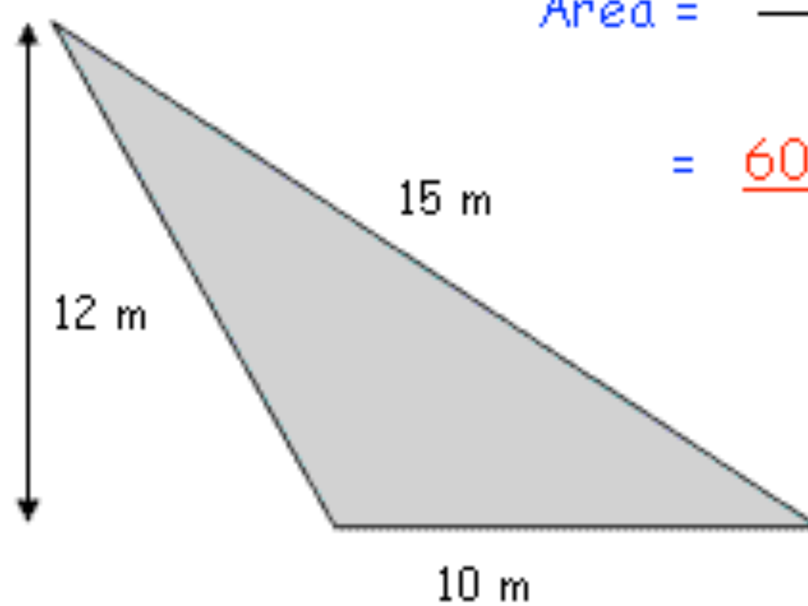
$$\text{Area} = \frac{b \times h}{2}$$

What to do: Multiply the base by the (perpendicular) height and remember to divide your answer by 2!

Example

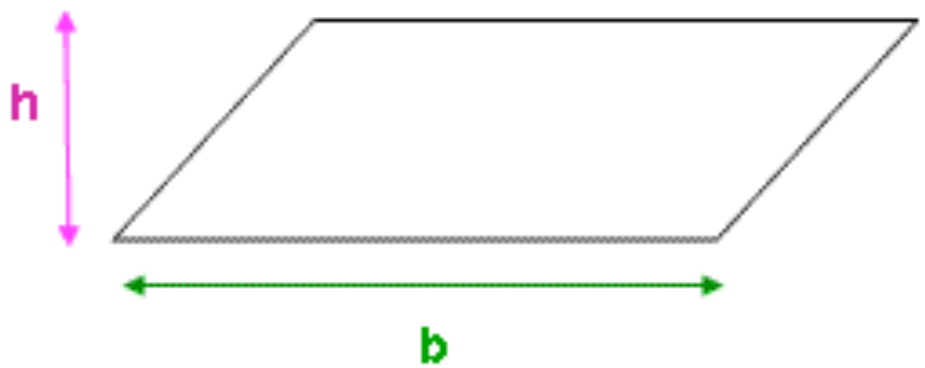
$$\text{Area} = \frac{10 \times 12}{2}$$

$$= \underline{60\text{m}^2}$$



Return to contents page

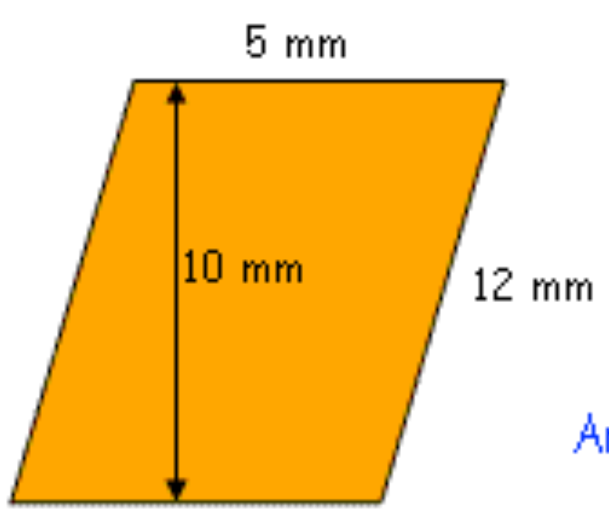
3. Parallelogram



$$\text{Area} = b \times h$$

What to do: Multiply the base by the perpendicular height… definitely not the slanted height!

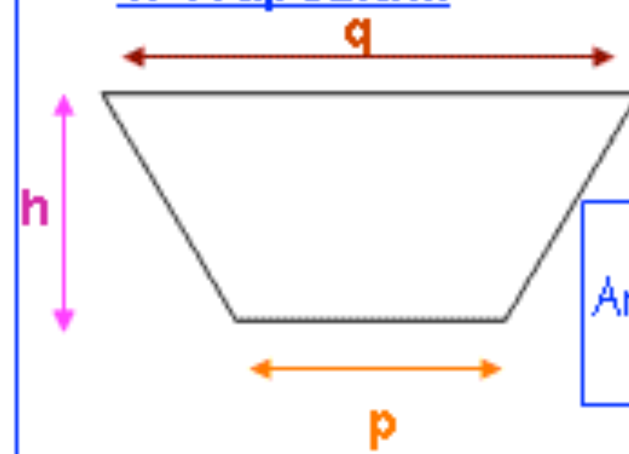
Example



$$\text{Area} = 5 \times 10$$

$$= \underline{50mm^2}$$

4. Trapezium



$$\text{Area} = \left(\frac{p + q}{2}\right) \times h$$

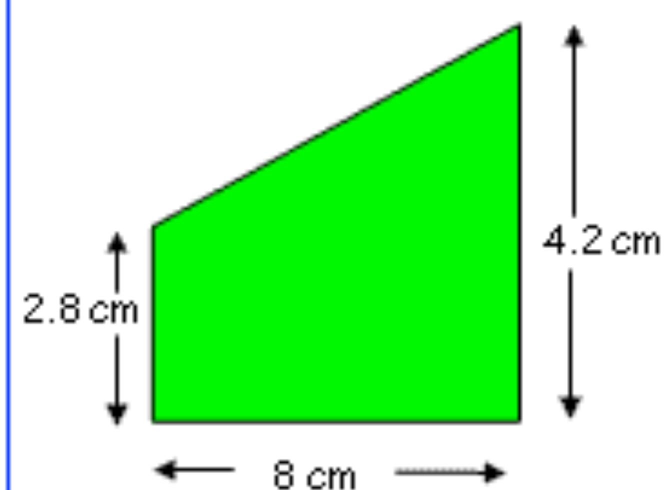
What to do: Add together the lengths of your two parallel sides and divide the answer by 2. This gives you the average length of your base. Then multiply this by the vertical height!

Example

$$\text{Area} = \left(\frac{2.8 + 4.2}{2}\right) \times 8$$

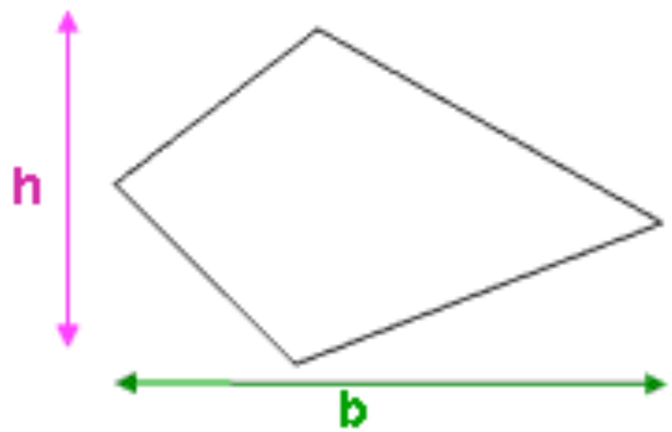
$$= 3.5 \times 8$$

$$= \underline{28cm^2}$$



Return to contents page

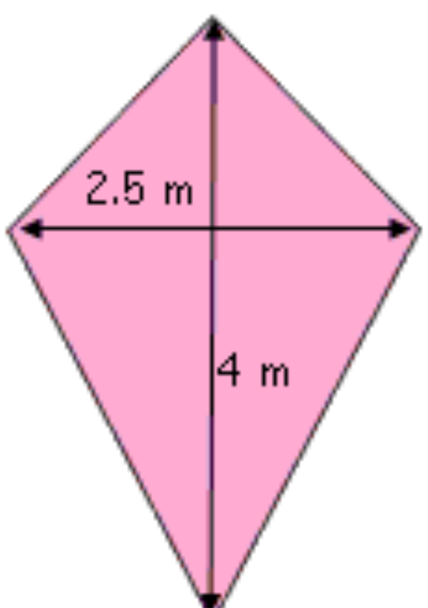
5. Kite



$\boxed{\text{Area} = b \times h}$

What to do: The base and height in a kite are just the two diagonals from point to point… so multiply them together!

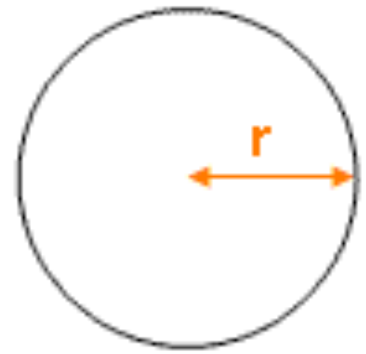
Example



$\text{Area} = 2.5 \times 4$

$= \underline{10\text{m}^2}$

6. Circle



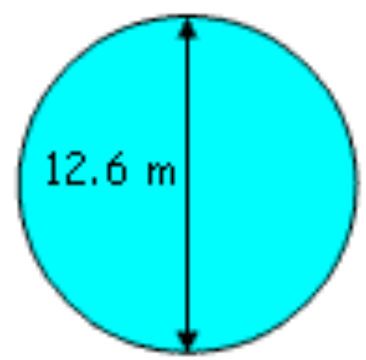
$\boxed{\text{Area} = \pi \times r^2}$

What to do: Find the radius of your circle (if you are given the diameter, just halve it!). Square the radius, and multiply your answer by pi!

Example

Diameter = 12.6 m

Radius = 6.3 m



$\text{Area} = \pi \times 6.3^2$

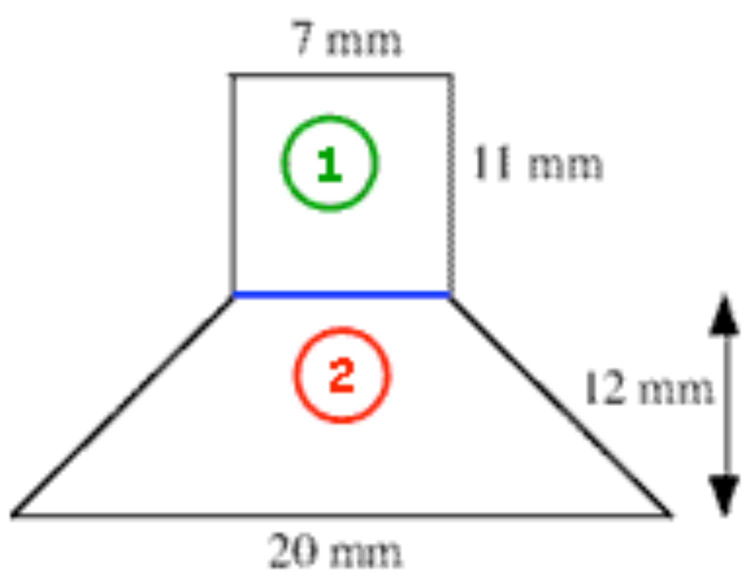
$= \pi \times 39.69$

$= \underline{124.7\text{ m}^2\text{ (1dp)}}$

Return to contents page

Compound Area

- Sometimes you are given quite complicated shapes and asked to work out the area.
- The technique here is to split them up into some of the 6 shapes you know how to work out the area of and just add together your answers!
- Try to be as clear as you can in your working to keep Mr Examiner happy!



I have chosen to split this shape up into a rectangle and a trapezium. It is also possible to split it up into rectangles and triangles. It is completely up to you!

1 Rectangle

$$\boxed{\text{Area} = b \times h}$$

$$\text{Area} = 7 \times 11 \quad = \underline{77\text{mm}^2}$$

2 Trapezium

$$\boxed{\text{Area} = \left(\frac{p + q}{2}\right) \times h}$$

$$\text{Area} = \left(\frac{20 + 7}{2}\right) \times 12 \quad = \underline{162\text{mm}^2}$$

Total Area

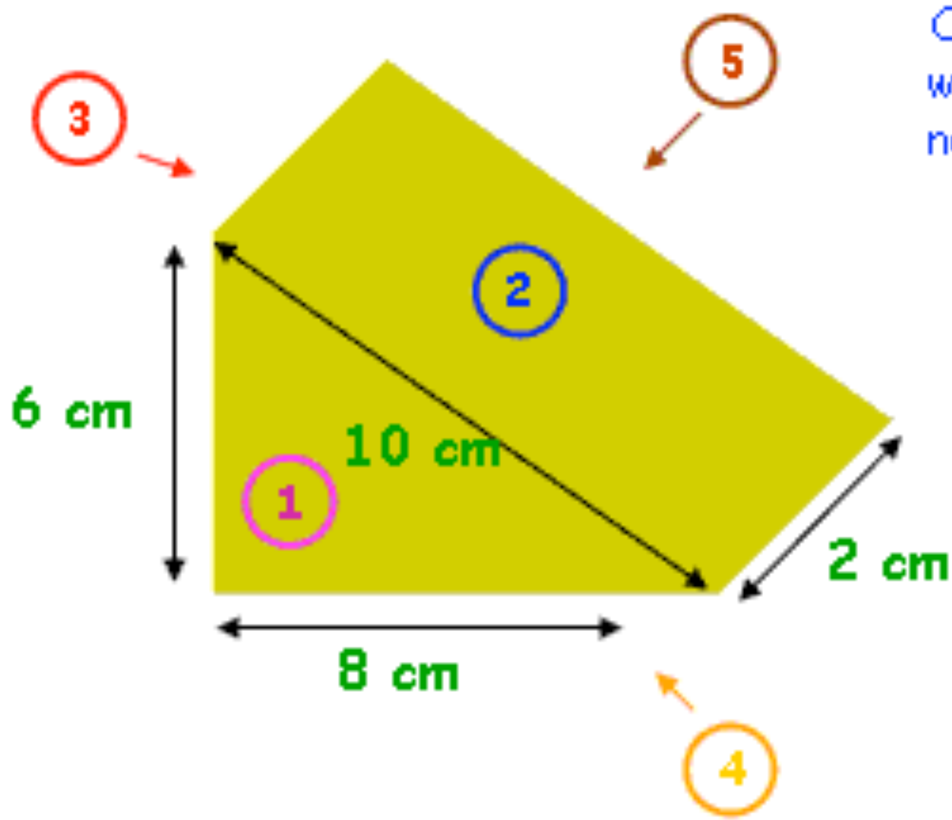
$77 + 162$

$= \underline{239\text{ mm}^2}$

Return to contents page

Surface Area

- I think of surface area as the exact amount of wrapping paper you would need to wrap up a 3D shape.
- People get themselves into a right muddle with surface area questions, mostly because they do not set them out properly and they end up forgetting sides or counting some twice!
- All you need to do is think about what flat 2D shape is on each side of your 3D object, work out its area, and tick off that side!
- It's just like compound area, only it gets you loads more marks!



Okay, so once again I am going to number each side, decide what shape it is, work out it's area, and then move onto the next!

1 Triangle

$$\boxed{\text{Area} = \frac{b \times h}{2}}$$

$$\text{Area} = \frac{6 \times 8}{2}$$

$$= \underline{24\text{cm}^2}$$

Return to contents page

2 Rectangle

$\boxed{\text{Area} = b \times h}$

Area = 2×10 = 20cm²

3 Rectangle

$\boxed{\text{Area} = b \times h}$

Area = 2×6 = 12cm²

4 Rectangle

$\boxed{\text{Area} = b \times h}$

Area = 8×2 = 16cm²

5 Triangle

Exact same shape as 1

Area = 24cm²

Total Area

24 + 20 + 12 + 16 + 24

= 96 cm²

Return to contents page

6. Volume

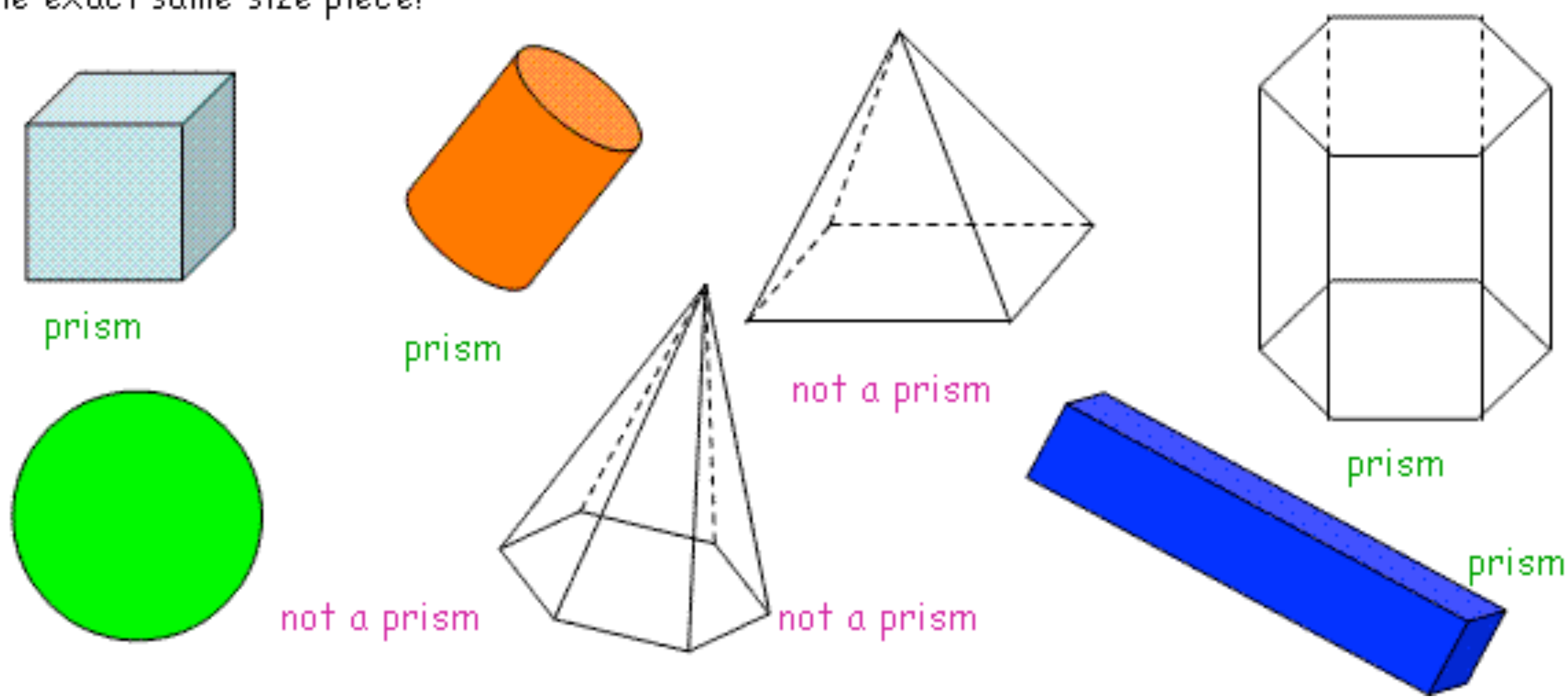
The Beauty of the Prism

Good News: So long as you know what a prism is, and you remember how to work out the areas of those 6 shapes we talked about in the last section (5. Area), you can do pretty much any volume question without needing any more formulas!... But remember your answers are UNITS CUBED!

What is a Prism?

A Prism is a 3D object whose face is the exact same shape throughout the object.

A birthday cake is the shape of a prism if it is possible to cut it in such a way to give everyone the exact same size piece!



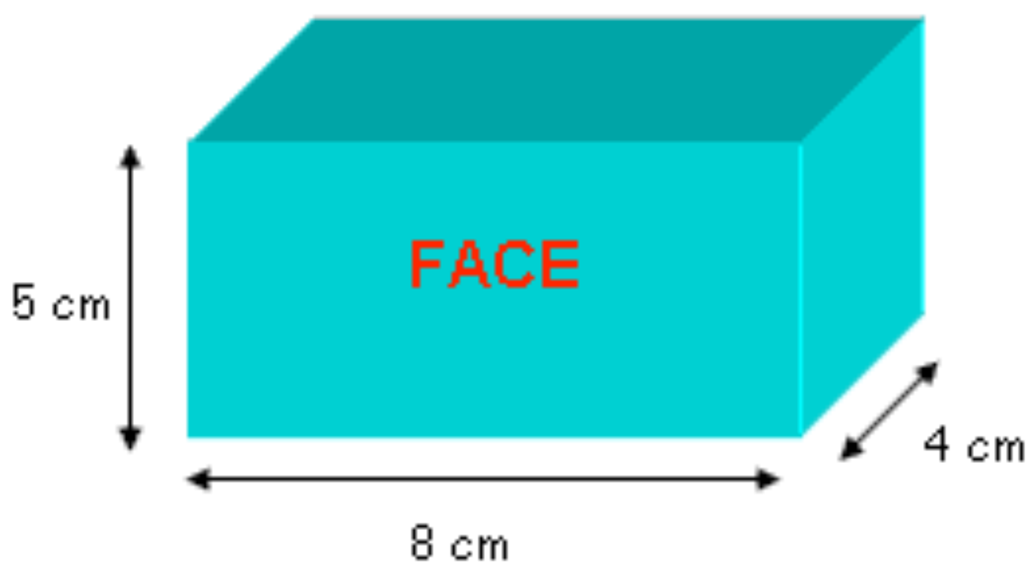
Return to contents page

Working out the Volume of a Prism

So long as you can work out the area of the repeating face of the prism, the formula for the volume is the same for every single one:

$$\boxed{\text{Volume of a Prism} = \text{Area of Repeating Face} \times \text{Length}}$$

Example 1 – Cuboid



Area of Repeating Face

Rectangle

$$\boxed{\text{Area} = b \times h}$$

$$\text{Area} = 8 \times 5 = 40\text{cm}^2$$

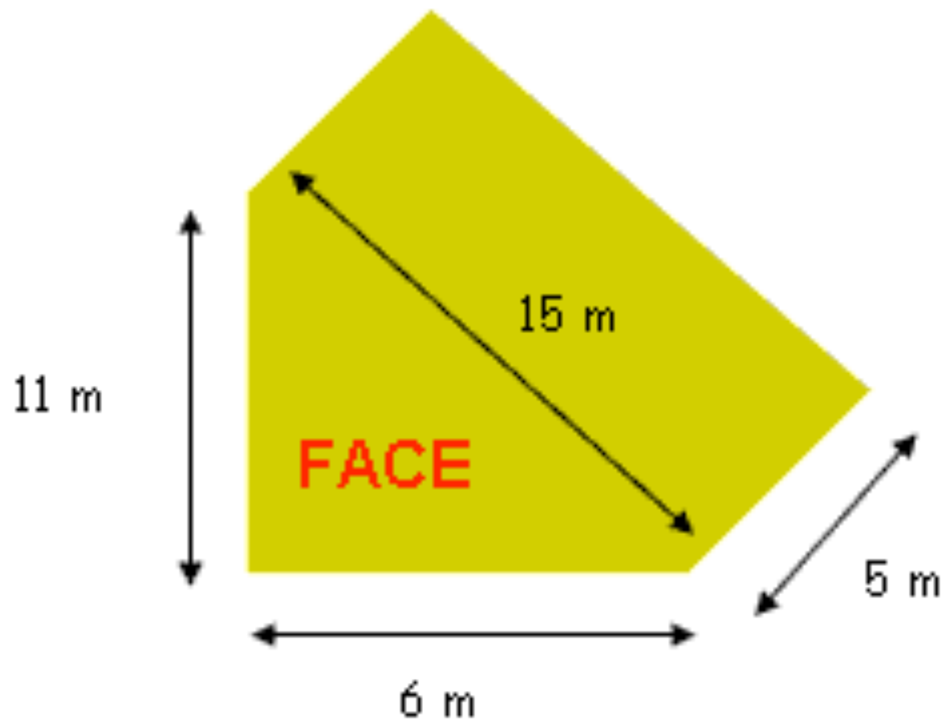
Volume of Prism

$$40 \times 4$$

$$= 160\text{cm}^3$$

Return to contents page

Example 2 – Triangular Based Prism



Area of Repeating Face

Triangle

$$\boxed{\text{Area} = \frac{b \times h}{2}}$$

$$\text{Area} = \frac{6 \times 11}{2}$$

$$= 33\text{m}^2$$

Volume of Prism

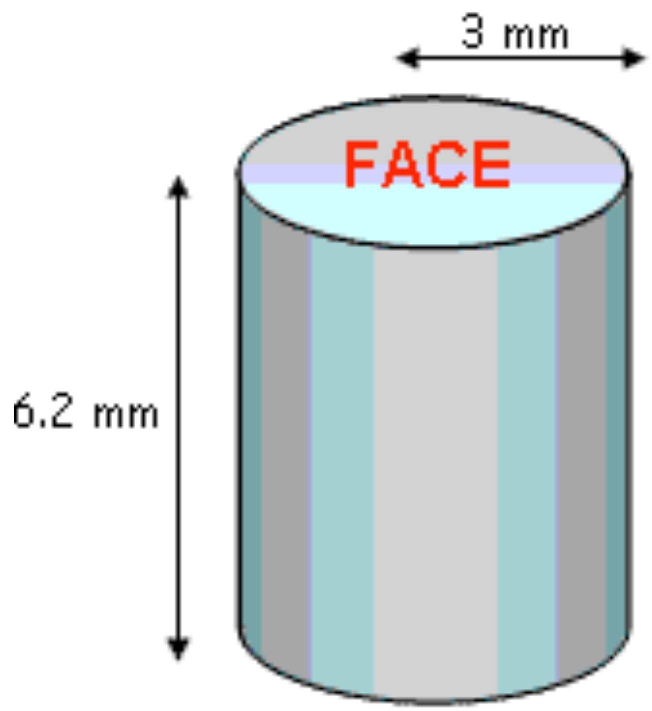
$$33 \times 5$$

$$= 165\text{m}^3$$

Note: Don't think you must use every measurement they give you. The 15m turned out to be pretty useless to us!

Return to contents page

Example 3 – Cylinder



Area of Repeating Face

Circle

$$\boxed{\text{Area} = \pi \times r^2}$$

$$\text{Area} = \pi \times 3^2$$

$$= \pi \times 9$$

$$= 28.274\ldots \text{ mm}^2$$

Note: Keep this value in your calculator and use it for the next sum. It keeps your answer nice and accurate!

Volume of Prism

$$28.274\ldots \times 6.2$$

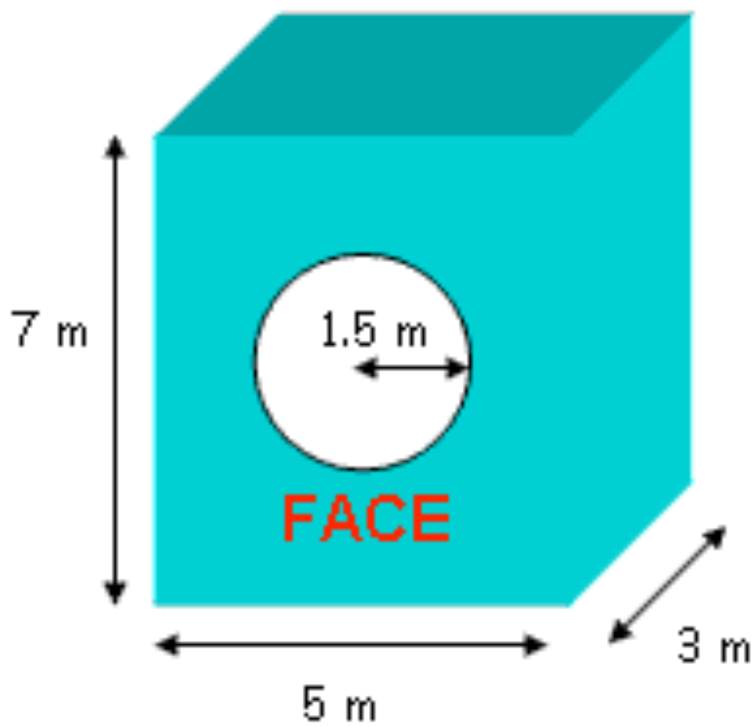
$$= 175.3\text{mm}^3 \text{ (1dp)}$$

Note: Sometimes "length" can mean "height" when you are working out the volume of the prism. It just depends which way the repeating face is facing!

Return to contents page

Example 4 – Complicated Prism

Note: This is still a prism as the front face repeats throughout the object!



Area of Repeating Face

This time it's a bit more complicated as we cannot work out the area of the face in one go. We must first work out the area of the complete rectangle, and then SUBTRACT the area of the missing circle to get our answer!

Rectangle

$$\boxed{\text{Area} = b \times h}$$

$$\text{Area} = 7 \times 5$$

$$= 35\text{m}^2$$

Circle

$$\boxed{\text{Area} = \pi \times r^2}$$

$$\text{Area} = \pi \times 1.5^2$$

$$= \pi \times 2.25$$

$$= 7.068\ldots\ \text{m}^2$$

Area of Repeating Face $= 35 - 7.068\ldots$

$= 27.931\ldots$

Volume of Prism

$$27.931 \times 3$$

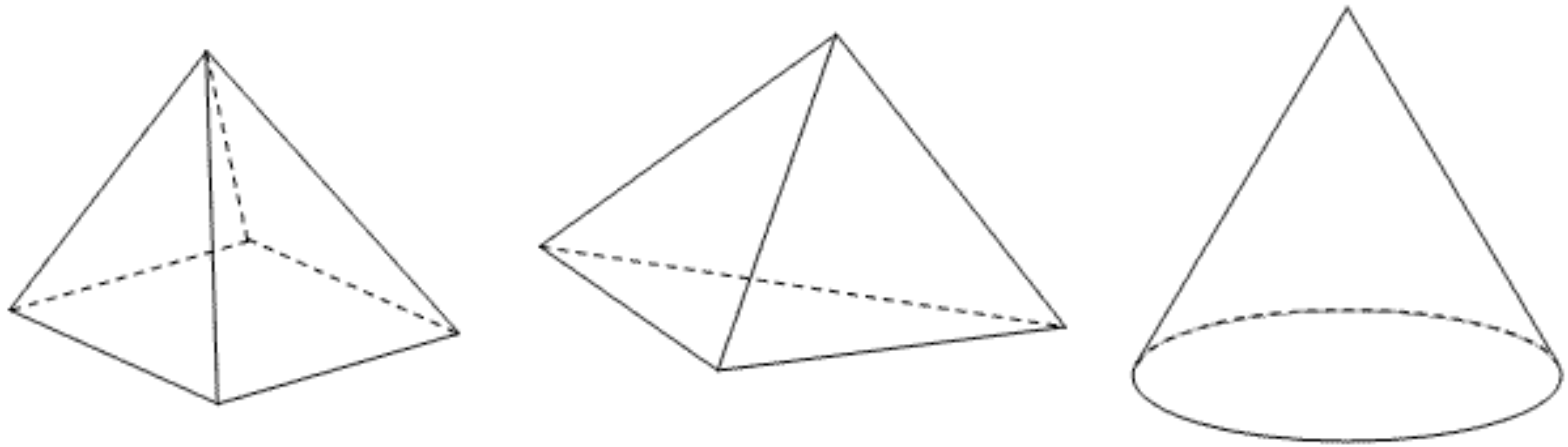
$= 83.8\text{m}^3$ (1dp)

Note: Try to avoid rounding in your working out by keeping the big numbers in the calculator, and then only round at the end!

Return to contents page

Working out the Volume of Pointy Shapes

Obviously, not all 3D shapes have a repeating face. Some shapes start off with a flat face and end up at a point. The technical name I have given to these shapes is... Pointy Shapes!

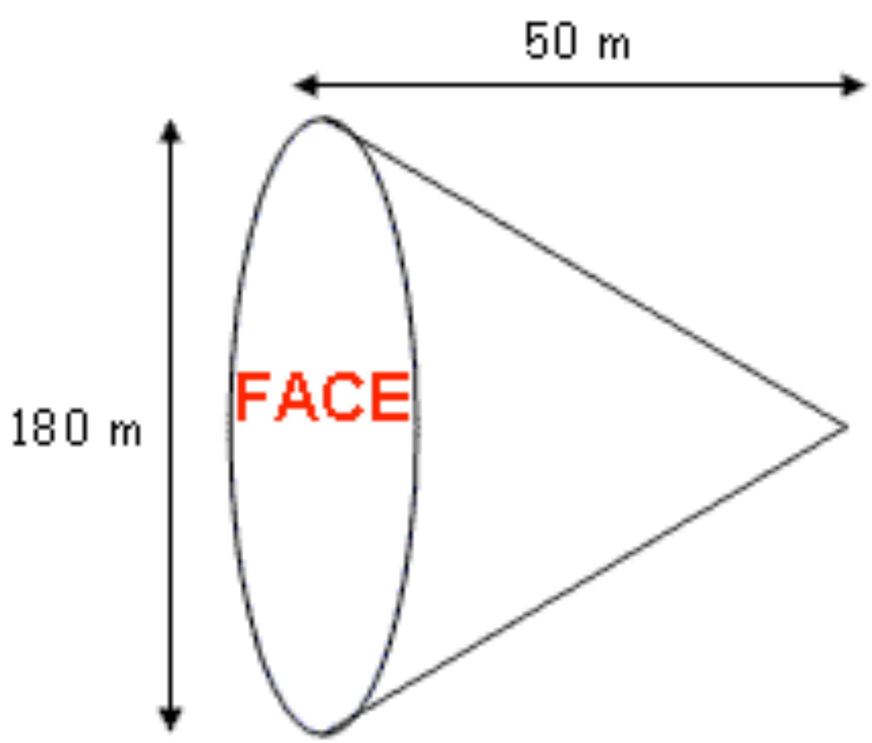


More Good News: Just like prisms, there is a general rule for working out the volume of all shapes like these:

$$\text{Volume of a Pointy Shape} = \frac{\text{Area of Face} \times \text{Length}}{3}$$

Return to contents page

Example 4 – Cone



Area of Face

Circle

$$\boxed{\text{Area} = \pi \times r^2}$$

Diameter = 180m

Radius = 90 m

$$\text{Area} = \pi \times 90^2$$

$$= \pi \times 8100$$

= 25,446.9... m²

Note: Keep this value in your calculator and use it for the next sum. It keeps your answer nice and accurate!

Volume of Pointy Shape

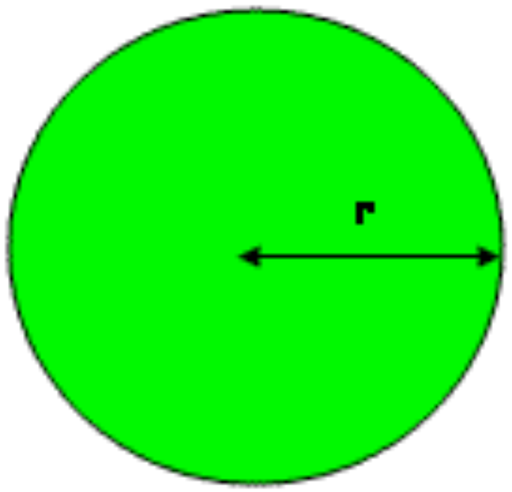
$$\frac{25,446.9... \times 50}{3}$$

= 424,115 m³ (nearest whole number)

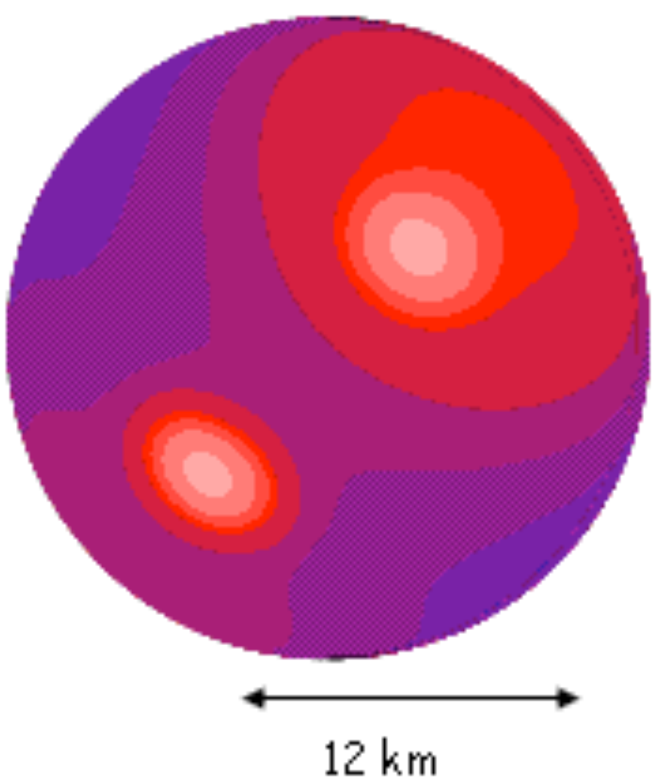
Return to contents page

Example 5 – Sphere

Spheres do not have a repeating face, and they do not end in a pointy bit, so they have a rule all to themselves, and here it is...



Volume of a Sphere $= \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$



Volume of Sphere

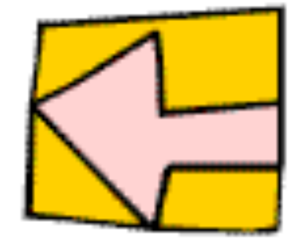
$$\frac{4}{3} \times \pi \times 120^3$$

$$= \frac{4}{3} \times \pi \times 1{,}728{,}000$$

$$= 7{,}238{,}229\ km^3$$

Return to contents page

7. Dimensions



What are Dimensions?

You may have heard people taking about dimensions in terms of objects:

One Dimension (1D)

Objects have just a LENGTH

Units of measurement include:

cm, mm, km, m, mile, etc

Two Dimensions (2D)

Objects have an AREA

Units of measurement include:

cm^2, mm^2, km^2, m^2, etc

Three Dimensions (3D)

Objects have a VOLUME

Units of measurement include:

cm^3, mm^3, km^3, m^3, etc

Four Dimensions (4D)

Objects exist in different times!

Fortunately we don't need to worry about this!

Return to contents page

The advantage of knowing this is that when we are given a formula, we can tell whether it is one for LENGTH, AREA, VOLUME, or just a load of rubbish!

Using Dimensions to Discover what Formulas are actually Working Out

Again, this is just my way of doing this, and feel free to bin it if you have a better one!

1. Change all the variables in the formula to the letter **D**

Note: Variables are just letters that represent lengths, widths and heights

2. Ignore all numbers (apart from powers!) and constants

Note: If a letter represents a constant instead of a variable, it will well you in the question
Remember: pi (π) is just a number!

3. You should now be left with an expression just containing D's, which you can use your algebra skills to simplify

Crucial: When you are simplifying, DO NOT cancel anything out! You'll see why in the examples!

4. Look at what you are left with. If the formula only contains...

D	-	this is a formula for length
D^2	-	this is a formula for area
D^3	-	this is a formula for volume
Any combination	-	this formula is rubbish!

Return to contents page

Examples

In all the following examples, l, w and h are variables representing lengths, and k is a constant

Determine whether these formulas calculate length, area, volume or nothing

1. $5wh$

1. Okay, so our variables are w and h, and they become **D**

$5DD$

2. Let's get rid of our number

DD

3. We only have D's left in our expression, so it's looking good! Now, let's use our algebra skills to simplify, remembering that in algebra the multiplication sign is disguised!

D^2

4. We are left with: D^2

Which means this is a formula for… AREA

Return to contents page

$\boxed{2.}$ $$7h(l-w)+2w^2$$

1. Okay, so our variables are w, l and h, and they become **D**

$$7D(D-D)+2D^2$$

2. Let's get rid of our numbers

$$D(D-D)+D^2$$

3. Now it's time to simplify… but be careful! It's fine to expand our brackets, but do not cancel anything out!

$$D^2-D^2+D^2$$

4. We are left with a formula that just contains: D^2

Which means this is a formula for… AREA

Return to contents page

3. $$\frac{2}{3}h(lh+\pi w-h^2)$$

1. Okay, so our variables are w, l and h, and they become **D**

$$\frac{2}{3}D(DD+\pi D-D^2)$$

2. Let's get rid of our numbers... remember, pi (π) is just a number, and so are fractions!

$$D(DD+D-D^2)$$

3. Now it's time to simplify... but be careful! It's fine to expand our brackets, but do not cancel anything out! I'm going to do this in two stages!

$$D(D^2+D-D^2)$$

$$\rightarrow D^3+D^2-D^3$$

4. We are left with a formula that contains a mixture of:

D^2 and D^3

Which means this formula is a load of rubbish

Return to contents page

$\boxed{4.}$

$$\frac{5h^3 + 2lw^2 - hlw}{6}$$

1. Okay, so our variables are w, l and h, and they become D

$$\frac{5D^3 + 2DD^2 - DDD}{6}$$

2. Let's get rid of our numbers...

$$D^3 + DD^2 - DDD$$

3. Now it's time to simplify... but be careful! We are definitely not going to cancel anything out!

$$D^3 + D^3 - D^3$$

4. We are left with a formula that only contains: D^3

Which means this formula is for volume

Return to contents page

$\boxed{5.}$

$$\frac{kl^3 + \pi h w^2}{8hl}$$

1. Okay, so our variables are w, l and h, and they become **D**

$$\frac{kD^3 + \pi D D^2}{8DD}$$

2. Let's get rid of our numbers... and our constant K!

$$\frac{D^3 + DD^2}{DD}$$

3. Now it's time to simplify... I'm going to simplify the terms on the top and bottom first, and then divide the top by the bottom!

$$\frac{D^3 + D^3}{D^2}$$

$$\longrightarrow \quad D + D$$

4. We are left with a formula that only contains: D

Which means this formula is for length

Return to contents page

8. Constructions

What are Constructions?

- Constructions are what maths used to be all about before computers came in and made life just a bit too easy!

- The Ancient Greeks and the Egyptians were fascinated by constructions, and their discoveries form the basis of many of the important concepts in the shape and space branch of mathematics.

- Constructions rely on the use of just a compass and a ruler to do some pretty tricky and pretty impressive things

- I will cover some basic skills in this section, but you should also have a good read through 4. Loci, as that shows you some practical uses for these skills

- Note: If you are the type of person who just hates algebra, wishes fractions were never invented, and would not care if they did not see another percentage for the rest of their lives, then this type of maths might be just for you!

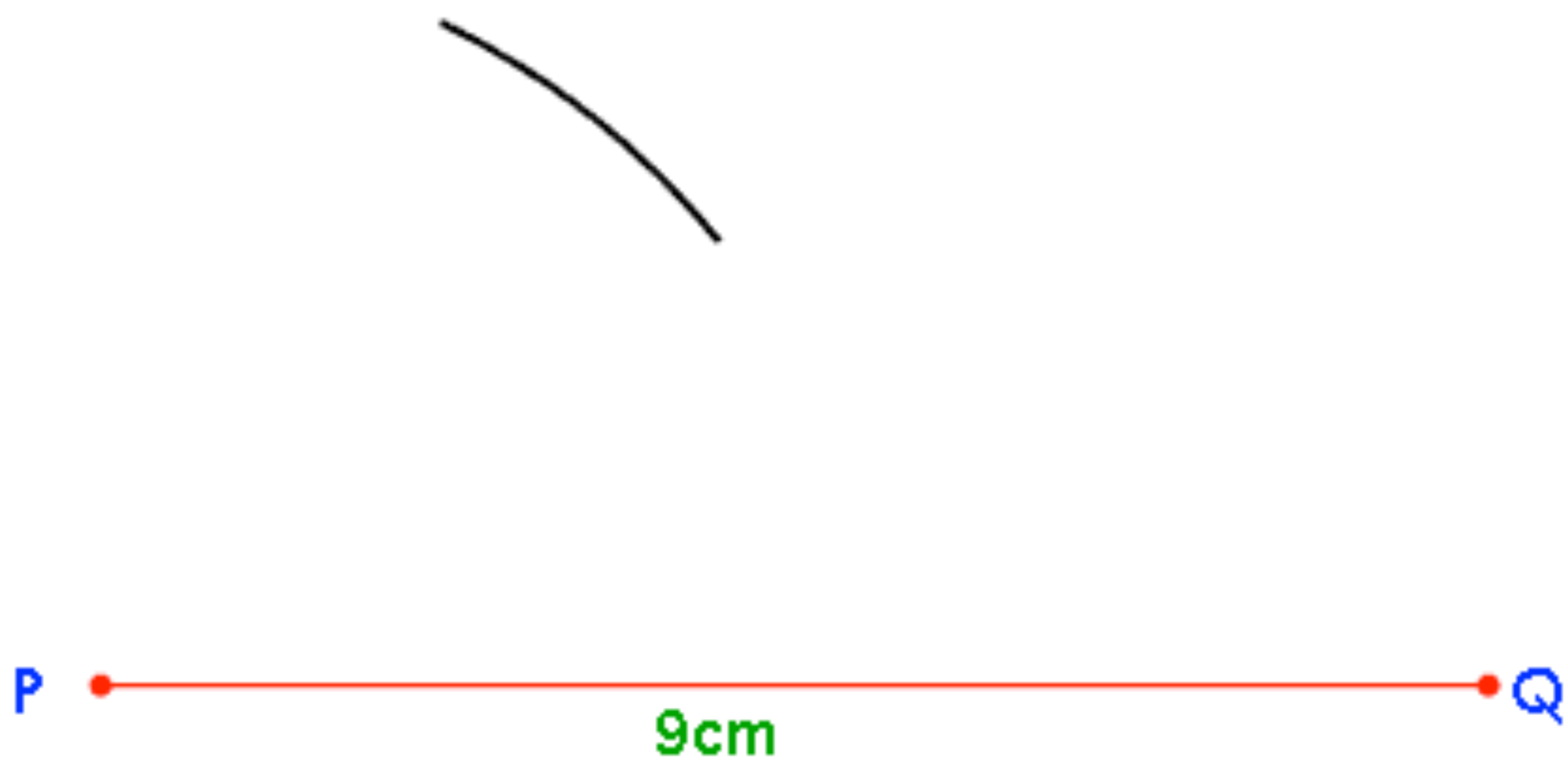
Return to contents page

1. Drawing a Triangle Given 3 Sides

Construct the triangle PQR with sides: PQ = 18cm, PR = 10cm and QR = 14cm

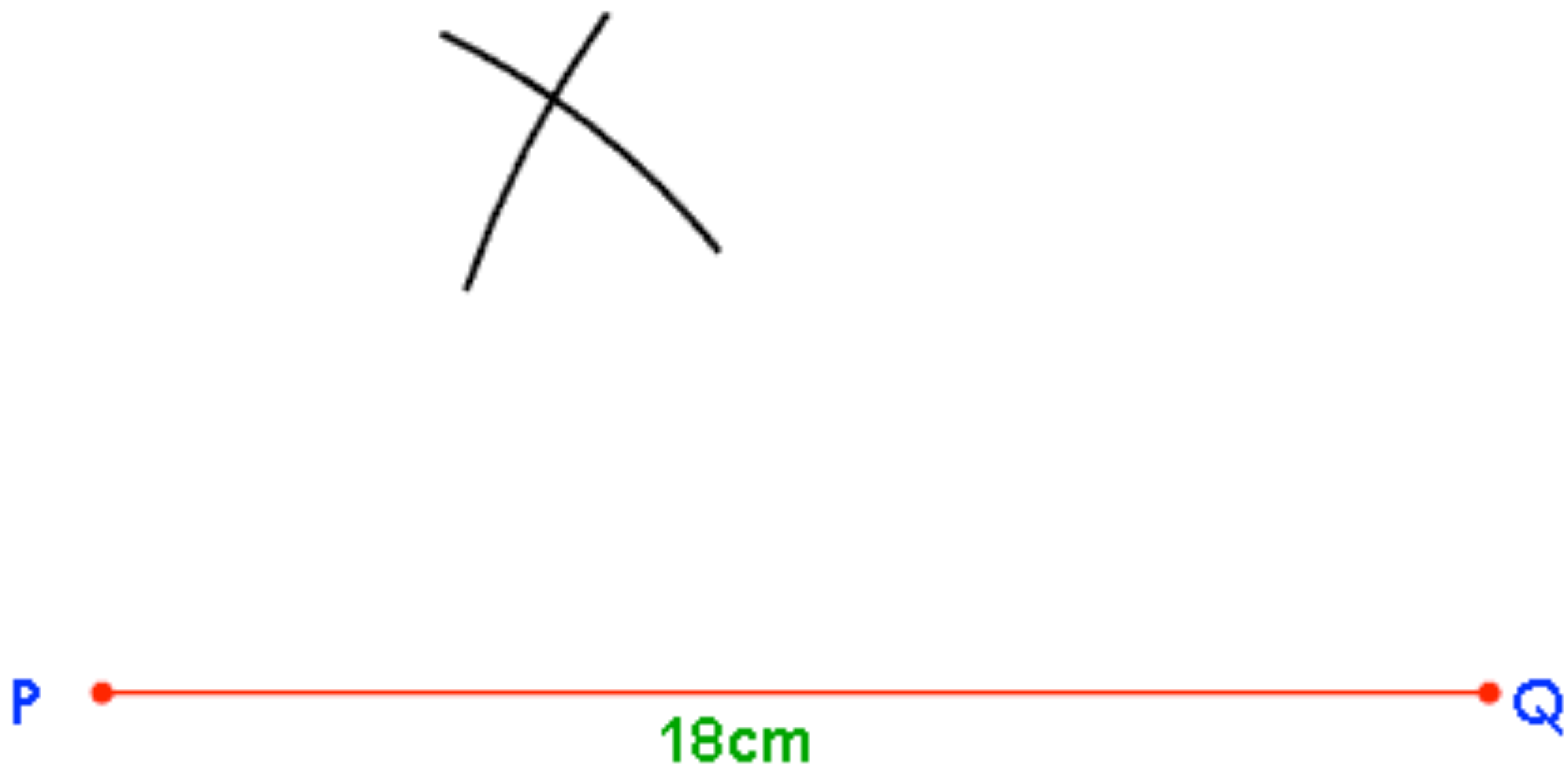
1. Select the longest side as your base, and carefully draw a horizontal line 18cm long, labelling the ends **P** and **Q**

2. Set your compass to 10cm, place the pointy bit at **P**, and draw an arc:



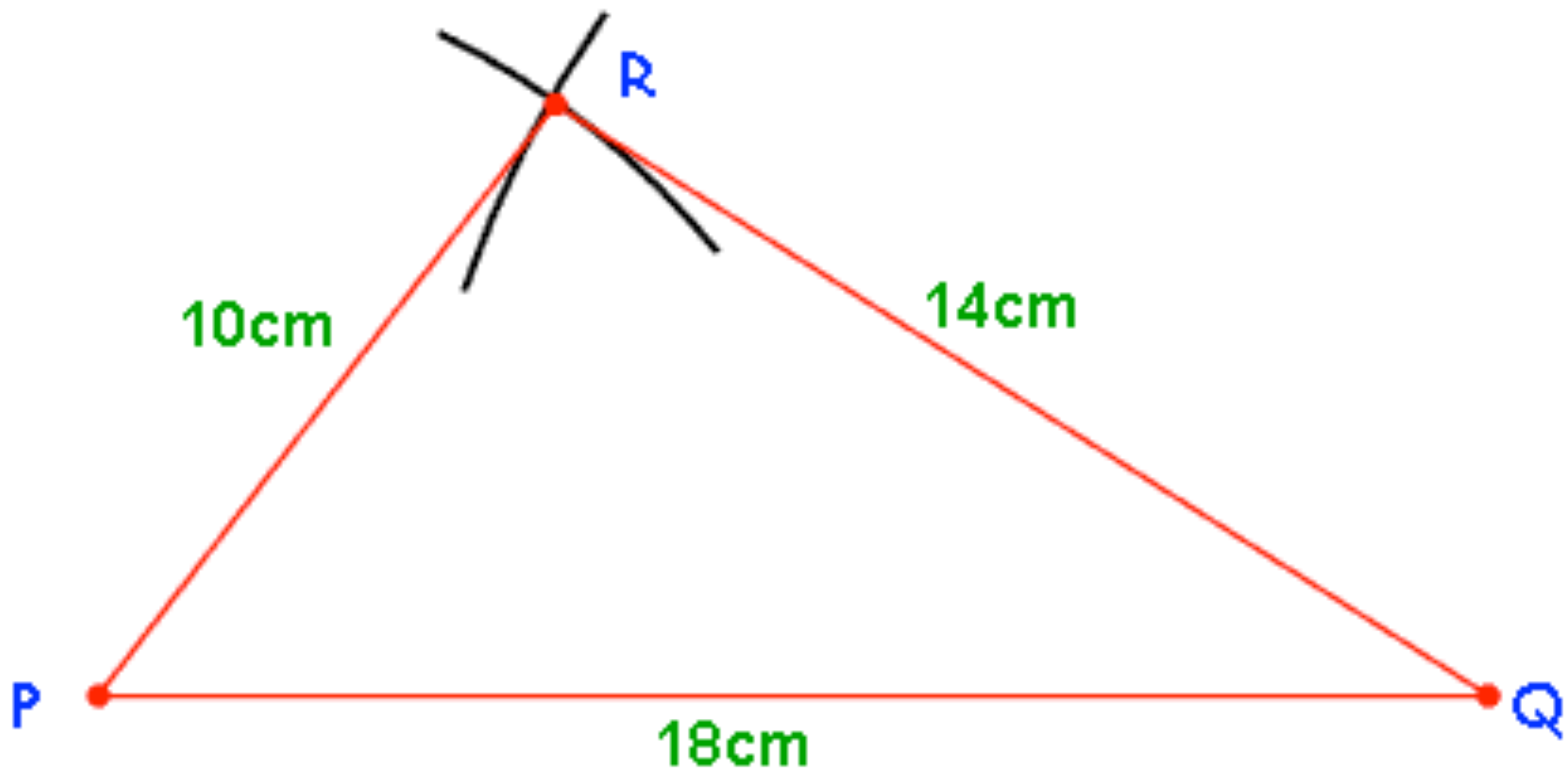
Return to contents page

3. Now set your compass to 14cm, place the pointy bit at Q and draw and arc:



Return to contents page

4. Label the point where these two arcs meet **R**, join up your lines, and check with a ruler that you have got your measurements correct!



NOTE: Never rub out your construction lines!

NOTE: If you wanted to construct an Equilateral Triangle, then whatever length you choose for your base, just make sure you set your compass to the exact same length for both of your arcs!

Return to contents page

2. Drawing a Perpendicular Bisector

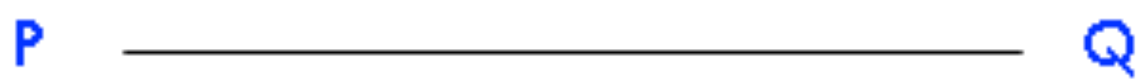
What does that mean?

Perpendicular: At right angles (90^{o})

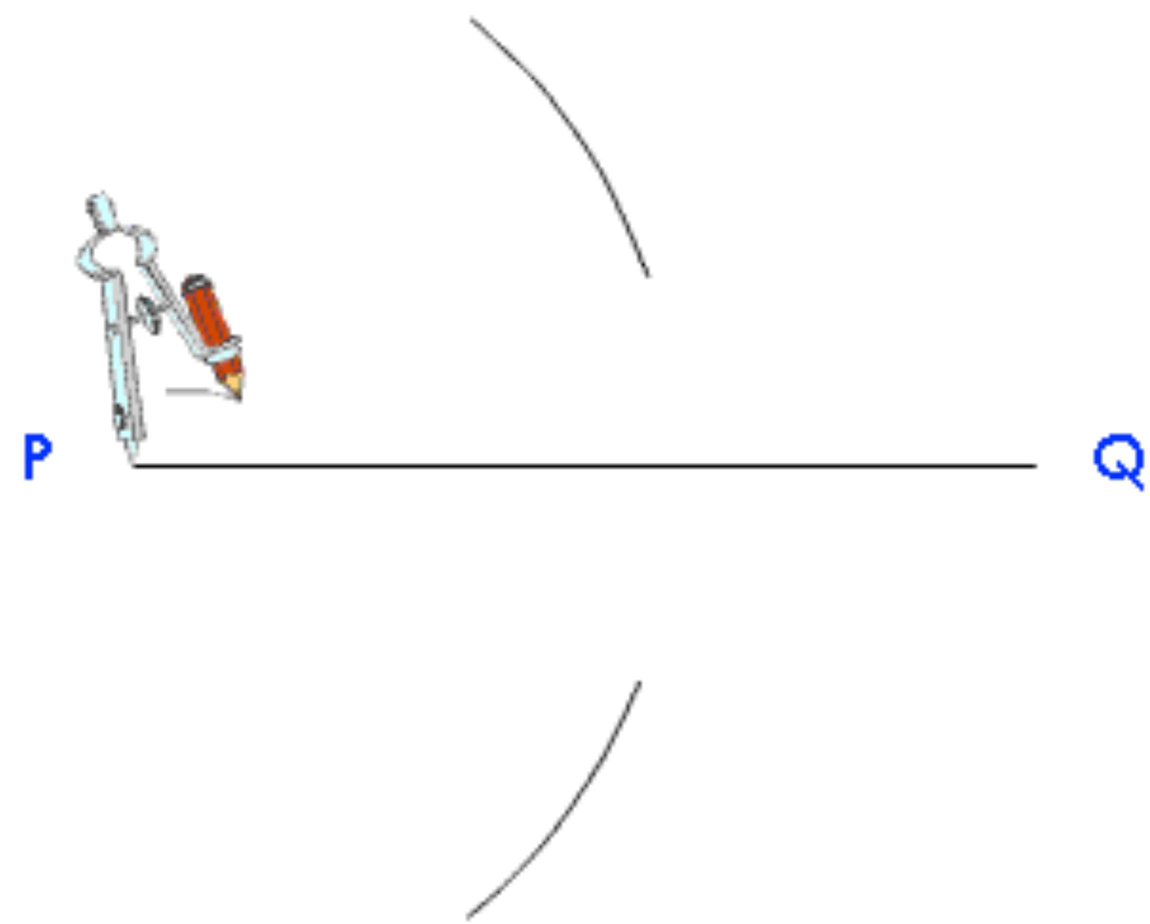
Bisector: Chop in half

So… if we are given a line to start with, we want a line that chops it in half at right

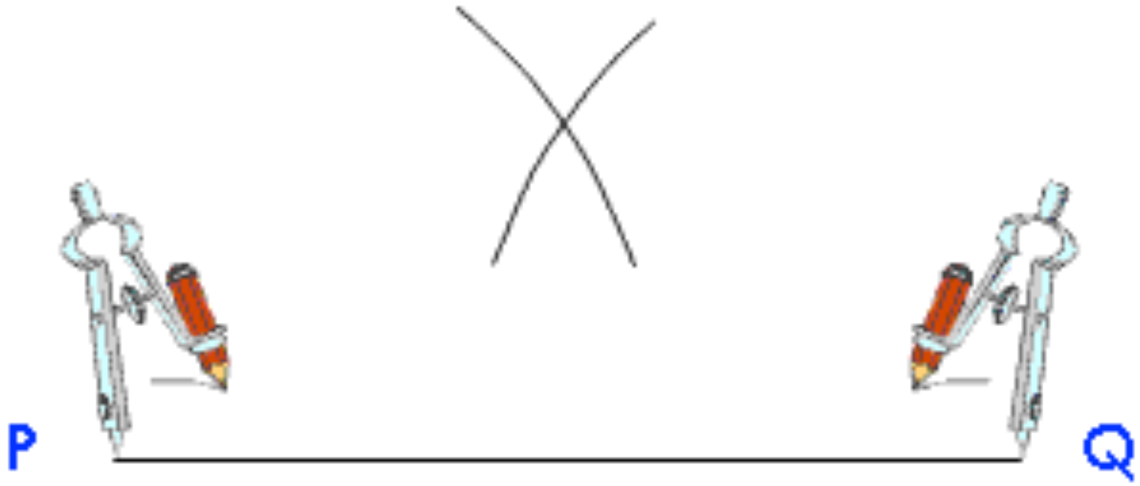
Construct a perpendicular bisector to the line PQ



1. Set your compass to over half the length of the line. Place the pointy bit of the compass at **P** and draw an arc above and below the line:

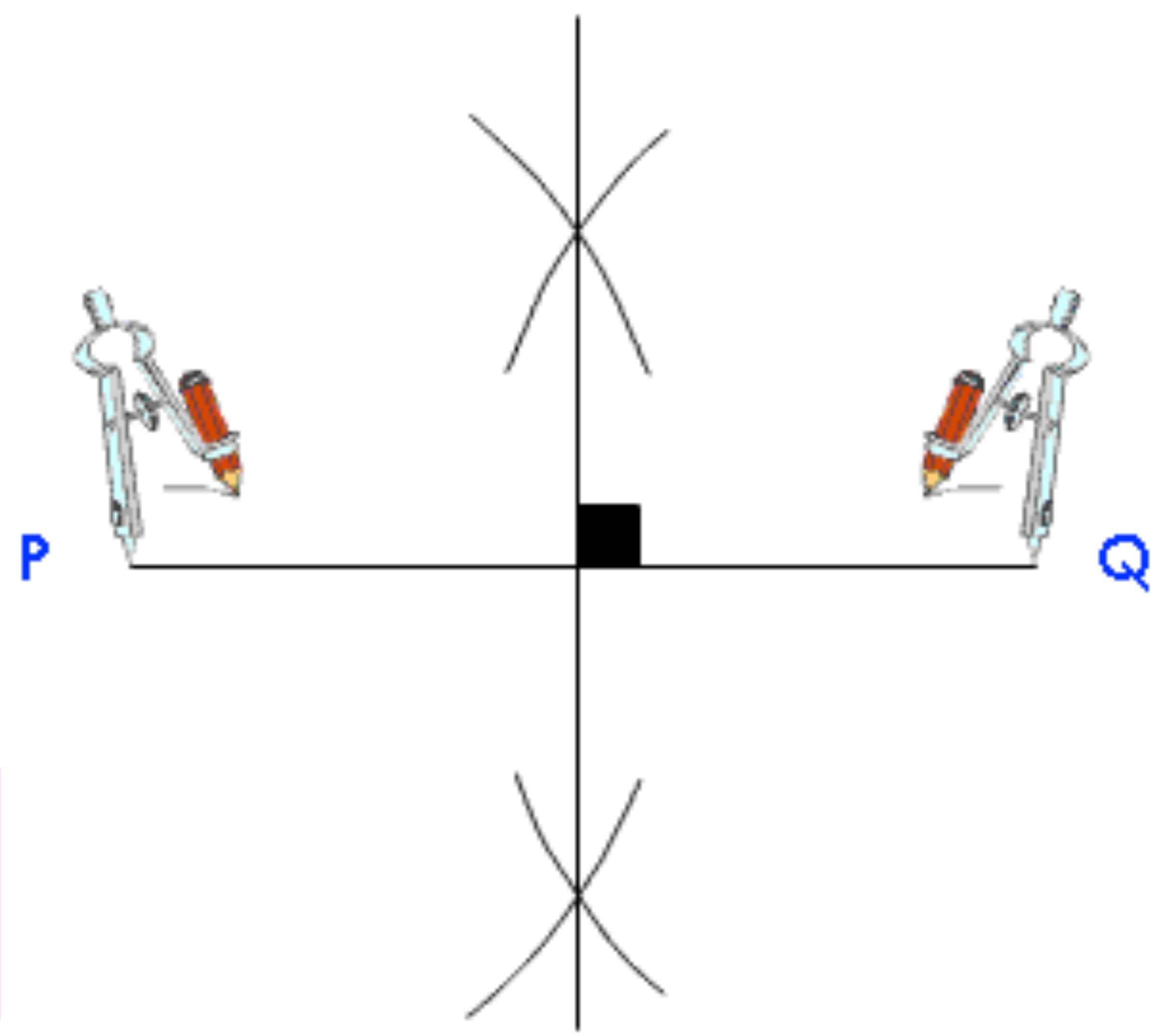


Return to contents page



2. Making sure you keep your compass at the exact same setting, place the pointy bit at Q and draw two more arcs.

3. With your ruler, draw a straight line through the two points where the arcs cross, and that is your perpendicular bisector!



Note: Every point on this new line is the exact same distance from point P as it is from point Q!

Return to contents page

3. Drawing an Angle Bisector

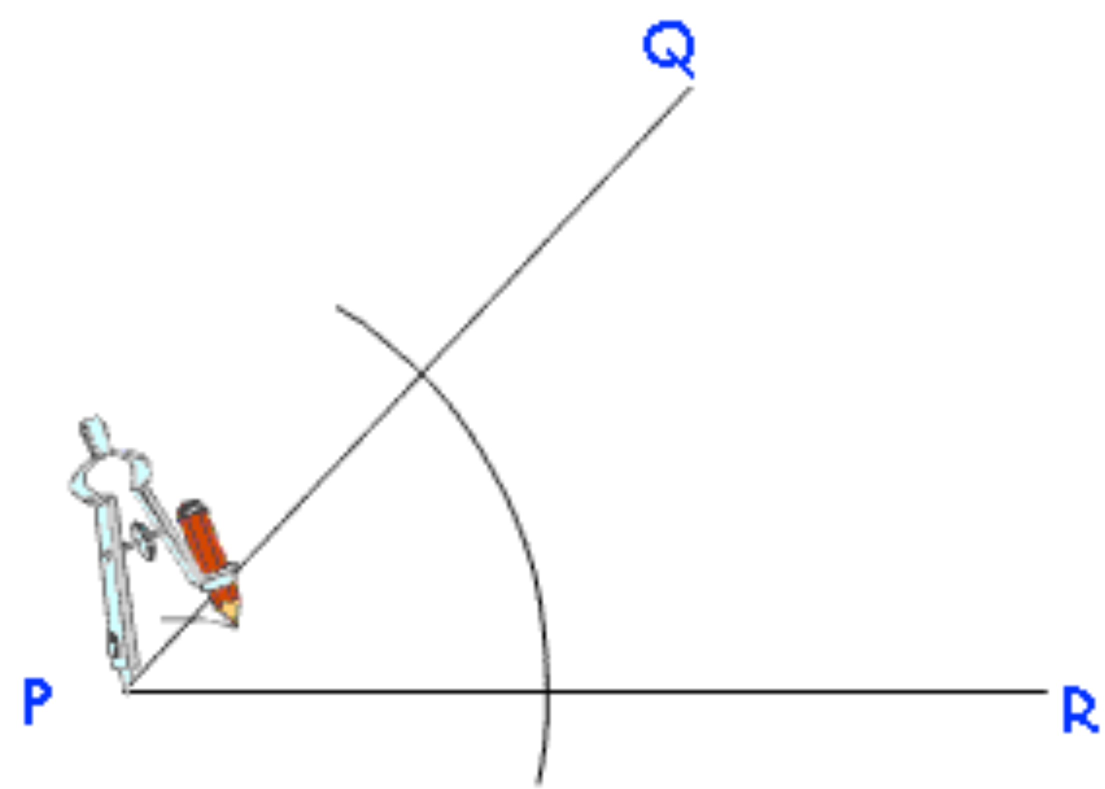
What does that mean?

Bisector: Chop in half

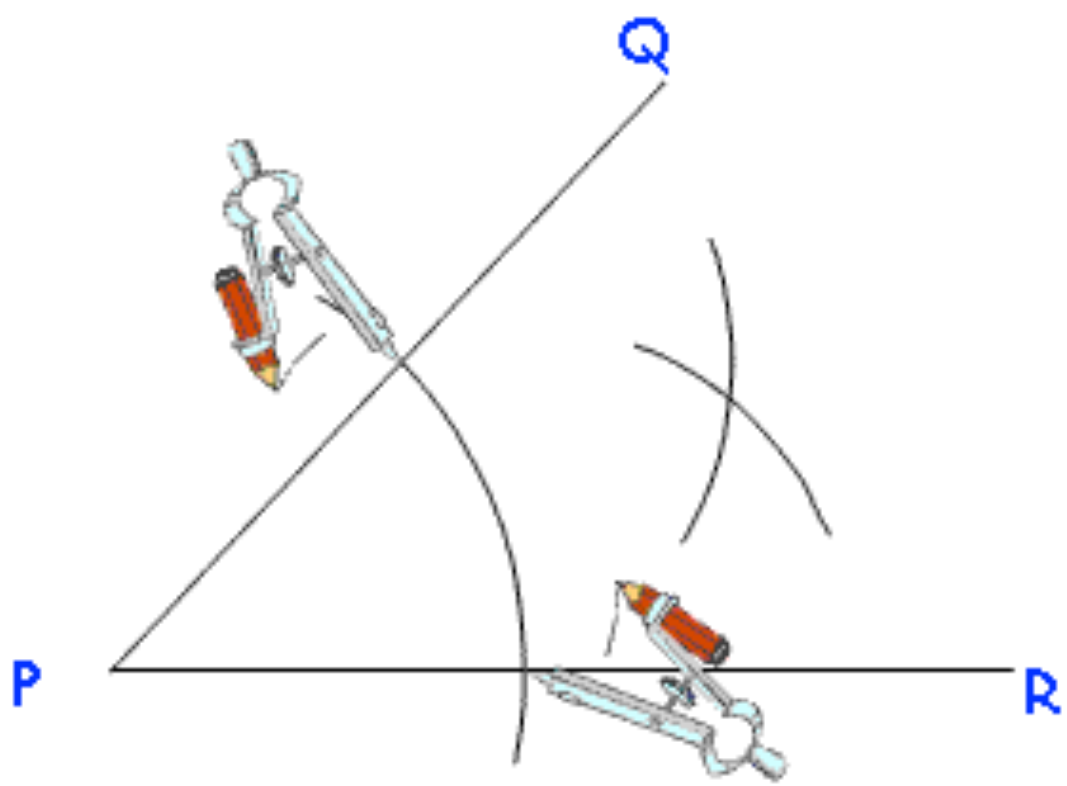
So… if we are given an angle, we need to chop it in half… without using an angle measurer!

Construct an angle bisector for the angle made by lines PQ and PR

1. Place the pointy bit of your compass at **P** and draw an arc which crosses lines **PQ** and **PR**



Return to contents page

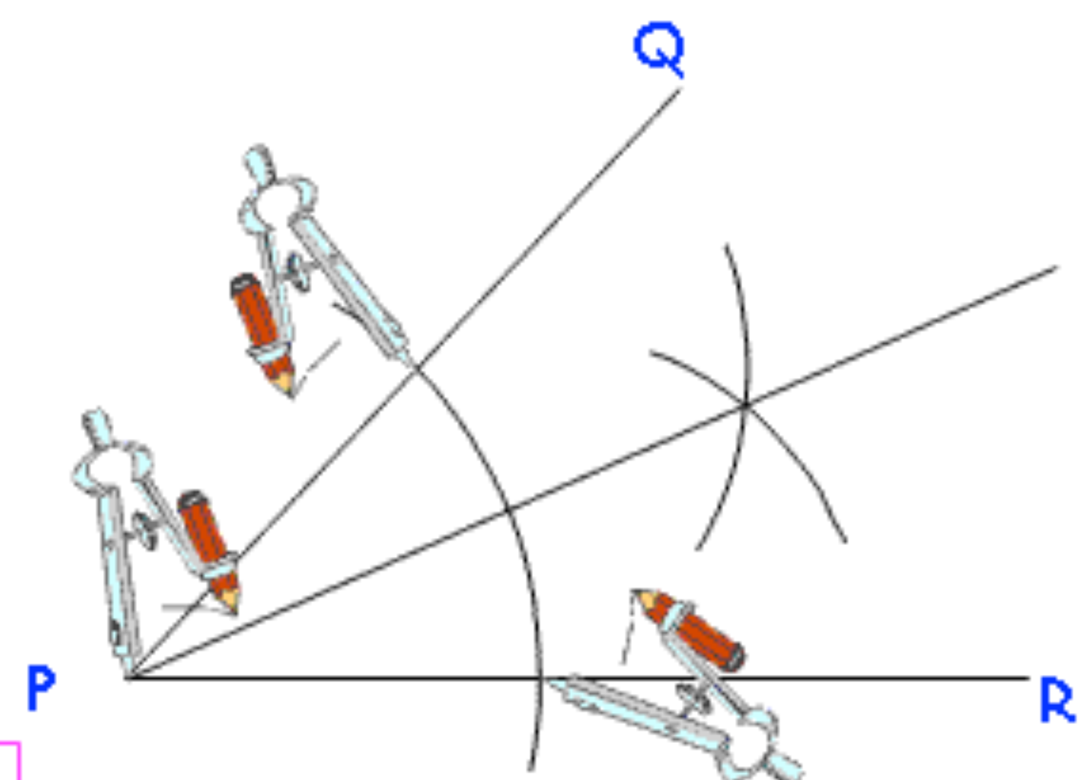


2. Place the pointy bit of the compass at both of the places where the arc hits the lines and draw two arcs

Crucial: You must not change the setting of the compass at this stage!

3. With your ruler, draw a straight line from **P** through the intersection of the arcs.

This is your angle bisector!



Note: Every point on this new line is the exact same distance from line PQ as it is from line PR!

Return to contents page

9. Vectors

1. What are Vectors?

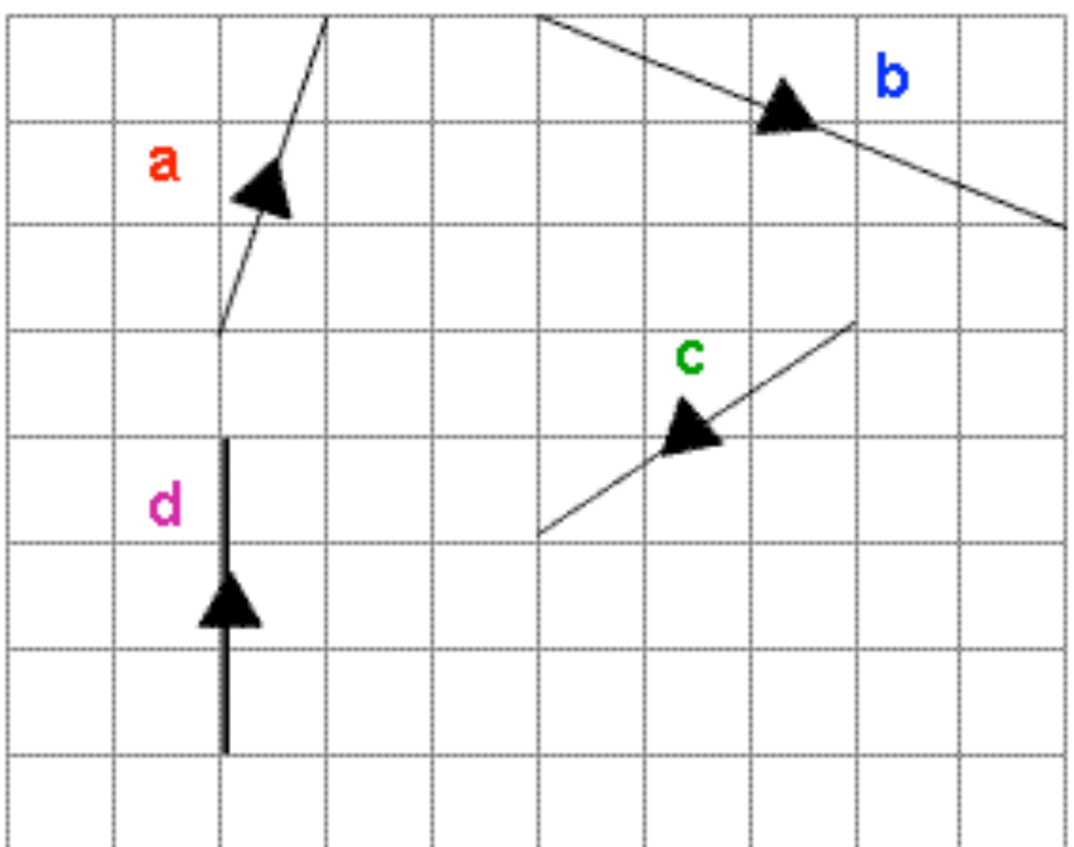
- Vectors are just a posh (and quite convenient) way of describing how to get from one point to another

- Starting from the tail of the vector, the number on the top tells you how far right/left to go, and the number on the bottom tells your how far up/down

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

If this number is positive, you move right, if it is negative, you move left

If this number is positive, you move up, if it is negative, you move down

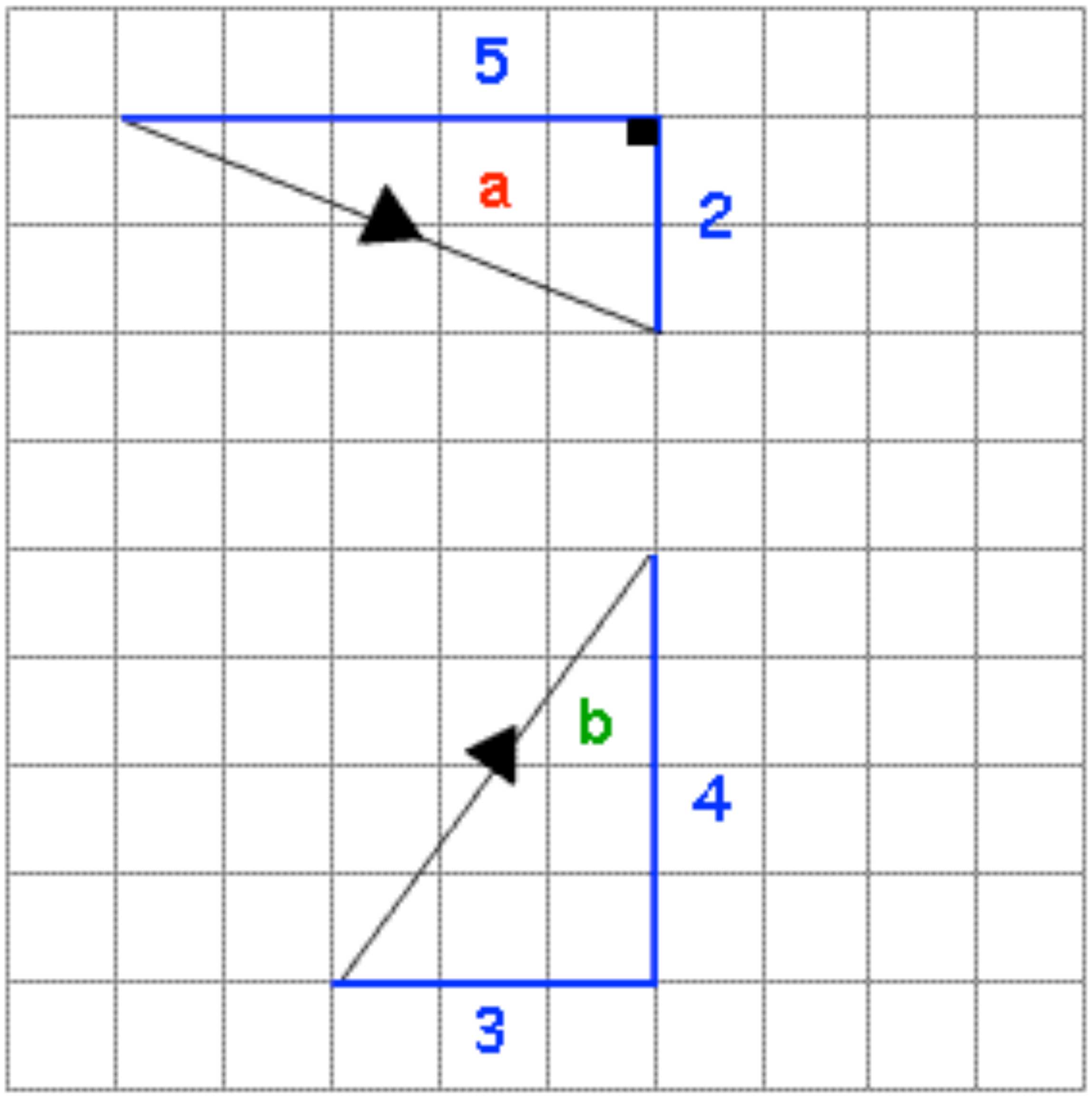


a	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$	1 to the right, and 3 up
b	$\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$	5 to the right, and 2 down
c	$\begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$	3 to the left, and 2 down
d	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$	0 to the right, and 3 up

Return to contents page

2. The Magnitude of Vectors

- By forming right-angled triangles and using Pythagoras' Theorem, it is possible to work out the magnitude (size) of any vector



a $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

$$a^2 = 5^2 + 2^2$$
$$a = \sqrt{5^2 + 2^2}$$
$$a = 5.4 \text{ (1 dp)}$$

b $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

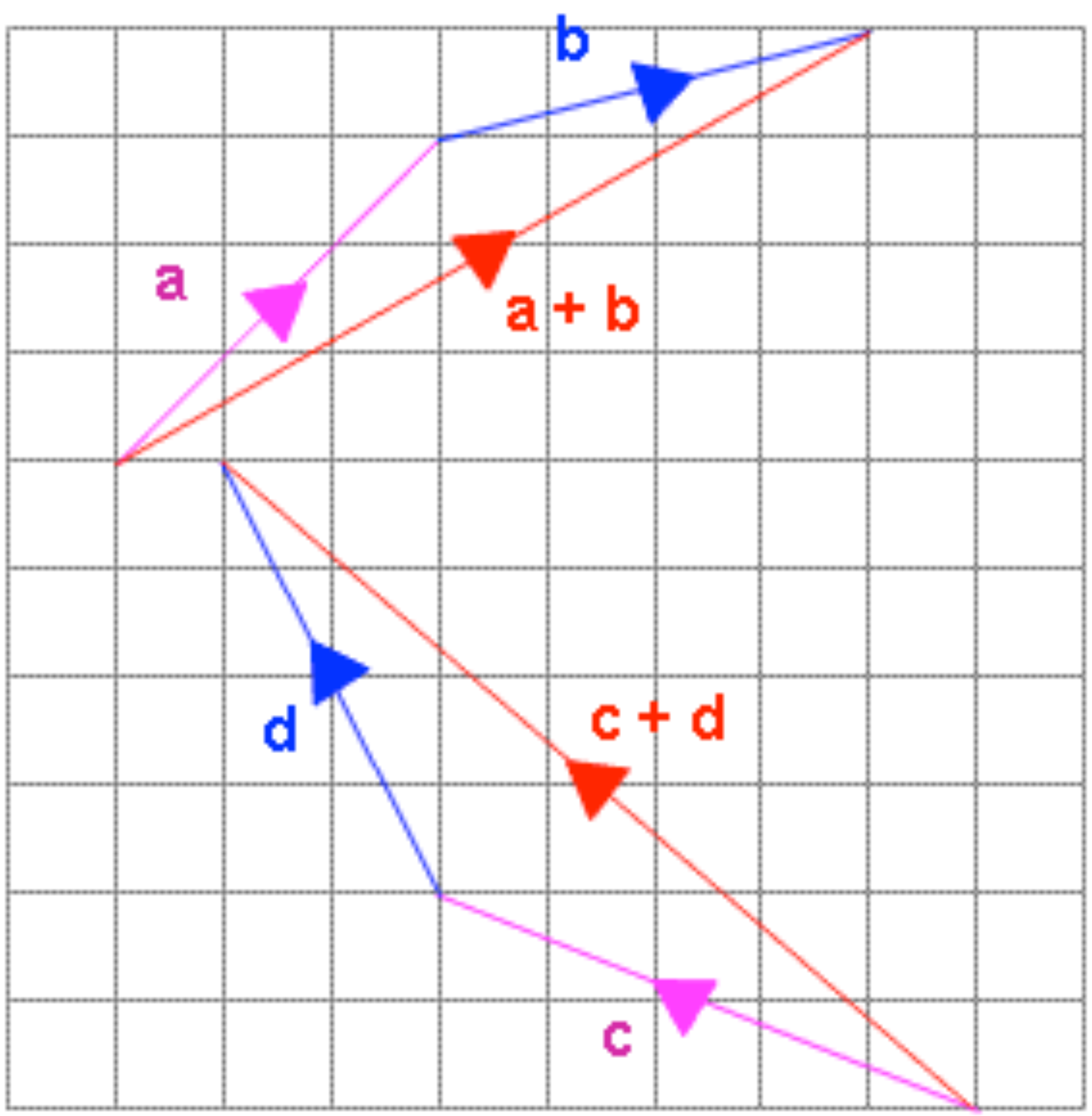
$$b^2 = 3^2 + 4^2$$
$$b = \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2}$$
$$b = 5$$

Note: Because you are squaring the numbers, you do not need to worrying about negatives!

Return to contents page

3. Adding Vectors

- When you add two or more vectors together, you simply add the tops and add the bottoms
- The new vector you end up with is called the resultant vector



a $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$ b $\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

a + b $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

c $\begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ d $\begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

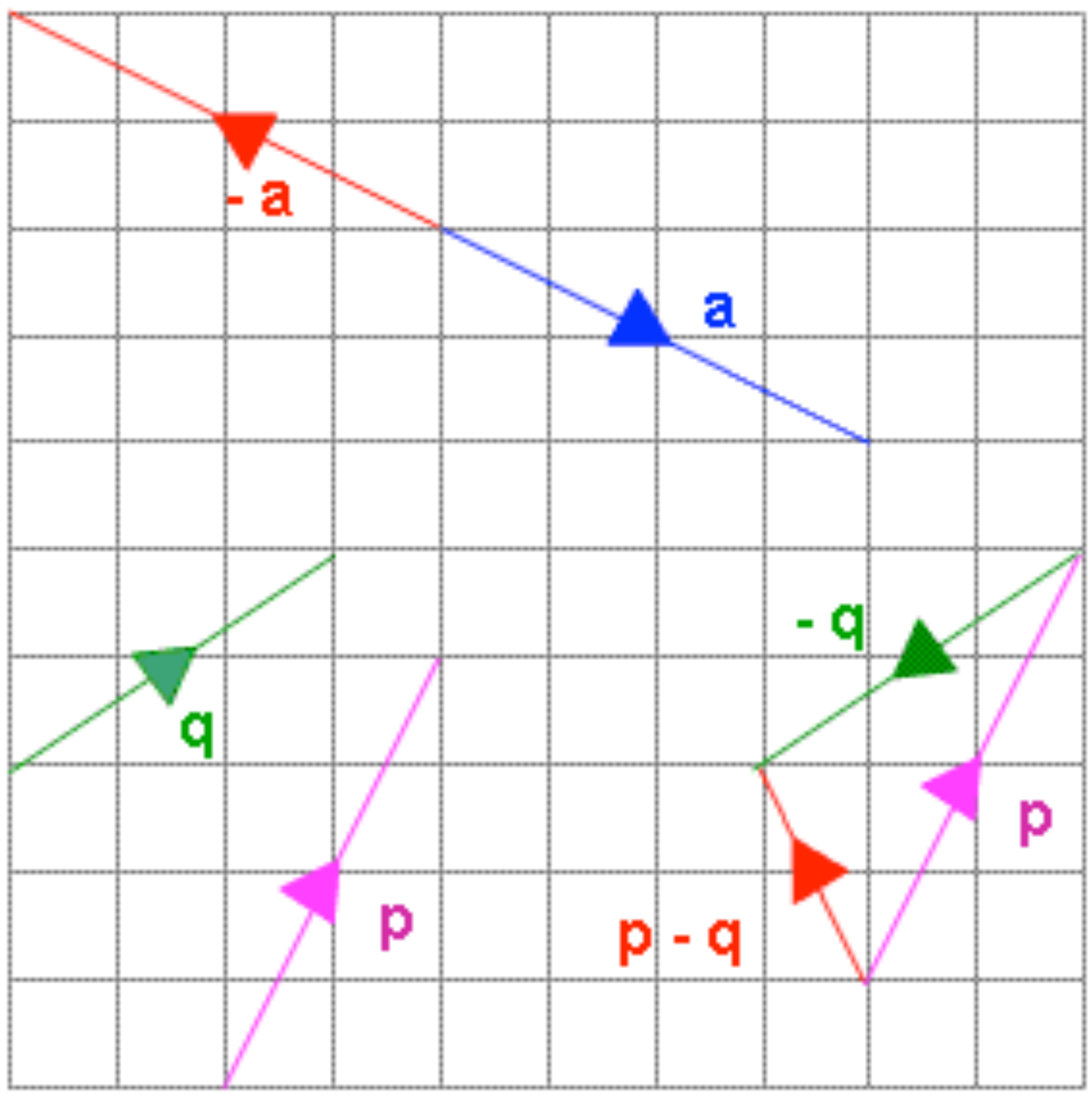
c + d $\begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -7 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$

Watch Out! Remember to be careful with your negatives!

Return to contents page

4. Subtracting Vectors

- The negative of a vector goes in the exact opposite direction, which changes the signs of the numbers on the top and the bottom (see below)
- One way to think about subtracting vectors is to simply add the negative of the vector!



a $\begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$ - a $\begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

p $\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ q $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

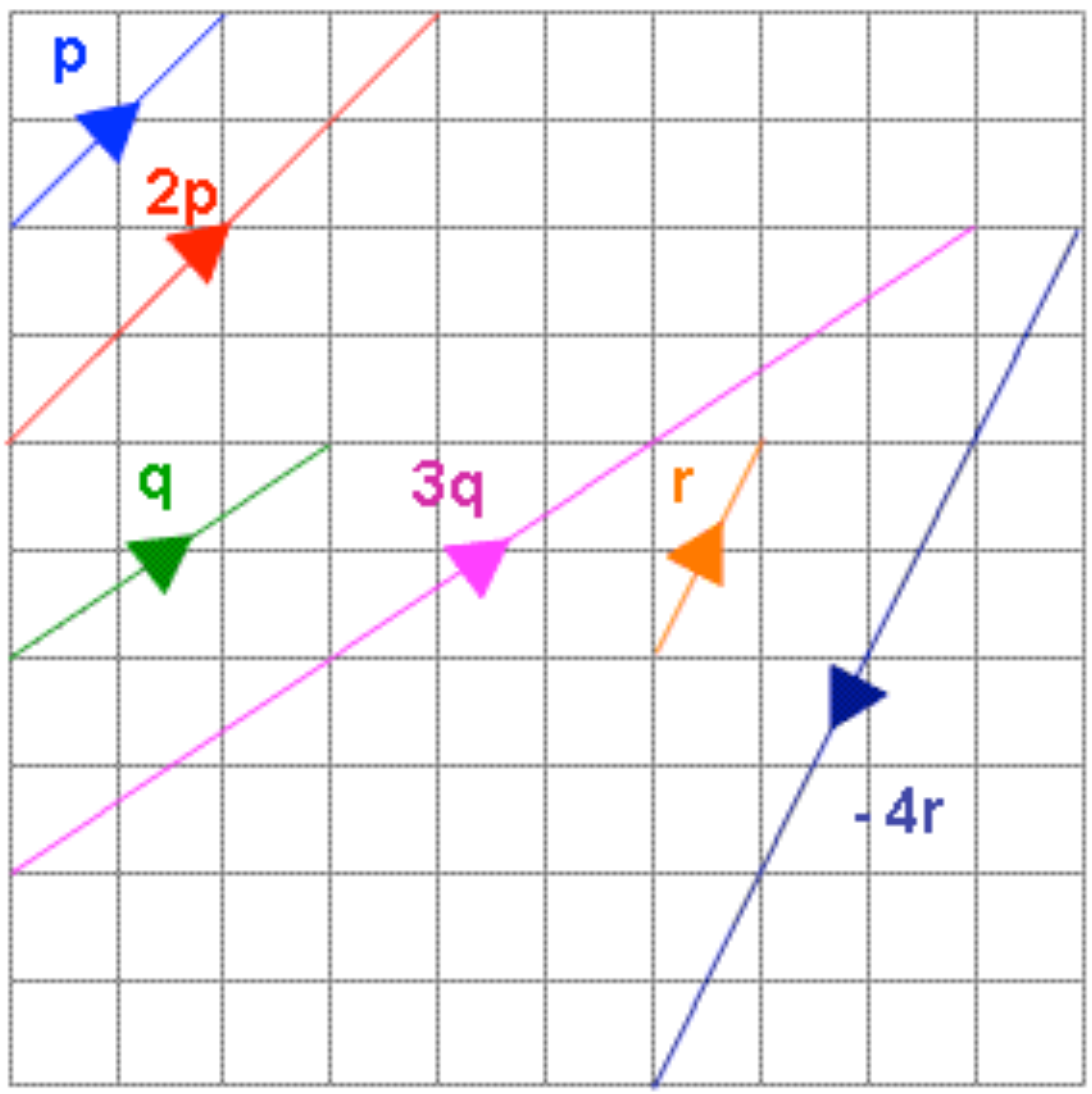
p - q = p + (-q)

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Return to contents page

5. Multiplying Vectors

- The only thing you need to remember when multiplying vectors is that you multiply both the top and the bottom of the vector!



$\mathbf{p} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad 2\mathbf{p} \quad 2\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

$\mathbf{q} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad 3\mathbf{q} \quad 3\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 9 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$

$\mathbf{r} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad -4\mathbf{r} \quad -4\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -8 \end{pmatrix}$

Return to contents page

6. Linear Combinations of Vectors

- Using the skills we learnt when multiplying vectors, it is possible to calculate some pretty complicated looking combinations of vectors

Example: If $a = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$ $b = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ $c = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$ Calculate the following:

(a) 4a + 3b + c

$$4\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} + 3\begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ 20 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -12 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 24 \end{pmatrix}$$

(a) 2a - 5b - 2c

$$2\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} - 5\begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - 2\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -20 \\ 10 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 28 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

Watch Out! Remember to be so, so careful with your negatives!

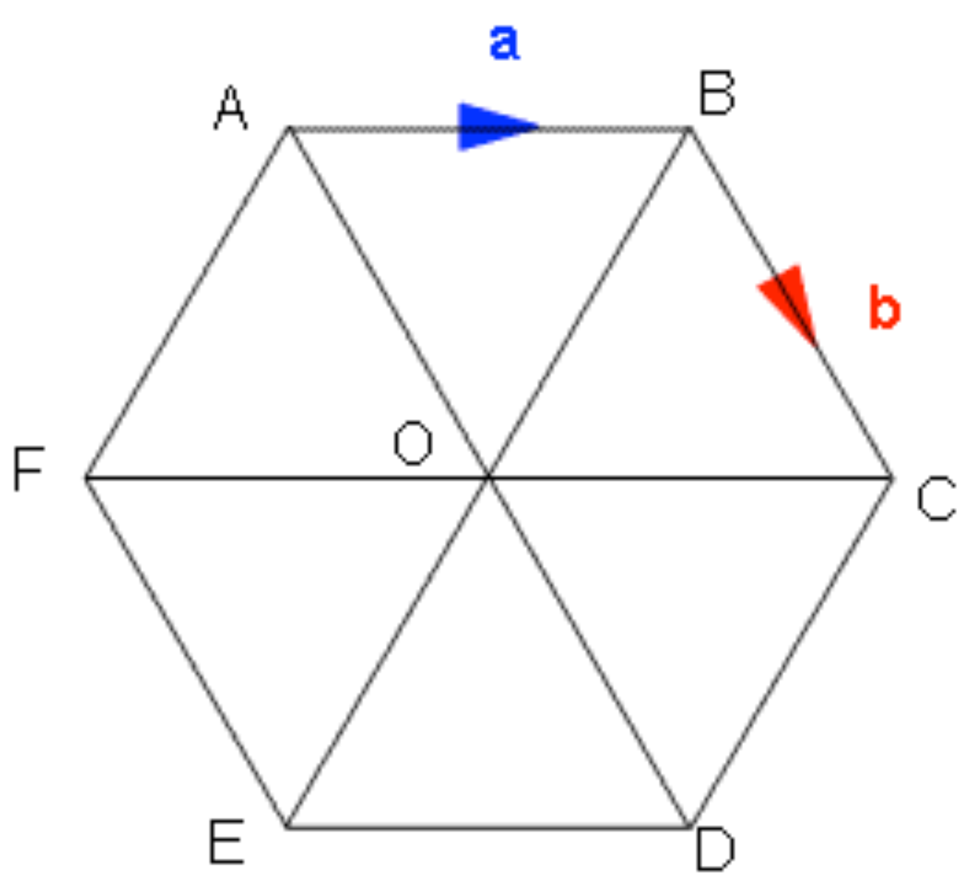
Return to contents page

7. Vectors in Geometry

- A popular question asked by the lovely examiners is to give you a shape and ask you to describe a route between two points using vectors.
- There is one absolutely crucial rule here… you can only travel along a route of known vectors!

Just because a line looks like it should be a certain vector, doesn't mean it is!

Example: Below is a regular hexagon. Describe the routes given in terms of vectors **a** and **b**



(i) $\overrightarrow{FC}$

The best way to go here is straight across the middle, because we know each horizontal line is just **a**

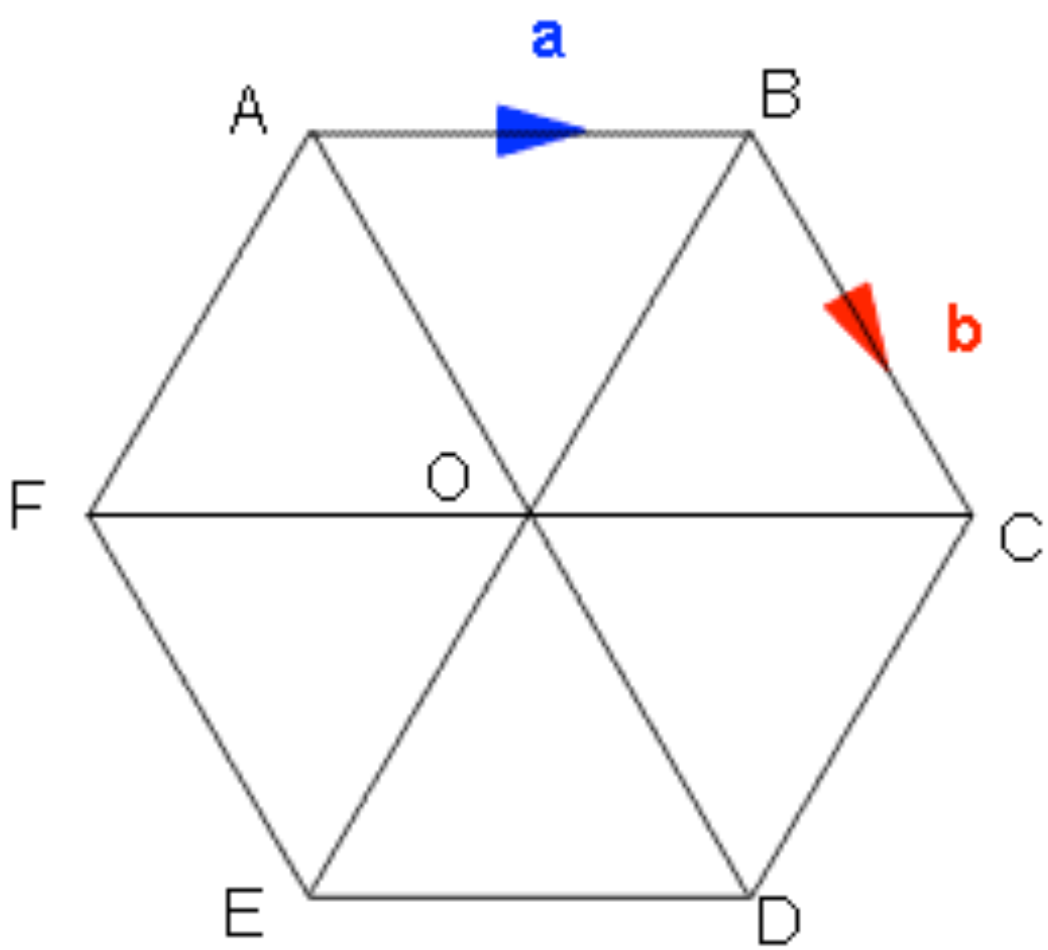
$$\overrightarrow{FC} = 2\mathbf{a}$$

(ii) $\overrightarrow{DA}$

Again, the middle is looking good here, but remember we are going the opposite way to our given vector, so we need the negative!

$$\overrightarrow{DA} = -2\mathbf{b}$$

Return to contents page



(iii) $\overrightarrow{EB}$

It would be nice to just nip across the middle, but the problem is we do not know what those vectors are! So… we'll just have to go the long way around, travelling along routes we do know!

$$\overrightarrow{EB} = \overrightarrow{EF} + \overrightarrow{FO} + \overrightarrow{OA} + \overrightarrow{AB}$$

$$= -\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} + -\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}$$

$$= 2\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{b}$$

Return to contents page

10. Transformations

What are Transformations and What do you need to be able to do?

- Transformations are specific ways of moving objects, usually around a co-ordinate grid

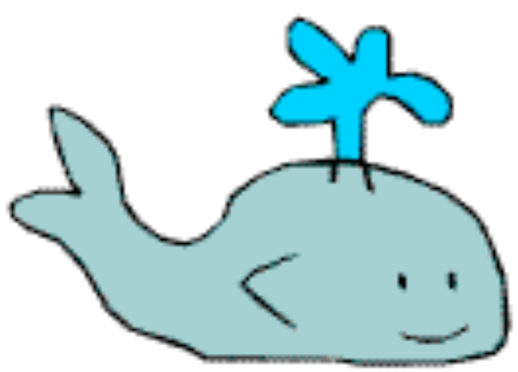
- There are 4 types of transformations you need to be clued up on, and for each one you must
  - Be able to carry out a transformation yourself
  - Be able to describe a transformation giving all the required information

1. Translation

A Translation is a movement in a straight line, described by a movement right/left, followed by a movement up/down

Describing Translations

You must give the vector which describes the translation

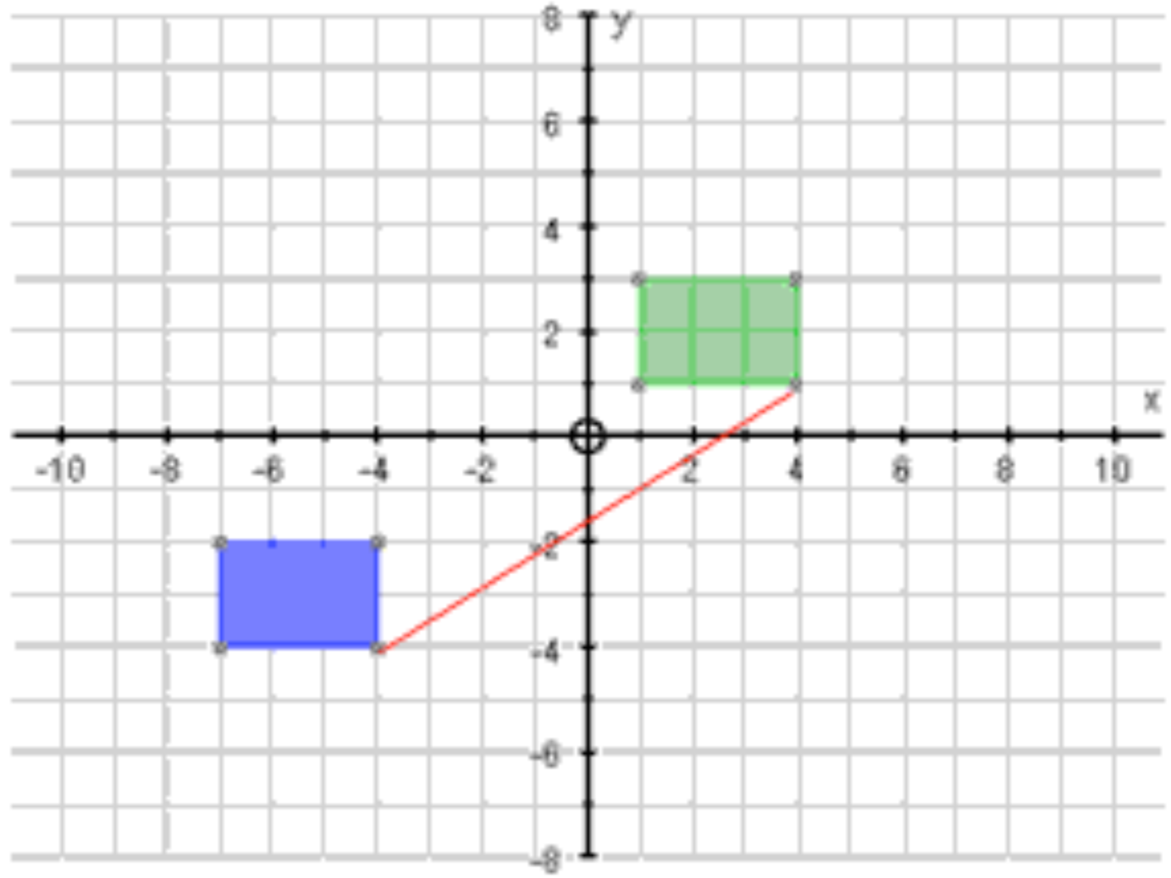


$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

If this number is positive, you move right, if it is negative, you move left

If this number is positive, you move up, if it is negative, you move down

Return to contents page

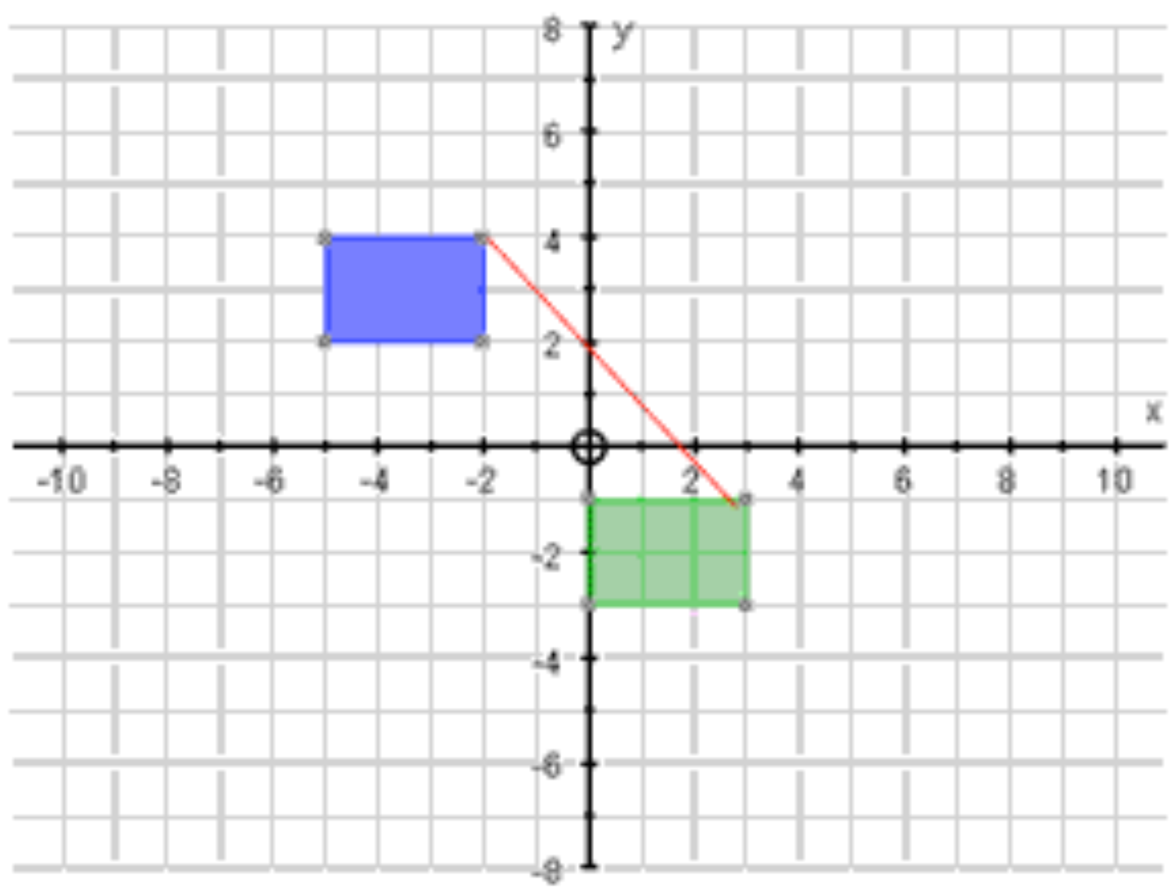


If we translate the blue object by the vector: $\begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

$\boxed{\text{8 to the right} \quad \text{5 up}}$

We end up with the green object

Notice: If you pick any co-ordinate on the blue shape and translate it by the same vector, you end up with the matching corner on the green shape



If we translate the blue object by the vector: $\begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}$

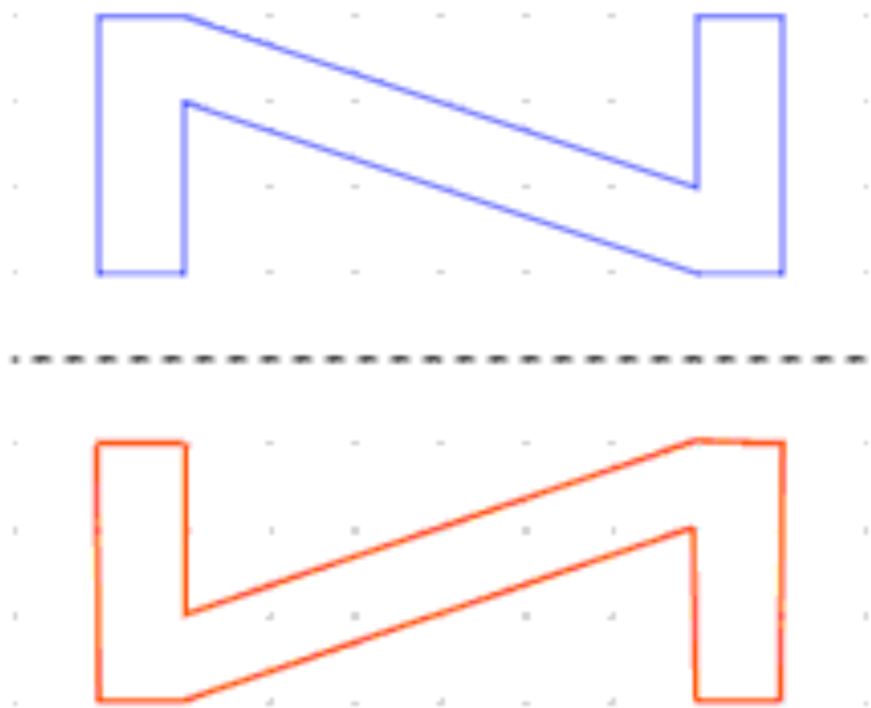
$\boxed{\text{5 to the right} \quad \text{5 down}}$

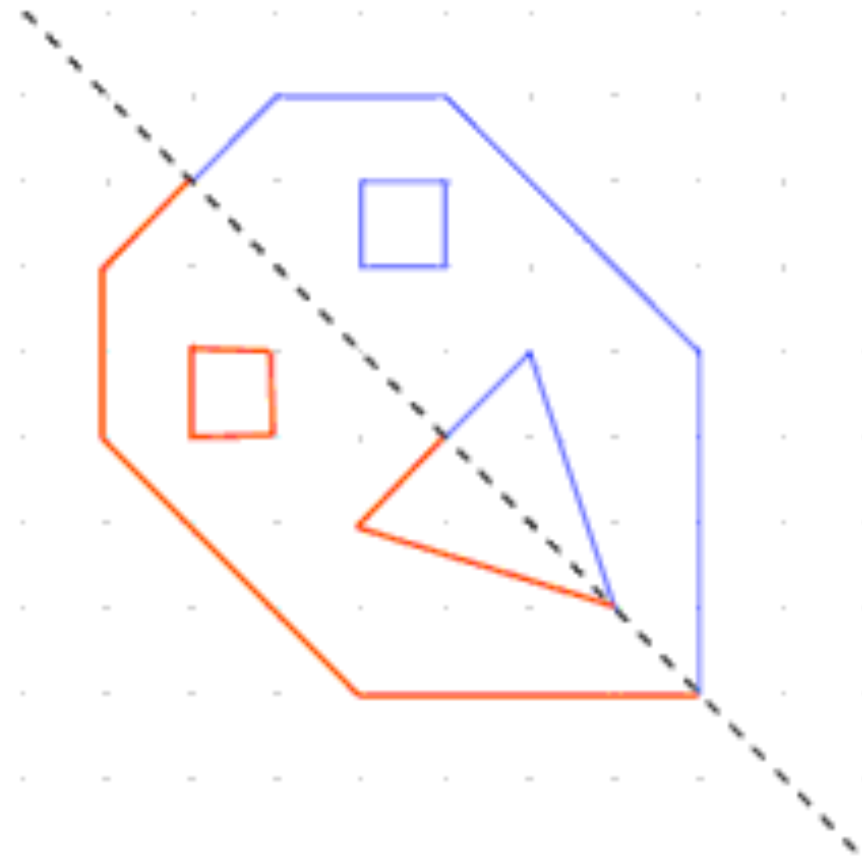
We end up with the green object

Return to contents page

2. Reflection

Reflecting an object across a line produces an exact replica (mirror image) of that object on the other side of the line.
This new shape is called the Image

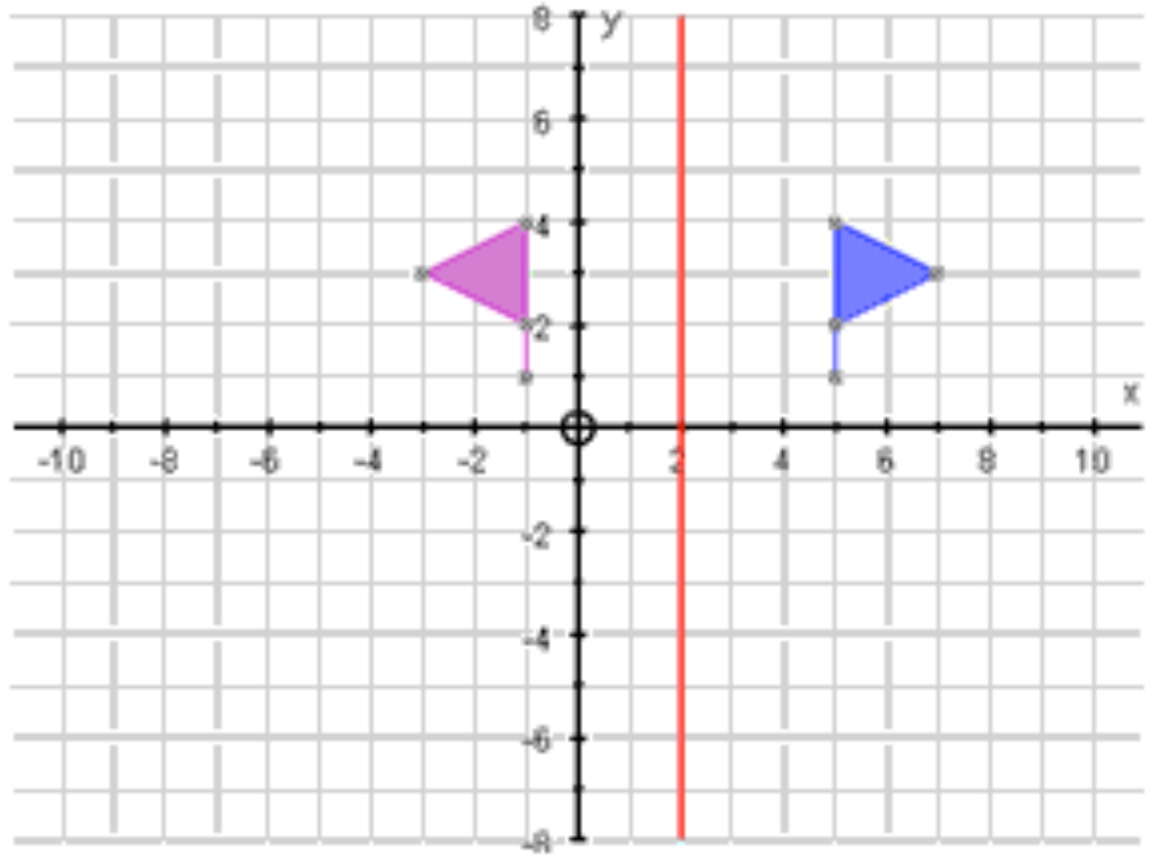




Describing Reflections

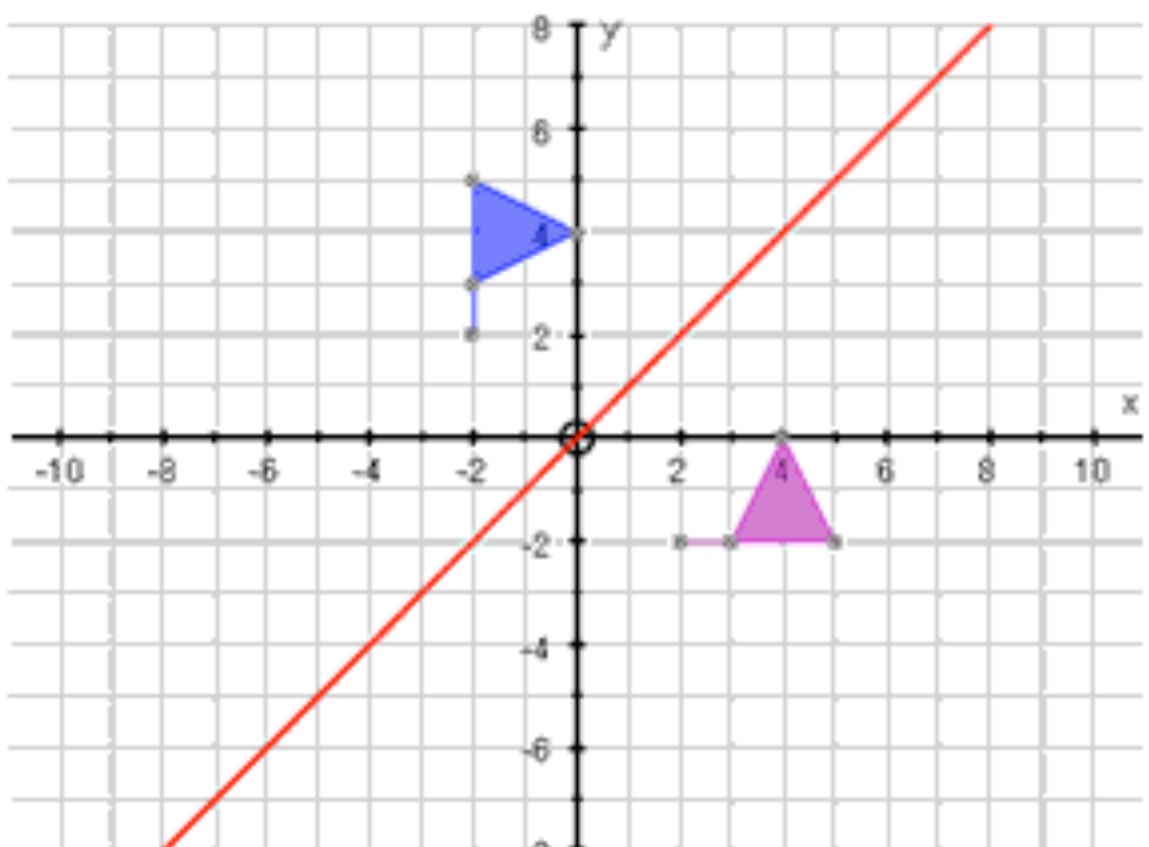
You must give either the equation of the line of reflection (mirror line) or draw the line on the grid.

Return to contents page



If we reflect the blue object in the red line (equation: $x = 2$), we end up with the purple object

Notice: Every point on the purple object (the image) is the exact same distance from the line of reflection as the matching point on the blue object



If we reflect the blue object in the red line (equation: $y = x$), we end up with the purple object

Notice: I find it much harder to reflect when the mirror line is diagonal, but notice how every point on the image is still the same distance away from the mirror line as the matching point on the original object.

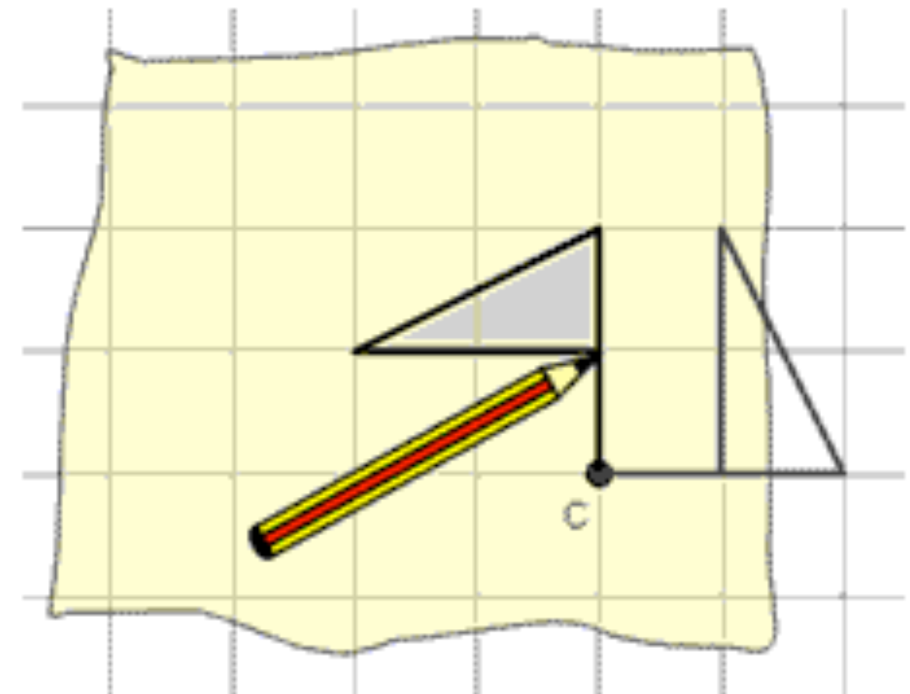
Return to contents page

3. Rotation

Rotating an object simply means turning the whole shape around a fixed point by a certain number of degrees and in a certain direction!

Remember: If you a like Mr Barton and you can't do these in your head, then all you need to do is:

- trace around the object
- place your pencil at the centre of rotation (the fixed point)
- turn the tracing paper around
- draw your rotated object!



Describing Rotations

Warning: People always forget to give all the information here and lose loads of easy marks!

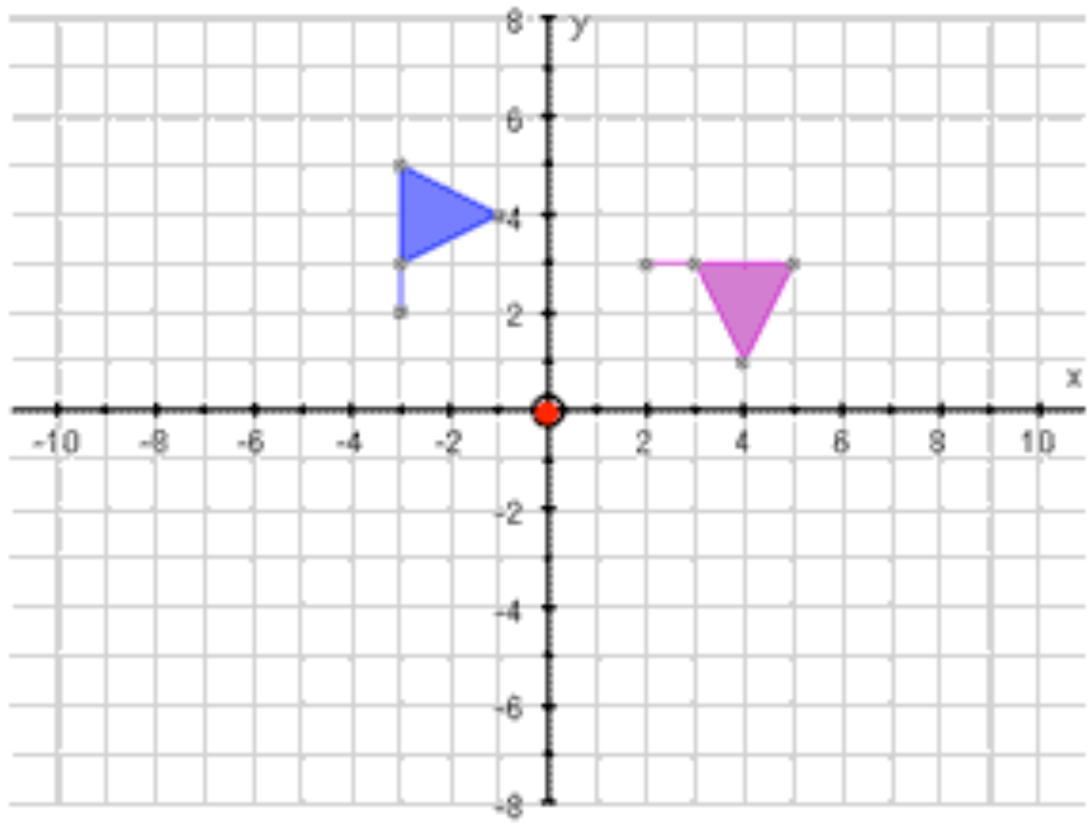
You must give all of the following:

1. The centre of rotation (give as a co-ordinate if you can)

2. The direction of the rotation (clockwise or anti-clockwise)

3. The angle of the rotation (usually either 90^0, 180^0 or 270^0)

Return to contents page



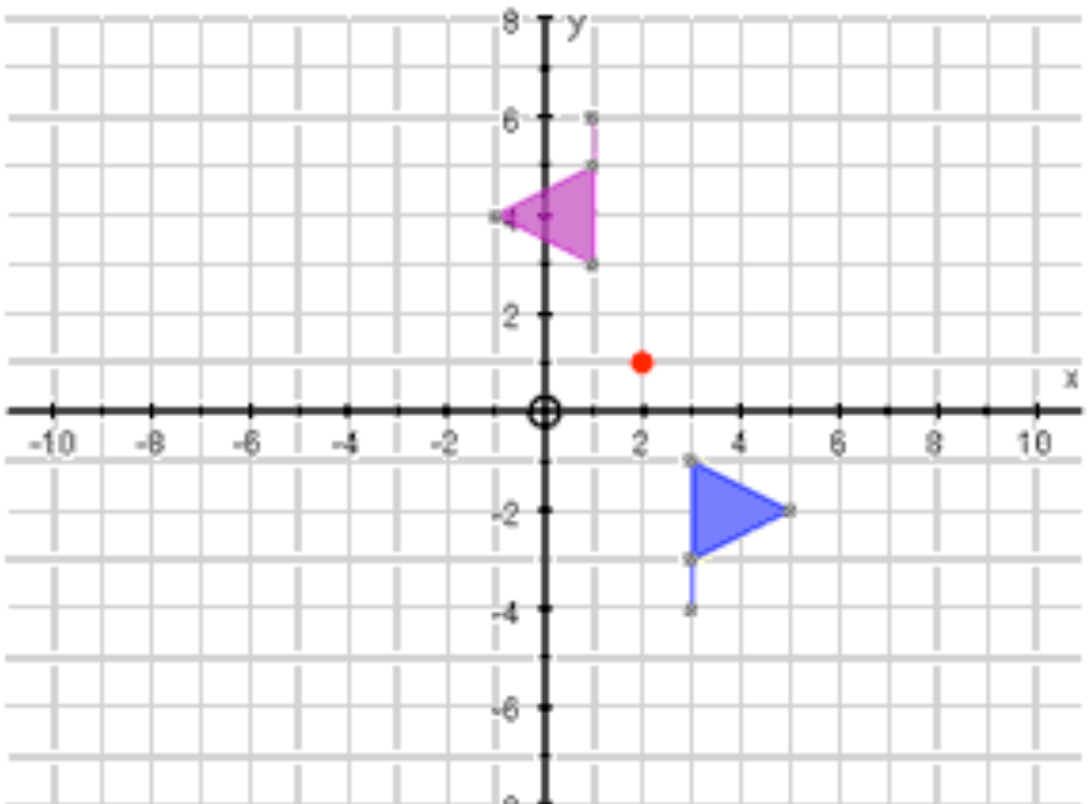
To describe the rotation from the blue object to the purple object, we would say:

1. Centre of Rotation: (0, 0) – the origin

2. Direction of Rotation: Clockwise

3. Angle of Rotation: 90^0

Notice: If you wanted to be clever, you could also say it was an anti-clockwise 270^0 rotation!



To describe the rotation from the blue object to the purple object, we would say:

1. Centre of Rotation: (2, 1)

2. Direction of Rotation: Clockwise

3. Angle of Rotation: 180^0

Notice: Whenever the angle of rotation is 180^0, it doesn't matter whether you go clockwise or anti-clockwise!

Return to contents page

4. Enlargement

Enlargement is the only one of the four transformations which changes the size of the object

Key Point: Enlargements can make objects bigger as well as smaller!

Each length is increased or decreased by the same scale factor

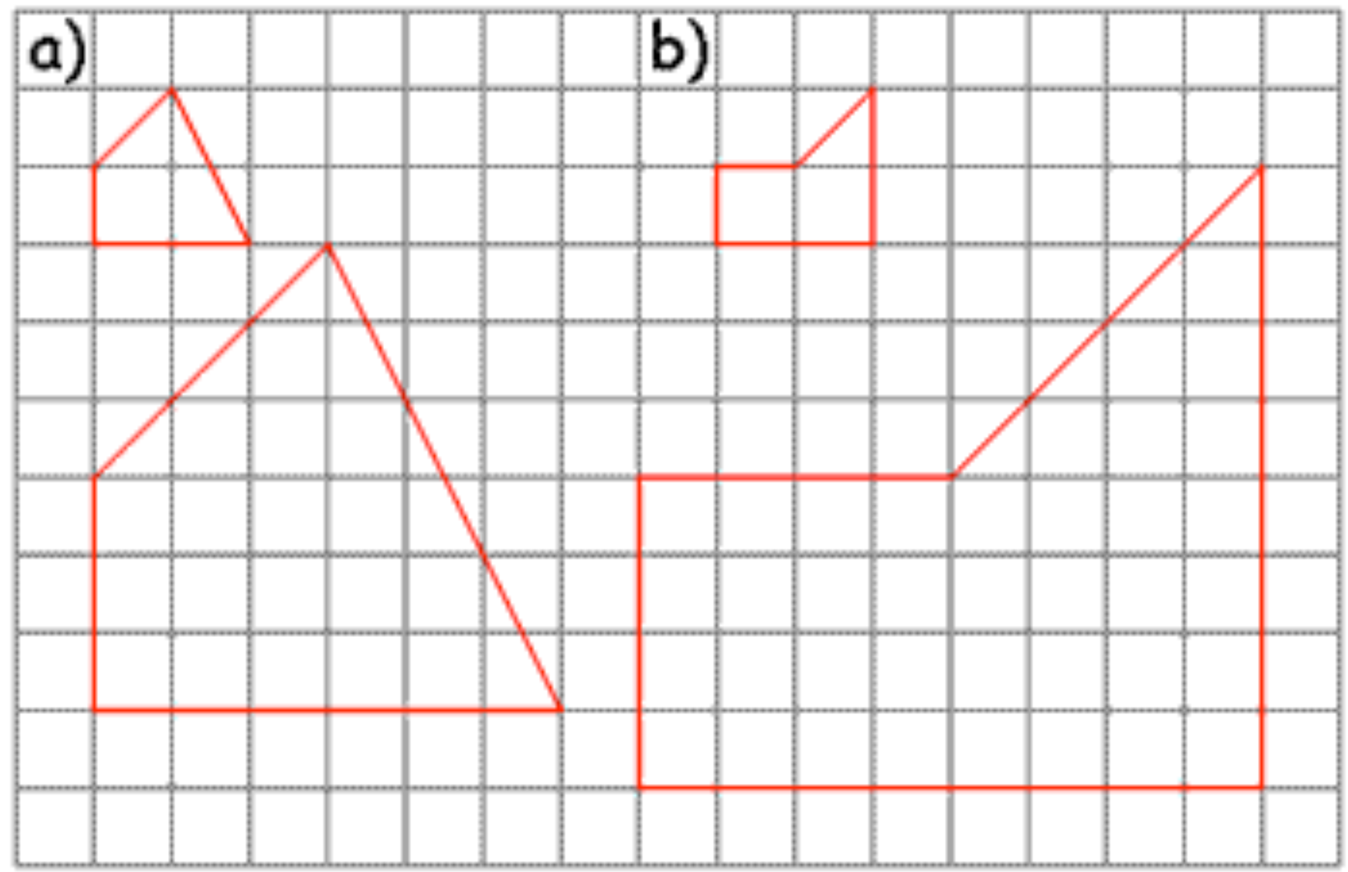
(a) Scale Factor = 3

(b) Scale Factor = 4

And going from big to small...

(a) Scale Factor = $\frac{1}{3}$

(b) Scale Factor = $\frac{1}{4}$



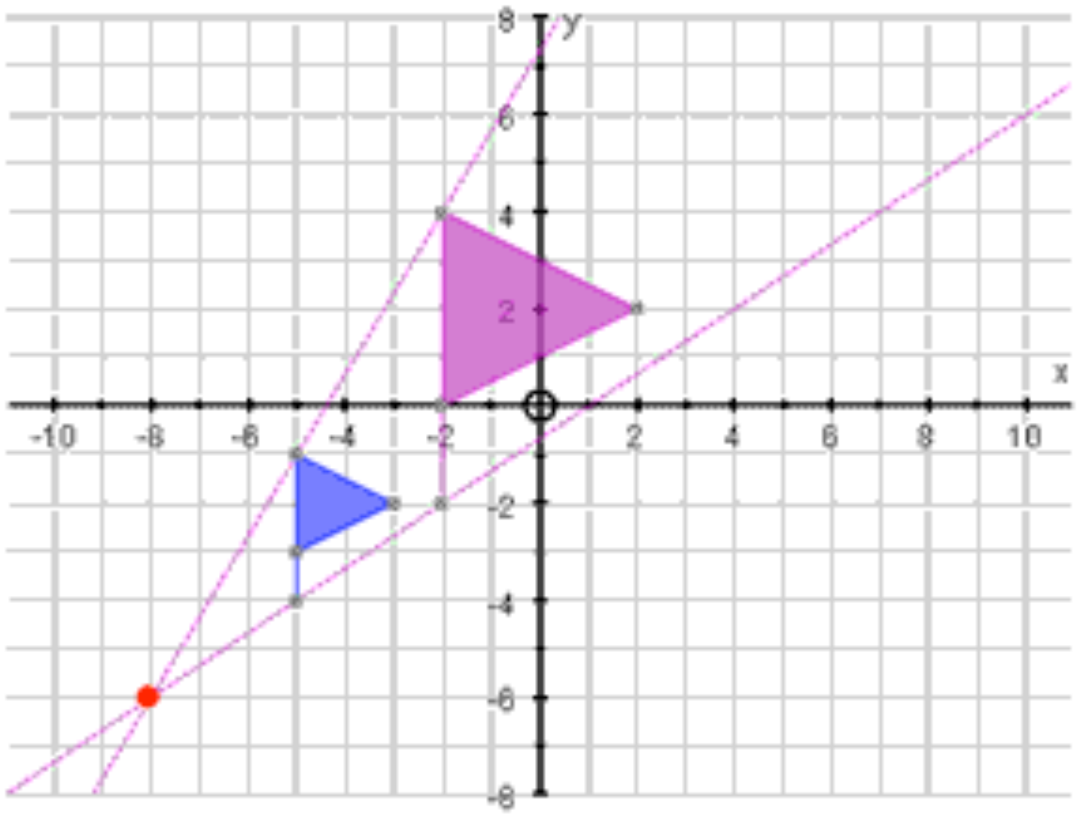
Describing Enlargements

To fully describe an enlargement, you must give:

1. The centre of enlargement (give as a co-ordinate if you can)

2. The scale factor of the enlargement

Return to contents page



To describe the enlargement from the blue object to the purple object, we would say:

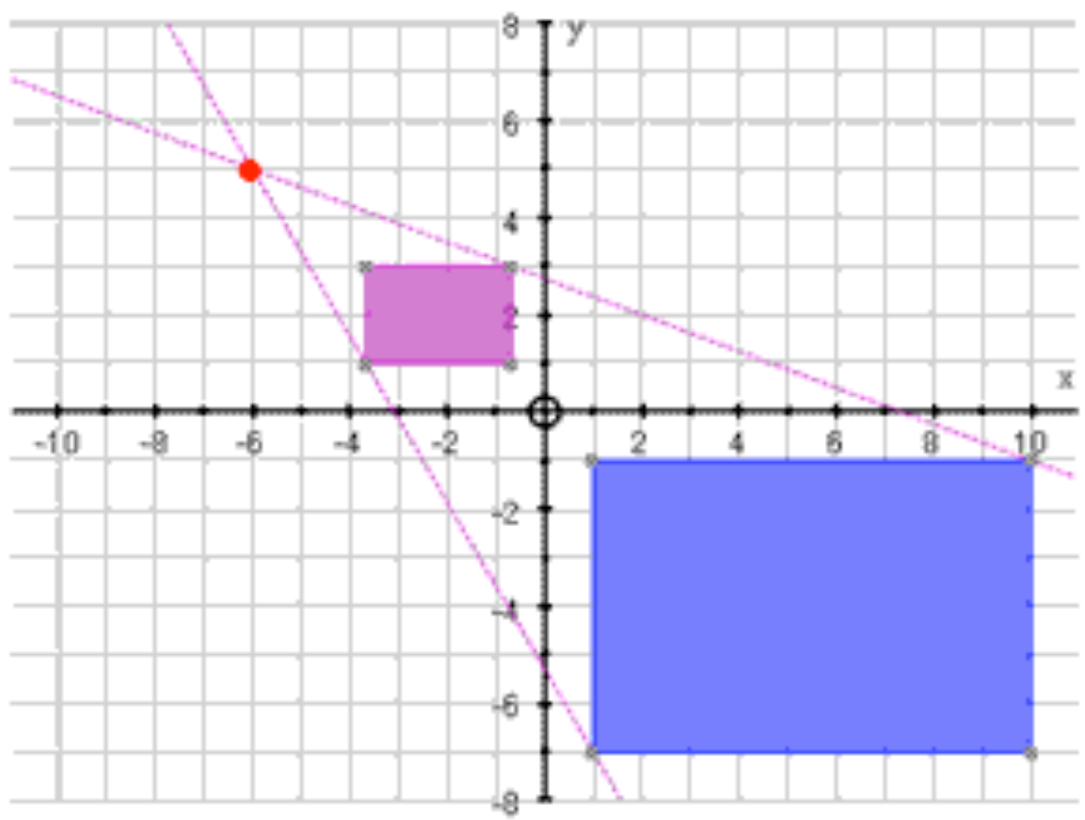
1. Centre of Enlargement: (-8, -6)

2. Scale Factor of Enlargement: 2

Notice:

(1) To find the centre of enlargement you must draw line through matching points on both objects and see where they cross

(2) Each point on the purple object if twice as far away from the centre of enlargement than the matching point on the blue!



To describe the enlargement from the blue object to the purple object, we would say:

1. Centre of Enlargement: (-6, 5)

2. Scale Factor of Enlargement: $\frac{1}{3}$

Notice:

(1) The object has gone smaller, so it must be a fractional scale factor!

(2) Each point on the purple object if one-third as far away from the centre of enlargement than the matching point on the blue!

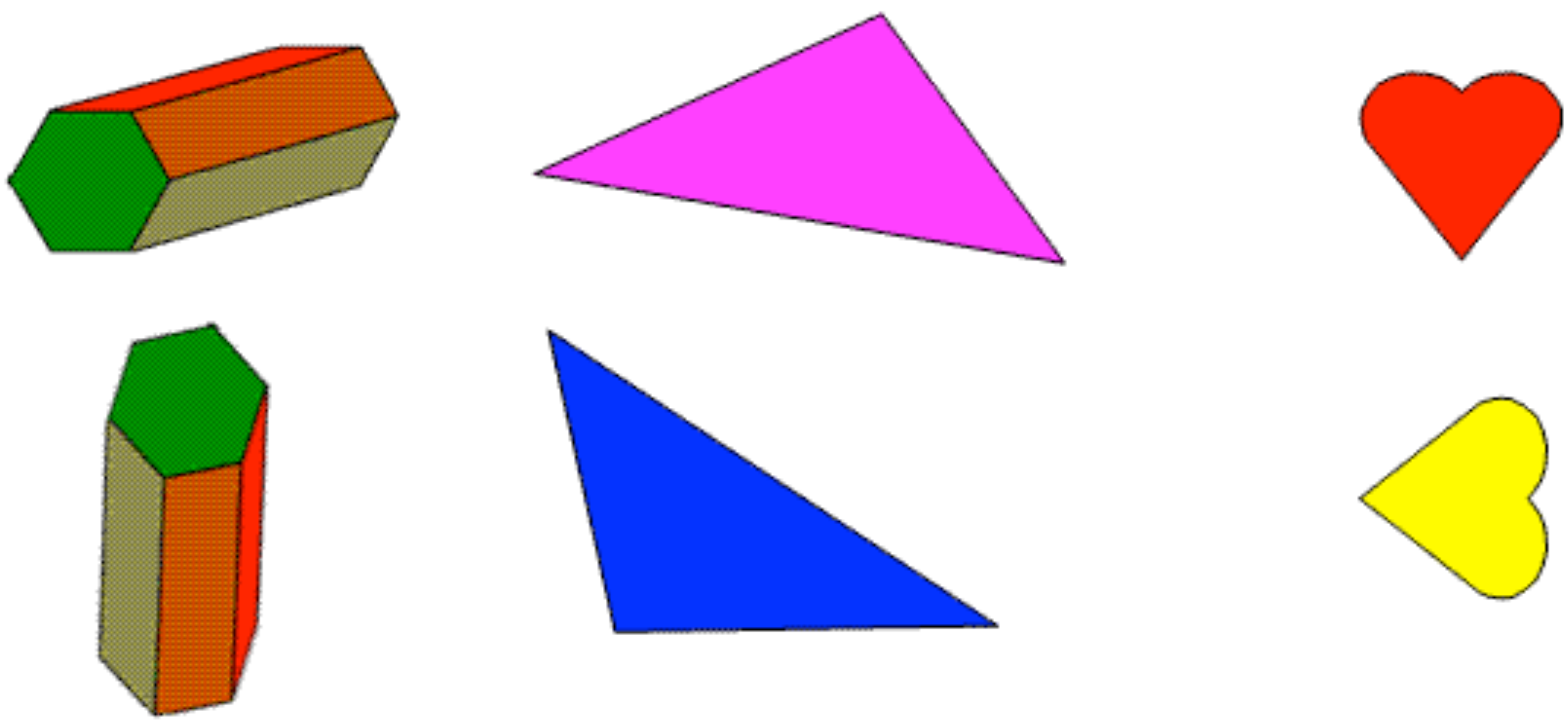
Return to contents page

11. Similarity and Congruency

1. If two shapes are Congruent, what does that mean?

When mathematicians say that two shapes are congruent, it is just a posh, complicated way of saying that those shapes are IDENTTICAL

They may have been flipped upside down and rotated around, but they are still exactly the same shape and the same size



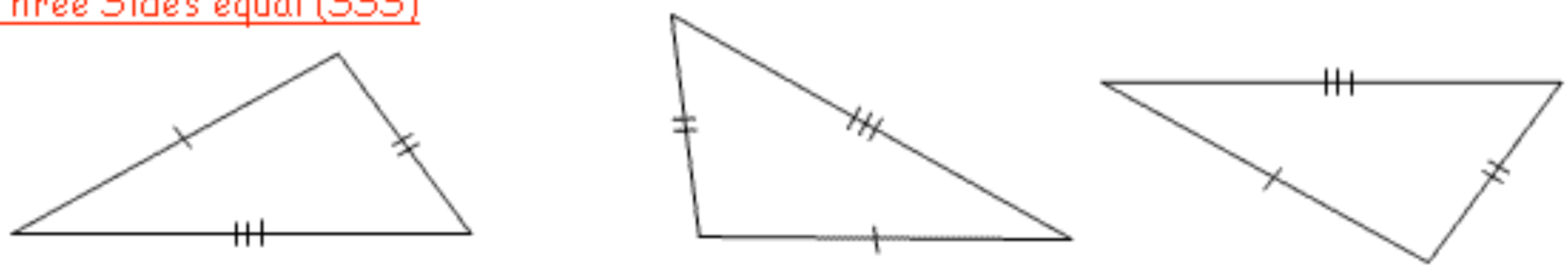
Return to contents page

2. Congruent Triangles

Because triangles only have three sides, and we know that all their interior angles must add up to 180^0, we don't actually need to know every single piece of information about two triangles to be able to say that they are congruent (identical).

There are 4 sets of criteria, and if a pair of triangles match any of these, then we can say for definite that they are the exact same triangle, and so they are congruent!

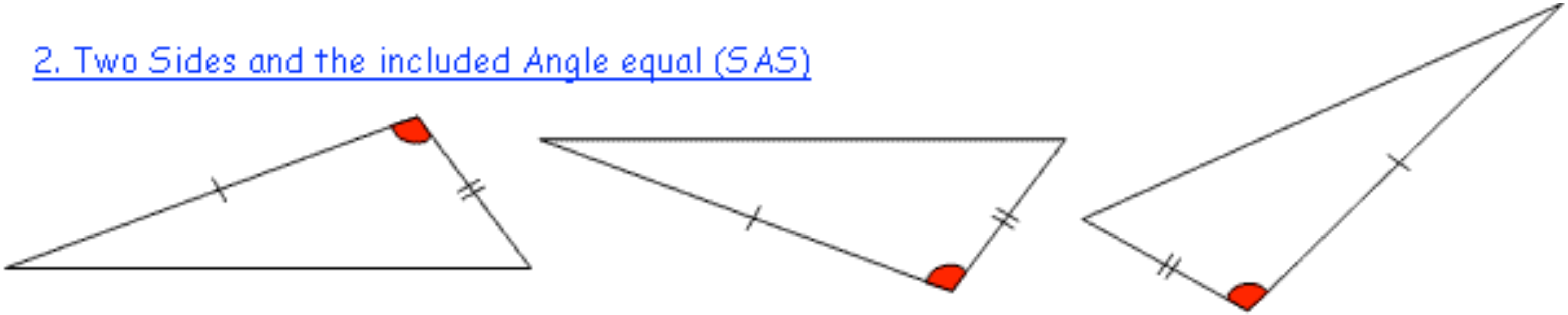
1. Three Sides equal (SSS)



The lengths of all three sides are given in the question, and they are the same for both triangles

Return to contents page

2. Two Sides and the included Angle equal (SAS)

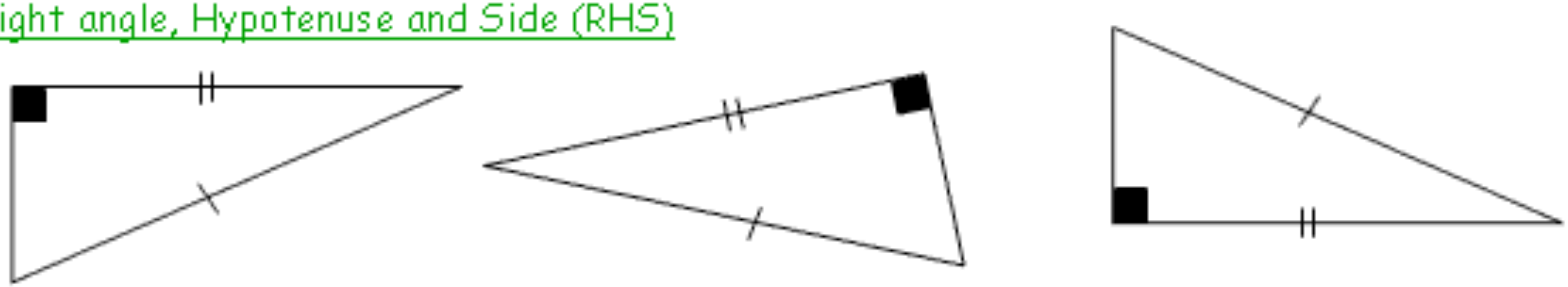


Two sides are the same length, and the angle in between those two sides is the same size!

3. Two Angles and a corresponding Side equal (AAS)

Two angles are equal, and so too is a side in the same position relative to those two angles!

4. Right angle, Hypotenuse and Side (RHS)

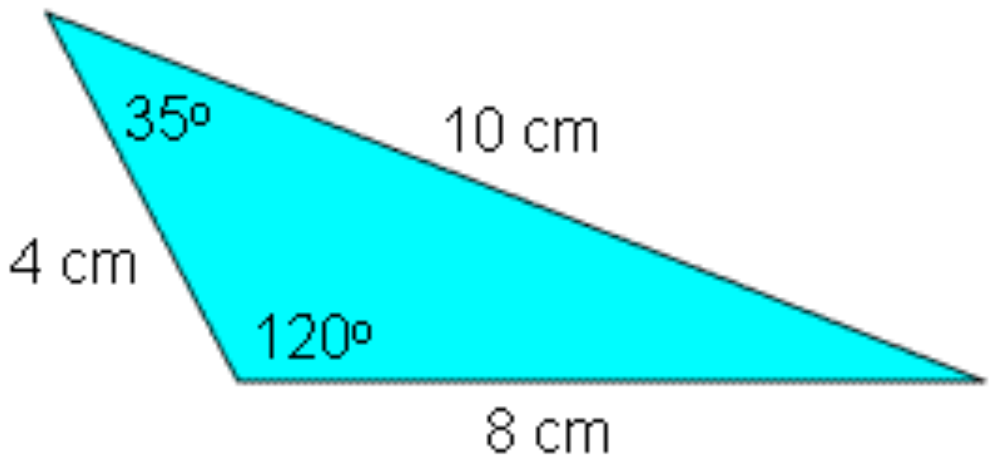


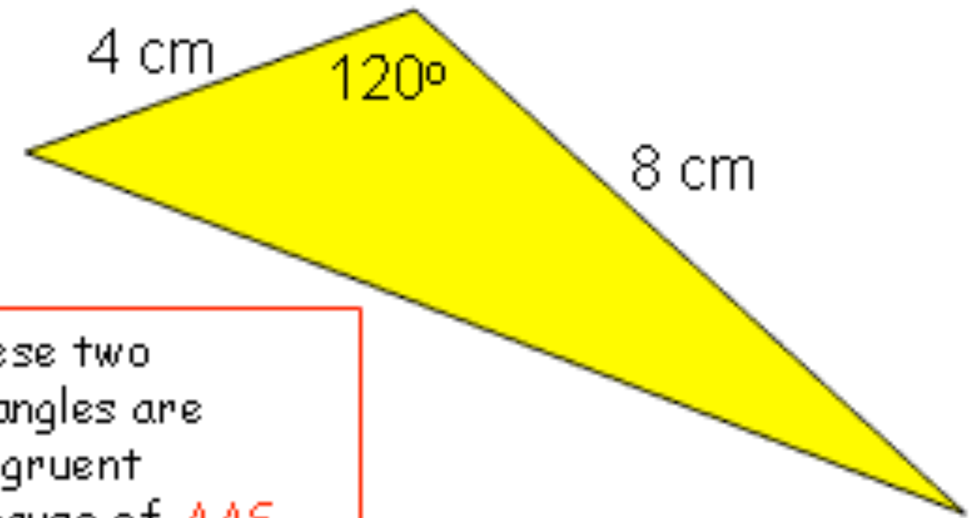
The triangle has a right angle, and you know the length of the hypotenuse and another side!

Return to contents page

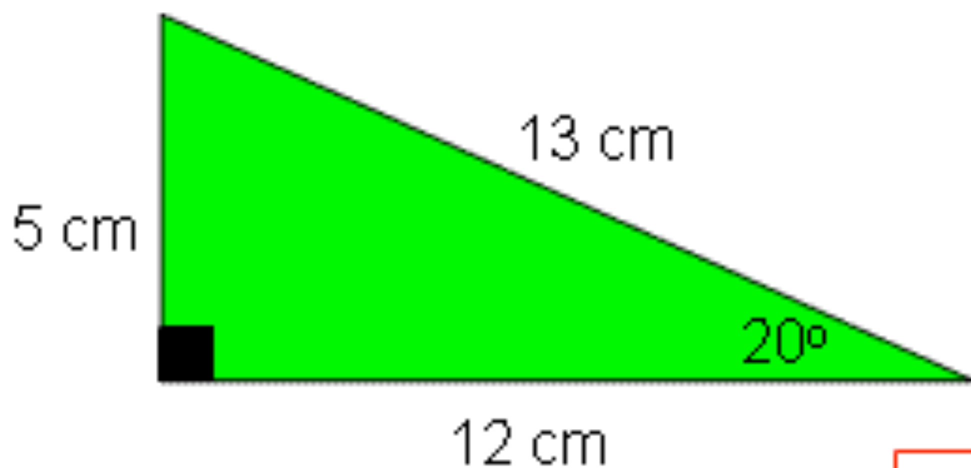
3. Examples

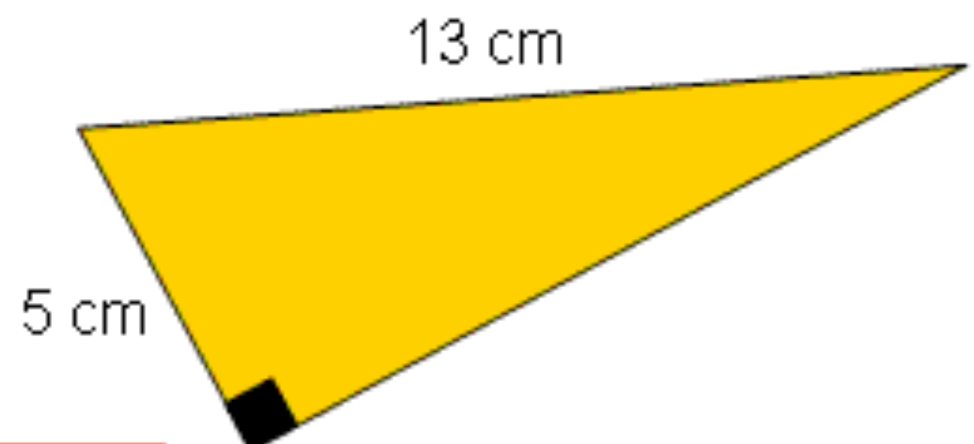
When answering questions on congruent triangles, you must quote one of the above four conditions if you believe a pair of triangles to be congruent:





These two triangles are congruent because of AAS





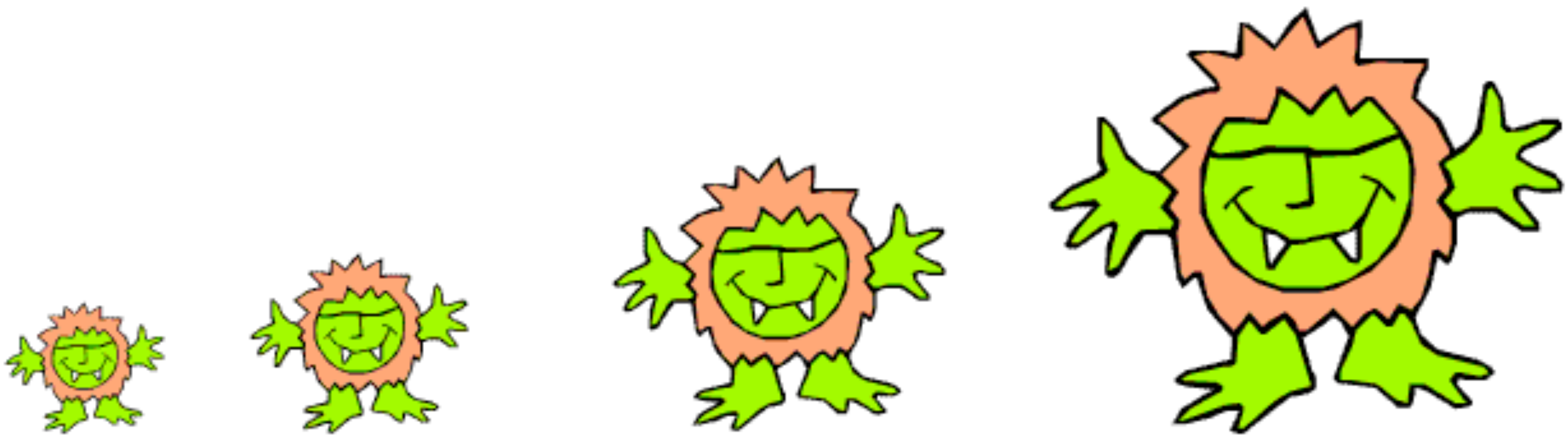
These two triangles are congruent because of RHS

Return to contents page

4. If two shapes are Similar, what does that mean?

- Unfortunately, when mathematicians says that two objects are similar, they do not mean that they look a bit a like

- They mean that one object is an enlargement of the other



- Technically, to get from one object to the other you must multiply (or divide) every single length by the same number

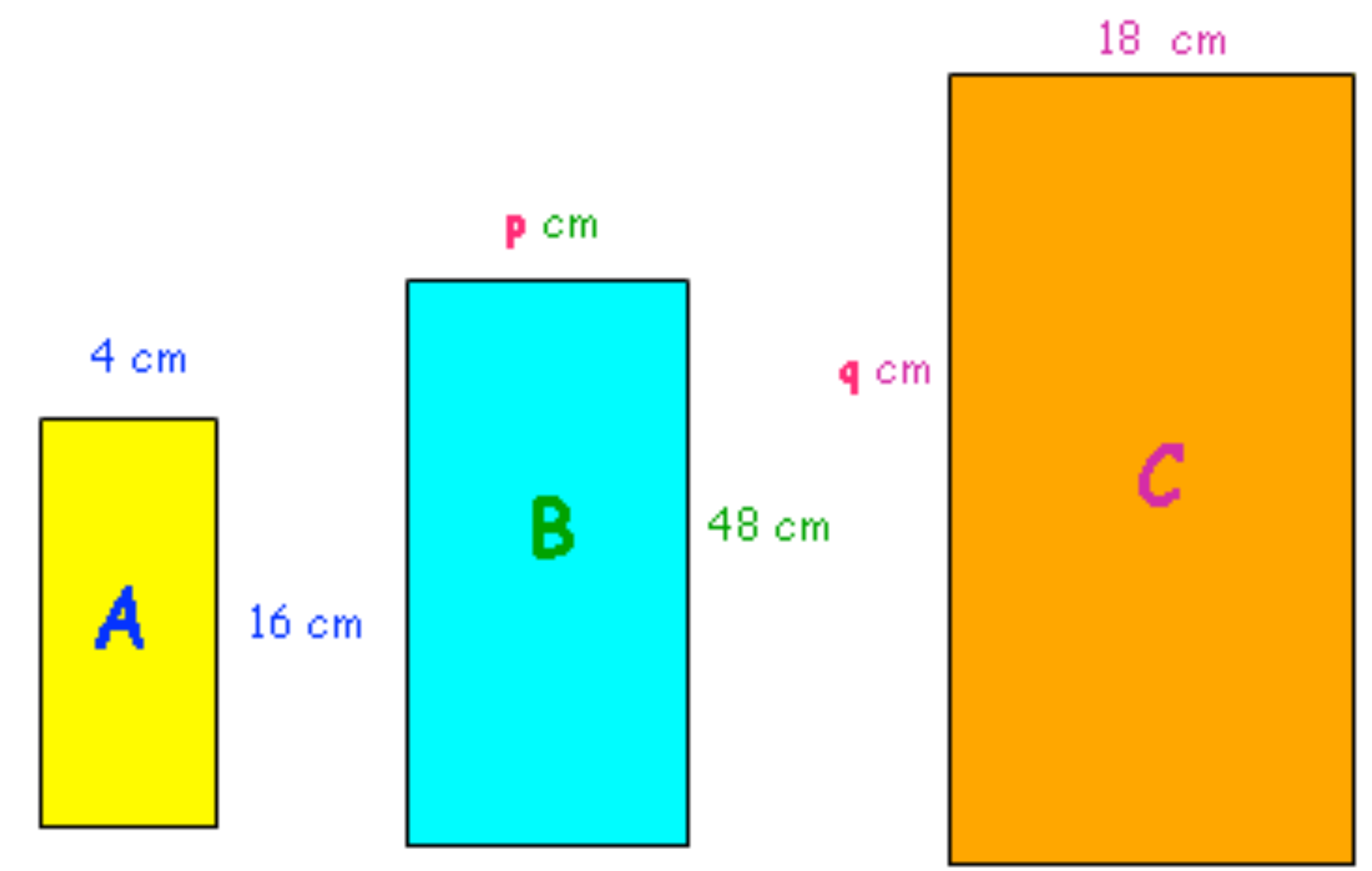
- Just like when we dealt with Enlargement, this number is called the Scale Factor!

Return to contents page

5. Using Length Scale Factors

If we are told that two object are similar, and we can work out the scale factor, then it is possible to work out a lot of unknown information about both objects

Example - These three shapes are similar. Find the missing values



To Find p:

Okay, so we know the shapes are similar, so let's work out the scale factor between rectangles A and B:

$$48 \div 16 = 3$$

So, we must enlarge every length on Rectangle A by a scale factor of 3 to get the lengths of Rectangle B.

So, our missing length must be:

$$4 \times 3 = 12\text{cm}$$

To Find q:

Okay, so now let's work out how to get from Rectangle A to Rectangle C

$$18 \div 4 = 4.5$$

So now we have our scale factor, it's dead easy to work out our missing length:

$$16 \times 4.5 = 72\text{cm}$$

Return to contents page

6. Similar Triangles

For any other shape to be similar, all angles must be the same and all matching sides must be in proportion

But... because triangles are funny, all you need for similarity between two triangles is for all three angles to be the same. Then you can be sure one triangle is an enlargement of the other

Example

(a) How do you know these two triangles are similar?

(b) Find the unknown lengths

Part (a)

Two triangles are similar if all their angles are the same...

Well... if you work out the missing angle in the yellow triangle it is 25^0, and the missing angle in the green triangle is... 35^0

So... all the angles are the same, so the triangles are similar!

And because they are similar, we can work out the scale factor, using our matching sides between the 120^0 and the 35^0...

$$7.5 \div 2.5 = 3$$

So, to get from one triangle to the other, we either multiply or divide by 3!

To Find X

$$3.4 \times 3 = 10.2\text{cm}$$

To Find Y

$$6.3 \div 3 = 2.1\text{cm}$$

Return to contents page

7. Area and Volume Factors

It is also possible for 3D shapes to be similar.
If we can work out the scale factor between their lengths of sides, we can also say that:

Area Factor = Scale Factor^2
Volume Factor = Scale Factor^3

Example - These two containers are similar. Work out the volume of water the smaller one can hold

Okay, before we can do anything we need to work out the length scale factor in exactly the same way as we always do:

$$60 \div 40 = 1.5$$

So, if our length scale factor = 1.5

Volume Scale Factor = 1.5^3 = 3.375

So now we know how to get from the big container to the small container, so we can work out its volume:

$$20.25 \div 3.375 = 6 \text{ litres}$$

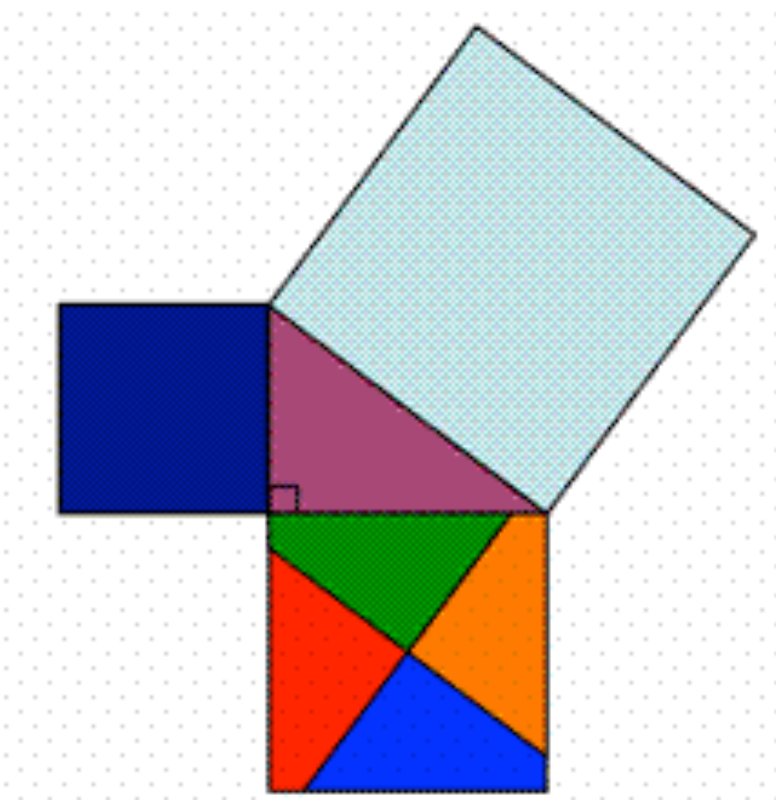
Return to contents page

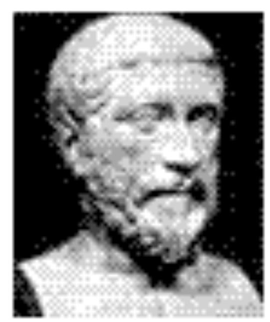
1. Pythagoras

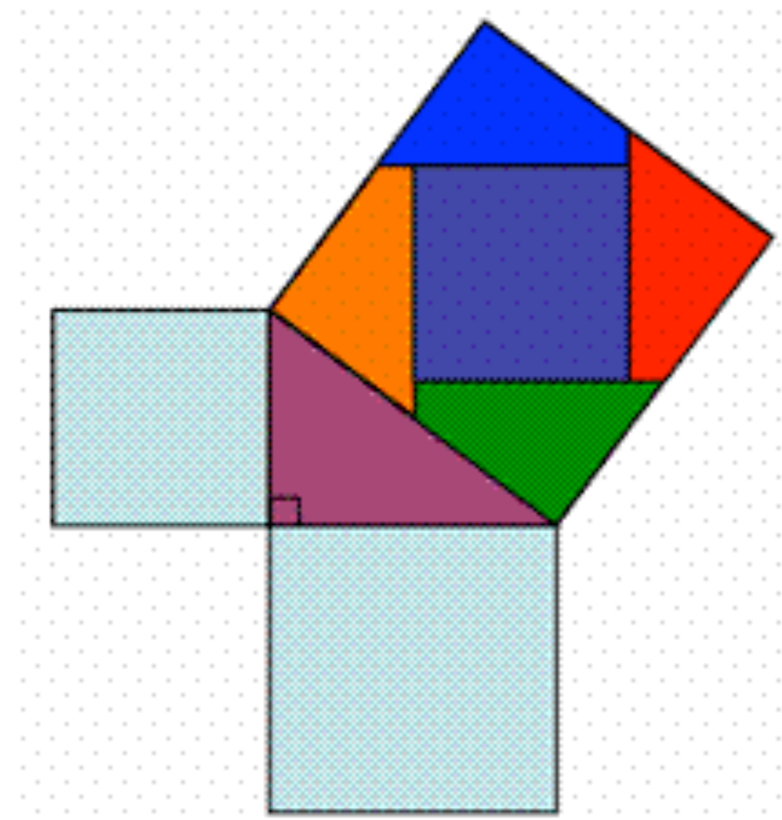
What is Pythagoras' Theorem?

- Pythagoras' Theorem is probably the most famous theorem in the history of mathematics
- It was "invented" by a Greek named Pythagoras (or one of his loyal followers who always marked any of their discoveries with the Pythagoras brand) somewhere around 6BC
- Pythagoras discovered a very important relationship between the lengths of sides in a right-angled triangles:

"If you take the lengths of the two shortest sides of any right-angled triangle, square them and add the answers together, you end up with the square of the longest side (the hypotenuse)"





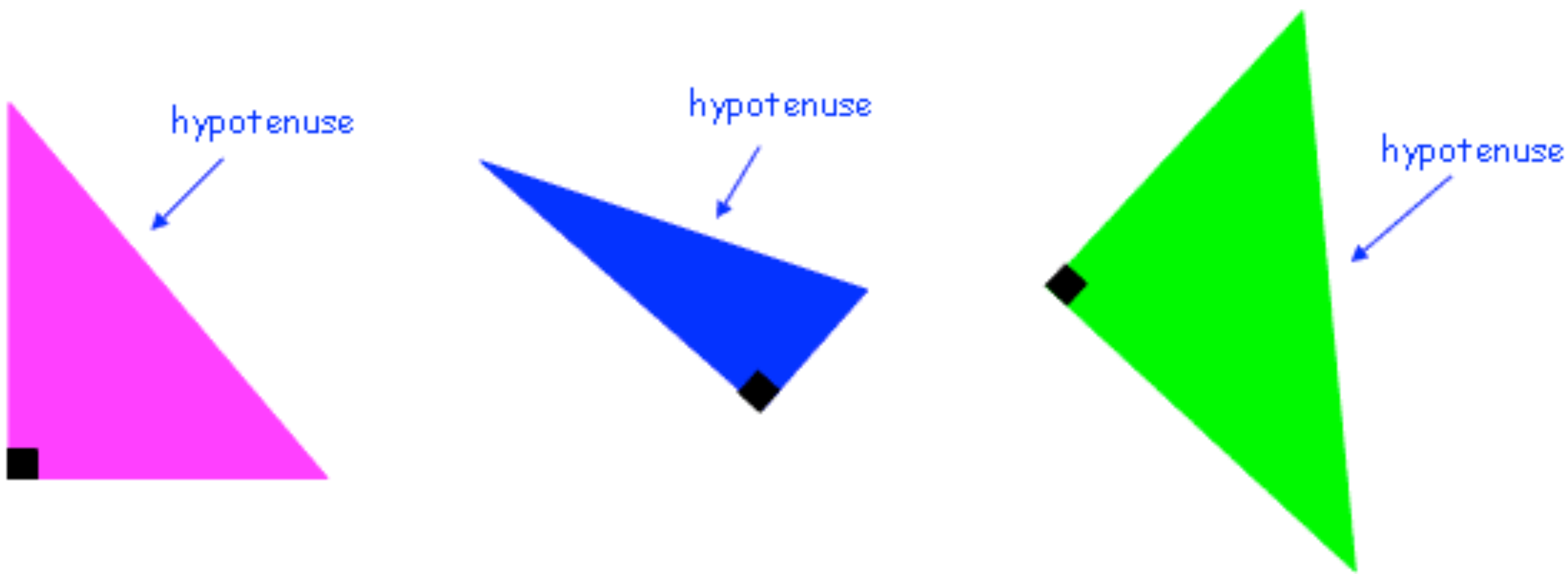


Return to contents page

2. What is the Hypotenuse?

- In order to use Pythagoras' Theorem (or all the trig that is coming around the corner!), you must be an expert at finding the Hypotenuse of any right angled triangle

- The Hypotenuse is the longest side of the right-angled triangle, and it is the side opposite the right-angle!



3. The two forms of Pythagoras' Theorem

- Pythagoras' Theorem can be written in two ways depending on whether you want to find the length of the hypotenuse of a triangle, or one of the other sides.

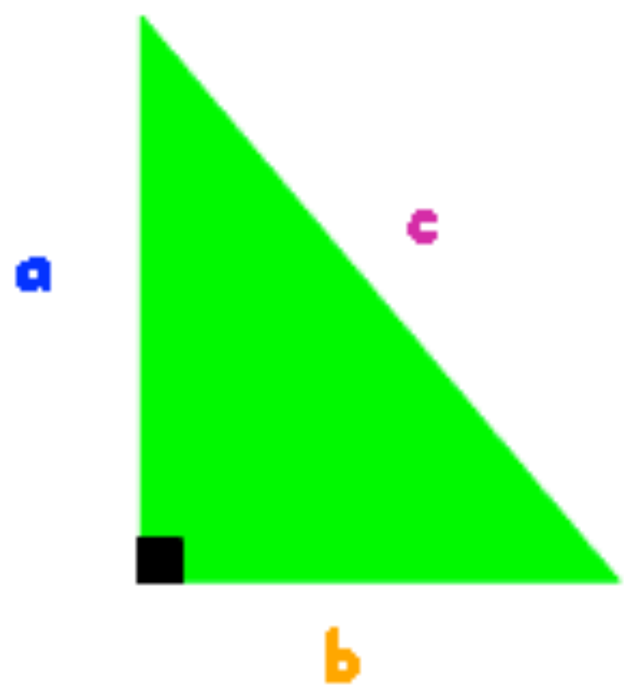
- The two ways are just different arrangements of the same original formula, so if you are good at formula re-arranging, then you only need to remember one!

Return to contents page

4. Finding the Hypotenuse

1. Label the Hypotenuse **c**, and the other sides **a** and **b**

2. Use the following formulae:



$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

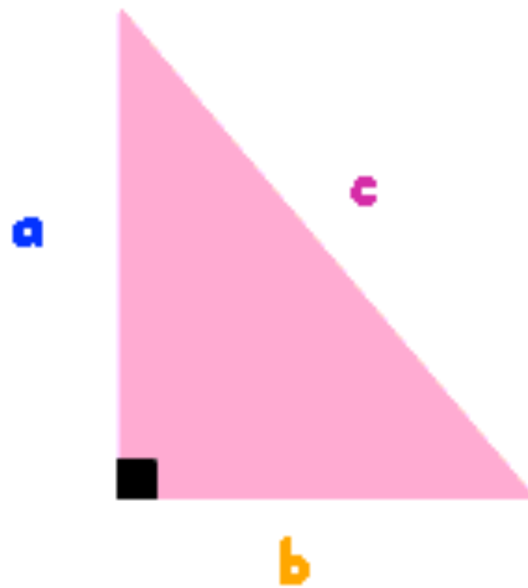
3. Replace the letters with the numbers you have been given, and carefully do the sum!

Return to contents page

5. Finding a side that isn't the Hypotenuse

1. Label the Hypotenuse **c**, label the side you want to find **a**, and the other side **b**

2. Use the following formulae:



$$a^2 = c^2 - b^2$$

3. Replace the letters with the numbers you have been given, and carefully do the sum!

Note: As I mentioned before, this version of the formula is just a different arrangement of:

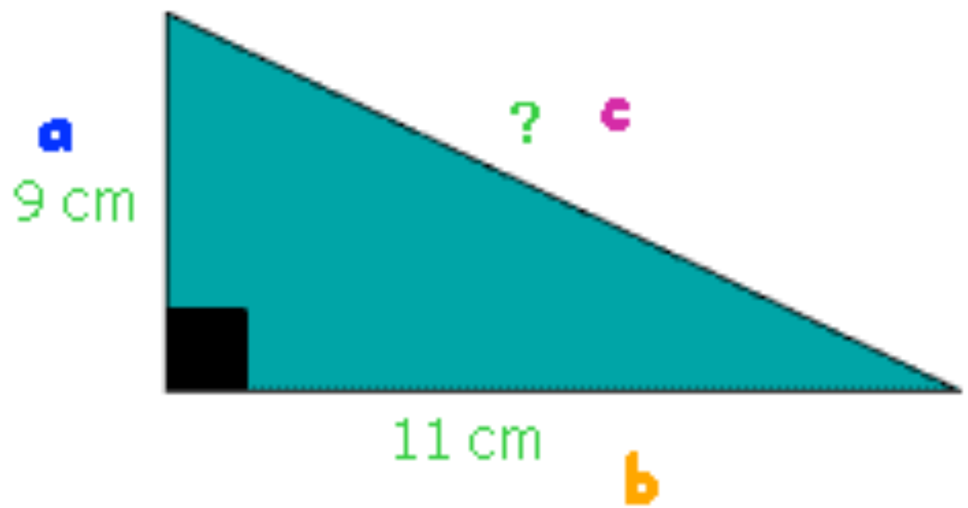
$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

Just subtract b^2 from both sides and you should see what I mean!

Return to contents page

Examples

1.



Okay, so the side we want to find is the Hypotenuse, so let's go through our routine:

1. Label the sides

2. Use the formula: $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$

3. Put in the numbers:

$$c^2 = 9^2 + 11^2$$

$$c^2 = 81 + 121$$

$$c^2 = 202$$

Square root both sides!

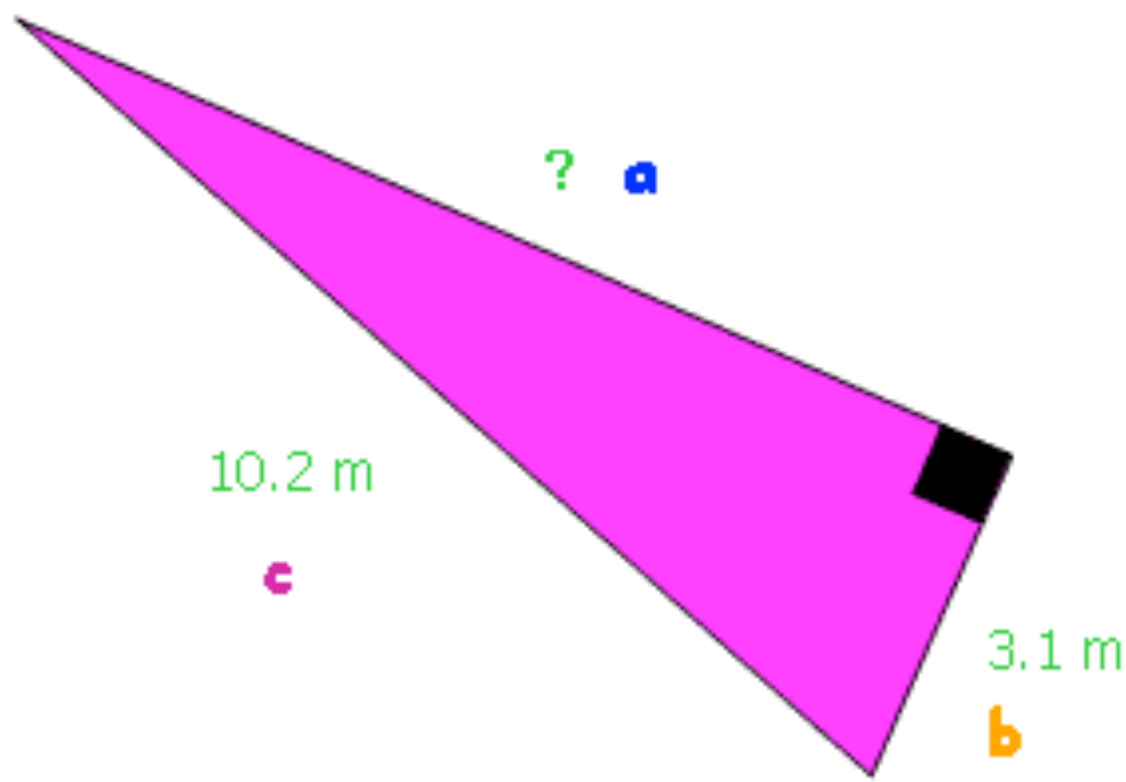
$$c = \sqrt{202}$$

$$c = 14.2cm \quad (1\text{dp})$$

Note: Our answer is longer than both our other sides... which is good because the hypotenuse is supposed to be the longest side!

Return to contents page

2.



Okay, so the side we want to find is NOT the Hypotenuse, so let's go through our routine:

1. Label the sides
2. Use the formula: $a^2 = c^2 - b^2$
3. Put in the numbers:

$$a^2 = 10.2^2 - 3.1^2$$

$$a^2 = 104.04^2 - 9.61^2$$

$$a^2 = 94.43$$

Square root both sides!

$$a = \sqrt{94.43}$$

$$a = 9.72m \quad \text{(2dp)}$$

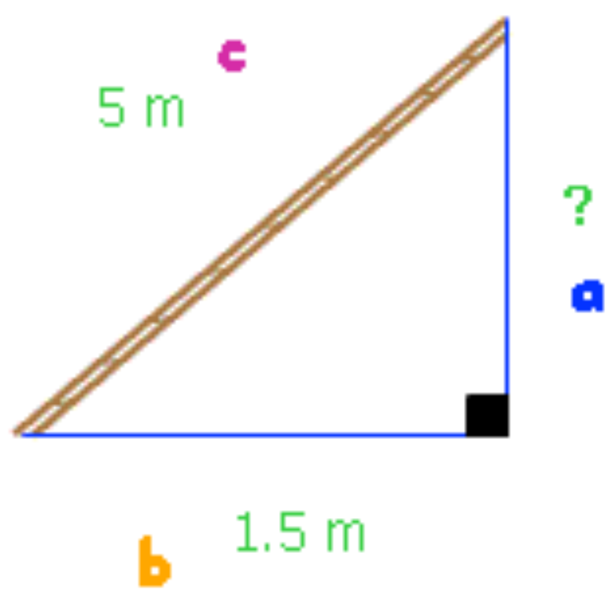
Note: Our answer is shorter than our hypotenuse... which is good because the hypotenuse is supposed to be the longest side!

Return to contents page

3.

A 5m ladder rests against the side of a house. The foot of the ladder is 1.5m away from the house. How far up the side of the house does the ladder reach?

At first glance this question does not appear to have anything to do with Pythagoras, but in these sort of situations, always follow this advice: IF IT'S TRICKY, DRAW A PICCY!!!... and then look what we have!



It's just a right angled triangle and we want to find a side that is NOT the Hypotenuse, so let's go through our routine:

1. Label the sides
2. Use the formula: $a^2 = c^2 - b^2$
3. Put in the numbers:

$$a^2 = 5^2 - 1.5^2$$

$$a^2 = 25^2 - 2.25^2$$

$$a^2 = 22.75$$

Square root both sides!

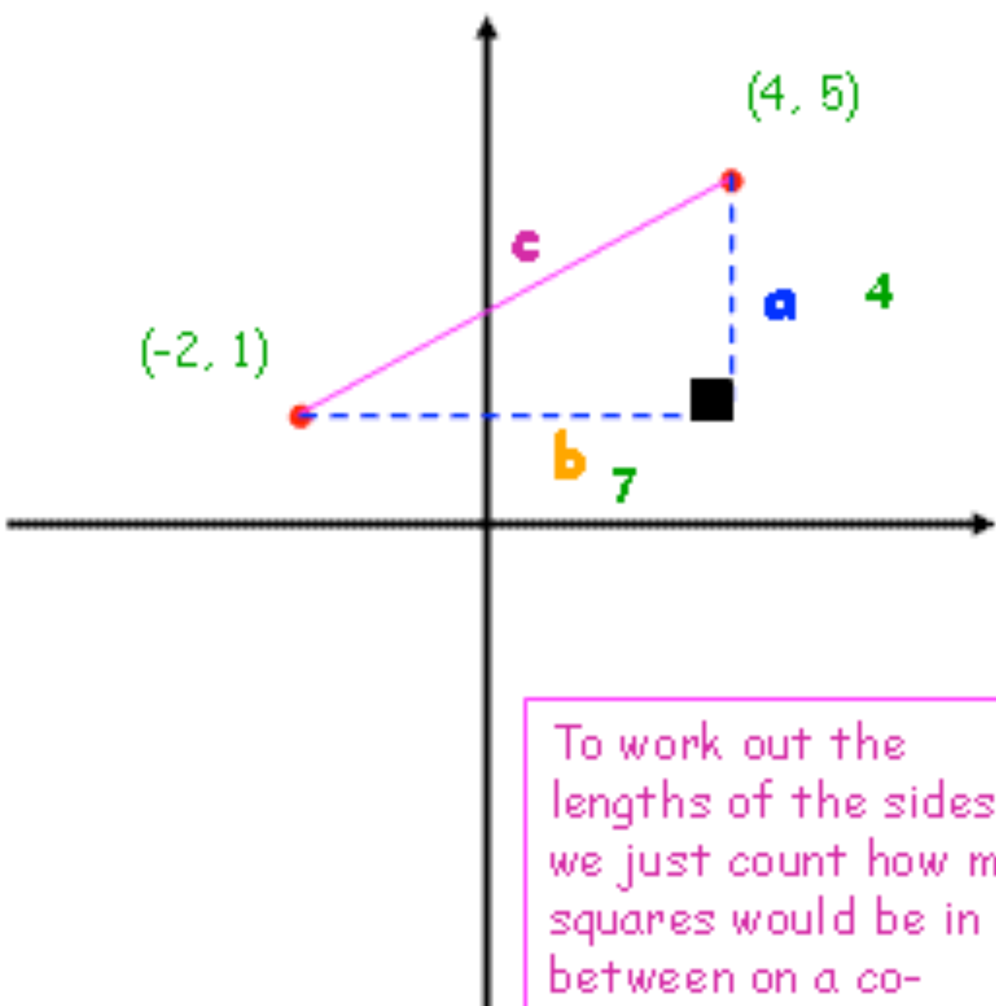
$$a = \sqrt{22.75}$$

$$a = 4.77m \quad \text{(2dp)}$$

Return to contents page

4. Find the distance between these two co-ordinates: (4, 5) and (-2, 1)

Again, at first glance this question does not appear to have anything to do with Pythagoras, but if we do a quick sketch of our co-ordinates, then look what we have!



To work out the lengths of the sides, we just count how many squares would be in between on a co-ordinate grid!

It's just a right angled triangle and we want to find the Hypotenuse, so let's go through our routine:

1. Label the sides

2. Use the formula: $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$

3. Put in the numbers:

$$c^2 = 4^2 + 7^2$$

$$c^2 = 16 + 49$$

$$c^2 = 65$$

$$c = \sqrt{65}$$

$$c = 8.1 \quad (1\text{dp})$$

Square root both sides!

Return to contents page

2. Sin, Cos and Tan

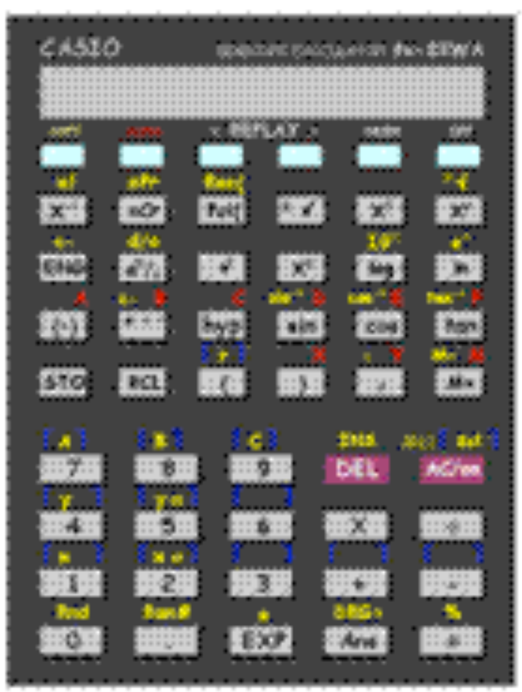
1. The Crucial Point about Sin, Cos and Tan

Just like Pythagoras Theorem, all the work we will be doing with Sin, Cos and Tan only works with RIGHT-ANGLED TRIANGLES

So... if you don't have a right-angled triangle, you might just have to add a line or two to make one!

2. Checking your Calculator is in the Correct Mode

Every now and again calculators have a tendency to do stupid things, one of which is slipping into the wrong mode for sin, cos and tan questions, giving you a load of dodgy answers even though you might be doing everything perfectly correctly!



Here is the check: Work out: sin 30

sin 3 0 =

And if you get an answer of **0.5**, you are good to go!

If not, you will need to change into degrees (DEG) mode.

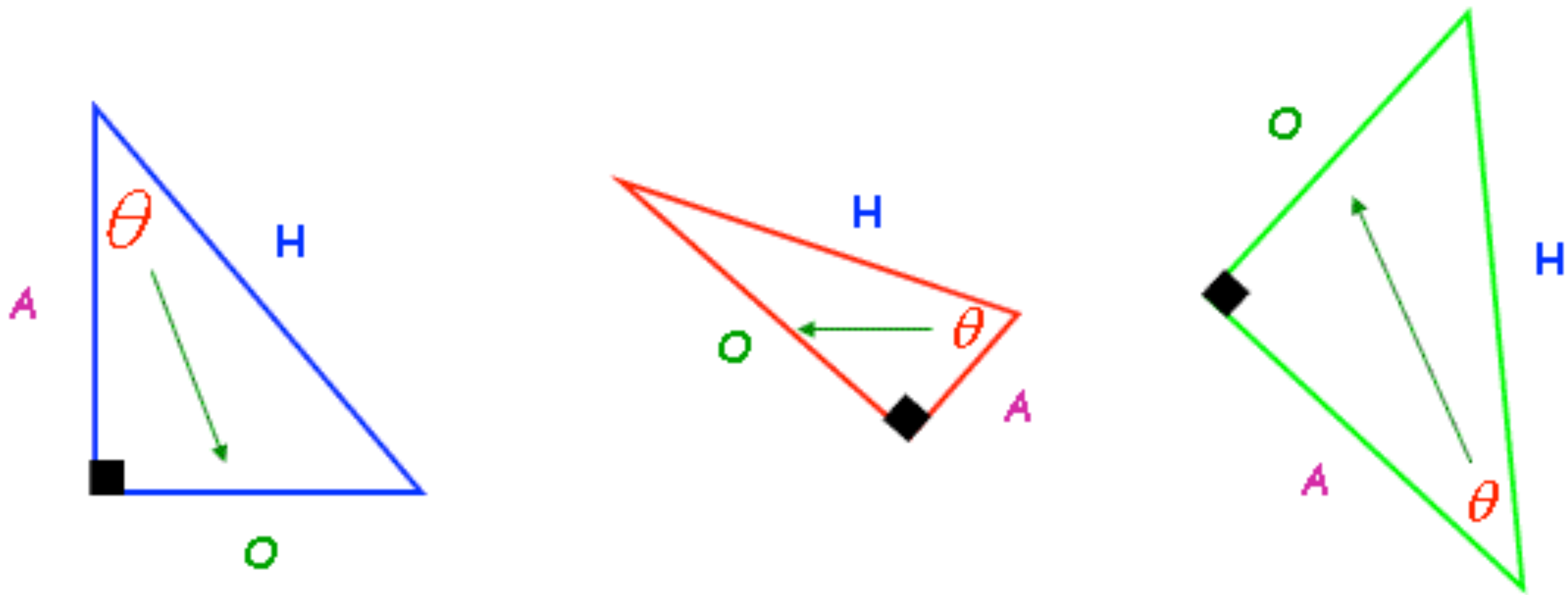
Each calculator is different, but here's how to do this on mine:

Return to contents page

3. Labelling the Sides of a Right-Angled Triangle

- Before you start frantically pressing buttons on your calculator, you must work out which one of the trig ratios (sin, cos or tan) than you need, and to do this you must be able to label the sides of your right-angled triangle correctly.

- This is the order to do it:
  1. Hypotenuse (H) – the longest side, opposite the right-angle
  2. Opposite (O) – the side directly opposite the angle you have been given / asked to work out
  3. Adjacent (A) – the only side left!



Note: θ is just the Greek letter Theta, and it is used for unknown angles, just like x is often used for unknown lengths!

Return to contents page

4. The Two Ways of Solving Trigonometry Problems

Both methods start off the same:

1. Label your right-angled triangle
2. Tick which information (lengths of sides, sizes of angles) you have been given
3. Tick which information you have been asked to work out
4. Decide whether the question needs **sin**, **cos** or **tan**

The difference comes now, where you actually have to go on and get the answer.
Both of the following methods are perfectly fine, just choose the one that suits you best!

(a) Use the Formulas and Re-arrange

If you are comfortable and confident re-arranging formulas, then this method is for you!
Just learn the following formulas:

$$\text{Sine } \theta = \frac{\text{Opposite}}{\text{Hypotenuse}} \qquad \text{Sin } \theta = \frac{O}{H}$$

$$\text{Cosine } \theta = \frac{\text{Adjacent}}{\text{Hypotenuse}} \qquad \text{Cos } \theta = \frac{A}{H}$$

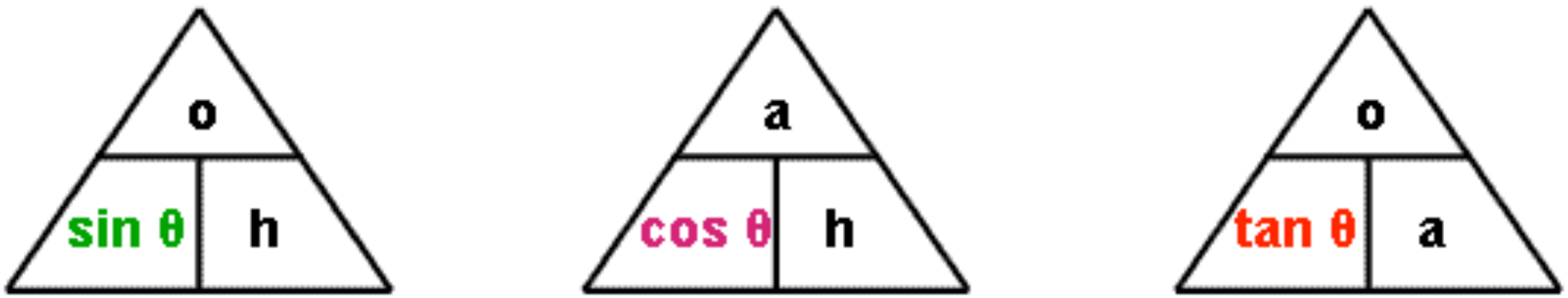
$$\text{Tangent } \theta = \frac{\text{Opposite}}{\text{Adjacent}} \qquad \text{Tan } \theta = \frac{O}{A}$$

Now just substitute in the two values you do know, and re-arrange the equation to find the value you don't know!

Return to contents page

(b) Use the Formula Triangles

This is a clever little way of solving any trig problem.
Just make sure you can draw the following triangles from memory:



A good way to remember these is to use the initials, reading from left to right:

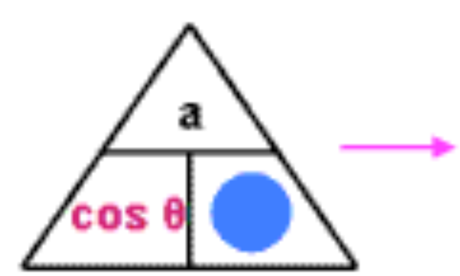
S O H   C A H   T O A

And make up a way of remembering them (a pneumonic, is the posh word!). Now, I know a good one about a horse, but it might be a bit too rude for this website...

Anyway, once you have decided whether you need **sin**, **cos** or **tan**, just put your thumb over the thing (angle or side) you are trying to work out, and the triangle will magically tell you exactly what you need to do!

Finding Opposite:

$o = \sin\theta \times h$



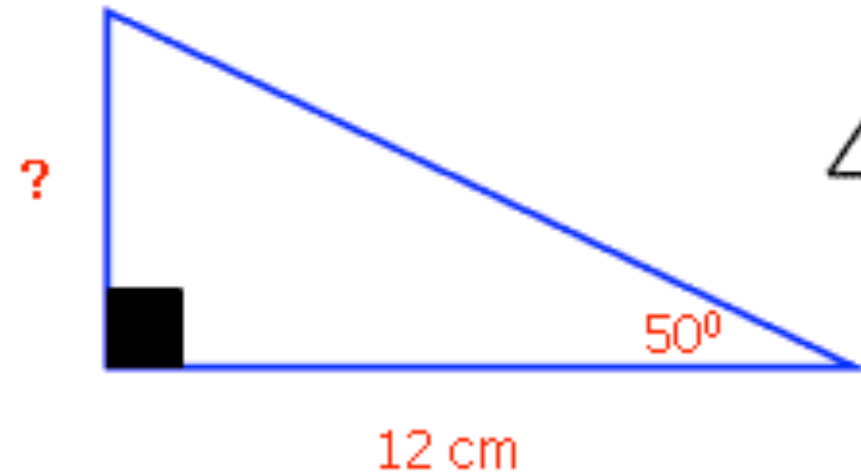
Finding Hypotenuse:

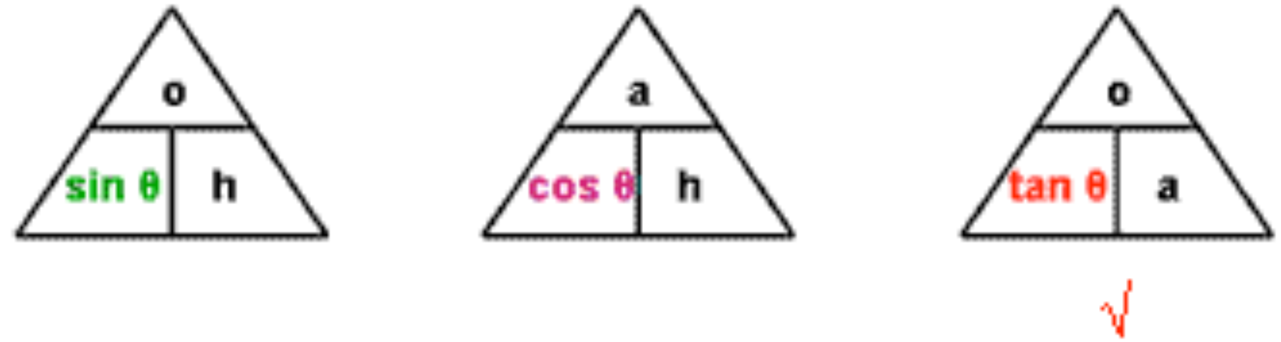
$h = a \div \cos\theta$

Return to contents page

Examples

1.





Okay, here we go:

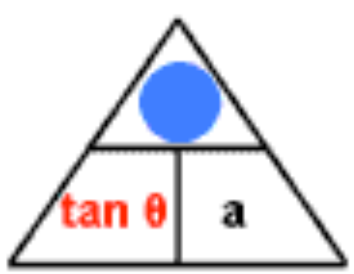
1. Label the sides

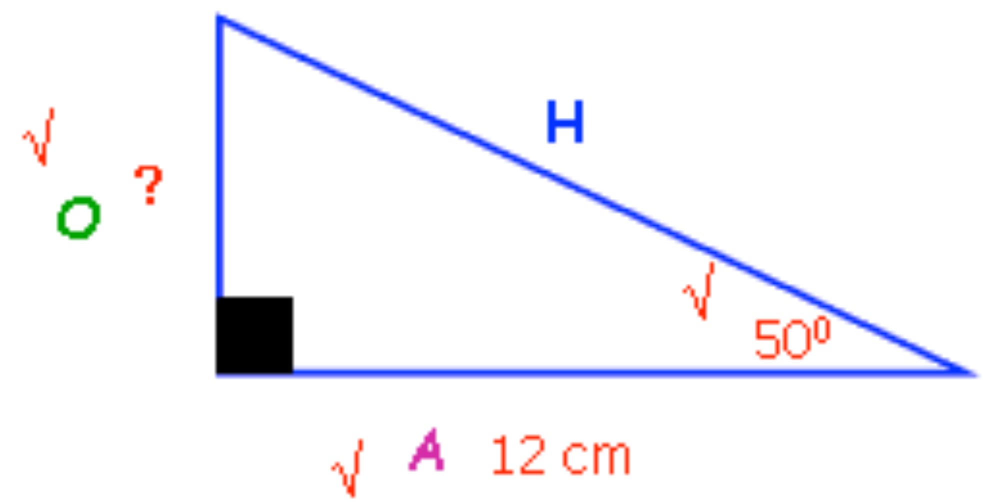
2. Tick which information we have been given… which I reckon is the angle and the Adjacent

3. Tick which information we need… which I reckon is the Opposite side

4. Decide whether we need **sin**, **cos** or **tan** … well, looking above, the only one that contains both O and A is… **Tan**!

5. Now we place our thumb over the thing we need to work out, which is the Opposite:





6. And now we know how to do it!

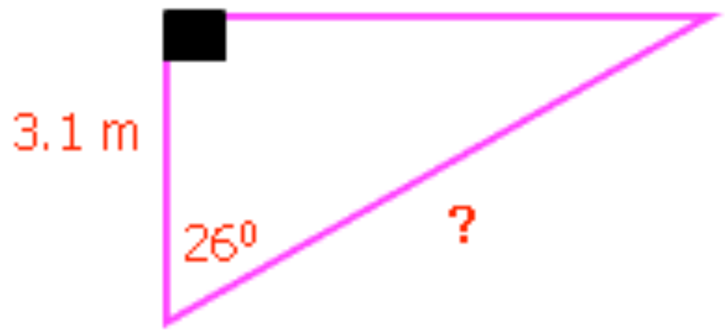
o = Tan θ **x** a

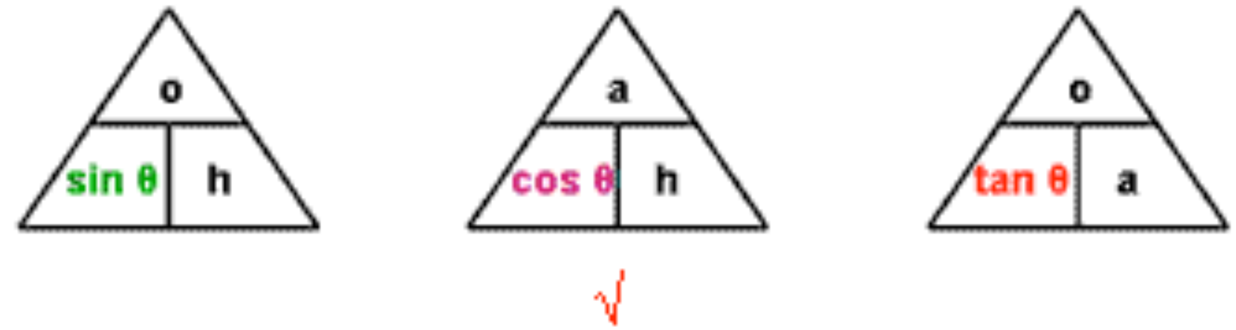
(tan 5 0) X 1 2 =

14.3 cm (1dp)

Return to contents page

2.





Okay, here we go:

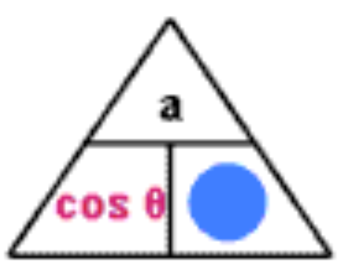
1. Label the sides

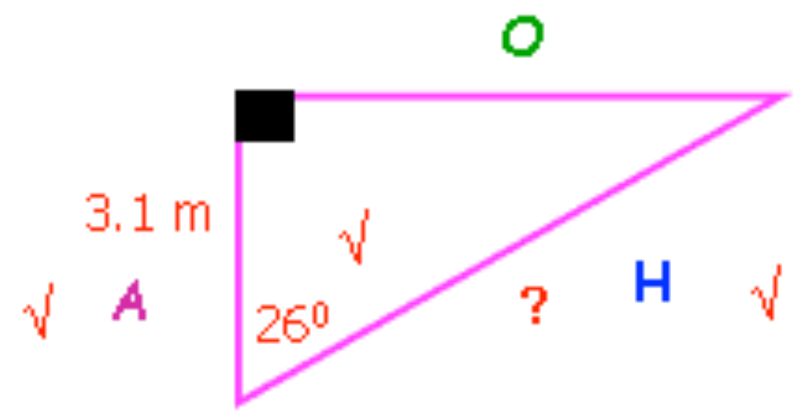
2. Tick which information we have been given… which I reckon is the <u>angle</u> and the <u>Adjacent</u>

3. Tick which information we need… which I reckon is the <u>Hypotenuse</u> side

4. Decide whether we need **sin**, **cos** or **tan** … well, looking above, the only one that contains both A and H is… **Cos**!

5. Now we place our thumb over the thing we need to work out, which is the <u>Hypotenuse</u>:





6. And now we know how to do it!

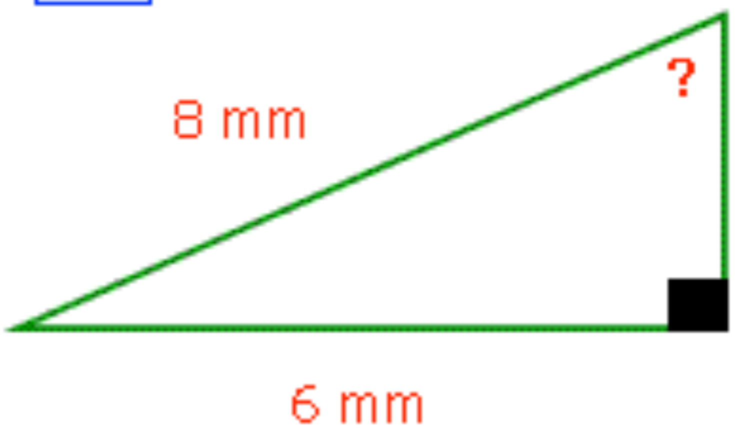
$$h = a \div \cos\theta$$

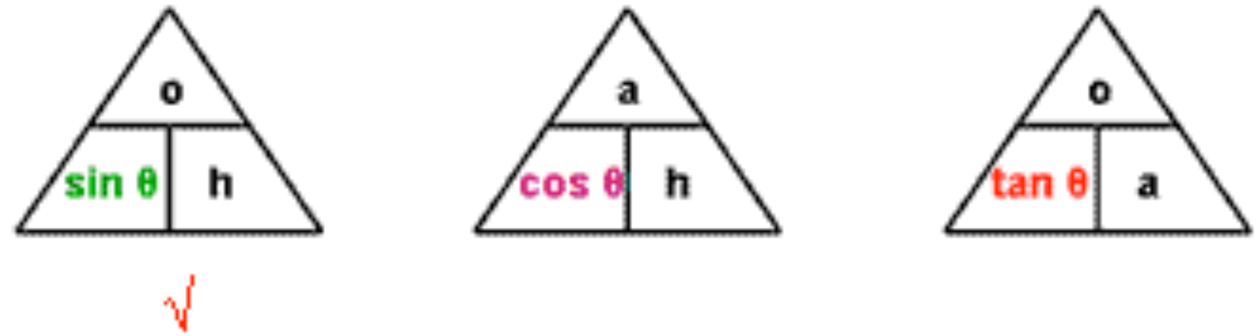
3 . 1 ÷ (cos 2 6) =

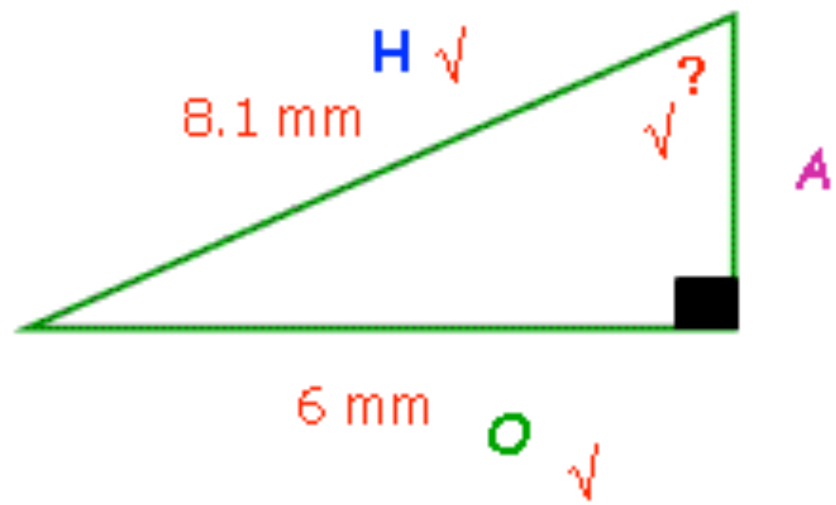
<u>3.45 m</u> (2dp)

<u>Return to contents page</u>

3.







Okay, here we go:

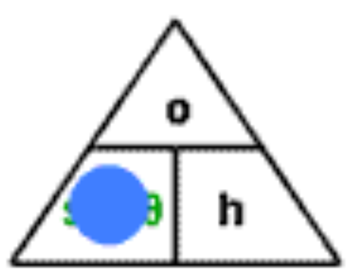
1. Label the sides

2. Tick which information we have been given… which I reckon is the Hypotenuse and the Opposite

3. Tick which information we need… which I reckon is the angle

4. Decide whether we need **sin**, **cos** or **tan** … well, looking above, the only one that contains both O and H is… **Sin**!

5. Now we place our thumb over the thing we need to work out, which is the angle… or Sin θ



6. Okay, be careful here:

Sin θ = o ÷ h

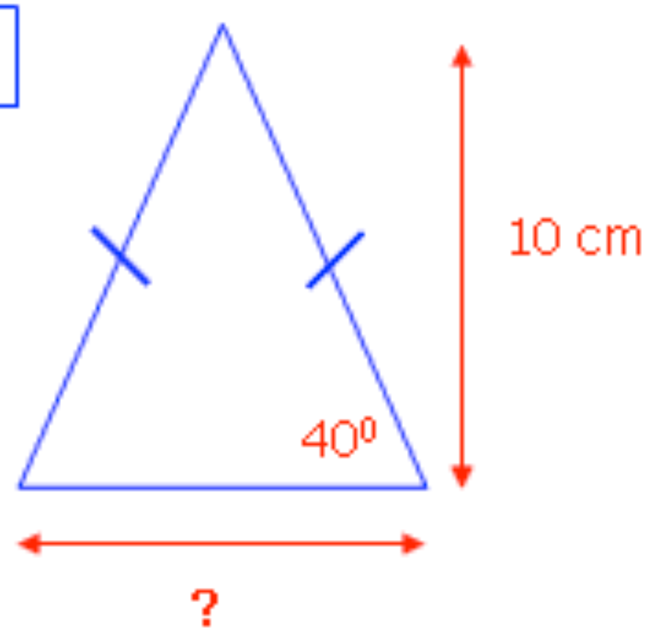
Sin θ = 0.740740740740…

But that's not the answer! We don't want to know what Sin θ is, we want to know what θ is, so we must use "inverse sin" to leave us with just θ on the left hand side:

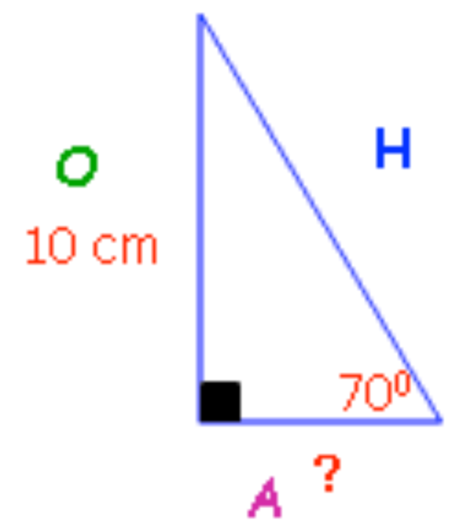
47.79^{o} (2dp)

Return to contents page

4.



Now, we have a problem here... we don't have a right-angled triangle! But we can easily make one appear from this isosceles triangle by adding a vertical line down the centre, and then we can carry on as normal...



1. Label the sides

2. Tick which information we have been given... which I reckon is the angle and the Opposite

3. Tick which information we need... which I reckon is the Adjacent

4. Decide whether we need **sin**, **cos** or **tan** ... well, looking back, the only one that contains both O and A is... **Tan**!

5. Now we place our thumb over the thing we need to work out, which is the Adjacent

6. And now we know how to do it!

$$a = o \div \text{Tan}\,\theta$$

[1] [0] [÷] [(] [tan] [7] [0] [)] [=]

3.639702...

But that's not the answer! We've only worked out half of the base of the isosceles triangle! So we need to double this to give us our true answer of:

7.28 cm (2dp)

Return to contents page

3. 3D Trigonometry

The Secret to Solving 3D Trigonometry Problems

- 3D Trigonometry is just the same as bog-standard, flat, normal trigonometry

- All we need are the skills we learnt in the last two sections:
    1. Pythagoras
    2. Sin, Cos and Tan

- The only difference is that is a little bit harder to spot the right-angled triangles

- But once you spot them:
    - Draw them out flat
    - Label your sides
    - Fill in the information that you do know
    - Work out what you don't in the usual way!

- And if you can do that, then you will be able to tick another pretty tricky topic off your list!

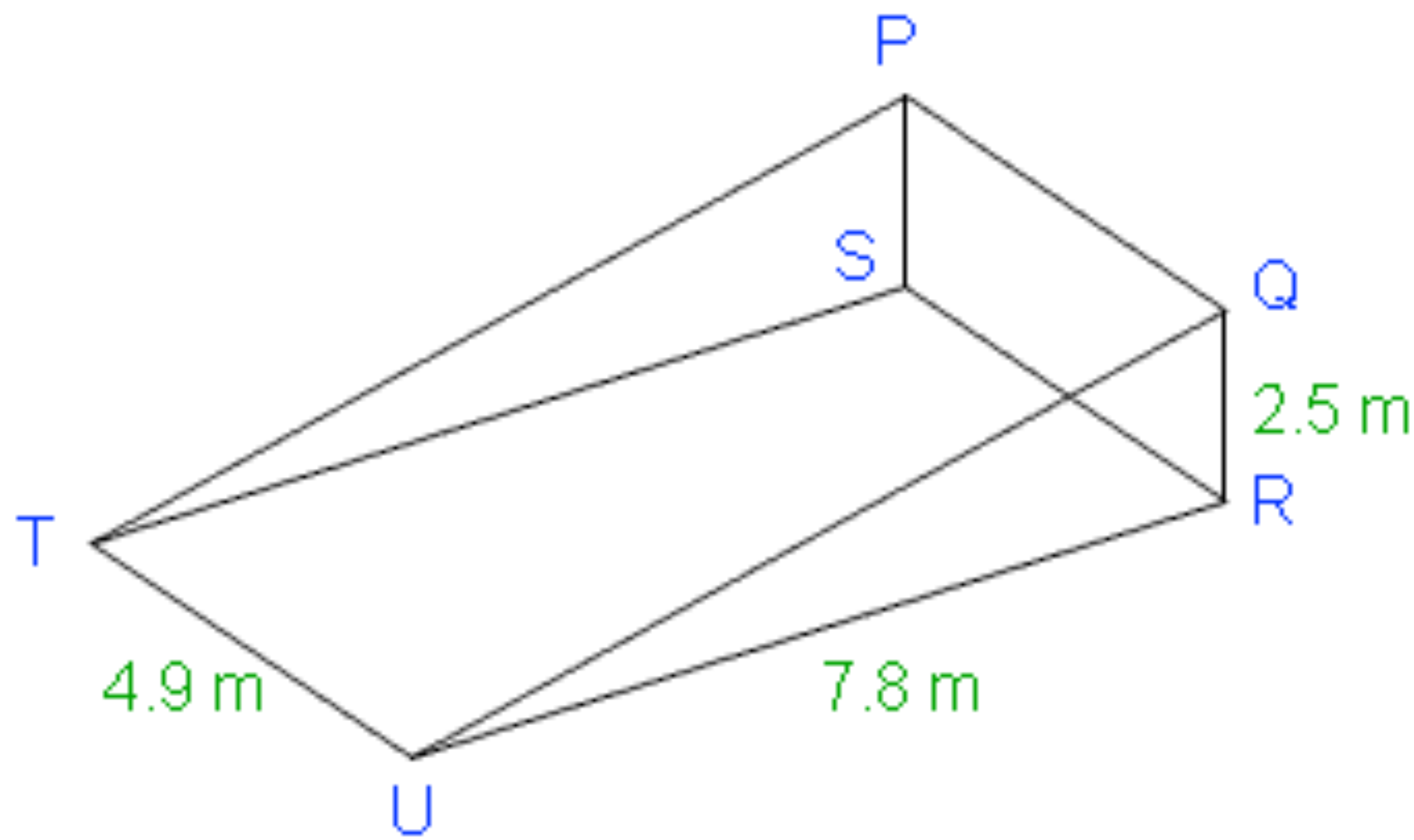
Please Remember: You need a right-angled triangle to be able to use either Pythagoras or Sin, Cos and Tan... and I promise that will be the last time I say it!

Return to contents page

Example 1

The diagram below shows a record breaking wedge of Cheddar Cheese in which rectangle PQRS is perpendicular (at 90^0 to) to rectangle RSTU. The distances are shown on the diagram.

Calculate: (a) The distance QT (b) The angle QTR

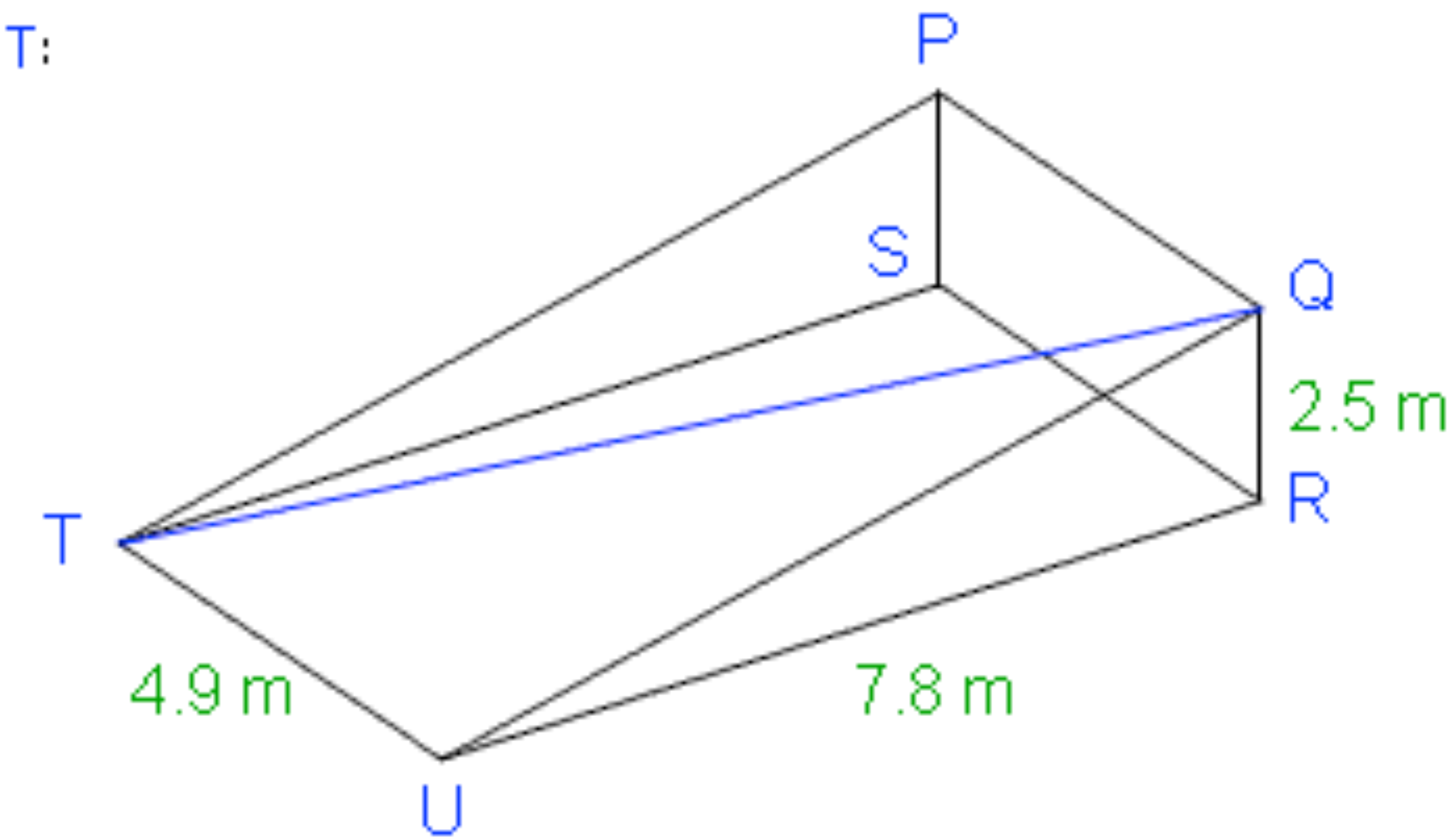


Return to contents page

Working out the answer (a):

The first thing we need to figure out is what we are actually trying to work out!

We need the line QT:



Now, as I said, the key to this is spotting the right-angled triangles...

Well, I can see a nice one: TQR.

That contains the length we want, and we already know how long QR is...

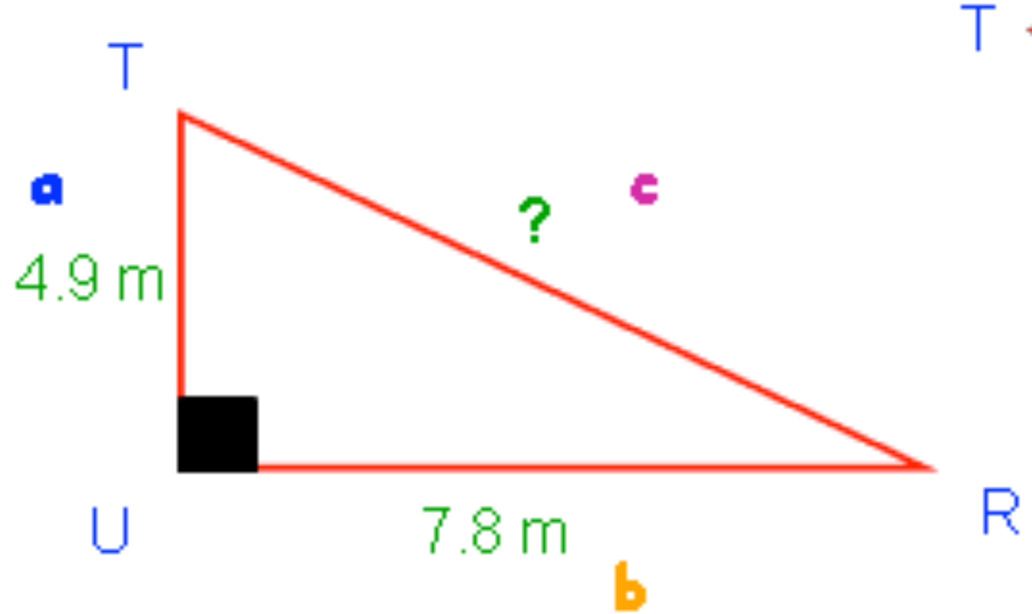
So now all we need to do is work out length TR...

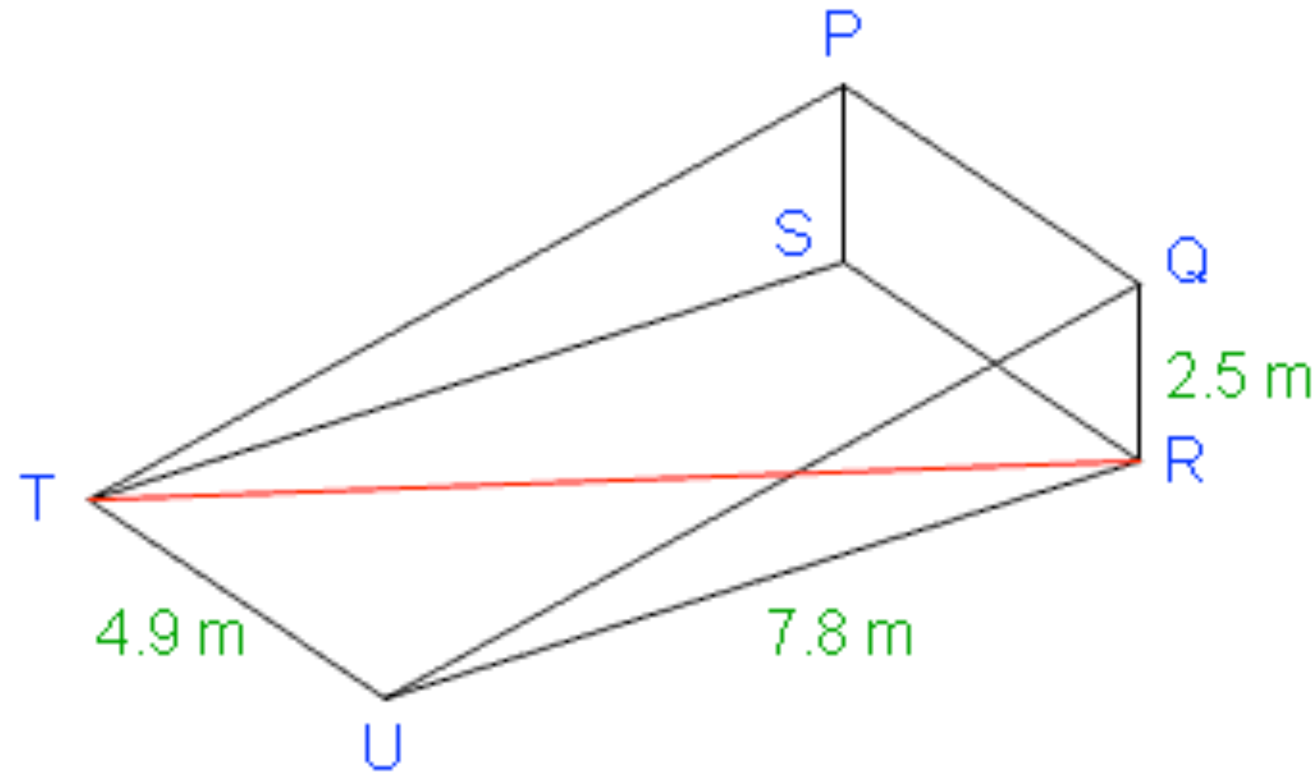
Return to contents page

Working Out TR:

Okay, if you look carefully, you should be able to see a right-angled triangle on the base of this wedge of cheese

It's the triangle TRU:





Well, we have two sides and we want to work out the Hypotenuse... This looks like a job for Pythagoras!

1. Label the sides

2. Use the formula: $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$

3. Put in the numbers:

$$c^2 = 4.9^2 + 7.8^2$$

$$c^2 = 24.01 + 60.84$$

$$c^2 = 84.85$$

$$c = \sqrt{84.85}$$

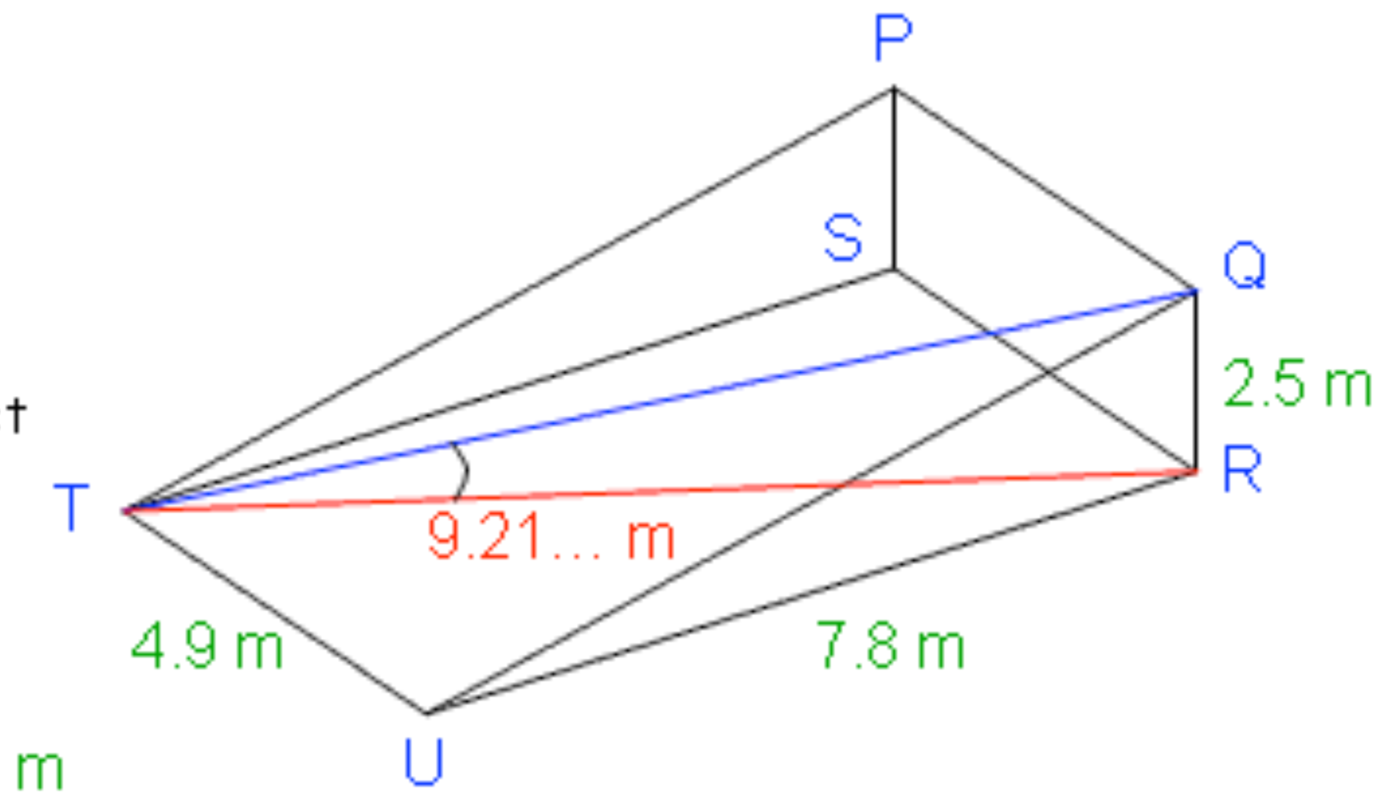
$$c = 9.211...m$$

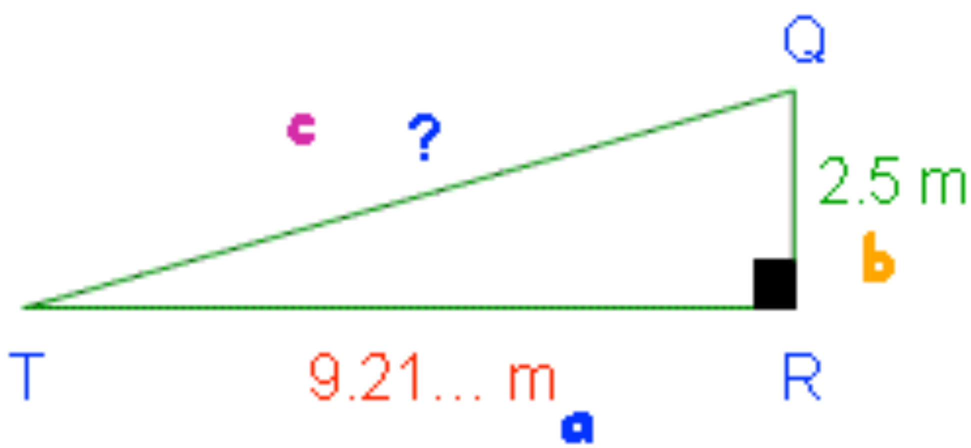
Return to contents page

Working Out TQ:

Okay, so now we have all we need to be able to calculate TQ.

Just make sure you draw the correct right-angled triangle!





Once again, we have two sides and we want to work out the Hypotenuse... This looks like a job for Pythagoras!

1. Label the sides

2. Use the formula: $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$

3. Put in the numbers:

$$c^2 = 9.21...^2 + 2.5^2$$

$$c^2 = 84.85 + 6.25$$

$$c^2 = 91.1$$

$$c = \sqrt{91.1}$$

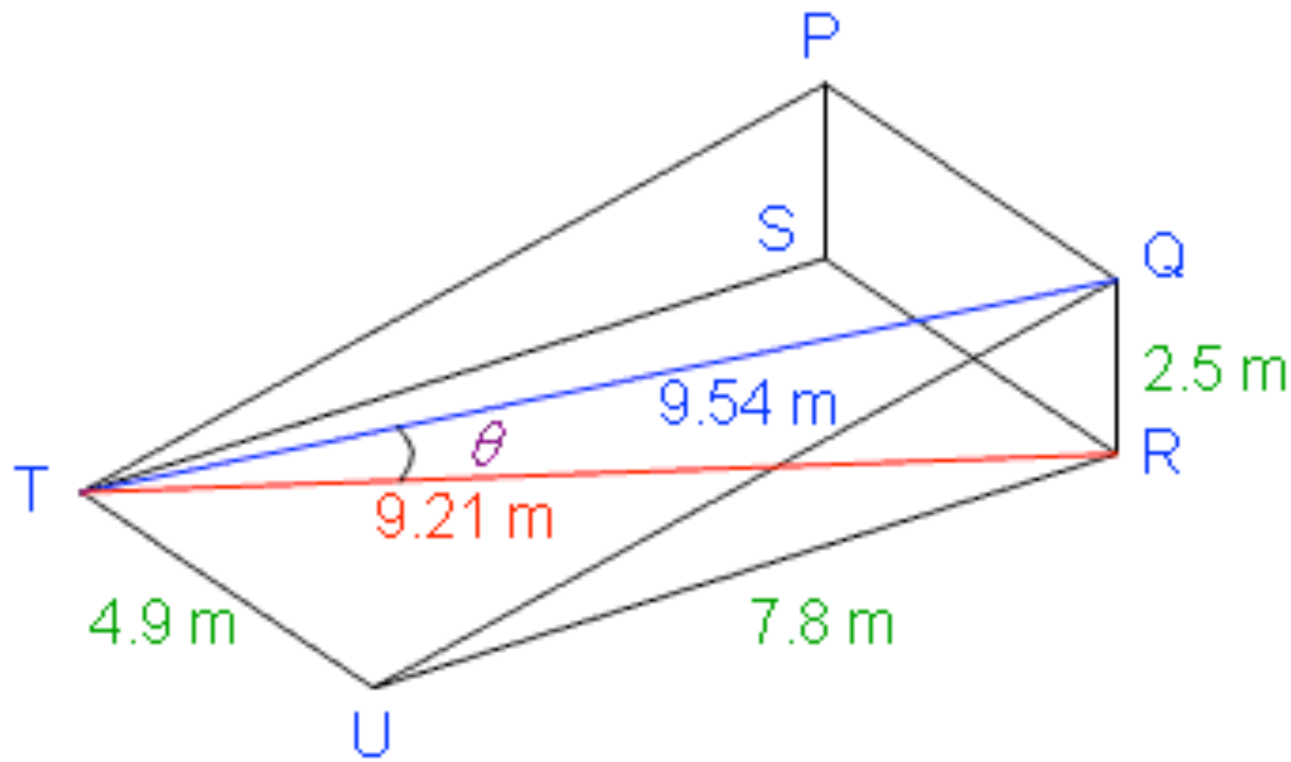
$$c = 9.54m \quad \text{(2dp)}$$

Return to contents page

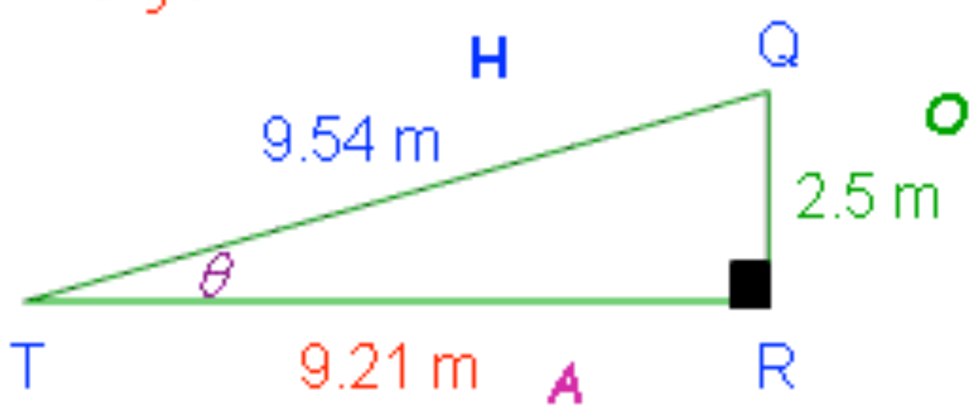
Working out the answer (b):

Again, we must be sure we know what angle the question wants us to find!

I have marked angle QTR on the diagram



So now we draw our right-angled triangle:



To calculate the size on an angle, we must use either **sin**, **cos** or **tan**, which means first we must label our sides!

Now, because we actually know all three lengths, we can choose! I'm going for **tan**!

$\text{Tan } \theta = o \div a$

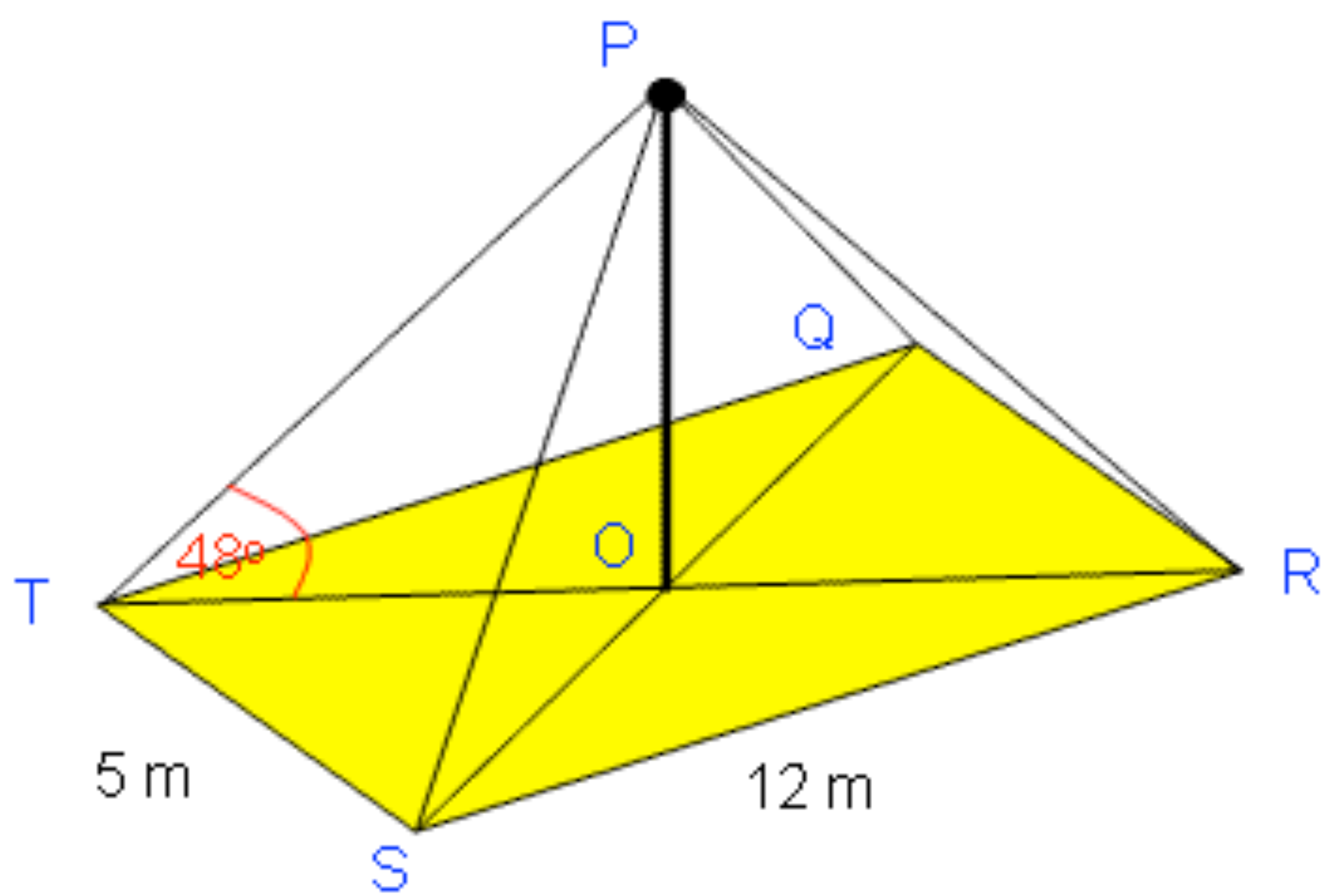
$\text{Tan } \theta = 0.27144...$

15.2^{0} (1dp)

Return to contents page

Example 2

The diagram below shows a plan of a tent that I am trying to erect before the rain comes. OP is a vertical pole, and O is at the very centre of the rectangle QRST. The lengths and angles are as shown on the diagram. Calculate the height of the vertical pole OP.



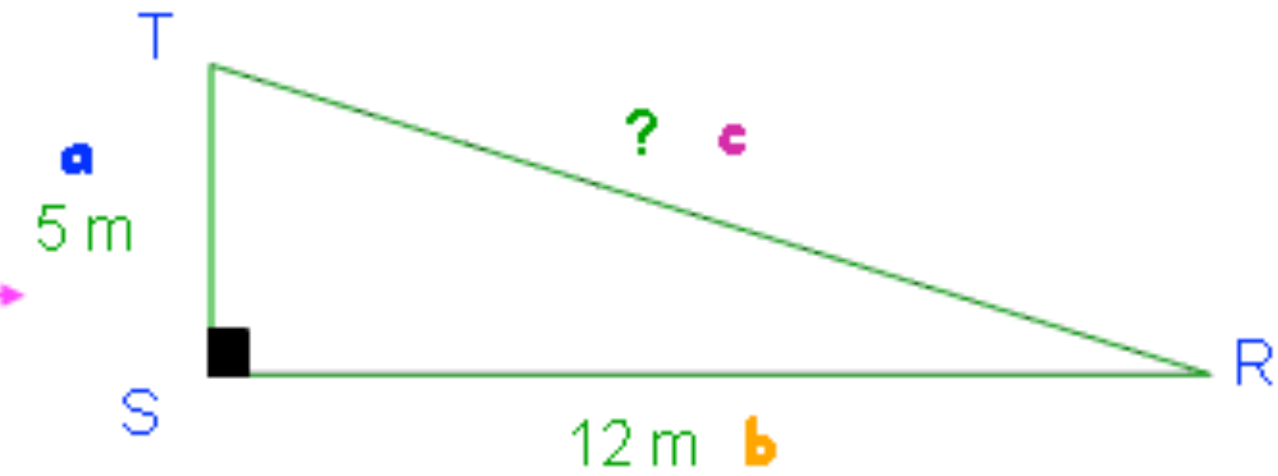
Return to contents page

1. Working Out OT:

You should be able to see that if we can work out OT, we will then have a right-angled triangle which will give us OP!

So, to get started we need to use the base of the rectangle:

Well, OT is half way along the line TR line, so it must be... **6.5m**



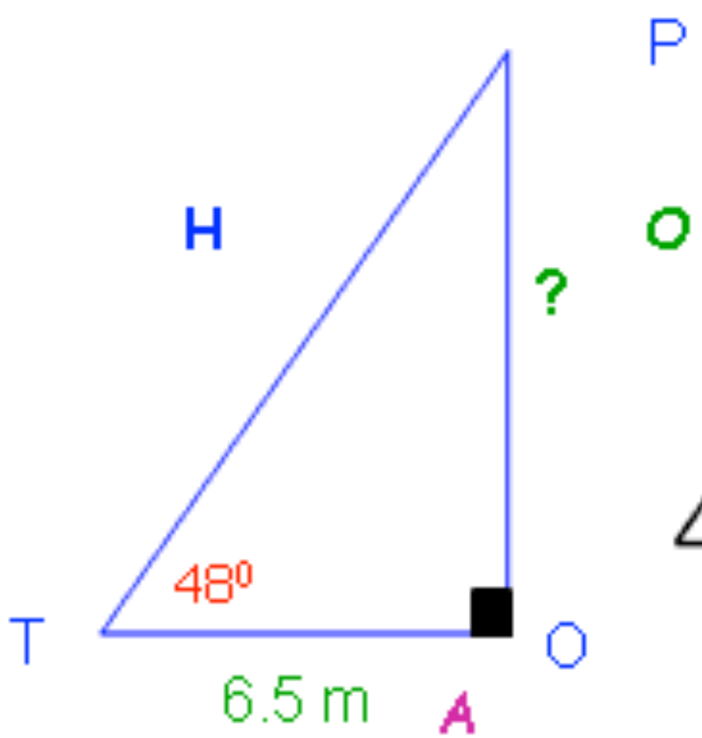
$$c^2 = 5^2 + 12^2$$

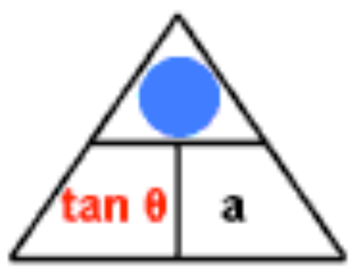
$$c^2 = 25 + 144$$

$$c^2 = 169$$

$$c = \sqrt{169}$$

$$c = 13m$$





o = Tan θ **x** a

(tan 4 8) X 6 . 5 =

7.22 m (2dp)

2. Working Out OP:

And now we have a right-angled triangle where we know one length (TR), and we know one angle (O T P)... so we can work out any side using a bit of **sin**, **cos** or **tan**!

Return to contents page

4. Sine and Cosine Rules

The Big Problem with Trigonometry

- As far as mathematical things go, Pythagoras, and the trio of Sin, Cos and Tan, were pretty good... weren't they?

- However, they had one major draw back...

They only worked for right-angled triangles!

- That certainly limited their use.

- Well, imagine if we had some rules which worked for... wait for it... any triangle!

- Well, you'll never guess what... we do!... The Sine and Cosine Rules!

The Crucial Point about the Sine and Cosine Rules

You must know when to use each rule... what information do you need to be given?

If you can get your head around that, then it's just plugging numbers into formulas!

Note: In all the formulas, small letters represent sides, and Capital Letters represent Angles!

Return to contents page

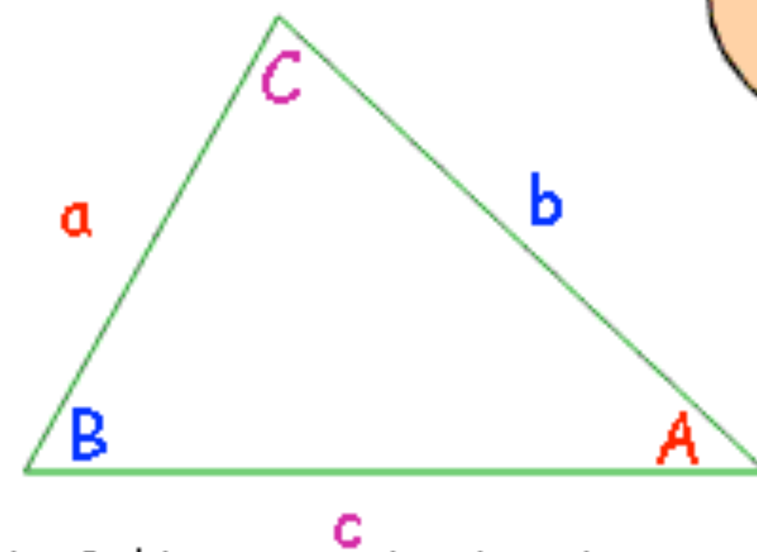
1. The Sine Rule – Finding an unknown Side

What Information do you need to be given?

Two angles and the length of a side

What is the Formula?

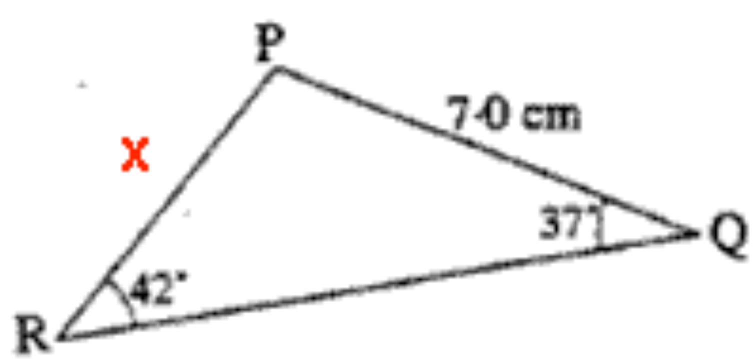
$$\boxed{\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}}$$



Remember:

If you are given two angles, you can easily work out the 3rd by remembering that angles in a triangle add up to 180^0!

Example



$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B}$$

$$\frac{x}{\sin 37} = \frac{7.0}{\sin 42}$$

$$x = \frac{7.0}{\sin 42} \times \sin 37$$

Multiply both sides by sin 37

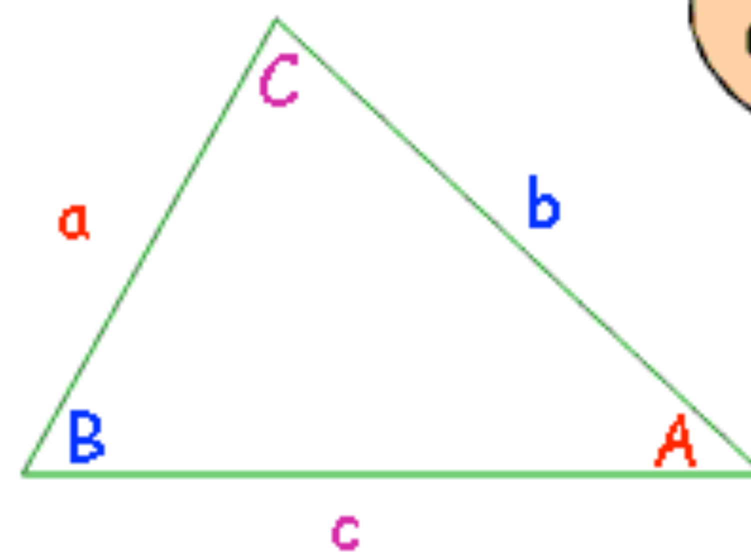
$$x = 6.3cm \ \ (1dp)$$

Return to contents page

2. The Sine Rule – Finding an unknown Angle

What Information do you need to be given?

Two lengths of sides and the angle NOT INCLUDED
(i.e. not between those two sides!)



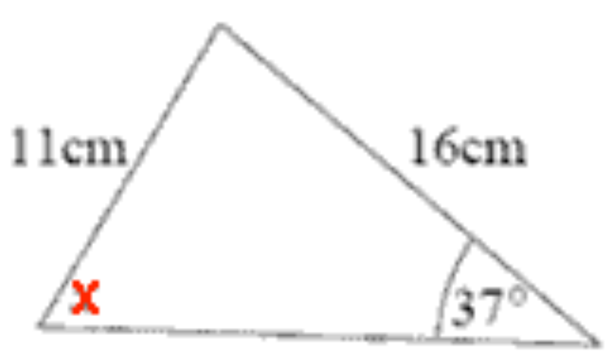
What is the Formula?

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c}$$

Remember:

If the angle is included, you will have to use the Cosine Rule!

Example



$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b}$$

$$\frac{\sin x}{16} = \frac{\sin 37}{11}$$

$$\sin x = \frac{\sin 37}{11} \times 16$$

Multiply both sides by 16

$$\sin x = 0.8753\ldots \rightarrow x = 61.1^0 \;(1dp)$$

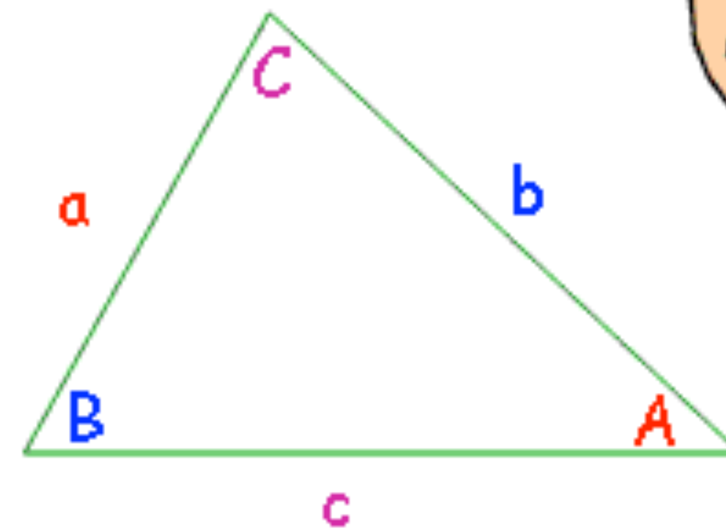
Return to contents page

3. The Cosine Rule – Finding an unknown Side

What Information do you need to be given?

Two sides of the triangle and the INCLUDED ANGLE

(i.e. the angle between the two sides!)



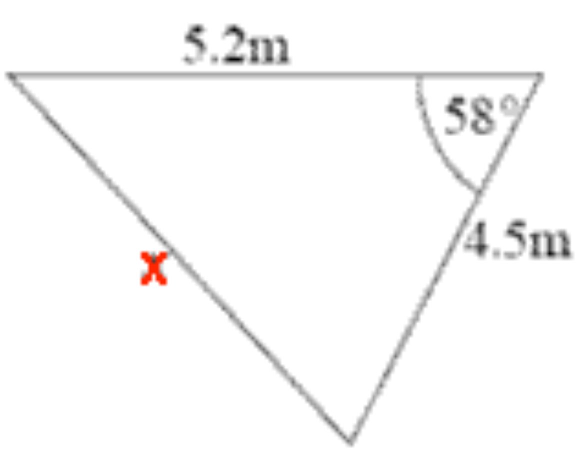
What is the Formula?

$$\boxed{a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos A}$$

Remember:

You must be pretty good on your calculator to get these ones correct!

Example



$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos A$$

$$x^2 = 5.2^2 + 4.5^2 - 2 \times 5.2 \times 4.5 \times \cos 58$$

$$x^2 = 5.2^2 + 4.5^2 - 2 \times 5.2 \times 4.5 \times \cos 58$$

$$x^2 = 22.48977...$$

$x = \underline{4.74m}$ (2dp) ← Square root both sides

Return to contents page

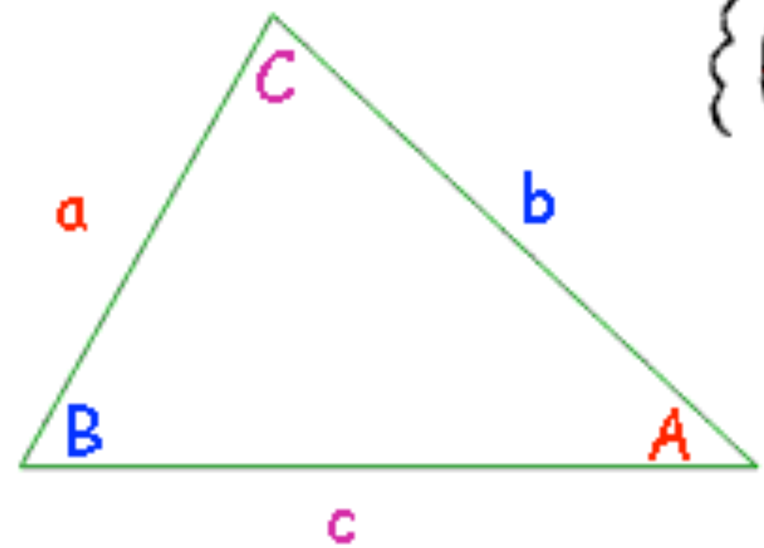
4. The Cosine Rule – Finding an unknown Angle

What Information do you need to be given?

All three lengths of the triangle must be given!

What is the Formula?

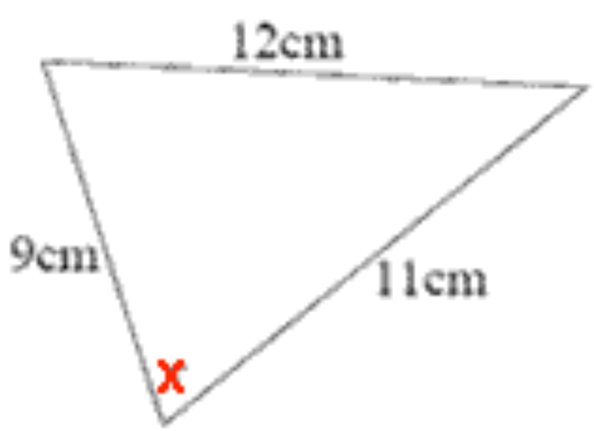
$$\boxed{\cos A = \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}}$$



Remember:

This is just a re-arrangement of the previous formula, so you only need to remember one!

Example



$$\cos A = \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}$$

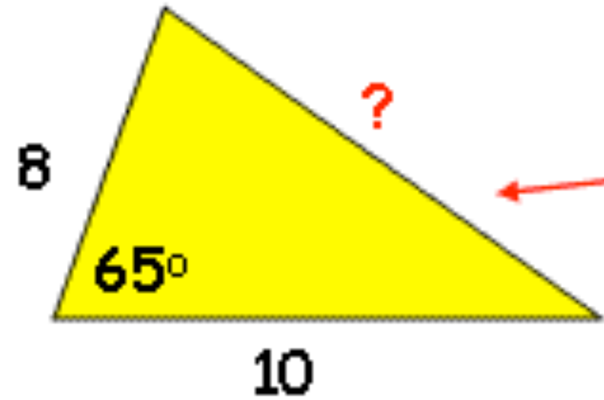
$$\cos x = \frac{9^2 + 11^2 - 12^2}{2 \times 9 \times 11}$$

$$\cos x = \frac{58}{198}$$

$$\cos x = 0.292929\ldots \rightarrow x = 72.97^0 \, (2dp)$$

Return to contents page

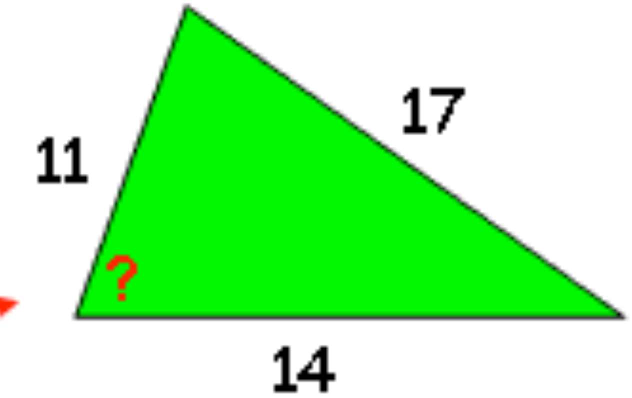
A Nice Little Summary

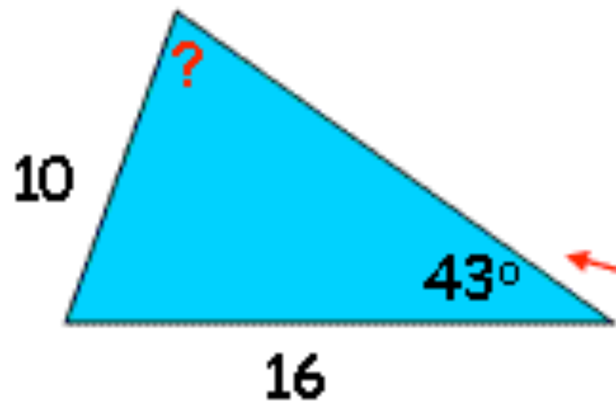


Cosine Rule

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos A$$

$$\cos A = \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}$$

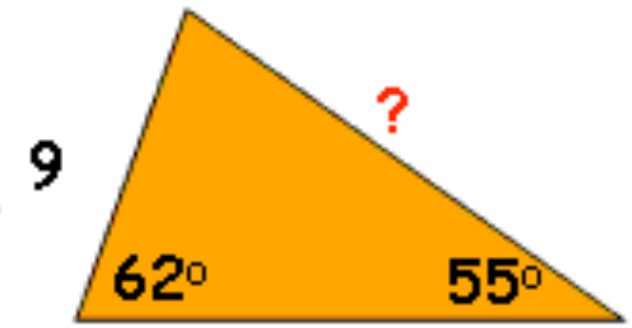




Sine Rule

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$$

$$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c}$$



	Finding Sides	Finding Angles
Cosine Rule	Need 2 sides and included angle	Need all 3 sides
Sine Rule	Need 2 angles and any side	Need 2 sides and an angle <u>not</u> included

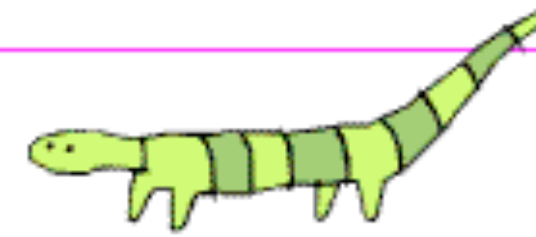
Return to contents page

Data Handling and Probability

1. Probability

Mr Barton's Favourite!

I'll come clean straight away... probability is my favourite maths topic. Sad, hey? I'm not too good at drawing shapes or using a compass, but I'm pretty good at Probability, and I like it, and hopefully after reading this section, you will too!



What is Probability?...

- Probability is the likelihood or chance of something happening.
- And that something can be pretty much anything – from something boring like getting a head when you toss a coin, to something much more interesting, like the probability of a £300million space rocket returning safely from it's mission.
- We use probabilities every single day in the decisions we make without even knowing it.
- The tools I am going to arm you with in this section will hopefully enable you to understand and enjoy probability through to A Level and beyond.... that's the plan, anyway.

The Lingo you need:

Experiment – now, this doesn't necessarily mean rats and men in lab coats, it just means something is happening, and someone else is observing what happens

Outcomes – these are all the different things that could happen in a probability experiment. One question you must always ask yourself is: "is every outcome equally likely to happen?"

Event – this just means the particular outcome or outcomes we are interested in

Return to contents page

The most important maths formula you will ever learn…

Here it comes…

$$P\,(\text{event}) = \frac{\text{the number of ways the event could happen}}{\text{the total number of possible equally likely outcomes}}$$

What each bit means:

P (event) – this is just a quick way of writing: "the probability of an event happening".
e.g. P (rain on Wednesday) means "the probability it will rain on Wednesday"

The number of ways the event could happen – you have to carefully count up all the different ways there are of the event you are interested in actually occurring

The total number of possible equally likely outcomes – this is the hardest and most important bit. You must carefully count up all the total possible things that could happen, but you must remember that they must all be equally likely!

And when you get your answer using the formula, it will be a fraction, and you should simplify it you can!

And everything you need to know about probability comes from this formula!

Now, we will discover all the important probability concepts, using a few examples…

Return to contents page

Big Example 1

Imagine, for some reason, someone has put each of the 26 letters of the alphabet on identical tiles and chucked them in a bag. This person then decides it would be fun to get you to close your eyes and pick tiles out of this bag. You are not so sure, but you decide to give it a go as it will be a good way of learning about probability.

Question 1: What is the probability of picking out a vowel?

Well, let's use our formula:

Quick way of writing: "the probability of picking a vowel"

$$P\,(vowel) = \frac{5}{26}$$

The number of vowels in the bag: a, e, i, o, u

The number of equally likely things that could happen: we could have picked any of the 26 identical tiles!

Question 2: What is the probability of picking out a letter?

The answer might be obvious, but let's see why:

Quick way of writing: "the probability of picking o letter"

$$P\,(letter) = \frac{26}{26} = 1$$

There are 26 letters in the bag, and any will do for us!

There are 26 equally likely outcomes

Rule 1: If something has a probability of 1, it is CERTAIN to happen

Return to contents page

Question 3: What is the probability of picking out a number?

Again, it's easy, but look why it works!

There is nothing in the bag we are interested in as there are no numbers!

Quick way of writing: "the probability of picking a vowel"

$$P\,(number) = \frac{0}{26} = 0$$

The number of equally likely things that could happen: we could have picked any of the 26 identical tiles!

Rule 2: If something has a probability of 0, it is IMPOSSIBLE

Rule 3: All probabilities lie between 0 and 1, so if you find yourself with a negative answer, or something like 2.4, then you have done something wrong!!!

Question 4: What is the probability of picking the letter A, given that your friend tells you the tile in your hand is a vowel?

Now, believe it or not, this question is bordering on being A Level, but our good old formula still works!

There is only one letter A

Quick way of writing: "the probability of picking A"

$$P\,(A) = \frac{1}{5}$$

Seeing as our friend has told us that our tile is a vowel, there are 5 equally likely possibilities

Return to contents page

Big Example 2

Mr Barton is wondering what his Mum will have cooked him for tea. Going off past experience, the probability of it being beans on toast is 0.6, sausage and mash is 0.25, steak and chips is 0.1, and no food at all is 0.05

Question 1: What is the probability Mr Barton has beans on toast or sausage and mash ?

Now there is a key word in that question and it is OR. This means that Mr Barton can have either beans on toast or sausage and mash, it does not matter which occurs.

So what do you think we need to do with the probabilities?:

$$P(\text{beans OR sausage}) = P(\text{beans}) + P(\text{sausage})$$

$$= 0.6 + 0.25 = 0.85$$

Now, events like this have a posh name – MUTUALLY EXCLUSIVE. All that means is that both events cannot occur at the same time – Mr Barton can't have both beans on toast and sausage and mash for tea... unless he is really hungry.

Rule 4: To find the probability of something happening OR something else happening, just add up your probabilities

Question 2: What is the probability Mr Barton actually gets his tea made?

Now one way to do this is to add up all the possible food outcomes... but there is a quicker way: There is only one outcome that results in no food, and the probability of any of the four outcomes occurring is 1 as it is certain that something will occur so:

$$P(\text{food made}) = 1 - P(\text{no food})$$

$$= 1 - 0.05 = 0.95$$

Return to contents page

Question 3: What is the probability Mr Barton has beans on toast one night and the next?

Now, to answer this question, we must first make an assumption: what Mr Barton has for tea one night and the next night are INDEPENDENT of each other – in other words, the choice of last night's tea does not affect tonight's choice.
Now, that may seem pretty unrealistic, but you will tend to find that a lot of probability questions ask you to assume that two events are independent of each other.

Now, again there is a very important word in the question that helps you spot this type – AND.
To work out the probability of something happening and something else happening you do not add up the probabilities, as in this case you would get an answer bigger than 1, which is rubbish, so you do this...

$$P(beans\ AND\ beans) = P(beans) \times P(beans)$$
$$= 0.6 \times 0.6 = 0.36$$

Rule 5: To find the probability of something happening AND something else happening, just multiply your probabilities together!

Classic Mistakes

The most common mistake pupils make with probability question is they mix up Mutually Exclusive and Independent events, and end up multiplying when they should be adding!
Learn to look for key words in questions:

Mutually Exclusive → Key Words: Or, Either → +

Independent → Key Words: And, Both, Together → ×

Return to contents page

What do you make of this argument...

If you toss two coins together, the probability of getting one head and one tail is: $\frac{1}{3}$ because...

$$P\,(head\ and\ tail) = \frac{1}{3}$$

One way you can get a head and a tail

Three equally likely outcomes: head-head, head-tail, or tail-tail

Sounds convincing, doesn't it?... Until you think about it and realise it's absolute rubbish!

1. There is not just "one way you can get a head and a tail"... there are two: head-tail and tail-head!

2. The three outcomes might be "equally likely", but there's one missing... tail-head!

So where did we go wrong?...

Well, when you have two experiments happening at the same time (like our two coins here), the safest way to ensure you account of all the outcomes is to knock up a SAMPLE SPACE DIAGRAM...

Coin 1

		Head	Tail
Coin 2	Head	H-H	H-T
	Tail	T-H	T-T

So, we can now clearly see that there are 4 equally likely outcomes, and so get our probabilities, we just need to count up the number of outcomes we are interested in:

$$P\,(head\ and\ tail) = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$P\,(head\ and\ head) = \frac{1}{4}$$

Return to contents page

Big Example 3

I am feeling pretty bored so I decide to roll a pair of dice and each time subtract the highest score from the lowest

Question 1: Draw a sample space diagram to show all the equally likely outcomes.

Classic opportunity to use a sample space diagram – two experiments, each with lots of equally likely outcomes. Okay, so the outcomes from each dice go across the top and up the side, and the numbers in the middle come from subtracting the smallest number from the biggest.

Dice 1

Dice 2	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	0	1	2	3	4	5
2	1	0	1	2	3	4
3	2	1	0	1	2	3
4	3	2	1	0	1	2
5	4	3	2	1	0	1
6	5	4	3	2	1	0

Question 2: What is the probability of getting a score of 0?

36 equally likely outcomes, how many are 0?...

$$P\,(\textit{score of } 0) = \frac{6}{36} = \frac{1}{6}$$

Question 3: If you rolled the two dice 180 times, how many times would you expect to get a score of 1?

This is where we can use probabilities to help us predict results.
There are 36 equally likely outcomes, and 10 of them give us a score of 1.
So, if we rolled the dice 36 times, we'd expect to get a score of 1 on 10 occasions
So, What about if we rolled them 180 times?...

50 times!

× 5

$$\frac{10}{36} = \frac{50}{180}$$

× 5

Return to contents page

2. Tree Diagrams

What are Tree Diagrams, and when do you use them?

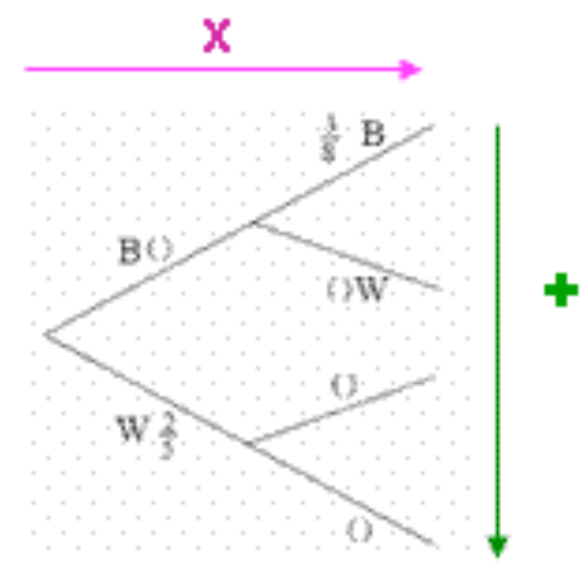
- Tree Diagrams are a very powerful tool in probability
- They are a very convenient way of representing a whole load of complicated information, which then allows you to answer some big mark questions without too much trouble.
- You tend to use tree diagrams to answer questions where there is more than one experiment going on at once, and the outcomes are not all equally likely

BONUS: Tree Diagrams can be used to answer questions involving both independent and non-independent events.

The Two Absolutely Crucial Rules of Tree Diagrams

1. We MULTIPLY probabilities going ACROSS

2. We ADD probabilities going DOWN



NOTE: And a really good way to check you have down everything right is to add up all the probabilities are the end of your branches... because you know that the sum of the probabilities of all outcomes must add up to 1!

Return to contents page

Example 1

Sarah is bored – very bored - so she puts twelve coloured cubes in a bag. Five of the cubes are red and 7 are blue. She decides it would be fun to remove a cube at random from the bag and note the colour before replacing it. For even more fun she then chooses a second cube at random. What is the probability she pulls out two beads of the same colour?

Okay, so what are the things we should be thinking about when we knock up a tree diagram?...

1. What are our two experiments so we can spilt up our tree diagram?...

Well, what about Sarah's "first pick" and then "second pick"?

2. Do we know what the probability of picking a red cube is?...

Well, there are 12 cubes in the bag, and 5 of them are red, so...

$$P(red) = \frac{5}{12}$$

3. How about a blue cube?...

Again, 7 blues out of the 12 in the bag, so...

$$P(blue) = \frac{7}{12}$$

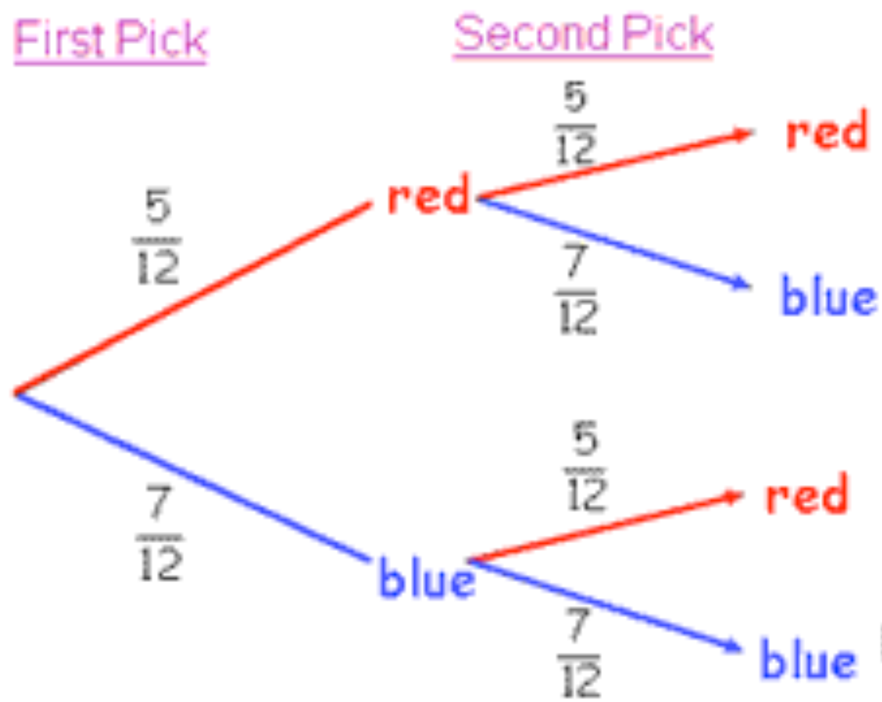
4. On our second pick, do our probabilities change?...

Well, there is a crucial little phrase hidden in the question: "replacing it". Because Sarah pops the bead back into the bag after each pick, whatever she gets on her first pick has no effect whatsoever on what she gets on here second, so the probabilities remain the same.

If you want to be really fancy about this (and why not!), you could say that because Sarah replaces the cubes, the events are INDEPENDENT of each other!

Return to contents page

$\times$



$P(\text{red and red}) = \frac{5}{12} \times \frac{5}{12} = \frac{25}{144}$

$P(\text{red and blue}) = \frac{5}{12} \times \frac{7}{12} = \frac{35}{144}$

$P(\text{blue and red}) = \frac{7}{12} \times \frac{5}{12} = \frac{35}{144}$

$P(\text{blue and blue}) = \frac{7}{12} \times \frac{7}{12} = \frac{49}{144}$

+

$\frac{144}{144} = 1$

Note: I wouldn't bother simplifying my fractions here, as it makes the adding up easier when they have the same denominator!

Check: Our probabilities add up to 1, so it's looking good!

Question: What is the probability she gets two beads of the same colour?...

Well, the end of which braches give us that?

$P(\textit{same colour})$

$= P(\textit{red and red}) + P(\textit{blue and blue})$

$= \frac{25}{144} + \frac{49}{144} = \frac{74}{144}$ Now we can simplify $\rightarrow \frac{37}{72}$

Return to contents page

Example 2

For many years, Hannah and George have been locked in some pretty heated games of Scrabble and Monopoly. The probability that Hannah wins at Scrabble is 0.7, and the probability that George wins at Monopoly is 0.65. One rainy day they sit down for another fierce battle. What is the probability George wins both games?

Okay, before we start, let's make sure we know what's going on here...

1. What are our two experiments so we can spilt up our tree diagram?...

Well, what about "Scrabble" and then "Monopoly"?

2. We know the probability Hannah wins at Scrabble is 0.7, but what about George?...

Well, either one wins, or the other (we assume no draws), so the two probabilities must add up to 1

So...

$$P(G \text{ wins Scrabble}) = 1 - P(H \text{ wins Scrabble}) = 1 - 0.7 = 0.3$$

3. And how about Hannah winning at Monopoly?...

It's a similar sort of thing...

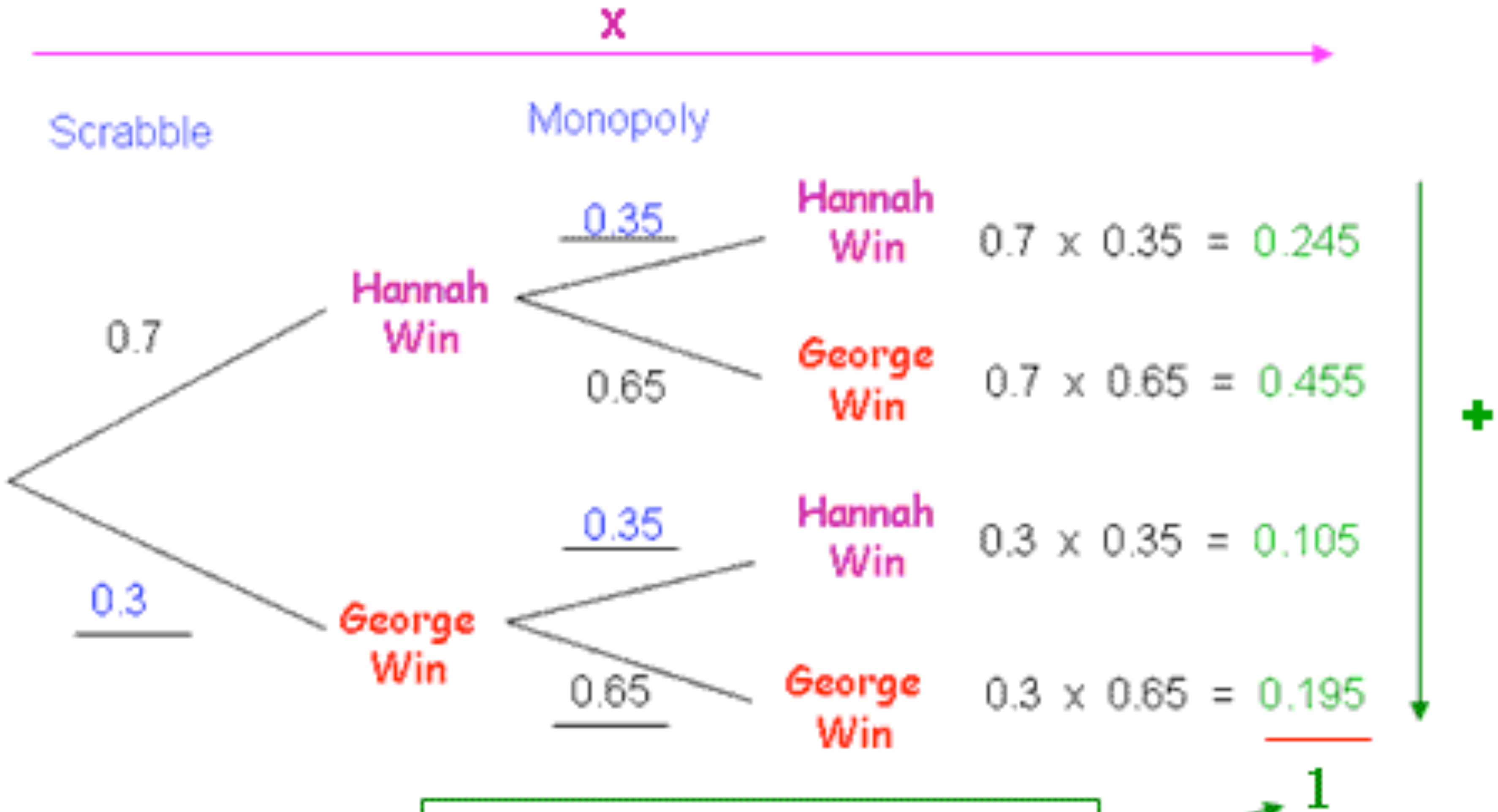
$$P(H \text{ wins Mon}) = 1 - P(G \text{ wins Mon}) = 1 - 0.65 = 0.35$$

4. On the second game, do our probabilities change?...

Well, because the question does not say so, we must assume that the probabilities stay the same, and the results in Scrabble and Monopoly are INDEPENDENT.

You might argue that if Hannah wins at Scrabble, then George will be more determined to stuff her friend at Monopoly, but the question is trying to make life easy for us, so let's let it!

Return to contents page



Check: Our probabilities add up to 1, so it's looking good!

Question: What is the probability George wins both games?

Well, we just follow the bottom branch...

$$P(\text{George wins both}) = 0.3 \times 0.65 = 0.195$$

Return to contents page

Example 3

Sarah is bored again, so it's back to the bag of beads! However, this time she really decides to spice things up. She still has 12 beads, but this time there are 5 red, 6 blue and 1 green. Crazier still, when she picks one out this time, she decides not to put it back! What is the probability that after two picks, Sarah has two beads that are the same colour?

Okay, this is a bit of a tricky one, so let's try and get our heads around what is going on...

1. What are our two experiments so we can spilt up our tree diagram?...

Well, I reckon it must be "first pick" and then "second pick"?

2. The probabilities on the first pick should be easy enough: $P(red) = \frac{5}{12}$ $P(blue) = \frac{6}{12}$ $P(green) = \frac{1}{12}$

3. It's on the second pick that things start getting tricky.

Say Sarah picks a red out first, what is the probability of her picking a red out second?...

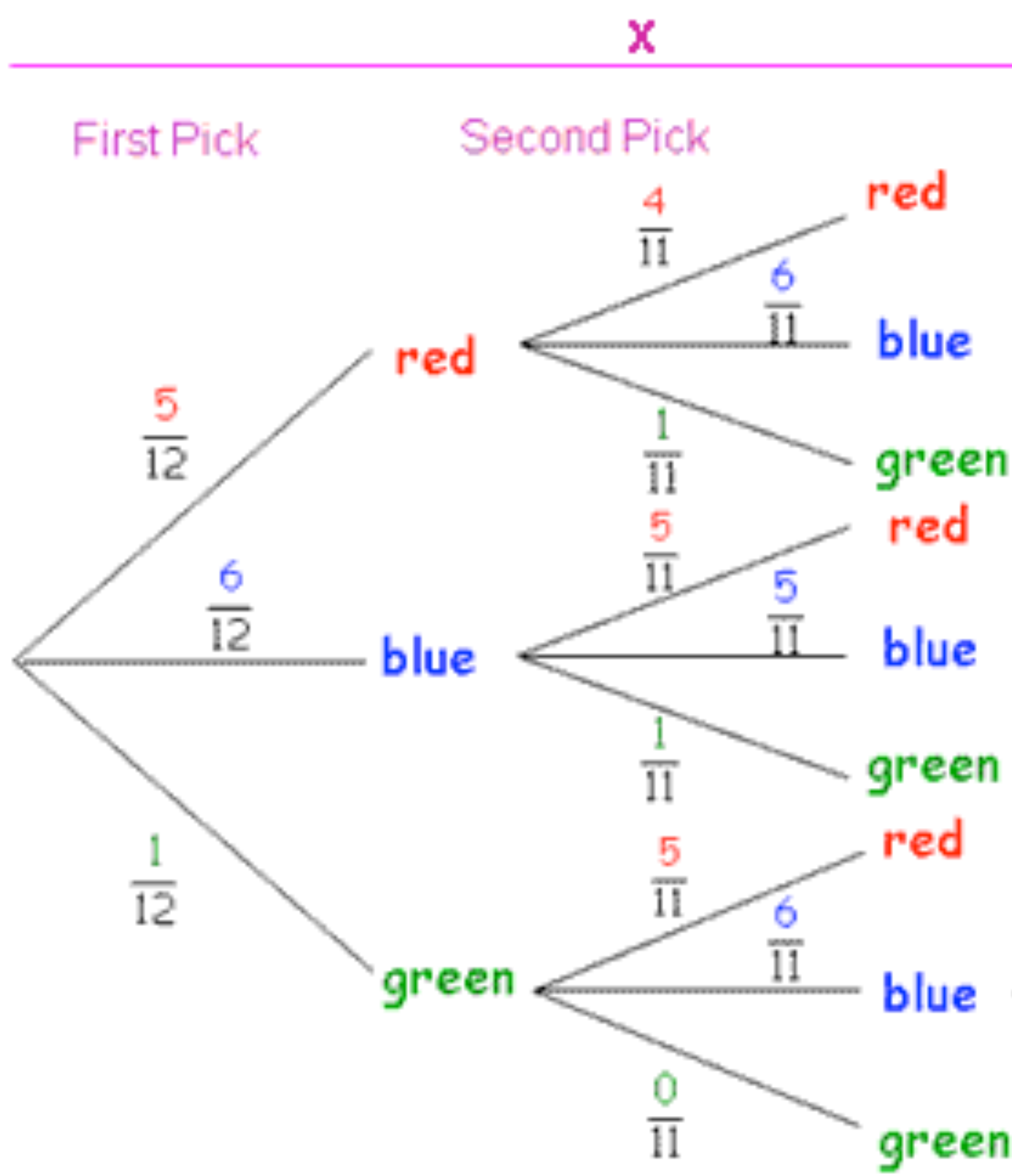
Well, there are now only 4 reds in the bag, and there are only 11 beads as well! $P(red) = \frac{4}{11}$

Whenever things are not replaced, you have to think very carefully about the probabilities on your branches!

4. On the second pick, do our probabilities change?...

In short, no they don't! Again, there is a crucial phrase: "not to put it back". This means that whatever happens on the first pick DOES affect the probabilities on the second pick, so these events are... DEPENDENT!

Return to contents page



$P(\text{red and red}) = \frac{5}{12} \times \frac{4}{11} = \frac{20}{132}$

$P(\text{red and blue}) = \frac{5}{12} \times \frac{6}{11} = \frac{30}{132}$

$P(\text{red and green}) = \frac{5}{12} \times \frac{1}{11} = \frac{5}{132}$

$P(\text{blue and red}) = \frac{6}{12} \times \frac{5}{11} = \frac{30}{132}$

$P(\text{blue and blue}) = \frac{6}{12} \times \frac{5}{11} = \frac{30}{132}$

$P(\text{blue and green}) = \frac{6}{12} \times \frac{1}{11} = \frac{6}{132}$

$P(\text{green and red}) = \frac{1}{12} \times \frac{5}{11} = \frac{5}{132}$

$P(\text{green and blue}) = \frac{1}{12} \times \frac{6}{11} = \frac{6}{132}$

$P(\text{green and green}) = \frac{1}{12} \times \frac{0}{11} = \frac{0}{132}$

+

$\frac{132}{132} = 1$

Note: a probability of zero here makes sense as there is only 1 green!

Check: Our probabilities add up to 1, so it's looking good!

Question: What is the probability she gets two beads of the same colour?...

$$P(\text{same colour}) = P(\text{red and red}) + P(\text{blue and blue}) + P(\text{green and green})$$

$$= \frac{20}{132} + \frac{30}{132} + 0 = \frac{50}{132} = \frac{25}{66}$$

Return to contents page

Thinking like a Tree Diagram

Sometimes you can answer a question by picturing a tree diagram in your head and imagining the branches, without actually drawing one. This might just save you some precious minutes in an exam...

Example 4

The probability I somehow find the energy to go to the gym on Monday is 0.3. If a miracle happens and I do go to the gym on Monday, the probability I go again on Tuesday falls to 0.1. If I don't go on Monday, the probability remains the same. What is the probability that:

(a) I go to the gym on both days

(b) I go to the gym on just one day?

(a) Right, let's think about this... I need to go on both days... well the probability I go to the gym on Monday is 0.3... and if I go on Monday, the probability I also go on Tuesday falls to 0.1... so to find the probability I go on both days I would travel along both branches of my tree diagram, so I must MULTIPLY!

$$P(\text{gym Mon and Tues}) = 0.3 \times 0.1 = 0.03$$

(b) This is a bit trickier... I only go to the gym on one day... how could that happen?... Well, I could go on Monday, and then not go on Tuesday... OR I could give Monday a miss, and then go Tuesday!... So what would be the probabilities of those?...

$$P(\text{gym Mon but not Tues}) = 0.3 \times 0.9 = 0.27$$

$$P(\text{no gym Mon but go Tues}) = 0.7 \times 0.3 = 0.21$$

And these would be the ends of the branches, so to get the probability of either happening, I need to ADD: → 0.48

Return to contents page

3. Averages and Measures of Spread

What are Averages and Measures of Spread, and why do we need them?

- Averages and Measures of Spread are two of the most important and useful concepts in maths
- They allow us to look at a huge load of data and make some sense out of it, summarise it, and compare it to other huge sets of data.
- Averages and Measures of Spread are used every single day, whether it be crowd attendance at Old Trafford, viewing figures for Lost, or the salary of your average poor maths teacher.

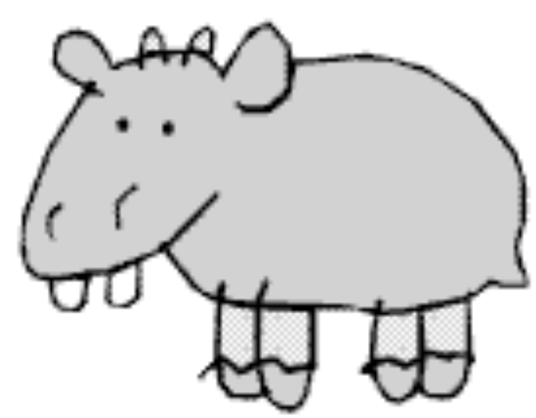
The usefulness of the different types of Averages and Measures of Spread will be looked at in The Big Cricket Example, so for now, let's learn how to work them out!

1. The Mean

Whenever most people talk about an average, this is the one they... mean!

How to work out the Mean:

1. Add up all your data values
2. Divide this total by the number of data values



What about a little rhyme?:

I'm not really sure
What the MEAN is about
Just add them all up
And share them all out

Return to contents page

2. The Median

This is the one people tend to mess up!... Don't let it happen to you!

How to work out the Median:

1. Place all your data values in ascending order (biggest to smallest)

2. The piece of data in the middle is your median

NOTE: If you have an EVEN number of data values, there will be TWO pieces of data in the middle. No problem, just add them together and divide by two to find the number halfway between them... and this is your median!

What about a little rhyme?:

I don't know the rhyme
I don't know the riddle
I am the MEDIAN
And I'm in the middle!

3. The Mode

This is the final type of average, and the easiest one to work out... so long as you remember how!

How to work out the Mode:

1. Find the most common piece of data (number or letter) and this is your mode!

NOTE: You can have no modes or more than one mode, and you must write them all down!

What about a little rhyme?:

I don't want to brag
I don't want to boast
I am the MODE
I am the most

Return to contents page

4. The Range

The Range is a Measure of Spread, and tells you... well, how spread out the data is!

How to work out the Range:

1. Subtract the smallest data value away from the biggest data value!

What about a little rhyme?:

From largest to smallest
See how they change
Take them away
And I am the RANGE

NOTE: It's one thing knowing how to work out the three averages and the measure of spread, but it's just as important to know how to interpret them! Hopefully this example will help!

The Big Cricket Example

Andrew Flintoff and Michael Vaughn are having an argument in the pub trying to decide who has had the better season with the cricket bat. Here are their scores:

20	35	22	55	60
10	17	32	64	86
14	32	50	24	30

0	0	0	2	0
15	5	370	250	
0	3	5	0	1

Use your knowledge of Averages and Measures of Spread to decide which cricketer has had the better season

Return to contents page

NOTE: The first point to notice is that by just looking at the scores as they are makes it hard to come to a decision about who has had the better season... that's why we need Statistics!

Secondly, just adding up the total amount of runs and deciding that way would not be fair. Why?... well, because they have not played the same number of games!

So, there is only one thing for it... let's work out some statistics!

1. The Mean

1. Add up all your data values
2. Divide this total by the number of data values

Andrew Flintoff

total runs scored: 551

total games played: 15

mean: 36.7 runs (1dp)

Michael Vaughn

total runs scored: 651

total games played: 14

mean: 46.5 runs

What does this tell us? – well, it looks like, on average, Michael Vaughn has had the better season

Good thing about the mean – notice how every single score was used to calculate the mean – this means it gives a good summary of the whole season.

Bad thing about the mean – look at Michael Vaughn's scores. He only had two decent ones, and yet his mean is far higher than Andrew Flintoff's! This is because the mean is significantly affected by outliers – pieces of data which stand out for being really low or really high like the two scores of 370 and 250. You could argue that these have distorted the result!

Return to contents page

2. The Median

1. Place all your data values in ascending order (biggest to smallest)
2. The piece of data in the middle is your median

10 14 17 20 22 24 30 $\boxed{32}$ 32 35 50 55 60 64 86

Median = 32 runs

Note: there are the same number of data (7 pieces) either side of the box!

0 0 0 0 0 0 $\boxed{1 \quad 2}$ 3 5 5 15 250 370

$(1+2) \div 2 = 1.5$

Median = 1.5 runs

Note: there are still the same number of data (6 pieces) either side of the box!

What does this tell us? – well, this time it looks like Andrew Flintoff has had the better season

Good thing about the median – because we are only focussing on pieces of data in the middle, outliers don't have as big an effect, so they cannot distort the results!

Bad thing about the median – the problem here is that you are only looking at – at most – a couple of pieces of data from each player. You could argue that the result is not representative as a lot of pieces of data (scores) are just ignored!

Return to contents page

3. The Mode

1. Find the most common piece of data (number or letter) and this is your mode!

Andrew Flintoff

mode: 32 runs

Michael Vaughn

mode: 0 runs

What does this tell us? – well, using the mode it again looks like Andrew Flintoff is on top!

Good thing about the mode – very speedy to work out!

Bad thing about the mode – can give distorted, or even no results. Imagine if Andrew Flintoff only scored one innings of 32 runs… he would have no mode to compare! Or, imagine if he instead scored a couple of innings of 200… the mode would then say this was his average!

Return to contents page

4. The Range

1. Subtract the smallest data value away from the biggest data value!

Andrew Flintoff

largest value: 86

smallest value: 10

range: 76 runs

Michael Vaughn

largest value: 370

smallest value: 0

range: 370 runs

What does this tell us? - well, one answer that I often here is this: "Michael Vaughn has the biggest range, so he is the best!"... but that's not quite right.

The bigger the range, the more spread out your scores are... so the less consistent (brilliant maths word that always impresses examiners/teacher) your performance is.

So, I would argue, because Andrew Flintoff has a smaller range, his performance is more consistent, and therefore he has had the better season!

Good thing about the range - gives a very quick measure of how spread out the data is

Bad thing about the range - unfortunately, this statistic is vulnerable to outliers as well! Michael Vaughn had a couple of big scores, and look at the effect it had on his range!... This is why mathematicians prefer to measure the spread of data using the Inter-quartile Range or Standard Deviation... but don't worry about them yet!

So who is the better cricketer?...

Well, in the end, it's up to you! The most important thing is that you have shown you can calculate each of the statistics and - not a lot of people can do this - interpret what they mean!

If you want my opinion, as a proud Lancastrian, Andrew Flintoff is much better!

Return to contents page

Estimating the Mean from Grouped Data

Example:
Calculate an estimate of the mean number of fans attending the mighty Preston North End football matches from the following table:

Attendance	Frequency
$0 < A \leq 5{,}000$	5
$5{,}000 < A \leq 10{,}000$	12
$10{,}000 < A \leq 15{,}000$	24
$15{,}000 < A \leq 20{,}000$	8

Okay, now do you see a problem here?... Look at the first group... we know there were 5 matches where between 0 and 5,000 people turned up, but we don't know exactly how many people were at those matches!... One match could have had 1,309... another 4,510... we just don't know!

So... the best we can do is to make an estimate!

And what is our best estimate for that first group?... Well, the MID-POINT... 2,500!

And that is how we calculate an estimate for the mean from grouped data:

1. Work out the mid-point
2. Work out the mid-point x Freq for each group
3. Use this formula:

$$\text{Mean} = \frac{\text{Sum of Mid-Point x Freq}}{\text{Total Frequency}}$$

Attendance	Mid-Point	Frequency	Mid-Point x Freq
$0 < A \leq 5{,}000$	2,500	5	12,500
$5{,}000 < A \leq 10{,}000$	7,500	12	90,000
$10{,}000 < A \leq 15{,}000$	12,500	24	300,000
$15{,}000 < A \leq 20{,}000$	17,500	8	140,000
TOTALS		**49**	**542,500**

$$\text{Mean} = \frac{542500}{49}$$

$= 11{,}071$ (nearest whole)

Return to contents page

4. Cumulative Frequency and Box Plots

Why do we bother with Statistical Diagrams?

- The answer to this question is similar to the one for: "why do we bother working out averages and measures of spreads?".

- We live in a world jam-packed full of statistics, and if we were forced to look at all the facts and figures in their raw, untreated form, not only would we probably not be able to make any sense out of them, but there is also a very good chance our heads would explode.

- Statistical Diagrams – if they are done properly - present those figures in a clear, concise, visually pleasing way, allowing us to make some sense out of the figures, summarise them, and compare them to other sets of data.

1. What is Cumulative Frequency?

Cumulative is just a posh way of saying "add up as you go along"

Frequency is just a posh word for "total"

So... if you put them together, you get a very posh way of saying "add the totals up as you go along"

Return to contents page

Big Example

To the right is a table showing the length of time a group of 40 Year 10 students spent playing on the Nintendo Wii on a gloomy week in January. Draw a Cumulative Frequency Curve, use it to estimate the Median and Inter-Quartile Range, and construct a Box Plot

Hours spent playing	Frequency
$0 < h \leq 1$	2
$1 < h \leq 2$	5
$2 < h \leq 3$	10
$3 < h \leq 4$	15
$4 < h \leq 6$	5
$6 < h \leq 10$	3

2. Adding a Cumulative Frequency Column

Before you can even start thinking about drawing a Cumulative Frequency Curve, you need to be able to add a Cumulative Frequency column to your Frequency table.

Remember, Cumulative Frequency just means that you add up the frequencies as you go along, so that is exactly what you do!

Hours spent playing	Frequency	Cumulative Freq
$0 < h \leq 1$	2	2
$1 < h \leq 2$	5	7
$2 < h \leq 3$	10	17
$3 < h \leq 4$	15	32
$4 < h \leq 6$	5	37
$6 < h \leq 10$	3	40

This is the number of people who play for 1 hour or less

This is the number of people who play for 2 hours or less (5 + 2)

This is the number of people who play for 3 hours or less (5 + 2 + 10)

Check: This final entry should always equal the total frequency!

Return to contents page

3. Drawing the Cumulative Frequency Curve

Remember: we plot Cumulative Frequency (y axis) against the upper boundary of each group (x axis)

So... for group one it's 1 on the x axis and 2 on the y

and for group two, it's 2 on the x axis and 7 on the y...

Hours spent playing	Frequency	Cumulative Freq
$0 < h \le \boxed{1}$	2	$\boxed{2}$
$1 < h \le \boxed{2}$	5	$\boxed{7}$
$2 < h \le 3$	10	17
$3 < h \le 4$	15	32
$4 < h \le 6$	5	37
$6 < h \le 10$	3	40

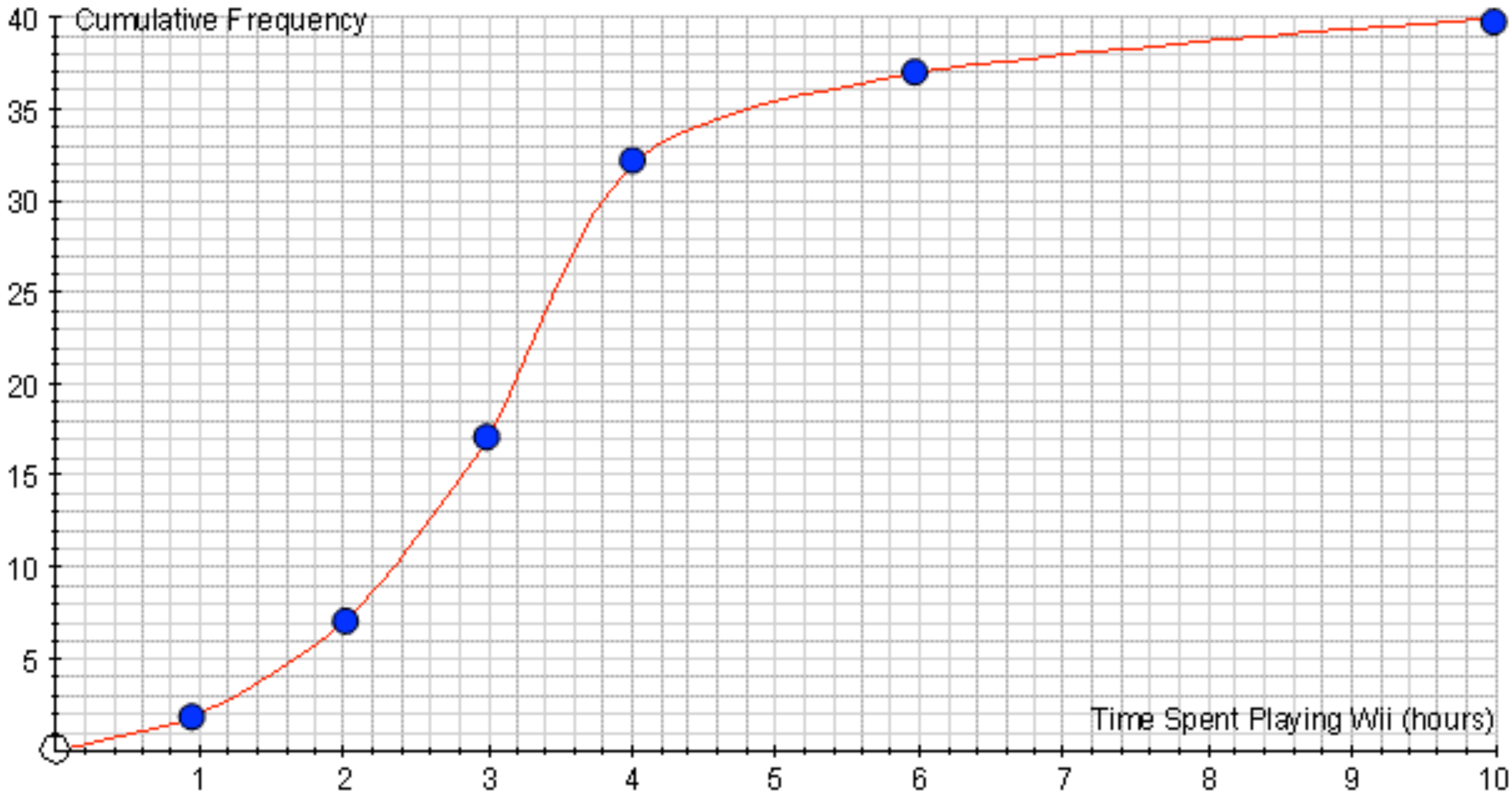
Things to notice about the Cumulative Frequency Curve:

1. When you have finished plotting the points, join them up with a smooth curve.

2. Native the curve starts at (0, 0). This is because there is nobody playing less than 0 hours a week!

3. You must label your axis correctly, or you lose very easy marks!

Return to contents page



Return to contents page

4. Estimating the Median and Inter-Quartile Range

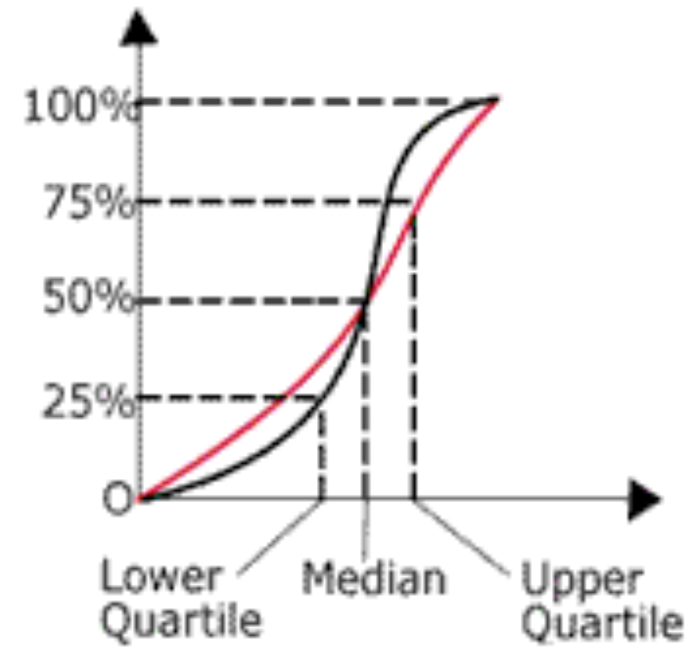
We have spent a while drawing our cumulative frequency curve, so we may as well use it. Very quickly we can come up with estimates for the Median and the Inter-Quartile Range

(a) Median

As you hopefully remember, the Median is the MIDDLE value.

To find it we:

1. Work out what is 50% of our total frequency (half way up the y axis)
2. Draw a horizontal line across until it hits our curve
3. When it hits the curve, draw a vertical line down to the x axis
4. The value on the x axis is our Median



(b) Inter-Quartile Range

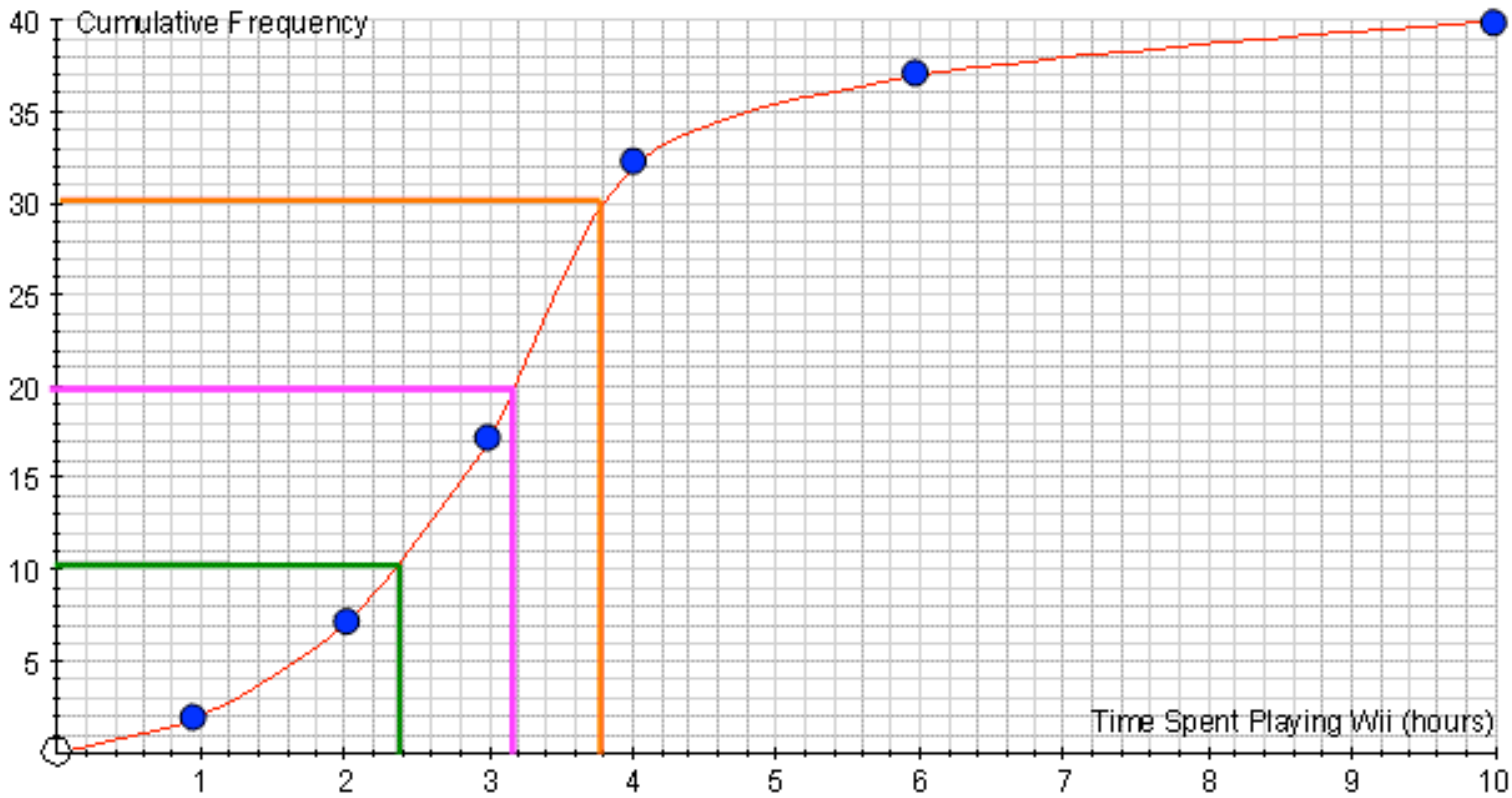
For this we need to work out the upper quartile (UQ) and the lower quartile (LQ), and then calculate: UQ - LQ

To find the Upper Quartile:

1. Work out what is 75% of our total frequency (three-quarters of the way up the y axis)
2. Draw a horizontal line across until it hits our curve
3. When it hits the curve, draw a vertical line down to the x axis
4. The value on the x axis is our Upper Quartile

The Lower Quartile is the same, but 25% (one-quarter) of the way up!

Return to contents page



Median:

50% of 40 = 20

Median = 3.2 hours

Upper Quartile

75% of 40 = 30

UQ = 3.8 hours

Lower Quartile

25% of 40 = 10

LQ = 2.4 hours

Inter-Quartile Range

= UQ - LQ

= 3.8 - 2.4

= 1.4 hours

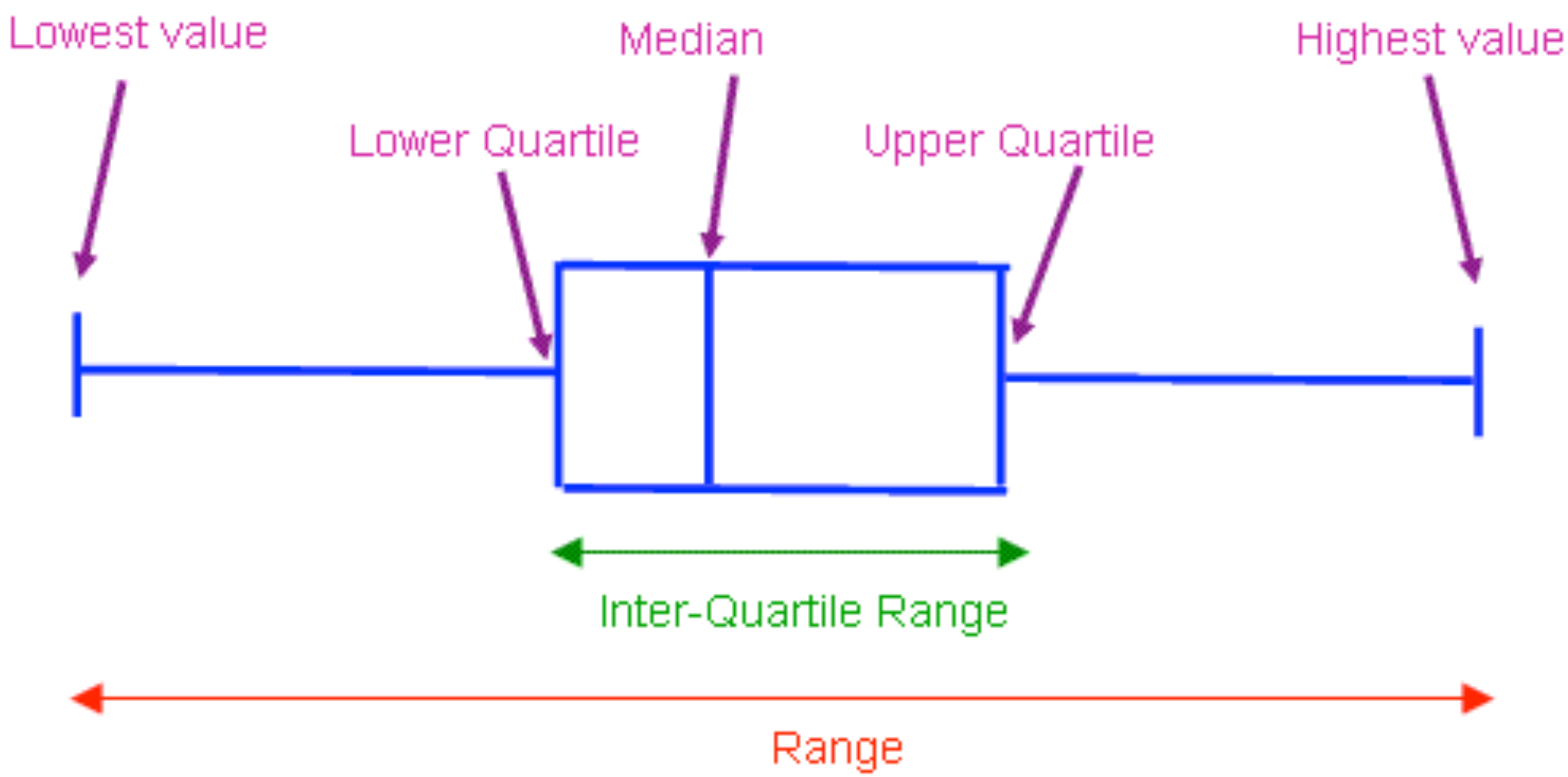
Remember: The Median is a form of average, and just like the Range, The Inter-Quartile Range is a measure of consistency

Return to contents page

5. Drawing Box Plots

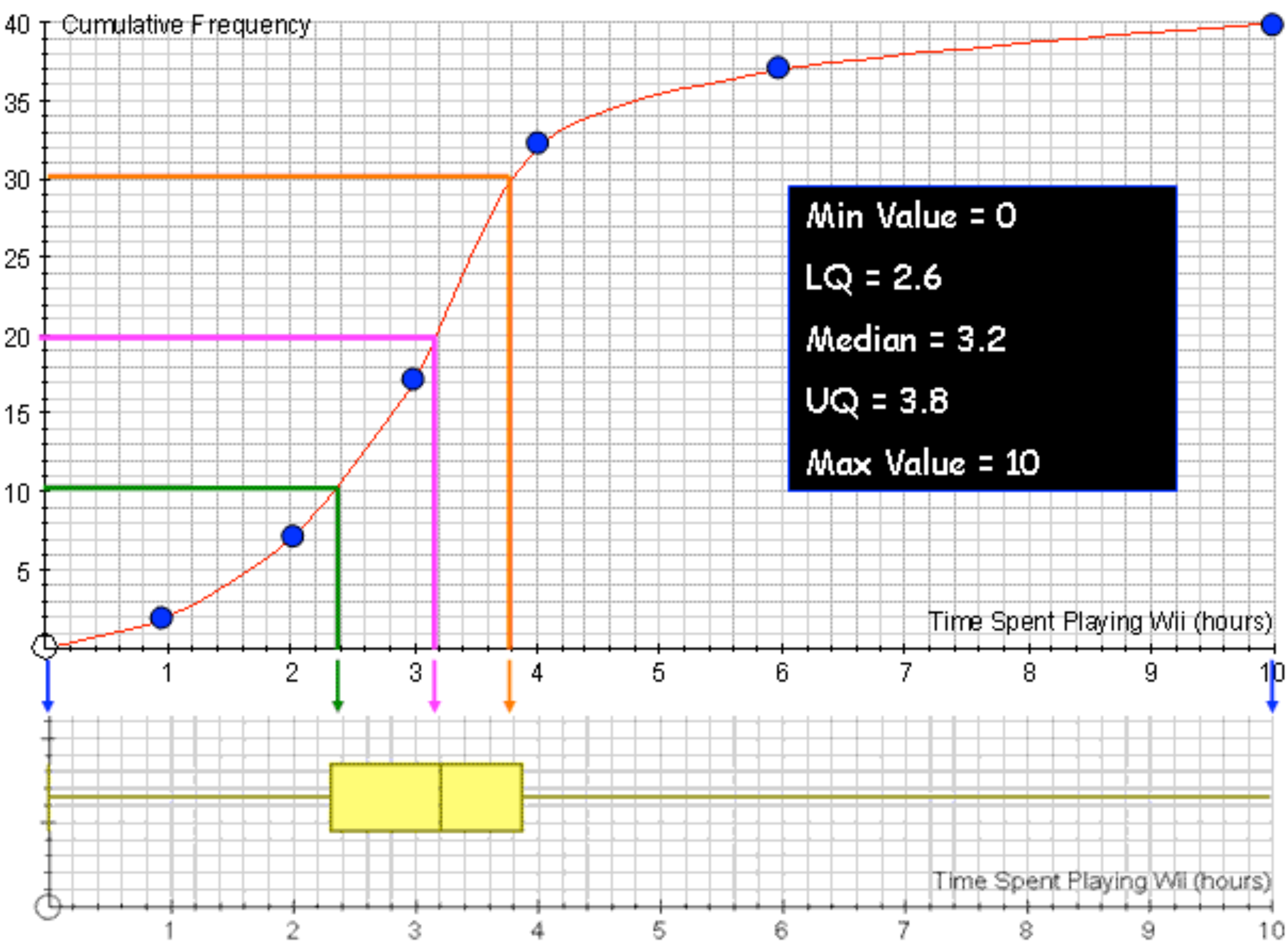
Box Plots are another way of representing all the same information that can be found on a Cumulative Frequency graph.

Top Tip: if you have the chance, draw your box plot directly below your cumulative frequency graph, using the same scale on the x axis, and you can just extend the vertical lines downwards and save yourself a lot of time!



Note: The minimum value is the lowest possible value of your first group, and the maximum value is the highest possible value of your last group

Return to contents page



Return to contents page

5. Pie Charts

Why do we bother with Statistical Diagrams?

- The answer to this question is similar to the one for: "why do we bother working out averages and measures of spread?".

- We live in a world jam-packed full of statistics, and if we were forced to look at all the facts and figures in their raw, untreated form, not only would we probably not be able to make any sense out of them, but there is also a very good chance our heads would explode.

- Statistical Diagrams – if they are done properly - present those figures in a clear, concise, visually pleasing way, allowing us to make some sense out of the figures, summarise them, and compare them to other sets of data.

Big Example

A group of 72 maths teachers were asked to choose their favourite TV show from a list, and their responses are shown in the table on the right. Construct a pie chart to illustrate this information

TV Show	Total
Lost	12
Heroes	10
Desperate Housewives	4
Countdown	15
Teachers TV	13
The Beauty of Maths	18

Return to contents page

1. Working out the Angles

- Before you can start to draw the pie chart, you need to know how big a slice each of the choices is going to take up – in other words, you need to know the angle of each segment

- To work this out, you need to remember that there are 360 degrees in a circle

- That means there are 360 degrees to share between each of the people who took part in the survey

- How many degrees does each person get?... Well, divide 360 by the number of people surveyed!

To Calculate the Angles

1. Add up the total number of pieces of data
2. Divide 360 by this number – this tells you how many degrees is allocated to each piece of data
3. To work out the size of angle for each category, multiply the answer to 2. by the number of people in each category – rounding your answers sensibly if you need to.
4. Check: Before you start to draw, make sure you check that your total number of degrees does add up to 360!

Return to contents page

Our Example:

1. So, we have a total of 72 teachers who were surveyed.

2. $360 \div 72 = 5$

So... each teacher is worth 5 degrees on our pie chart

3. We know how many teachers are in each segment, so let's use our answer to **2.** to work out what angle each segment gets

TV Show	Total	Working Out	Angle of Segment
Lost	12	$12 \times 5 = 60$	60^o
Heroes	10	$10 \times 5 = 50$	50^o
Desperate Housewives	4	$4 \times 5 = 20$	20^o
Countdown	15	$15 \times 5 = 75$	75^o
Teachers TV	13	$13 \times 5 = 65$	65^o
The Beauty of Maths	18	$18 \times 5 = 90$	90^o

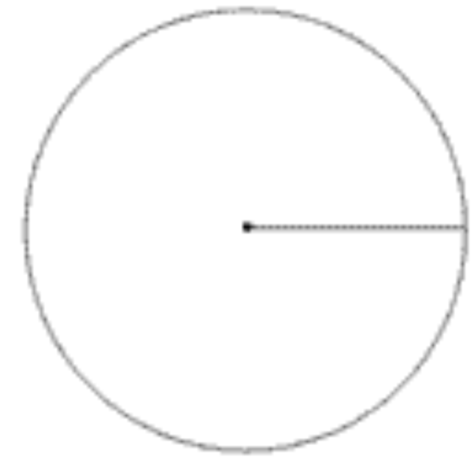
Remember: Check this column adds up to 360 before you move on!

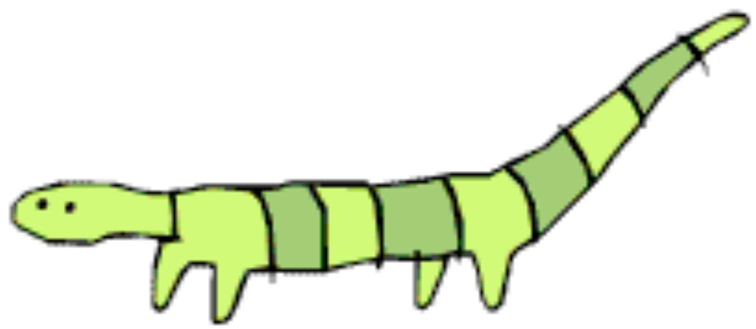
Return to contents page

2. Drawing the Pie Chart

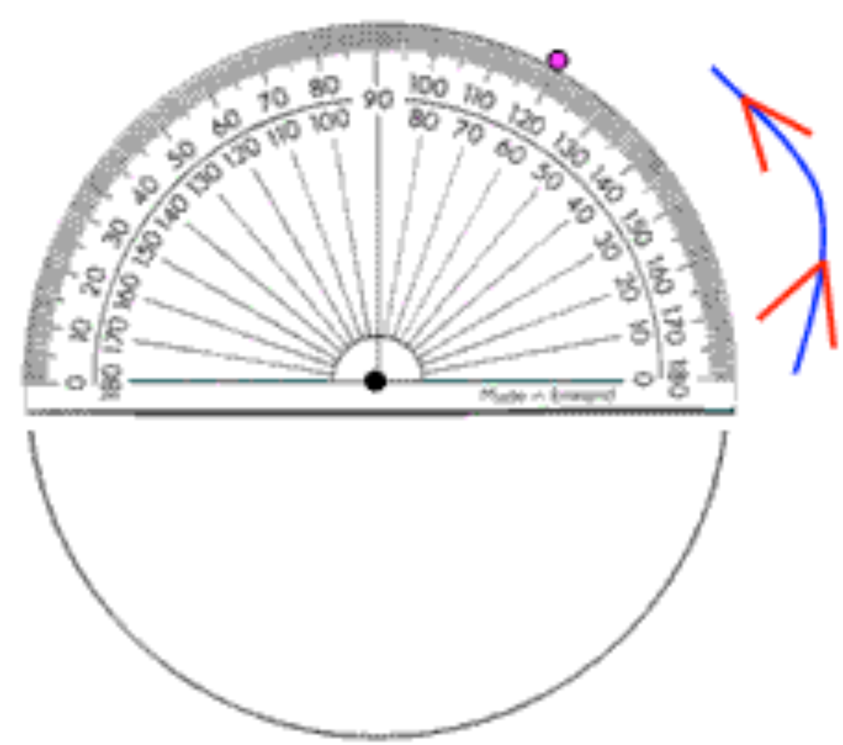
You've done all the hard work, and drawing the pie chart should be easy... but you'll be amazed how many people mess it up, so take your time and follow these steps...

1. Draw a circle using a compass. Mark the centre with a dot and draw a straight line from the centre up to the right of your circle



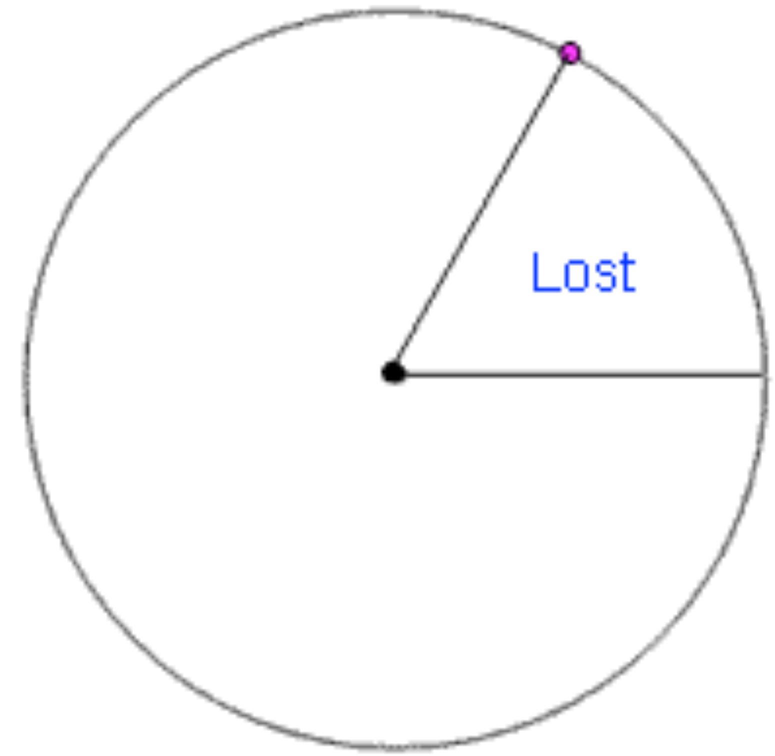


2. Carefully place your angle measurer along the line, with the centre exactly on the centre of the circle. Now, count around from 0 until you reach the correct number of degrees – in this case 60^0 – and place a dot

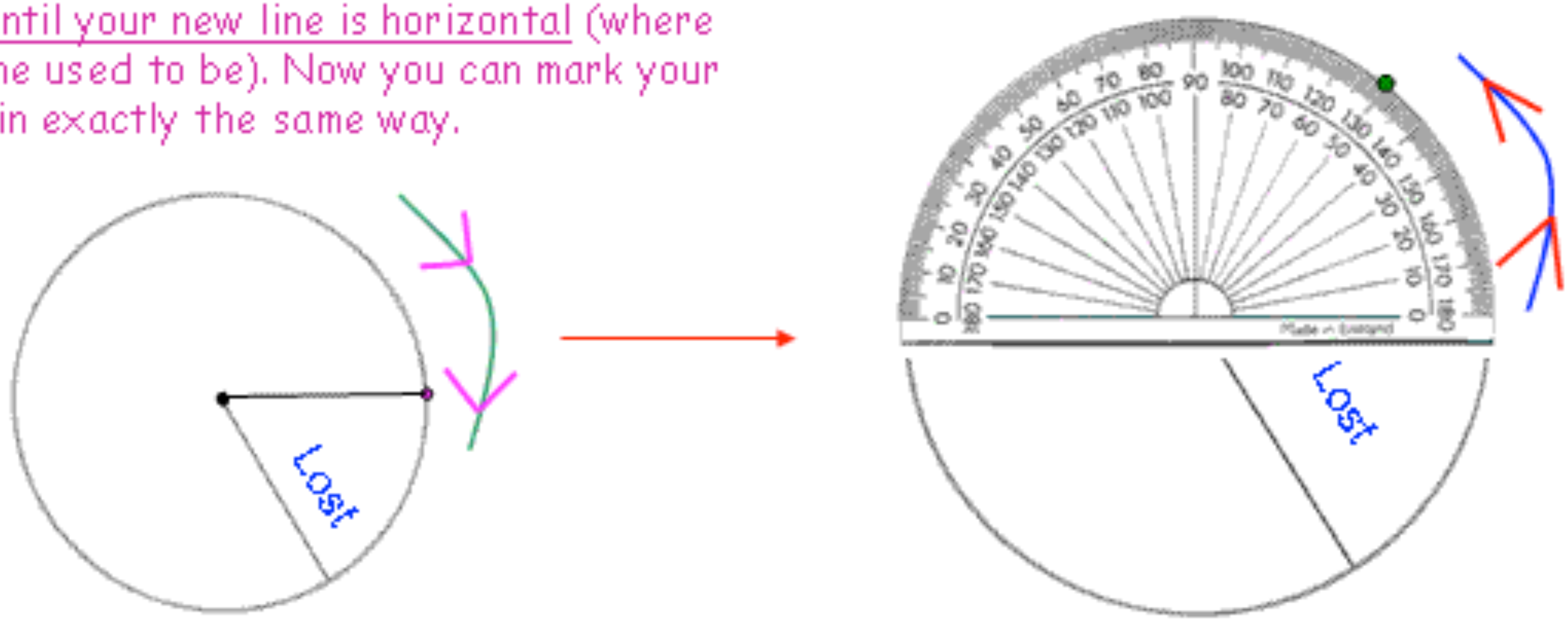


Return to contents page

3. Join up your dot to the centre with a straight line, and label your segment.



4. Now, this is the tricky bit... <u>turn your pie chart clockwise until your new line is horizontal</u> (where the first line used to be). Now you can mark your next angle in exactly the same way.

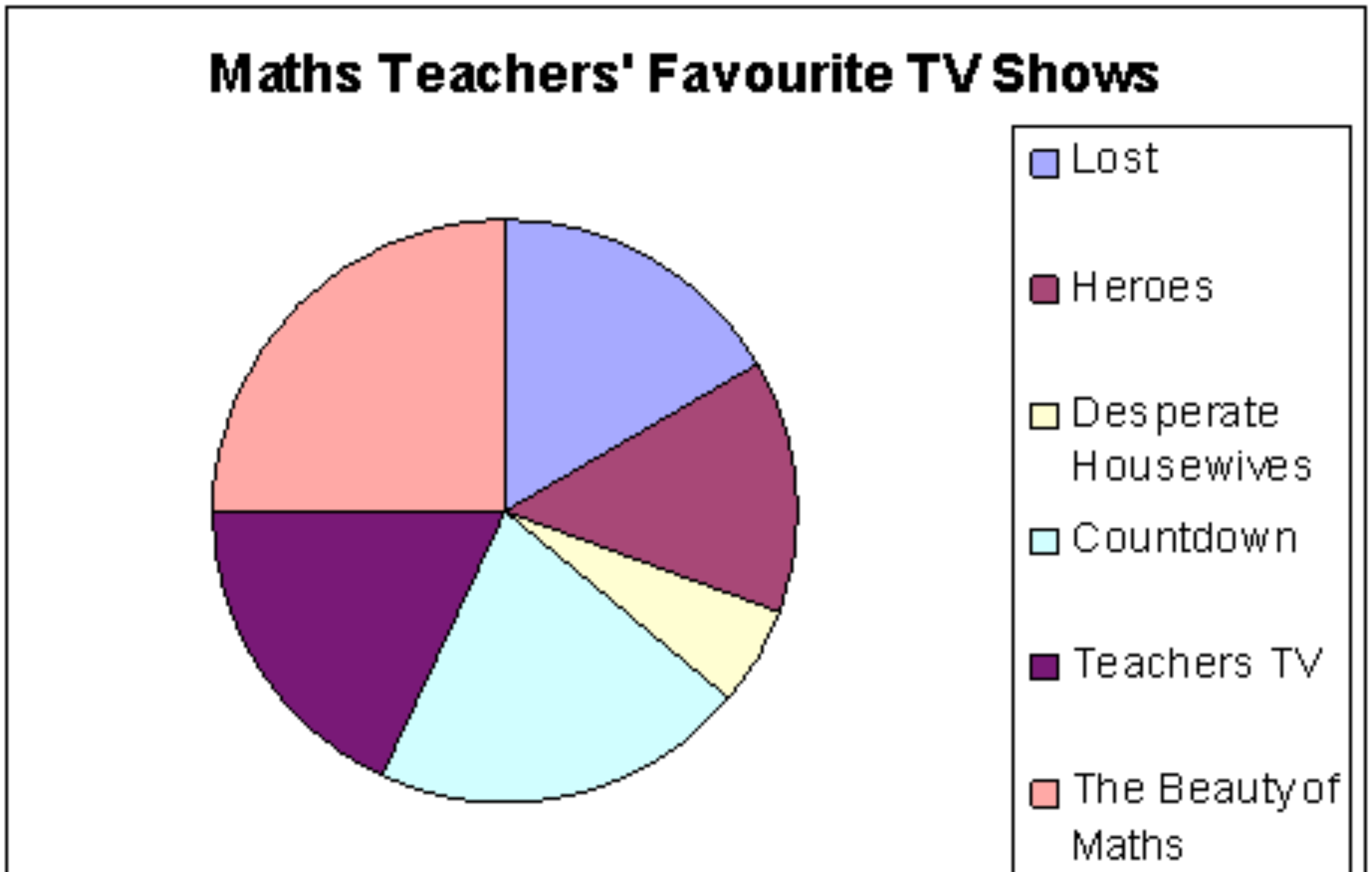


Return to contents page

5. Keep doing this until you have drawn all your segments

Check: You will know if you have got it right if the line to make your final segment is the very first line you drew!

6. If you want to you can colour in your segments, but you must remember to label them clearly, or add a key!



Return to contents page

3. What CAN we tell from Pie Charts

- Well, if you look back at our pie chart, you will see that it shows pretty clearly that The Beauty of Maths was the most popular choice amongst our maths teachers, whereas Desperate Housewives was the least popular

- If you want to be really fancy, you might be able to say things like: "roughly 3 times as many teachers preferred Lost to Desperate Housewives"

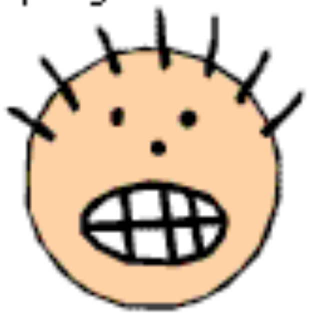
4. What CAN'T we tell from Pie Charts

- Well, imagine we were just given our pie chart (and no original data), and someone said: "how many maths teachers said that Countdown was their favourite show?", what would we say?...

- Well, probably not a lot, because there is no way of knowing!

- Unless we are told how many people were surveyed all together, we cannot answer that question!

- When making statements based on Pie Charts, just make sure what you are saying is definitely, 100% true!



Return to contents page

5. Interpreting Pie Charts

Big Example 2

240 Maths teachers were asked "what is your favourite drink?" and a pie chart was drawn to show to information.

Work out how many teachers preferred coffee

To answer this question we must do the opposite of what we did when we were drawing the pie chart - we must use our angles to find our totals!

Let's look at coffee... it takes up 84^0 out of 360^0, and what we want to know is "how much does it take up out of our 240 people?"

Well, what about using this as an excuse to show off our Algebra skills!...

$$\frac{84}{360} = \frac{?}{240} \xrightarrow{\text{Multiply both sides by 240}} \frac{84}{360} \times 240 = ?$$

So, turning to our calculator, we get an answer of... 56 people

Return to contents page

6. Stem and Leaf Diagrams

Why do we bother with Statistical Diagrams?

- The answer to this question is similar to the one for: "why do we bother working out averages and measures of spread?".

- We live in a world jam-packed full of statistics, and if we were forced to look at all the facts and figures in their raw, untreated form, not only would we probably not be able to make any sense out of them, but there is also a very good chance our heads would explode.

- Statistical Diagrams – if they are done properly - present those figures in a clear, concise, visually pleasing way, allowing us to make some sense out of the figures, summarise them, and compare them to other sets of data.

1. What are Stem and Leaf Diagrams

- To be honest, Stem and Leaf Diagrams are just a fancy way of listing a fairly large group of numbers in order

- They are seen as a quicker, more convenient, and ultimately more useful way of presenting data than just a long list of numbers.

- An example of a typical Stem and Leaf Diagram is on the right

stem

0	3	5	7	9				
1	1	1	2	2	3	5	6	8
2	1	4	4	4	9			
3	0	1	4	8				
4	1	7						

leaves

Key: 3 | 1 = 31 minutes

Return to contents page

Big Example

Here are the times (in minutes) that it takes Mr Barton to actually get out of bed after his alarm has sounded on a Monday morning:

12 6 20 24 52 41 3 35 55 32 11 13 2 25 38 39 41 52 13 59 18 22 29 35

Use the data to construct a Stem and Leaf Diagram, and then calculate the Median and Inter-Quartile Range

2. Constructing a Stem and Leaf Diagram

1. Decide on your stems - these are the digits which go down the left hand side of your diagram. You should choose them in a way so that you have between 4 and 10 groups, and so that each of your leaves is only one digit!

2. Go through your data, in the order in which it is written, and add it to the correct stem on your diagram. I would mark each piece of data once it has been entered, so you don't loose your spot!

3. When completed, this is your un-ordered stem and leaf diagram

4. Now draw yourself another stem and leaf diagram, but this time put the leaves in order!

Note: Everyone seems to want to jump straight to the ordered stem and leaf diagram, but I promise you this way is quicker and a lot safer in terms of mistakes!

Return to contents page

Our Example

1. For our stems, we only need the first digit of each piece of data, and I think 6 groups should do us!

Note: to make sure we can enter the single digit pieces of data, we must make our first stem start with 0

0	
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	

2. Next we begin to go through our data, creating them leaves of our diagram, marking off each piece of data as we use it...

12 6 20 24 52 41 3 35 55 32 11 13 2 25 38 39 41 52 13 59 18 22 29 35

0	6
1	2
2	0
3	
4	
5	

3. Continuing like this eventually gives us our un-ordered stem and leaf diagram

0	6	3	2		
1	2	1	3	3	8
2	0	4	5	2	9
3	5	2	8	9	5
4	1	1			
5	2	5	2	9	

Return to contents page

Things to Notice:

a) For numbers like 20, we must place a 0 as our leaf

b) Single digit numbers are placed on the top stem

c) If we come across a number that we have already recorded, we must record it again!

4. Having made sure that we have 24 digits as the leaves of our diagram (there are 24 pieces of data!), we can now very quickly change our unordered diagram into an ordered one by placing the leaves on each stem… in order!

0	6	3	2		
1	2	1	3	3	8
2	0	4	5	2	9
3	5	2	8	9	5
4	1	1			
5	2	5	2	9	

0	2	3	6		
1	1	2	3	3	8
2	0	2	4	5	9
3	2	5	5	8	9
4	1	1			
5	2	2	5	9	

Key

2 | 0 = 20

5. And the final thing we must remember to add to our diagram is a KEY!

You must let anyone who looks at your diagram know exactly what each of the leaves stands for… so in this case, I have chosen the 2 and the 0 from the 3rd row, and just explained that this is actually 20!

Return to contents page

3. Finding the Median and Inter-Quartile Range from a Stem and Leaf Diagram

Remember: our Stem and Leaf Diagram is just a group of numbers, written out in order... and so we don't have to learn any different skills to find the median and inter-quartile range!

(a) Finding the Median

It's the usual thing... the median is the middle number... and if there is an even amount of numbers, then you will have two numbers in the middle.

Draw a box around the number/numbers you think are in the middle, and make sure you have the same amount of numbers on either side!

0	2	3	6		
1	1	2	3	3	8
2	0	2	4	5	9
3	2	5	5	8	9
4	1	1			
5	2	2	5	9	

Check: There are 11 numbers to the left of our box, and 11 numbers to the right!

Our median is half way between our two numbers in the box, and so is... 27!

So many people would put 7... but remember what the leaves actually stand for!

Return to contents page

(b) Finding the Inter-Quartile Range

Remember: Inter-Quartile Range = Upper Quartile - Lower Quartile

The way I do this is to think of the Lower Quartile as being the median of the lower half of numbers... and the Upper Quartile as the median of the upper half of numbers.

And I just find these values the same old way... using my boxes, and making sure there are the same amount of numbers on either side!

0	2	3	6		
1	1	2	$\boxed{3 \quad 3}$		8
2	0	2	4	5	9
3	2	5	5	8	$\boxed{9}$
4	$\boxed{1}$	1			
5	2	2	5	9	

Lower Quartile = 13

$$\frac{13+13}{2} = 13$$

(5 numbers either side in the lower half)

Upper Quartile = 40

$$\frac{39+41}{2} = 40$$

(5 numbers either side in the upper half)

Inter-Quartile Range = 40 - 13

= 27

Return to contents page

4. What's GOOD about Stem and Leaf Diagrams?

- Well, the major advantage over things like bar charts and histograms, is that no information is lost – the stem and leaf diagram keeps and allows you to see each original piece of data

- It is also quite an effective way of ordering and displaying relatively small sets of data

5. What's BAD about Stem and Leaf Diagrams?

- Well, it's quite time consuming, and impractical for large data sets. Imagine how long it would take to sort over 300 pieces of data, and how complicated the final diagram would look!

Return to contents page

7. Bar Charts and Histograms

Why do we bother with Statistical Diagrams?

- The answer to this question is similar to the one for: "why do we bother working out averages and measures of spread?".
- We live in a world jam-packed full of statistics, and if we were forced to look at all the facts and figures in their raw, untreated form, not only would we probably not be able to make any sense out of them, but there is also a very good chance our heads would explode.
- Statistical Diagrams – if they are done properly – present those figures in a clear, concise, visually pleasing way, allowing us to make some sense out of the figures, summarise them, and compare them to other sets of data.

Big Example

To the right is a table showing the length of applause after Mr Barton announces that there will be no homework tonight. Construct a Bar Chart and a Histogram, and comment on the differences

Length of Applause (mins)	Frequency
$0 < a \le 1$	2
$1 < a \le 2$	4
$2 < a \le 3$	15
$3 < a \le 5$	10
$5 < h \le 8$	6
$8 < h \le 13$	5

Return to contents page

1. Drawing a Bar Chart (Frequency Diagram)

Note: Sometimes bar charts are called Frequency Diagrams!

1. Decide on an appropriate scale to fit the paper you are working with – as a general rule, the bar chart (or any statistical diagram, for that matter) should take up between half and three-quarters of the space you have to work with.

Crucial: Your numbers must go up in equal steps!... see 8. Scatter Diagrams for examples of some very dodgy scales!

2. Label your axes. Is it usual to put frequency (total) on the y axis, and whatever the data is along the x axis.

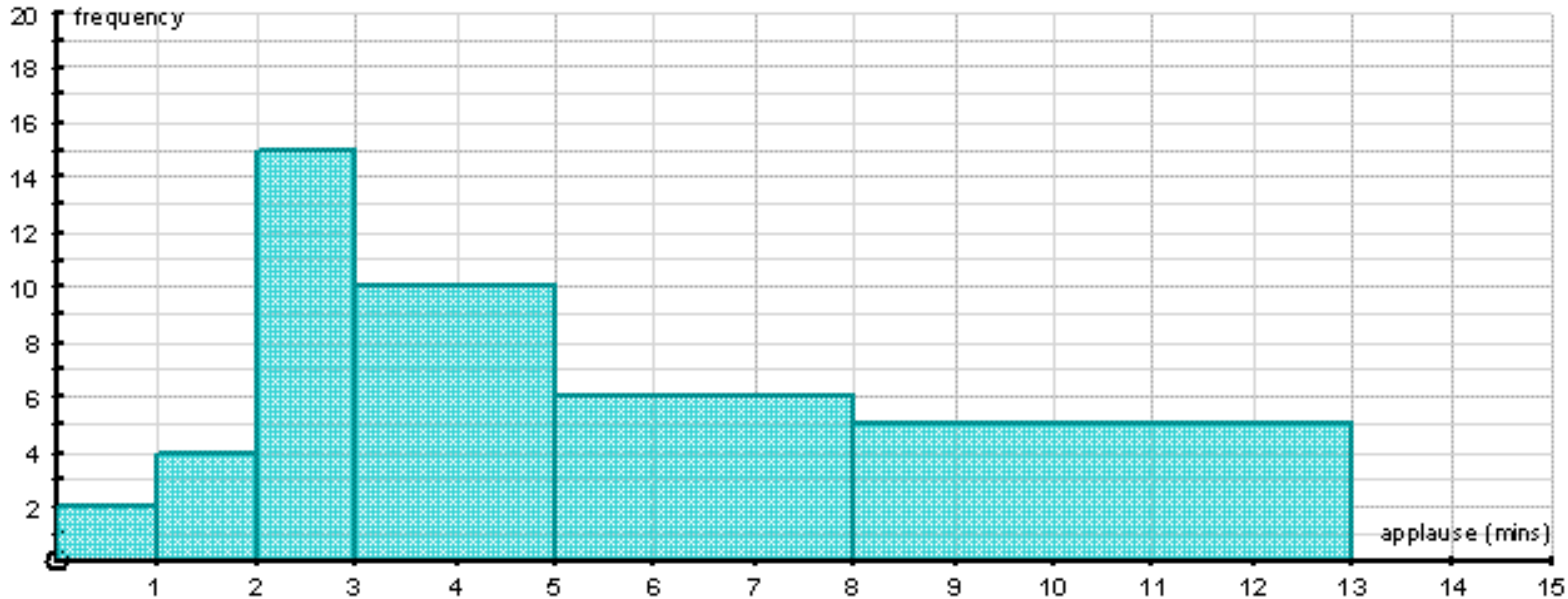
3. Carefully draw in your bars... and add a title!

Note: In examples like this where the groups are numbers, then it is usual to have the bars touching each other

If the groups were categories (such as "colour of cars"), then you could have gaps between your bars if you like!

Return to contents page

A Bar Chart to show the Length of Applause after Mr Barton says "no homework"



Return to contents page

2. Drawing a Histogram

The major difference between a bar chart and a histogram is what goes on the y axis

On a Bar Chart it is Frequency

On a Histogram it is... Frequency Density!

The reasons for this will be discussed soon!

1. Add two extra columns to your table... Group Width and Frequency Density

2. To work out Group Width, we just do the upper limit of each group minus the lower limit

3. To work out Frequency Density, we use this lovely formula:

$$\boxed{\text{Frequency Density} = \frac{\text{Frequency}}{\text{Group Width}}}$$

4. We then plot frequency density on the y axis, and our data on the x axis as before

Note: In Histograms you have no choice... the bars must always be touching!

Return to contents page

Group Width: 1 – 0 = 1

Frequency Density:

2 ÷ 1 = 2

Length of Applause (mins)	Frequency	Group Width	Frequency Density
$0 < a \leq 1$	2	1	2
$1 < a \leq 2$	4	1	4
$2 < a \leq 3$	15	1	15
$3 < a \leq 5$	10	2	5
$5 < h \leq 8$	6	3	2
$8 < h \leq 13$	5	5	1

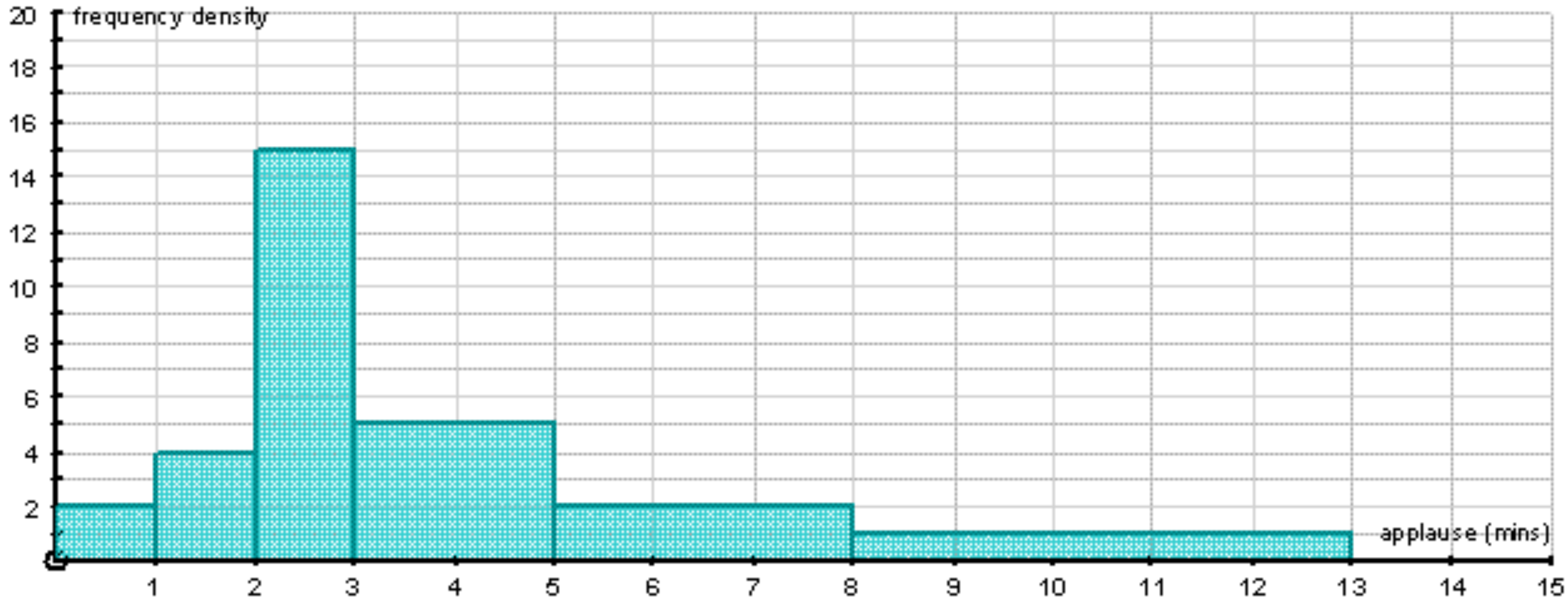
Group Width: 13 – 8 = 5

Frequency Density:

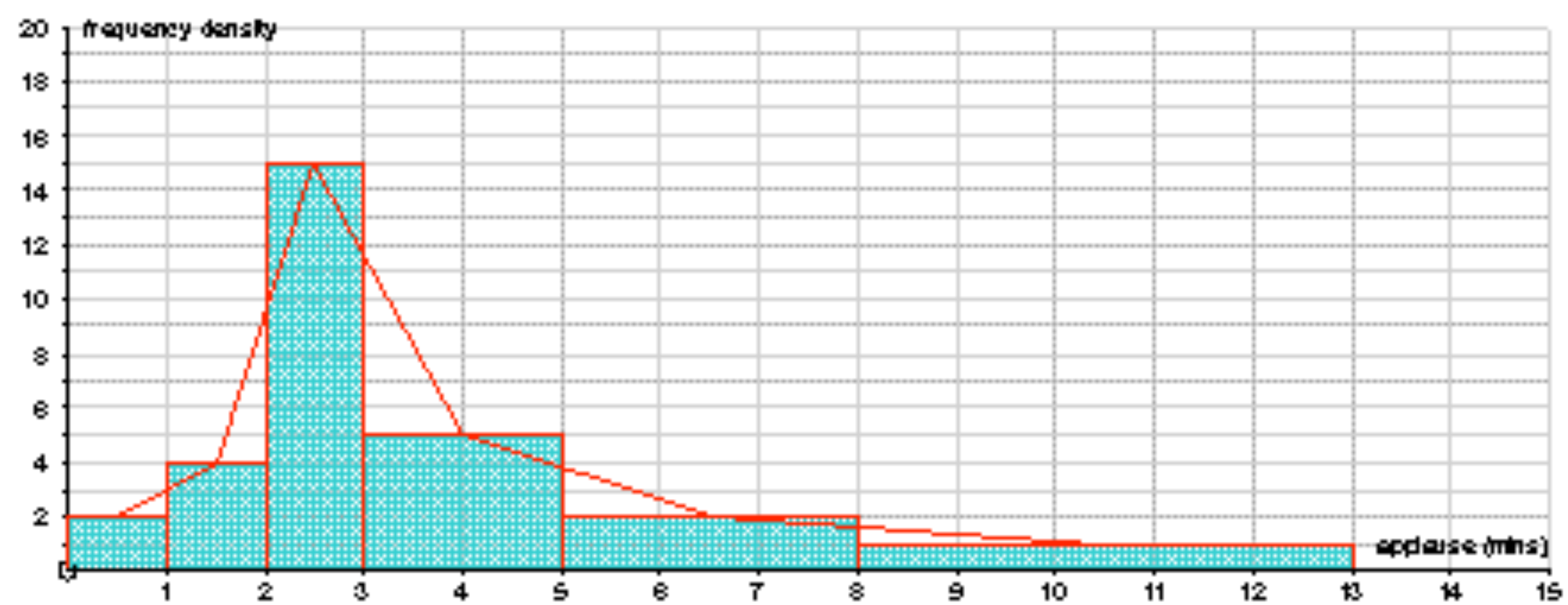
5 ÷ 5 = 1

Return to contents page

A Histogram to show the Length of Applause after Mr Barton says "no homework"



Note: Sometimes you get asked to draw a Frequency Polygon. Do not fear, this is just a Histogram, but with the top mid-points of each bar joined together with straight lines!



Return to contents page

3. What is the Point of Histograms?

- Have a quick look back at the two diagrams

- On the Bar Chart, which group looks like it has the most people in it?... maybe the last one?... because it takes up such a large area compared to the other groups... but if you look on the table of data, this group only had a total of 5!

  So... Bar Charts can be deceptive

- But look at the Histogram...the group that looks the biggest now is the "between 2 and 3 minutes" group... and this is the group that has the highest frequency!

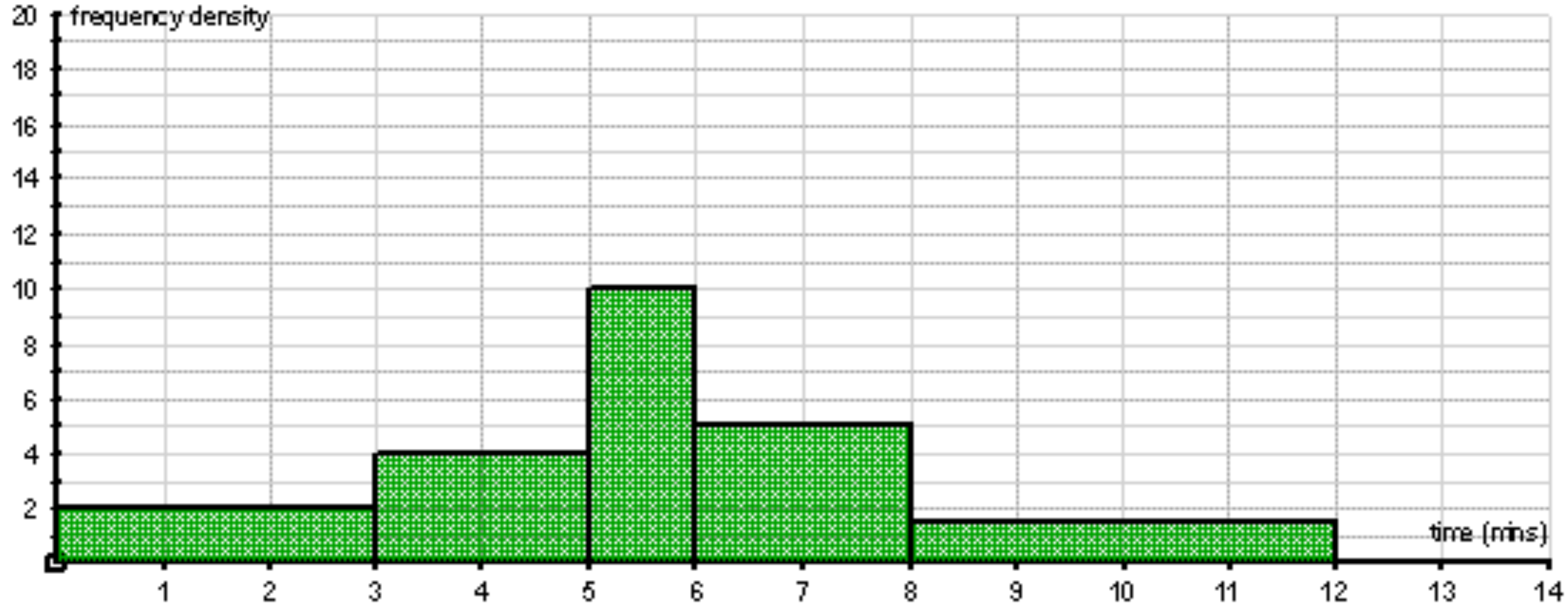
- The reason for this is that in a Histogram, the areas of the bars are proportional to the frequency, and not just the height like a bar chart.

- Note: If all our groups had the same width, it wouldn't matter, but often they do not, so that is why Histograms tend to be used more than Bar Charts!

Return to contents page

4. Interpreting Histograms

Example: Here is a Histogram showing the time taken by some year 7s to complete all their times tables. Find the frequencies of each group.



This time we are given Frequency Density, and asked to work out Frequency... well, if we do a little re-arranging to our formula we get...

Frequency = Frequency Density x Group Width

Time (mins)	Frequency Density	Group Width	Working	Frequency
$0 < t \leq 3$	2	3	$2 \times 3 = 6$	**6**
$3 < t \leq 5$	4	2	$4 \times 2 = 8$	**8**
$5 < t \leq 6$	10	1	$10 \times 1 = 10$	**10**
$6 < t \leq 8$	5	2	$5 \times 2 = 10$	**10**
$8 < t \leq 12$	1.5	4	$1.5 \times 4 = 6$	**6**

Return to contents page

8. Scatter Diagrams

Why do we bother with Statistical Diagrams?

- The answer to this question is similar to the one for: "why do we bother working out averages and measures of spread?".

- We live in a world jam-packed full of statistics, and if we were forced to look at all the facts and figures in their raw, untreated form, not only would we probably not be able to make any sense out of them, but there is also a very good chance our heads would explode.

- Statistical Diagrams – if they are done properly - present those figures in a clear, concise, visually pleasing way, allowing us to make some sense out of the figures, summarise them, and compare them to other sets of data.

1. Drawing the Correct Scale

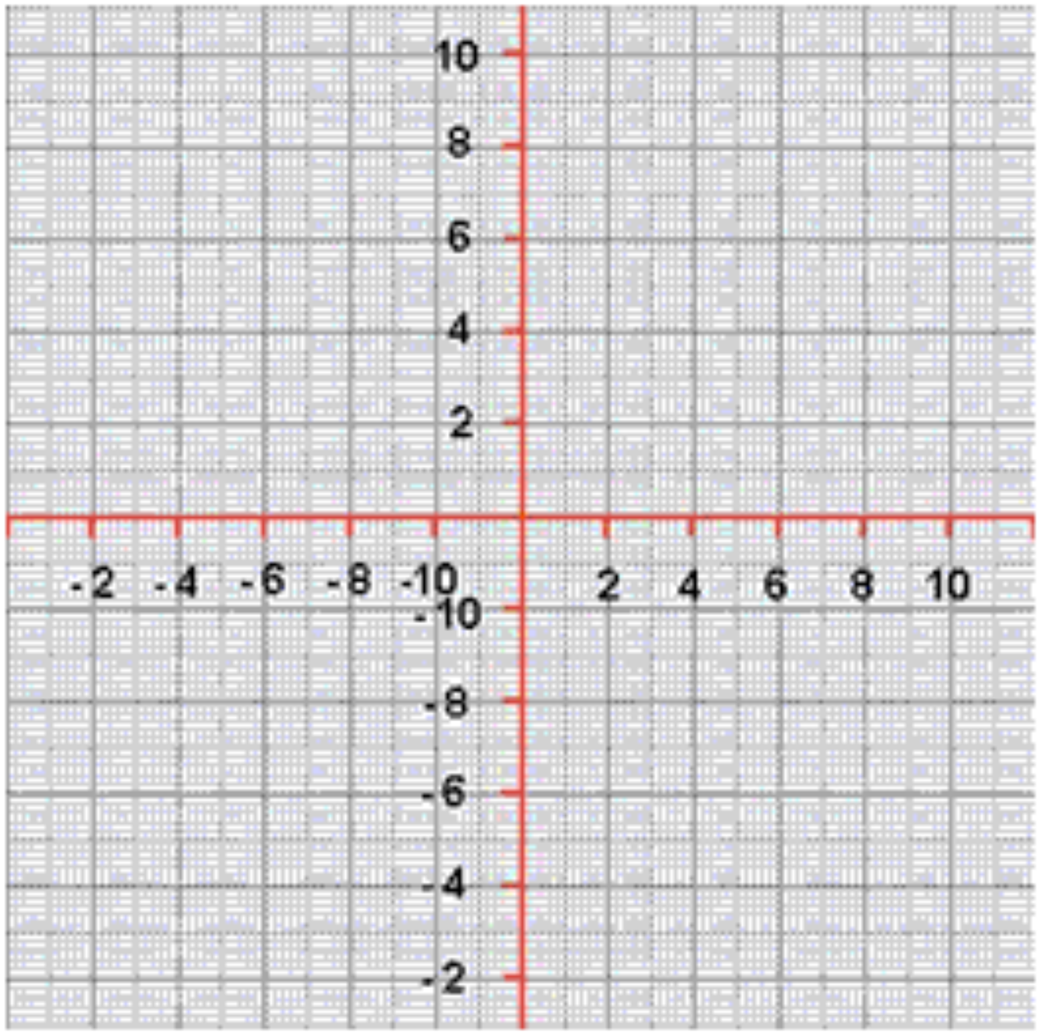
It never ceases to amaze (or depress) me just how many people get everything else correct when drawing a statistical diagram, but mess up their scale and lose loads of marks!

Remember: When choosing a scale, make sure you always go up in equal steps along each axes!

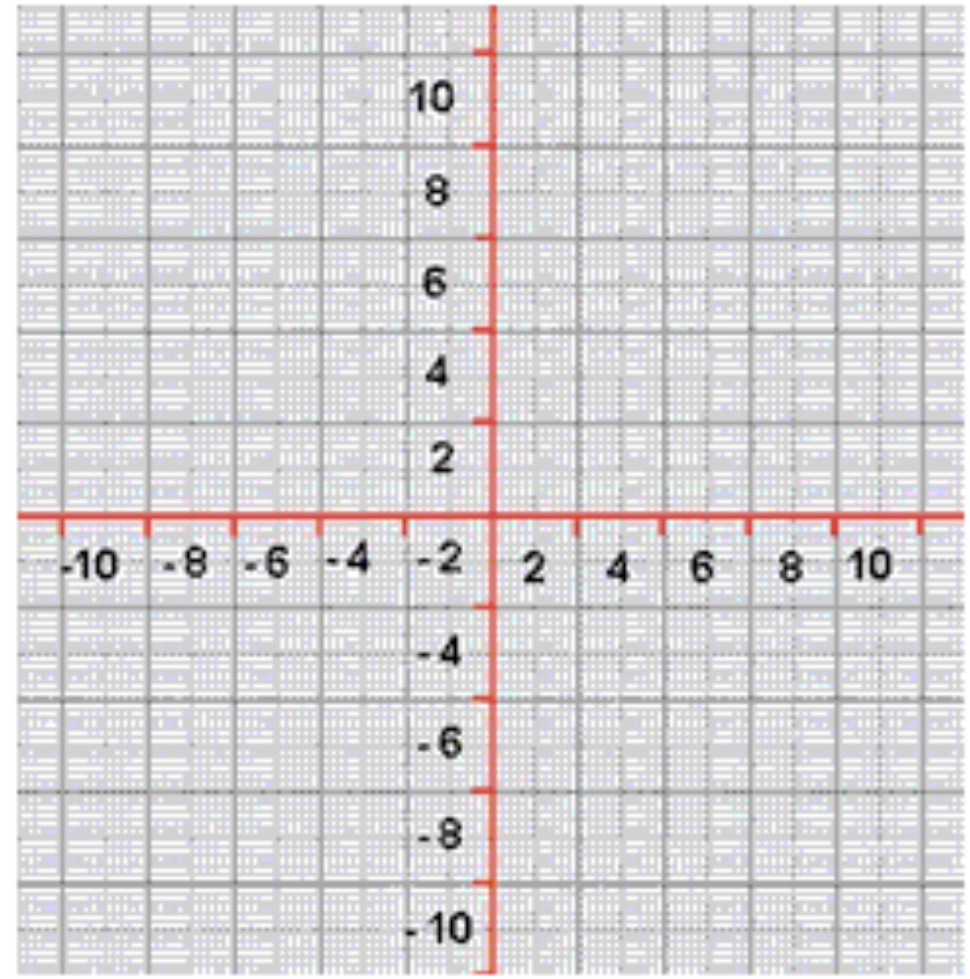
Here are some examples of some really dodgy scales. See if you can tell what is wrong with each… and make sure you never make the same mistake!

Return to contents page

Example 1

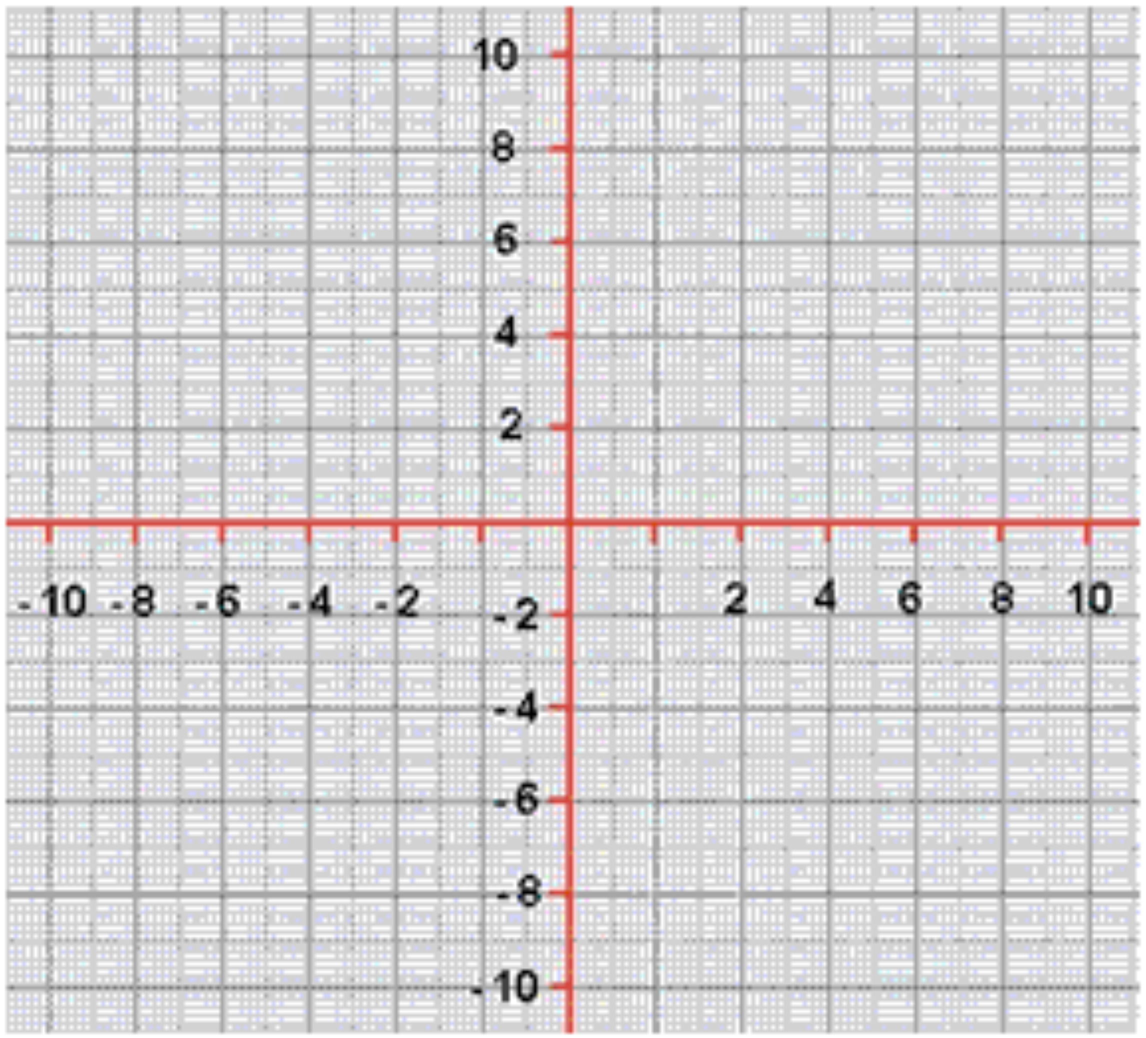


Example 2

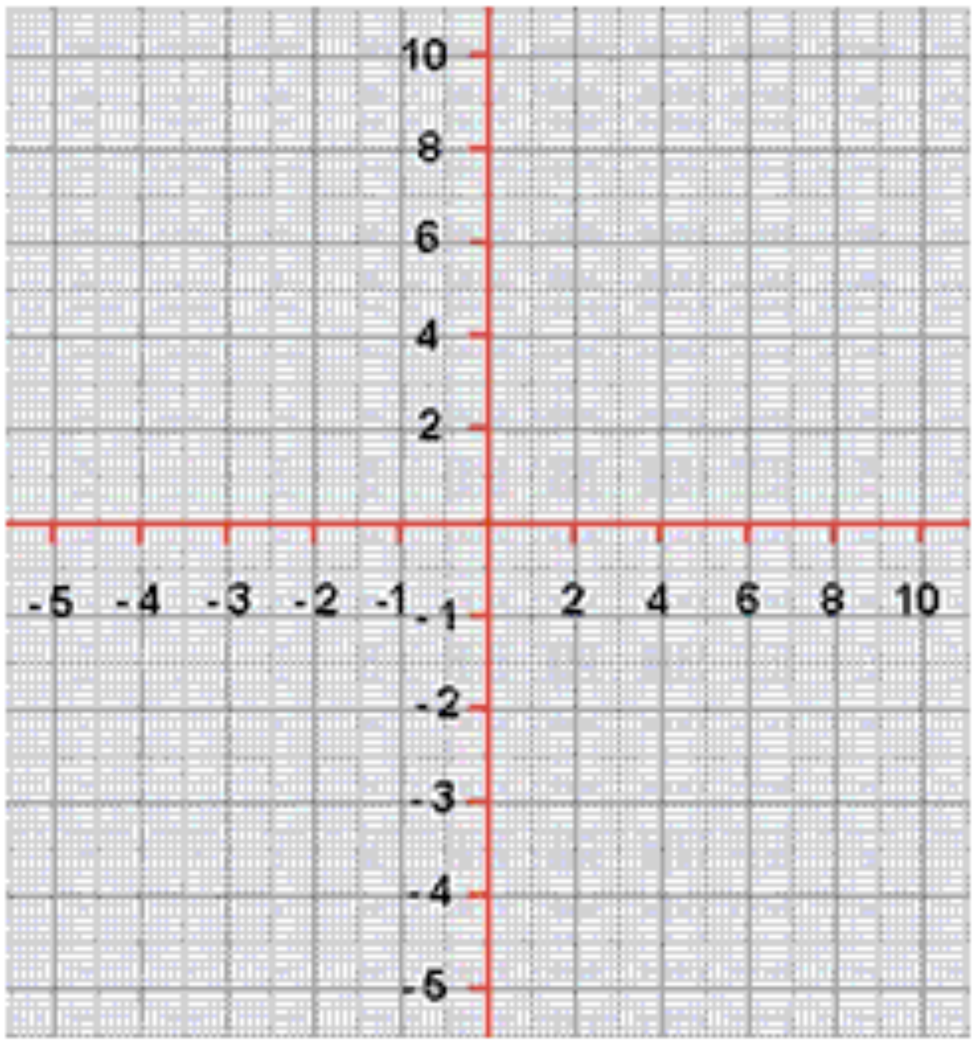


Return to contents page

Example 3



Example 4



Return to contents page

The Answers

1) This person has messed up their negative numbers. Remember, scales must go from smallest to biggest, from left to right, and down to up.

2) Classic mistake. Numbers must go on the lines, not between the spaces!

3) How many times have I seen this? The spaces around the centre (origin) are not equal. Look at the gap between 2 and - 2…. Deary me!

4) Inconsistent scales! Notice the numbers go up by 1 in the negatives and then 2 in the positives!

Note: Another mistake in all of the diagrams is that the x and y axes are not labelled!

Big Example

Below is a table showing the number of pupils who fail to hand in their maths homework each day, and the minutes of yoga I need to do to calm myself down

Pupils missing homework	3	5	2	10	2	0	4	8	15	6	1	4
Minutes of yoga	10	12	9	25	8	3	15	20	26	10	7	10

Draw a scatter diagram to show the information, add a line of best fit, and comment on the correlation

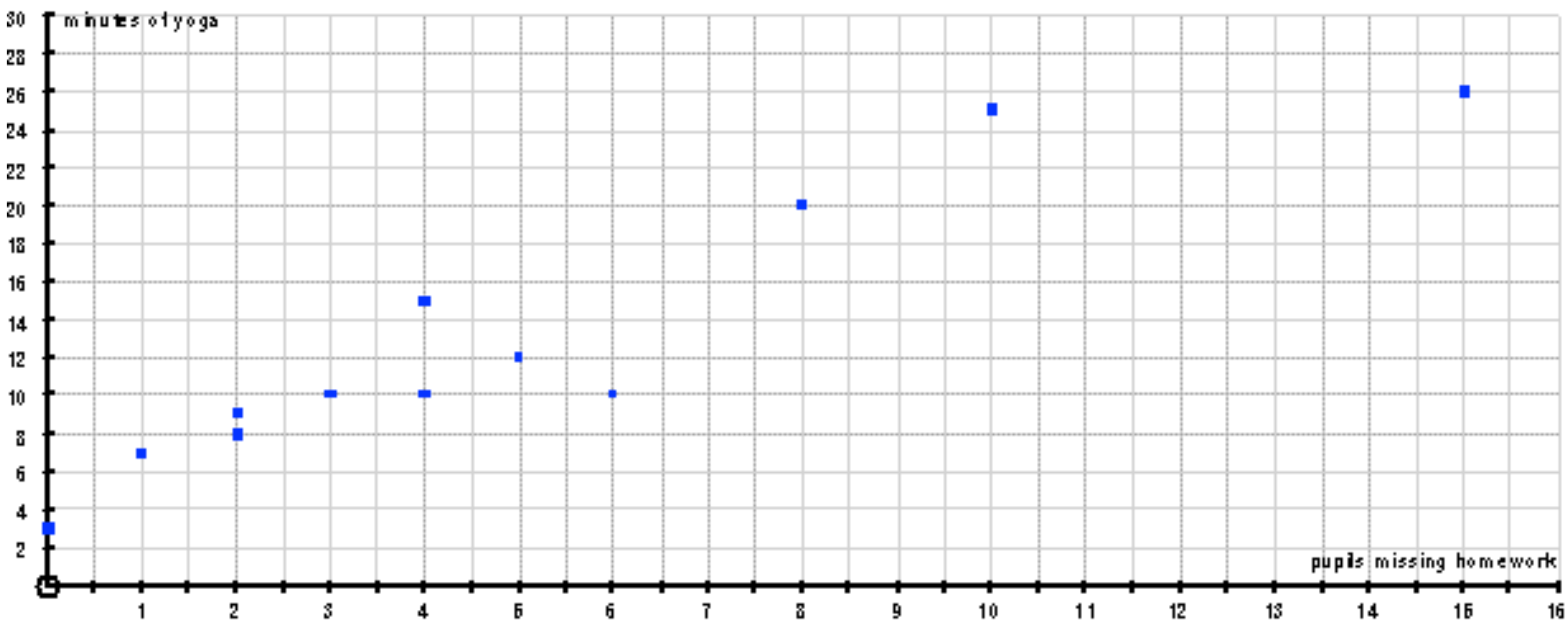
Return to contents page

2. Drawing a Scatter Diagram

1. Decide on an appropriate scale that will look a decent size and fit all the data in!

Note: It doesn't really matter which set of data goes on the x axis and which on the y... but personally I like to put the one with the biggest numbers on the y axis! BUT: remember to label both axes, including units!

2. Carefully mark each piece of data on your diagram with a dot/cross, and when you have finished, check you have the correct number of crosses!



Return to contents page

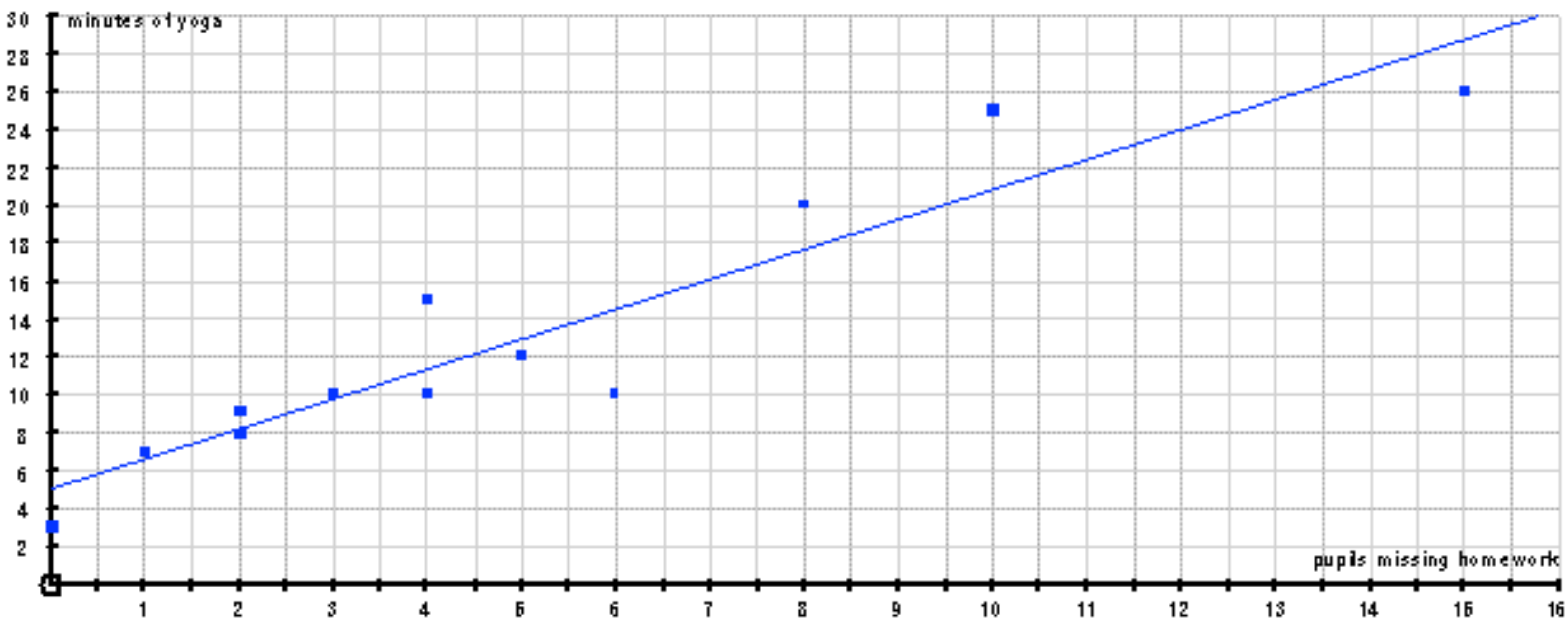
3. The Line of Best Fit

This is a single straight line which is supposed to be a good representation of the pattern / trend of the data

Tips for drawing it:

- Try to get roughly the same amount of points above the line as below
- Experiment by using your ruler as your line, and only draw the line in when you are happy
- Don't spend too long deciding, and don't try to make it perfect!

Note: Your line does NOT have to start at the origin (0, 0)



Return to contents page

4. Correlation

The most important use of scatter diagrams is to determine the type (if any) of correlation between two variables

Correlation is just a posh word for relationship.

There are two categories of correlation that you need to be familiar with:

DIRECTION

Positive – line slopes upwards

As one variable increases, so does the other

Negative – line slopes downwards

As one variable increases, the other decreases

No correlation – line is close to horizontal

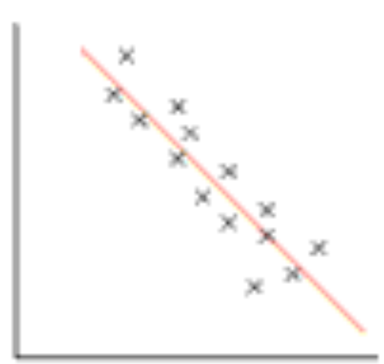
No relationship between the variables

STRENGTH

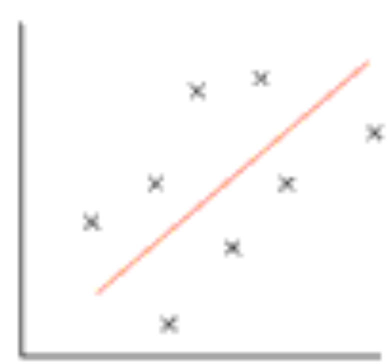
Strong – dots are close to each other

Weak – dots are far apart

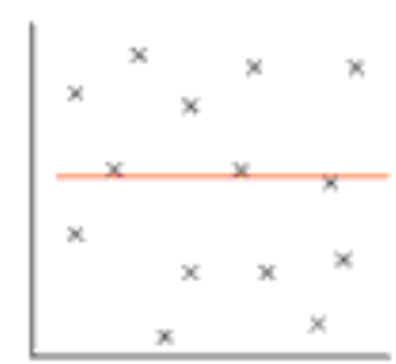
Tip: When deciding on the strength of correlation, I have a little rule: "the longer it takes me to decide where to draw the line of best fit, the weaker the correlation"



Strong negative



Weak Positive



No Correlation

Looking at our example, I would say there is a fairly strong, positive correlation. This is no surprise, because as the number of missing homeworks increases, so to does my need for yoga!

Return to contents page

The Adventures of Tom Sawyer

By Mark Twain

PREFACE

MOST of the adventures recorded in this book really occurred; one or two were experiences of my own, the rest those of boys who were schoolmates of mine. Huck Finn is drawn from life; Tom Sawyer also, but not from an individual — he is a combination of the characteristics of three boys whom I knew, and therefore belongs to the composite order of architecture.

The odd superstitions touched upon were all prevalent among children and slaves in the West at the period of this story — that is to say, thirty or forty years ago.

Although my book is intended mainly for the entertainment of boys and girls, I hope it will not be shunned by men and women on that account, for part of my plan has been to try to pleasantly remind adults of what they once were themselves, and of how they felt and thought and talked, and what queer enterprises they sometimes engaged in.

THE AUTHOR.
HARTFORD, 1876.

Chapter I

'TOM!'

No answer.

'TOM!'

No answer.

'What's gone with that boy, I wonder? You TOM!'

No answer.

The old lady pulled her spectacles down and looked over them about the room; then she put them up and looked out under them. She seldom or never looked THROUGH them for so small a thing as a boy; they were her state pair, the pride of her heart, and were built for 'style,' not service — she could have seen through a pair of stove-lids just as well. She looked perplexed for a moment, and then said, not fiercely, but still loud enough for the furniture to hear:

'Well, I lay if I get hold of you I'll —'

She did not finish, for by this time she was bending down and punching under the bed with the broom, and so she needed breath to punctuate the punches with. She resurrected nothing but the cat.

'I never did see the beat of that boy!'

She went to the open door and stood in it and looked out among the tomato vines and 'jimpson' weeds that constituted the garden. No Tom. So she lifted up her voice at an angle calculated for distance and shouted:

'Y-o-u-u TOM!'

There was a slight noise behind her and she turned just in time to seize a small boy by the slack of his roundabout and arrest his flight.

'There! I might 'a' thought of that closet. What you been doing in there?'

'Nothing.'

'Nothing! Look at your hands. And look at your mouth. What IS that truck?'

'I don't know, aunt.'

'Well, I know. It's jam — that's what it is. Forty times I've said if you didn't let that jam alone I'd skin you. Hand me that switch.'

The switch hovered in the air — the peril was desperate —

'My! Look behind you, aunt!'

The old lady whirled round, and snatched her skirts out of danger. The lad fled on the instant, scrambled up the high board-fence, and disappeared over it.

His aunt Polly stood surprised a moment, and then broke into a gentle laugh.

'Hang the boy, can't I never learn anything? Ain't he played me tricks enough like that for me to be looking out for him by this time? But old fools is the biggest fools there is. Can't learn an old dog new tricks, as the saying is. But my goodness, he never plays them alike, two days, and how is a body to know what's coming? He 'pears to know just how long he can torment me before I get my dander up, and he knows if he can make out to put me off for a minute or make me laugh, it's all down again and I can't hit him a lick. I ain't doing my duty by that boy, and that's the Lord's truth, goodness knows. Spare the rod and spile the child, as the Good Book says. I'm a laying up sin and suffering for us both, I know. He's full of the Old Scratch, but laws-a-me! he's my own dead sister's boy, poor thing, and I ain't got the heart to lash him, somehow. Every time I let him off, my conscience does hurt me so, and every time I hit him my old heart most breaks. Well-a-well, man that is born of woman is of few days and full of trouble, as the Scripture says, and I reckon it's so. He'll play hookey this evening, * and [*Southwestern for 'afternoon"] I'll just be obleeged to make him work, to-morrow, to punish him. It's mighty hard to make him work Saturdays, when all the boys is having holiday, but he hates work more than he hates anything else, and I've GOT to do some of my duty by him, or I'll be the ruination of the child.'

Tom did play hookey, and he had a very good time. He got back home barely in season to help Jim, the small colored boy, saw next-day's wood and split the kindlings before supper — at least he was there in time to tell his adventures to Jim while Jim did three-fourths of the work. Tom's younger brother (or rather half-brother) Sid was already through with his part of the work (picking up chips), for he was a quiet boy, and had no adventurous, troublesome ways.

While Tom was eating his supper, and stealing sugar as opportunity offered, Aunt Polly asked him questions that were full of guile, and very deep — for she wanted to trap him into damaging revealments. Like many other simple-hearted souls, it was her pet vanity to believe she was endowed with a talent for dark and mysterious diplomacy, and she loved to contemplate her most transparent devices as marvels of low cunning. Said she:

'Tom, it was middling warm in school, warn't it?'

'Yes'm.'

'Powerful warm, warn't it?'

'Yes'm.'

'Didn't you want to go in a-swimming, Tom?'

A bit of a scare shot through Tom — a touch of uncomfortable suspicion. He searched Aunt Polly's face, but it told him nothing. So he said:

'No'm — well, not very much.'

The old lady reached out her hand and felt Tom's shirt, and said:

'But you ain't too warm now, though.' And it flattered her to reflect that she had discovered that the shirt was dry without anybody knowing that that was what she had in her mind. But in spite of her, Tom knew where the wind lay, now. So he forestalled what might be the next move:

'Some of us pumped on our heads — mine's damp yet. See?'

Aunt Polly was vexed to think she had overlooked that bit of circumstantial evidence, and missed a trick. Then she had a new inspiration:

'Tom, you didn't have to undo your shirt collar where I sewed it, to pump on your head, did you? Unbutton your jacket!'

The trouble vanished out of Tom's face. He opened his jacket. His shirt collar was securely sewed.

'Bother! Well, go 'long with you. I'd made sure you'd played hookey and been a-swimming. But I forgive ye, Tom. I reckon you're a kind of a singed cat, as the saying is — better'n you look. THIS time.'

She was half sorry her sagacity had miscarried, and half glad that Tom had stumbled into obedient conduct for once.

But Sidney said:

'Well, now, if I didn't think you sewed his collar with white thread, but it's black.'

'Why, I did sew it with white! Tom!'

But Tom did not wait for the rest. As he went out at the door he said:

'Siddy, I'll lick you for that.'

In a safe place Tom examined two large needles which were thrust into the lapels of his jacket, and had thread bound about them — one needle carried white thread and the other black. He said:

'She'd never noticed if it hadn't been for Sid. Confound it! sometimes she sews it with white, and sometimes she sews it with black. I wish to geeminy she'd stick to one or t'other — I can't keep the run of 'em. But I bet you I'll lam Sid for that. I'll learn him!'

He was not the Model Boy of the village. He knew the model boy very well though — and loathed him.

Within two minutes, or even less, he had forgotten all his troubles. Not because his troubles were one whit less heavy and bitter to him than a man's are to a man, but because a new and powerful interest bore them down and drove them out of his mind for the time — just as men's misfortunes are forgotten in the excitement of new enterprises. This new interest was a valued novelty in whistling, which he had just acquired from a negro, and he was suffering to practise it undisturbed. It consisted in a peculiar bird-like turn, a sort of liquid warble, produced by touching the tongue to the roof of the mouth at short intervals in the midst of the music — the reader probably remembers how to do it, if he has ever been a boy. Diligence and attention soon gave him the knack of it, and he strode down the street with his mouth full of harmony and his soul full of gratitude. He felt much as an astronomer feels who has discovered a new planet — no doubt, as far as strong, deep, unalloyed pleasure is concerned, the advantage was with the boy, not the astronomer.

The summer evenings were long. It was not dark, yet. Presently Tom checked his whistle. A stranger was before him — a boy a shade larger than himself. A new-comer of any age or either sex was an impressive curiosity in the poor little shabby village of St. Petersburg. This boy was well dressed, too — well dressed on a week-day. This was simply astounding. His cap was a dainty thing, his closebuttoned blue cloth roundabout was new and natty, and so were his pantaloons. He had shoes on — and it was only Friday. He even wore a necktie, a bright bit of ribbon. He had a citified air about him that ate into Tom's vitals. The more Tom stared at the splendid marvel, the higher he turned up his nose at his finery and the shabbier and shabbier his own outfit seemed to him to grow. Neither boy spoke. If one moved, the other moved — but only sidewise, in a circle; they kept face to face and eye to eye all the time. Finally Tom said:

'I can lick you!'

'I'd like to see you try it.'

'Well, I can do it.'

'No you can't, either.'

'Yes I can.'

'No you can't.'

'I can.'

'You can't.'

'Can!'

'Can't!'

An uncomfortable pause. Then Tom said:

'What's your name?'

'Tisn't any of your business, maybe.'

'Well I 'low I'll MAKE it my business.'

'Well why don't you?'

'If you say much, I will.'

'Much — much — MUCH. There now.'

'Oh, you think you're mighty smart, DON'T you? I could lick you with one hand tied behind me, if I wanted to.'

'Well why don't you DO it? You SAY you can do it.'

'Well I WILL, if you fool with me.'

'Oh yes — I've seen whole families in the same fix.'

'Smarty! You think you're SOME, now, DON'T you? Oh, what a hat!'

'You can lump that hat if you don't like it. I dare you to knock it off — and anybody that'll take a dare will suck eggs.'

'You're a liar!'

'You're another.'

'You're a fighting liar and dasn't take it up.'

'Aw — take a walk!'

'Say — if you give me much more of your sass I'll take and bounce a rock off'n your head.'

'Oh, of COURSE you will.'

'Well I WILL.'

'Well why don't you DO it then? What do you keep SAYING you will for? Why don't you DO it? It's because you're afraid.'

'I AIN'T afraid.'

'You are.'

'I ain't.'

'You are.'

Another pause, and more eying and sidling around each other. Presently they were shoulder to shoulder. Tom said:

'Get away from here!'

'Go away yourself!'

'I won't.'

'I won't either.'

So they stood, each with a foot placed at an angle as a brace, and both shoving with might and main, and glowering at each other with hate. But neither could get an advantage. After struggling till both were hot and flushed, each relaxed his strain with watchful caution, and Tom said:

'You're a coward and a pup. I'll tell my big brother on you, and he can thrash you with his little finger, and I'll make him do it, too.'

'What do I care for your big brother? I've got a brother that's bigger than he is — and what's more, he can throw him over that fence, too.' [Both brothers were imaginary.]

'That's a lie.'

'YOUR saying so don't make it so.'

Tom drew a line in the dust with his big toe, and said:

'I dare you to step over that, and I'll lick you till you can't stand up. Anybody that'll take a dare will steal sheep.'

The new boy stepped over promptly, and said:

'Now you said you'd do it, now let's see you do it.'

'Don't you crowd me now; you better look out.'

'Well, you SAID you'd do it — why don't you do it?'

'By jingo! for two cents I WILL do it.'

The new boy took two broad coppers out of his pocket and held them out with derision. Tom struck them to the ground. In an instant both boys were rolling and tumbling in the dirt, gripped together like cats; and for the space of a minute they tugged and tore at each other's hair and clothes, punched and scratched each other's nose, and covered themselves with dust and glory. Presently the confusion took form, and through the fog of battle Tom appeared, seated astride the new boy, and pounding him with his fists. 'Holler 'nuff!' said he.

The boy only struggled to free himself. He was crying — mainly from rage.

'Holler 'nuff!' — and the pounding went on.

At last the stranger got out a smothered 'Nuff!' and Tom let him up and said:

'Now that'll learn you. Better look out who you're fooling with next time.'

The new boy went off brushing the dust from his clothes, sobbing, snuffling, and occasionally looking back and shaking his head and threatening what he would do to Tom the 'next time he caught him out.' To which Tom responded with jeers, and started off in high feather, and as soon as his back was turned the new boy snatched up a stone, threw it and hit him between the shoulders and then turned tail and ran like an antelope. Tom chased the traitor home, and thus found out where he lived. He then held a position at the gate for some time, daring the enemy to come outside, but the enemy only made faces at him through the window and declined. At last the enemy's mother appeared, and called Tom a bad, vicious, vulgar child, and ordered him away. So he went away; but he said he 'lowed' to 'lay' for that boy.

He got home pretty late that night, and when he climbed cautiously in at the window, he uncovered an ambuscade, in the person of his aunt; and when she saw the state his clothes were in her resolution to turn his Saturday holiday into captivity at hard labor became adamantine in its firmness.

Chapter II

SATURDAY morning was come, and all the summer world was bright and fresh, and brimming with life. There was a song in every heart; and if the heart was young the music issued at the lips. There was cheer in every face and a spring in every step. The locust-trees were in bloom and the fragrance of the blossoms filled the air. Cardiff Hill, beyond the village and above it, was green with vegetation and it lay just far enough away to seem a Delectable Land, dreamy, reposeful, and inviting.

Tom appeared on the sidewalk with a bucket of whitewash and a long-handled brush. He surveyed the fence, and all gladness left him and a deep melancholy settled down upon his spirit. Thirty yards of board fence nine feet high. Life to him seemed hollow, and existence but a burden. Sighing, he dipped his brush and passed it along the topmost plank; repeated the operation; did it again; compared the insignificant whitewashed streak with the far-reaching continent of unwhitewashed fence, and sat down on a tree-box discouraged. Jim came skipping out at the gate with a tin pail, and singing Buffalo Gals. Bringing water from the town pump had always been hateful work in Tom's eyes, before, but now it did not strike him so. He remembered that there was company at the pump. White, mulatto, and negro boys and girls were always there waiting their turns, resting, trading playthings, quarrelling, fighting, skylarking. And he remembered that although the pump was only a hundred and fifty yards off, Jim never got back with a bucket of water under an hour — and even then somebody generally had to go after him. Tom said:

'Say, Jim, I'll fetch the water if you'll whitewash some.'

Jim shook his head and said:

'Can't, Mars Tom. Ole missis, she tole me I got to go an' git dis water an' not stop foolin' roun' wid anybody. She say she spec' Mars Tom gwine to ax me to whitewash, an' so she tole me go 'long an' 'tend to my own business — she 'lowed SHE'D 'tend to de whitewashin'.'

'Oh, never you mind what she said, Jim. That's the way she always talks. Gimme the bucket — I won't be gone only a a minute. SHE won't ever know.'

'Oh, I dasn't, Mars Tom. Ole missis she'd take an' tar de head off'n me. 'Deed she would.'

'SHE! She never licks anybody — whacks 'em over the head with her thimble — and who cares for that, I'd like to know. She talks awful, but talk don't hurt — anyways it don't if she don't cry. Jim, I'll give you a marvel. I'll give you a white alley!'

Jim began to waver.

'White alley, Jim! And it's a bully taw.'

'My! Dat's a mighty gay marvel, I tell you! But Mars Tom I's powerful 'fraid ole missis —'

'And besides, if you will I'll show you my sore toe.'

Jim was only human — this attraction was too much for him. He put down his pail, took the white alley, and bent over the toe with absorbing interest while the bandage was being unwound. In another moment he was flying down the street with his pail and a tingling rear, Tom was whitewashing with vigor, and Aunt Polly was retiring from the field with a slipper in her hand and triumph in her eye. But Tom's energy did not last. He began to think of the fun he had planned for this day, and his sorrows multiplied. Soon the free boys would come tripping along on all sorts of delicious expeditions, and they would make a world of fun of him for having to work — the very thought of it burnt him like fire. He got out his worldly wealth and examined it — bits of toys, marbles, and trash; enough to buy an exchange of WORK, maybe, but not half enough to buy so much as half an hour of pure freedom. So he returned his straitened means to his pocket, and gave up the idea of trying to buy the boys. At this dark and hopeless moment an inspiration burst upon him! Nothing less than a great, magnificent inspiration.

He took up his brush and went tranquilly to work. Ben Rogers hove in sight presently — the very boy, of all boys, whose ridicule he had been dreading. Ben's gait was the hop-skip-and-jump — proof enough that his heart was light and his anticipations high. He was eating an apple, and giving a long, melodious whoop, at intervals, followed by a deep-toned dingdong-dong, ding-dong-dong, for he was personating a steamboat. As he drew near, he slackened speed, took the middle of the street, leaned far over to starboard and rounded to ponderously and with laborious pomp and circumstance — for he was personating the Big

Missouri, and considered himself to be drawing nine feet of water. He was boat and captain and engine-bells combined, so he had to imagine himself standing on his own hurricane-deck giving the orders and executing them:

'Stop her, sir! Ting-a-ling-ling!' The headway ran almost out, and he drew up slowly toward the sidewalk.

'Ship up to back! Ting-a-ling-ling!' His arms straightened and stiffened down his sides.

'Set her back on the stabboard! Ting-a-ling-ling! Chow! ch-chow-wow! Chow!' His right hand, meantime, describing stately circles — for it was representing a forty-foot wheel.

'Let her go back on the labboard! Ting-a-lingling! Chow-ch-chow-chow!' The left hand began to describe circles.

'Stop the stabboard! Ting-a-ling-ling! Stop the labboard! Come ahead on the stabboard! Stop her! Let your outside turn over slow! Ting-a-ling-ling! Chow-ow-ow! Get out that head-line! LIVELY now! Come — out with your spring-line — what're you about there! Take a turn round that stump with the bight of it! Stand by that stage, now — let her go! Done with the engines, sir! Ting-a-ling-ling! SH'T! S'H'T! SH'T!' (trying the gauge-cocks).

Tom went on whitewashing — paid no attention to the steamboat. Ben stared a moment and then said: 'Hi-YI! YOU'RE up a stump, ain't you!'

No answer. Tom surveyed his last touch with the eye of an artist, then he gave his brush another gentle sweep and surveyed the result, as before. Ben ranged up alongside of him. Tom's mouth watered for the apple, but he stuck to his work. Ben said:

'Hello, old chap, you got to work, hey?'

Tom wheeled suddenly and said:

'Why, it's you, Ben! I warn't noticing.'

'Say — I'm going in a-swimming, I am. Don't you wish you could? But of course you'd druther WORK — wouldn't you? Course you would!'

Tom contemplated the boy a bit, and said:

'What do you call work?'

'Why, ain't THAT work?'

Tom resumed his whitewashing, and answered carelessly:

'Well, maybe it is, and maybe it ain't. All I know, is, it suits Tom Sawyer.'

'Oh come, now, you don't mean to let on that you LIKE it?'

The brush continued to move.

'Like it? Well, I don't see why I oughtn't to like it. Does a boy get a chance to whitewash a fence every day?'

That put the thing in a new light. Ben stopped nibbling his apple. Tom swept his brush daintily back and forth — stepped back to note the effect — added a touch here and there — criticised the effect again — Ben watching every move and getting more and more interested, more and more absorbed. Presently he said:

'Say, Tom, let ME whitewash a little.'

Tom considered, was about to consent; but he altered his mind:

'No — no — I reckon it wouldn't hardly do, Ben. You see, Aunt Polly's awful particular about this fence — right here on the street, you know — but if it was the back fence I wouldn't mind and SHE wouldn't. Yes, she's awful particular about this fence; it's got to be done very careful; I reckon there ain't one boy in a thousand, maybe two thousand, that can do it the way it's got to be done.'

'No — is that so? Oh come, now — lemme just try. Only just a little — I'd let YOU, if you was me, Tom.'

'Ben, I'd like to, honest injun; but Aunt Polly — well, Jim wanted to do it, but she wouldn't let him; Sid wanted to do it, and she wouldn't let Sid. Now don't you see how I'm fixed? If you was to tackle this fence and anything was to happen to it —'

'Oh, shucks, I'll be just as careful. Now lemme try. Say — I'll give you the core of my apple.'

'Well, here — No, Ben, now don't. I'm afeard —'

'I'll give you ALL of it!'

Tom gave up the brush with reluctance in his face, but alacrity in his heart. And while the late steamer Big Missouri worked and sweated in the sun, the retired artist sat on a barrel in the shade close by, dangled his legs, munched his apple, and planned the slaughter of more innocents. There was no lack of material; boys happened along every little while; they came to jeer, but remained to whitewash. By the time Ben was fagged out, Tom had traded the next chance to Billy Fisher for a kite, in good repair; and when he played out, Johnny Miller bought in for a dead rat and a string to swing it with — and so on, and so on, hour after hour. And when the middle of the afternoon came, from being a poor poverty-stricken boy in the morning, Tom was literally rolling in wealth. He had besides the things before mentioned, twelve marbles, part of a jews-harp, a piece of blue bottle-glass to look through, a spool cannon, a key that wouldn't unlock anything, a fragment of chalk, a glass stopper of a decanter, a tin soldier, a couple of tadpoles, six fire-crackers, a kitten with only one eye, a brass doorknob, a dog-collar — but no dog — the handle of a knife, four pieces of orange-peel, and a dilapidated old window sash.

He had had a nice, good, idle time all the while — plenty of company — and the fence had three coats of whitewash on it! If he hadn't run out of whitewash he would have bankrupted every boy in the village.

Tom said to himself that it was not such a hollow world, after all. He had discovered a great law of human action, without knowing it — namely, that in order to make a man or a boy covet a thing, it is only necessary to make the thing difficult to attain. If he had been a great and wise philosopher, like the writer of this book, he would now have comprehended that Work consists of whatever a body is OBLIGED to do, and that Play consists of whatever a body is not obliged to do. And this would help him to understand why constructing artificial flowers or performing on a treadmill is work, while rolling ten-pins or climbing Mont Blanc is only amusement. There are wealthy gentlemen in England who drive four-horse passengercoaches twenty or thirty miles on a daily line, in the summer, because the privilege costs them considerable money; but if they were offered wages for the service, that would turn it into work and then they would resign.

The boy mused awhile over the substantial change which had taken place in his worldly circumstances, and then wended toward headquarters to report.

Chapter III

TOM presented himself before Aunt Polly, who was sitting by an open window in a pleasant rearward apartment, which was bedroom, breakfast-room, dining-room, and library, combined. The balmy summer air, the restful quiet, the odor of the flowers, and the drowsing murmur of the bees had had their effect, and she was nodding over her knitting — for she had no company but the cat, and it was asleep in her lap. Her spectacles were propped up on her gray head for safety. She had thought that of course Tom had deserted long ago, and she wondered at seeing him place himself in her power again in this intrepid way. He said: 'Mayn't I go and play now, aunt?'

'What, a'ready? How much have you done?'

'It's all done, aunt.'

'Tom, don't lie to me — I can't bear it.'

'I ain't, aunt; it IS all done.'

Aunt Polly placed small trust in such evidence. She went out to see for herself; and she would have been content to find twenty per cent. of Tom's statement true. When she found the entire fence whitewashed, and not only whitewashed but elaborately coated and recoated, and even a streak added to the ground, her astonishment was almost unspeakable. She said:

'Well, I never! There's no getting round it, you can work when you're a mind to, Tom.' And then she diluted the compliment by adding, 'But it's powerful seldom you're a mind to, I'm bound to say. Well, go 'long and play; but mind you get back some time in a week, or I'll tan you.'

She was so overcome by the splendor of his achievement that she took him into the closet and selected a choice apple and delivered it to him, along with an improving lecture upon the added value and flavor a treat took to itself when it came without sin through virtuous effort. And while she closed with a happy Scriptural flourish, he 'hooked' a doughnut.

Then he skipped out, and saw Sid just starting up the outside stairway that led to the back rooms on the second floor. Clods were handy and the air was full of them in a twinkling. They raged around Sid like a hail-storm; and before Aunt Polly could collect her surprised faculties and sally to the rescue, six or seven clods had taken personal effect, and Tom was over the fence and gone. There was a gate, but as a general thing he was too crowded for time to make use of it. His soul was at peace, now that he had settled with Sid for calling attention to his black thread and getting him into trouble.

Tom skirted the block, and came round into a muddy alley that led by the back of his aunt's cowstable. He presently got safely beyond the reach of capture and punishment, and hastened toward the public square of the village, where two 'military' companies of boys had met for conflict, according to previous appointment. Tom was General of one of these armies, Joe Harper (a bosom friend) General of the other. These two great commanders did not condescend to fight in person — that being better suited to the still smaller fry — but sat together on an eminence and conducted the field operations by orders delivered through aides-de-camp. Tom's army won a great victory, after a long and hard-fought battle. Then the dead were counted, prisoners exchanged, the terms of the next disagreement agreed upon, and the day for the necessary battle appointed; after which the armies fell into line and marched away, and Tom turned homeward alone.

As he was passing by the house where Jeff Thatcher lived, he saw a new girl in the garden — a lovely little blue-eyed creature with yellow hair plaited into two long-tails, white summer frock and embroidered pantalettes. The fresh-crowned hero fell without firing a shot. A certain Amy Lawrence vanished out of his heart and left not even a memory of herself behind. He had thought he loved her to distraction; he had regarded his passion as adoration; and behold it was only a poor little evanescent partiality. He had been months winning her; she had confessed hardly a week ago; he had been the happiest and the proudest boy in the world only seven short days, and here in one instant of time she had gone out of his heart like a casual stranger whose visit is done.

He worshipped this new angel with furtive eye, till he saw that she had discovered him; then he pretended he did not know she was present, and began to 'show off' in all sorts of absurd boyish ways, in order to win her admiration. He kept up this grotesque foolishness for some time;

but by-and-by, while he was in the midst of some dangerous gymnastic performances, he glanced aside and saw that the little girl was wending her way toward the house. Tom came up to the fence and leaned on it, grieving, and hoping she would tarry yet awhile longer. She halted a moment on the steps and then moved toward the door. Tom heaved a great sigh as she put her foot on the threshold. But his face lit up, right away, for she tossed a pansy over the fence a moment before she disappeared.

The boy ran around and stopped within a foot or two of the flower, and then shaded his eyes with his hand and began to look down street as if he had discovered something of interest going on in that direction. Presently he picked up a straw and began trying to balance it on his nose, with his head tilted far back; and as he moved from side to side, in his efforts, he edged nearer and nearer toward the pansy; finally his bare foot rested upon it, his pliant toes closed upon it, and he hopped away with the treasure and disappeared round the corner. But only for a minute — only while he could button the flower inside his jacket, next his heart — or next his stomach, possibly, for he was not much posted in anatomy, and not hypercritical, anyway.

He returned, now, and hung about the fence till nightfall, 'showing off,' as before; but the girl never exhibited herself again, though Tom comforted himself a little with the hope that she had been near some window, meantime, and been aware of his attentions. Finally he strode home reluctantly, with his poor head full of visions.

All through supper his spirits were so high that his aunt wondered 'what had got into the child.' He took a good scolding about clodding Sid, and did not seem to mind it in the least. He tried to steal sugar under his aunt's very nose, and got his knuckles rapped for it. He said:

'Aunt, you don't whack Sid when he takes it.'

'Well, Sid don't torment a body the way you do. You'd be always into that sugar if I warn't watching you.'

Presently she stepped into the kitchen, and Sid, happy in his immunity, reached for the sugar-bowl — a sort of glorying over Tom which was wellnigh unbearable. But Sid's fingers slipped and the bowl dropped and broke. Tom was in ecstasies. In such ecstasies that he even controlled his tongue and was silent. He said to himself that he would not speak a word, even when his aunt came in, but would sit perfectly still till she asked who did the mischief; and then he would tell, and there would be nothing so good in the world as to see that pet model 'catch it.' He was so brimful of exultation that he could hardly hold himself when the old lady came back and stood above the wreck discharging lightnings of wrath from over her spectacles. He said to himself, 'Now it's coming!' And the next instant he was sprawling on the floor! The potent palm was uplifted to strike again when Tom cried out:

'Hold on, now, what 'er you belting ME for? — Sid broke it!'

Aunt Polly paused, perplexed, and Tom looked for healing pity. But when she got her tongue again, she only said:

'Umf! Well, you didn't get a lick amiss, I reckon. You been into some other audacious mischief when I wasn't around, like enough.'

Then her conscience reproached her, and she yearned to say something kind and loving; but she judged that this would be construed into a confession that she had been in the wrong, and discipline forbade that. So she kept silence, and went about her affairs with a troubled heart. Tom sulked in a corner and exalted his woes. He knew that in her heart his aunt was on her knees to him, and he was morosely gratified by the consciousness of it. He would hang out no signals, he would take notice of none. He knew that a yearning glance fell upon him, now and then, through a film of tears, but he refused recognition of it. He pictured himself lying sick unto death and his aunt bending over him beseeching one little forgiving word, but he would turn his face to the wall, and die with that word unsaid. Ah, how would she feel then? And he pictured himself brought home from the river, dead, with his curls all wet, and his sore heart at rest. How she would throw herself upon him, and how her tears would fall like rain, and her lips pray God to give her back her boy and she would never, never abuse him any more! But he would lie there cold and white and make no sign — a poor little sufferer, whose griefs were at an end. He so worked upon his feelings with the pathos of these dreams, that he had to keep swallowing, he was so like to choke; and his eyes swam in a blur of water, which overflowed when he winked, and ran down and trickled from the end of his nose. And such a luxury to him was this petting of his sorrows, that he could not bear to have any worldly cheeriness or any grating delight intrude upon it; it was too sacred for such contact; and so, presently, when his cousin Mary danced in, all alive with the joy of seeing home again after an age-long visit of one week to the country, he got up and moved in clouds and darkness out at one door as she brought song and sunshine in at the other.

He wandered far from the accustomed haunts of boys, and sought desolate places that were in harmony with his spirit. A log raft in the river invited him, and he seated himself on its outer edge and contemplated the dreary vastness of the stream, wishing, the while, that he could only be drowned, all at once and unconsciously, without undergoing the uncomfortable routine devised by nature. Then he thought of his flower. He got it out, rumpled and wilted, and it mightily increased his dismal felicity. He wondered if she would pity him if she knew? Would she cry, and wish that she had a right to put her arms around his neck and comfort him? Or would she turn coldly away like all the hollow world? This picture brought such an agony of pleasurable suffering that he worked it over and over again in his mind and set it up in new and varied lights, till he wore it threadbare. At last he rose up sighing and departed in the darkness.

About half-past nine or ten o'clock he came along the deserted street to where the Adored Unknown lived; he paused a moment; no sound fell upon his listening ear; a candle was casting a dull glow upon the curtain of a second-story window. Was the sacred presence there? He climbed the fence, threaded his stealthy way through the plants, till he stood under that window; he looked up at it long, and with emotion; then he laid him down on the ground under it, disposing himself upon his back, with his hands clasped upon his breast and holding his poor wilted flower. And thus he would die — out in the cold world, with no shelter over his homeless head, no friendly hand to wipe the death-damps from his brow, no loving face to bend pityingly over him when the great agony came. And thus SHE would see him when she looked out upon the glad morning, and oh! would she drop one little tear upon his poor, lifeless form, would she heave one little sigh to see a bright young life so rudely blighted, so untimely cut down?

The window went up, a maid-servant's discordant voice profaned the holy calm, and a deluge of water drenched the prone martyr's remains!

The strangling hero sprang up with a relieving snort. There was a whiz as of a missile in the air, mingled with the murmur of a curse, a sound as of shivering glass followed, and a small, vague form went over the fence and shot away in the gloom.

Not long after, as Tom, all undressed for bed, was surveying his drenched garments by the light of a tallow dip, Sid woke up; but if he had any dim idea of making any 'references to allusions,' he thought better of it and held his peace, for there was danger in Tom's eye.

Tom turned in without the added vexation of prayers, and Sid made mental note of the omission.

Chapter IV

THE sun rose upon a tranquil world, and beamed down upon the peaceful village like a benediction. Breakfast over, Aunt Polly had family worship: it began with a prayer built from the ground up of solid courses of Scriptural quotations, welded together with a thin mortar of originality; and from the summit of this she delivered a grim chapter of the Mosaic Law, as from Sinai.

Then Tom girded up his loins, so to speak, and went to work to 'get his verses.' Sid had learned his lesson days before. Tom bent all his energies to the memorizing of five verses, and he chose part of the Sermon on the Mount, because he could find no verses that were shorter. At the end of half an hour Tom had a vague general idea of his lesson, but no more, for his mind was traversing the whole field of human thought, and his hands were busy with distracting recreations. Mary took his book to hear him recite, and he tried to find his way through the fog:

'Blessed are the — a — a —'

'Poor' —

'Yes — poor; blessed are the poor — a — a —'

'In spirit —'

'In spirit; blessed are the poor in spirit, for they — they —'

'THEIRS —'

‘For THEIRS. Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. Blessed are they that mourn, for they — they —‘

‘Sh —‘

‘For they — a —‘

‘S, H, A —‘

‘For they S, H — Oh, I don’t know what it is!’

‘SHALL!’

‘Oh, SHALL! for they shall — for they shall — a — a — shall mourn — a— a — blessed are they that shall — they that — a — they that shall mourn, for they shall — a — shall WHAT? Why don’t you tell me, Mary? — what do you want to be so mean for?’

‘Oh, Tom, you poor thick-headed thing, I’m not teasing you. I wouldn’t do that. You must go and learn it again. Don’t you be discouraged, Tom, you’ll manage it — and if you do, I’ll give you something ever so nice. There, now, that’s a good boy.’

‘All right! What is it, Mary, tell me what it is.’

‘Never you mind, Tom. You know if I say it’s nice, it is nice.’

‘You bet you that’s so, Mary. All right, I’ll tackle it again.’

And he did ‘tackle it again’ — and under the double pressure of curiosity and prospective gain he did it with such spirit that he accomplished a shining success. Mary gave him a brand-new ‘Barlow’ knife worth twelve and a half cents; and the convulsion of delight that swept his system shook him to his foundations. True, the knife would not cut anything, but it was a ‘sure-enough’ Barlow, and there was inconceivable grandeur in that — though where the Western boys ever got the idea that such a weapon could possibly be counterfeited to its injury is an imposing mystery and will always remain so, perhaps. Tom contrived to scarify the cupboard with it, and was arranging to begin on the bureau, when he was called off to dress for Sunday-school.

Mary gave him a tin basin of water and a piece of soap, and he went outside the door and set the basin on a little bench there; then he dipped the soap in the water and laid it down; turned up his sleeves; poured out the water on the ground, gently, and then entered the kitchen and began to wipe his face diligently on the towel behind the door. But Mary removed the towel and said:

'Now ain't you ashamed, Tom. You mustn't be so bad. Water won't hurt you.'

Tom was a trifle disconcerted. The basin was refilled, and this time he stood over it a little while, gathering resolution; took in a big breath and began. When he entered the kitchen presently, with both eyes shut and groping for the towel with his hands, an honorable testimony of suds and water was dripping from his face. But when he emerged from the towel, he was not yet satisfactory, for the clean territory stopped short at his chin and his jaws, like a mask; below and beyond this line there was a dark expanse of unirrigated soil that spread downward in front and backward around his neck. Mary took him in hand, and when she was done with him he was a man and a brother, without distinction of color, and his saturated hair was neatly brushed, and its short curls wrought into a dainty and symmetrical general effect. [He privately smoothed out the curls, with labor and difficulty, and plastered his hair close down to his head; for he held curls to be effeminate, and his own filled his life with bitterness.] Then Mary got out a suit of his clothing that had been used only on Sundays during two years — they were simply called his 'other clothes' — and so by that we know the size of his wardrobe. The girl 'put him to rights' after he had dressed himself; she buttoned his neat roundabout up to his chin, turned his vast shirt collar down over his shoulders, brushed him off and crowned him with his speckled straw hat. He now looked exceedingly improved and uncomfortable. He was fully as uncomfortable as he looked; for there was a restraint about whole clothes and cleanliness that galled him. He hoped that Mary would forget his shoes, but the hope was blighted; she coated them thoroughly with tallow, as was the custom, and brought them out. He lost his temper and said he was always being made to do everything he didn't want to do. But Mary said, persuasively:

'Please, Tom — that's a good boy.'

So he got into the shoes snarling. Mary was soon ready, and the three children set out for Sunday-school — a place that Tom hated with his whole heart; but Sid and Mary were fond of it.

Sabbath-school hours were from nine to half-past ten; and then church service. Two of the children always remained for the sermon voluntarily, and the other always remained too — for stronger reasons. The church's high-backed, uncushioned pews would seat about three hundred persons; the edifice was but a small, plain affair, with a sort of pine board tree-box on top of it for a steeple. At the door Tom dropped back a step and accosted a Sunday-dressed comrade:

'Say, Billy, got a yaller ticket?'

'Yes.'

'What'll you take for her?'

'What'll you give?'

'Piece of lickrish and a fish-hook.'

'Less see 'em.'

Tom exhibited. They were satisfactory, and the property changed hands. Then Tom traded a couple of white alleys for three red tickets, and some small trifle or other for a couple of blue ones. He waylaid other boys as they came, and went on buying tickets of various colors ten or fifteen minutes longer. He entered the church, now, with a swarm of clean and noisy boys and girls, proceeded to his seat and started a quarrel with the first boy that came handy. The teacher, a grave, elderly man, interfered; then turned his back a moment and Tom pulled a boy's hair in the next bench, and was absorbed in his book when the boy turned around; stuck a pin in another boy, presently, in order to hear him say 'Ouch!' and got a new reprimand from his teacher. Tom's whole class were of a pattern — restless, noisy, and troublesome. When they came to recite their lessons, not one of them knew his verses perfectly, but had to be prompted all along. However, they worried through, and each got his reward — in small blue tickets, each with a passage of Scripture on it; each blue ticket was pay for two verses of the recitation. Ten blue tickets equalled a red one, and could be exchanged for it; ten red tickets equalled a yellow one; for ten yellow tickets the superintendent gave a very plainly bound Bible (worth forty cents in those easy times) to the pupil. How many of my readers would have the industry and application to memorize two thousand verses, even for a Dore Bible? And yet Mary had acquired two Bibles in this way — it was the patient work of two years — and a boy of German parentage had won four or five. He once recited three thousand verses without stopping; but the strain upon his mental faculties was too great, and he was little better than an idiot from that day forth — a grievous misfortune for the school, for on great occasions, before company, the superintendent (as Tom expressed it) had always made this boy come out and 'spread himself.' Only the older pupils managed to keep their tickets and stick to their tedious work long enough to get a Bible, and so the delivery of one of these prizes was a rare and noteworthy circumstance; the successful pupil was so great and conspicuous for that day that on the spot every scholar's heart was fired with a fresh ambition that often lasted a couple of weeks. It is possible that Tom's mental stomach had never really hungered for one of those prizes, but unquestionably his entire being had for many a day longed for the glory and the eclat that came with it.

In due course the superintendent stood up in front of the pulpit, with a closed hymn-book in his hand and his forefinger inserted between its leaves, and commanded attention. When a Sunday-school superintendent makes his customary little speech, a hymn-book in the hand is as necessary as is the inevitable sheet of music in the hand of a singer who stands forward on the platform and sings a solo at a concert — though why, is a mystery: for neither the hymn-book nor the sheet of music is ever referred to by the sufferer. This superintendent was a slim creature of thirty-five, with a sandy goatee and short sandy hair; he wore a stiff standing-collar whose upper edge almost reached his ears and whose sharp points curved forward abreast the corners of his mouth — a fence that compelled a straight lookout ahead, and a turning of the whole body when a side view was required; his chin was propped on a spreading cravat which was as broad and as long as a bank-note, and had fringed ends; his boot toes were turned sharply up, in the fashion of the day, like sleighrunners — an effect patiently and laboriously produced by the young men by sitting with their toes pressed against a wall for hours together. Mr. Walters was very earnest of mien, and very sincere and honest at heart; and he held sacred things and places in such reverence, and so separated them from worldly matters, that unconsciously to himself his Sunday-school voice had acquired a peculiar intonation which was wholly absent on week-days. He began after this fashion:

'Now, children, I want you all to sit up just as straight and pretty as you can and give me all your attention for a minute or two. There — that is it. That is the way good little boys and girls should do. I see one little girl who is looking out of the window — I am afraid she thinks I am out there somewhere — perhaps up in one of the trees making a speech to the little birds. [Applausive titter.] I want to tell you how good it makes me feel to see so many bright, clean little faces assembled in a place like this, learning to do right and be good.' And so forth and so on. It is not necessary to set down the rest of the oration. It was of a pattern which does not vary, and so it is familiar to us all.

The latter third of the speech was marred by the resumption of fights and other recreations among certain of the bad boys, and by fidgetings and whisperings that extended far and wide, washing even to the bases of isolated and incorruptible rocks like Sid and Mary. But now every sound ceased suddenly, with the subsidence of Mr. Walters' voice, and the conclusion of the speech was received with a burst of silent gratitude.

A good part of the whispering had been occasioned by an event which was more or less rare — the entrance of visitors: lawyer Thatcher, accompanied by a very feeble and aged man; a fine, portly, middle-aged gentleman with iron-gray hair; and a dignified lady who was doubtless the latter's wife. The lady was leading a child. Tom had been restless and full of chafings and repinings; conscience-smitten, too — he could not meet Amy Lawrence's eye, he could not brook her loving gaze. But when he saw this small newcomer his soul was all ablaze with bliss in a moment. The next moment he was 'showing off' with all his might — cuffing boys, pulling hair, making faces — in a word, using every art that seemed likely to fascinate a girl and win her applause. His exaltation had but one alloy — the memory of his humiliation in this angel's garden — and that record in sand was fast washing out, under the waves of happiness that were sweeping over it now.

The visitors were given the highest seat of honor, and as soon as Mr. Walters' speech was finished, he introduced them to the school. The middle-aged man turned out to be a prodigious personage — no less a one than the county judge — altogether the most august creation these children had ever looked upon — and they wondered what kind of material he was made of — and they half wanted to hear him roar, and were half afraid he might, too. He was from Constantinople, twelve miles away — so he had travelled, and seen the world — these very eyes had looked upon the county court-house — which was said to have a tin roof. The awe which these reflections inspired was attested by the impressive silence and the ranks of staring eyes. This was the great Judge Thatcher, brother of their own lawyer. Jeff Thatcher immediately went forward, to be familiar with the great man and be envied by the school. It would have been music to his soul to hear the whisperings:

'Look at him, Jim! He's a going up there. Say — look! he's a going to shake hands with him — he IS shaking hands with him! By jings, don't you wish you was Jeff?'

Mr. Walters fell to 'showing off,' with all sorts of official bustlings and activities, giving orders, delivering judgments, discharging directions here, there, everywhere that he could find a target. The librarian 'showed off' — running hither and thither with his arms full of books and making a deal of the splutter and fuss that insect authority delights in. The young lady teachers 'showed off' — bending sweetly over pupils that were lately being boxed, lifting pretty warning fingers at bad little boys and patting good ones lovingly. The young gentlemen teachers 'showed off' with small scoldings and other little displays of authority and fine attention to discipline — and most of the teachers, of both sexes, found business up at the library, by the pulpit; and it was business that frequently had to be done over again two or three times (with much seeming vexation). The little girls 'showed off' in various ways, and the little boys 'showed off' with such diligence that the air was thick with paper wads and the murmur of scufflings. And above it all the great man sat and beamed a majestic judicial smile upon all the house, and warmed himself in the sun of his own grandeur — for he was 'showing off,' too.

There was only one thing wanting to make Mr. Walters' ecstasy complete, and that was a chance to deliver a Bible-prize and exhibit a prodigy. Several pupils had a few yellow tickets, but none had enough — he had been around among the star pupils inquiring. He would have given worlds, now, to have that German lad back again with a sound mind.

And now at this moment, when hope was dead, Tom Sawyer came forward with nine yellow tickets, nine red tickets, and ten blue ones, and demanded a Bible. This was a thunderbolt out of a clear sky. Walters was not expecting an application from this source for the next ten years. But there was no getting around it — here were the certified checks, and they were good for their face. Tom was therefore elevated to a place with the Judge and the other elect, and the great news was announced from headquarters. It was the most stunning surprise of the decade, and so profound was the sensation that it lifted the new hero up to the judicial one's altitude, and the school had two marvels to gaze upon in place of one. The boys were all eaten up with envy — but those that suffered the bitterest pangs were those who perceived too late that they themselves had contributed to this hated splendor by trading tickets to Tom for the wealth he had amassed in selling whitewashing privileges. These despised themselves, as being the dupes of a wily fraud, a guileful snake in the grass.

The prize was delivered to Tom with as much effusion as the superintendent could pump up under the circumstances; but it lacked somewhat of the true gush, for the poor fellow's instinct taught him that there was a mystery here that could not well bear the light, perhaps; it was simply preposterous that this boy had warehoused two thousand sheaves of Scriptural wisdom on his premises — a dozen would strain his capacity, without a doubt.

Amy Lawrence was proud and glad, and she tried to make Tom see it in her face — but he wouldn't look. She wondered; then she was just a grain troubled; next a dim suspicion came and went — came again; she watched; a furtive glance told her worlds — and then her heart broke, and she was jealous, and angry, and the tears came and she hated everybody. Tom most of all (she thought).

Tom was introduced to the Judge; but his tongue was tied, his breath would hardly come, his heart quaked — partly because of the awful greatness of the man, but mainly because he was her parent. He would have liked to fall down and worship him, if it were in the dark. The Judge put his hand on Tom's head and called him a fine little man, and asked him what his name was. The boy stammered, gasped, and got it out:

'Tom.'

'Oh, no, not Tom — it is —'

'Thomas.'

'Ah, that's it. I thought there was more to it, maybe. That's very well. But you've another one I daresay, and you'll tell it to me, won't you?'

'Tell the gentleman your other name, Thomas,' said Walters, 'and say sir. You mustn't forget your manners.'

'Thomas Sawyer — sir.'

'That's it! That's a good boy. Fine boy. Fine, manly little fellow. Two thousand verses is a great many — very, very great many. And you never can be sorry for the trouble you took to learn them; for knowledge is worth more than anything there is in the world; it's what makes great men and good men; you'll be a great man and a good man yourself, some day, Thomas, and then you'll look back and say, It's all owing to the precious Sunday-school privileges of my boyhood — it's all owing to my dear teachers that taught me to learn — it's all owing to the good superintendent, who encouraged me, and watched over me, and gave me a beautiful Bible — a splendid elegant Bible — to keep and have it all for my own, always — it's all owing to right bringing up! That is what you will say, Thomas — and you wouldn't take any money for those two thousand verses — no indeed you wouldn't. And now you wouldn't mind telling me and this lady some of the things you've learned — no, I know you wouldn't — for we are proud of little boys that learn. Now, no doubt you know the names of all the twelve disciples. Won't you tell us the names of the first two that were appointed?'

Tom was tugging at a button-hole and looking sheepish. He blushed, now, and his eyes fell. Mr. Walters' heart sank within him. He said to himself, it is not possible that the boy can answer the simplest question — why DID the Judge ask him? Yet he felt obliged to speak up and say:

'Answer the gentleman, Thomas — don't be afraid.'

Tom still hung fire.

'Now I know you'll tell me,' said the lady. 'The names of the first two disciples were —'

'DAVID AND GOLIAH!'

Let us draw the curtain of charity over the rest of the scene.

Chapter V

ABOUT half-past ten the cracked bell of the small church began to ring, and presently the people began to gather for the morning sermon. The Sunday-school children distributed themselves about the house and occupied pews with their parents, so as to be under supervision. Aunt Polly came, and Tom and Sid and Mary sat with her — Tom being placed next the aisle, in order that he might be as far away from the open window and the seductive outside summer scenes as possible. The crowd filed up the aisles: the aged and needy postmaster, who had seen better days; the mayor and his wife — for they had a mayor there, among other unnecessaries; the justice of the peace; the widow Douglass, fair, smart, and forty, a generous, good-hearted soul and well-to-do, her hill mansion the only palace in the town, and the most hospitable and much the most lavish in the matter of festivities that St. Petersburg could boast; the bent and venerable Major and Mrs. Ward; lawyer Riverson, the new notable from a distance; next the belle of the village, followed by a troop of lawn-clad and ribbon-decked young heart-breakers; then all the young clerks in town in a body — for they had stood in the vestibule sucking their cane-heads, a circling wall of oiled and simpering admirers, till the last girl had run their gantlet; and last of all came the Model Boy, Willie Mufferson, taking as heedful care of his mother as if she were cut glass. He always brought his mother to church, and was the pride of all the matrons. The boys all hated him, he was so good. And besides, he had been 'thrown up to them' so much. His white handkerchief was hanging out of his pocket behind, as usual on Sundays — accidentally. Tom had no handkerchief, and he looked upon boys who had as snobs.

The congregation being fully assembled, now, the bell rang once more, to warn laggards and stragglers, and then a solemn hush fell upon the church which was only broken by the tittering and whispering of the choir in the gallery. The choir always tittered and whispered all through service. There was once a church choir that was not ill-bred, but I have forgotten where it was, now. It was a great many years ago, and I can scarcely remember anything about it, but I think it was in some foreign country.

The minister gave out the hymn, and read it through with a relish, in a peculiar style which was much admired in that part of the country. His voice began on a medium key and climbed steadily up till it reached a certain point, where it bore with strong emphasis upon the topmost word and then plunged down as if from a spring-board:

Shall I be car-ri-ed toe the skies, on flow'ry BEDS of ease,

Whilst others fight to win the prize, and sail thro' BLOOD-y seas?

He was regarded as a wonderful reader. At church 'sociables' he was always called upon to read poetry; and when he was through, the ladies would lift up their hands and let them fall helplessly in their laps, and 'wall' their eyes, and shake their heads, as much as to say, 'Words cannot express it; it is too beautiful, TOO beautiful for this mortal earth.'

After the hymn had been sung, the Rev. Mr. Sprague turned himself into a bulletin-board, and read off 'notices' of meetings and societies and things till it seemed that the list would stretch out to the crack of doom — a queer custom which is still kept up in America, even in cities, away here in this age of abundant newspapers. Often, the less there is to justify a traditional custom, the harder it is to get rid of it.

And now the minister prayed. A good, generous prayer it was, and went into details: it pleaded for the church, and the little children of the church; for the other churches of the village; for the village itself; for the county; for the State; for the State officers; for the United States; for the churches of the United States; for Congress; for the President; for the officers of the Government; for poor sailors, tossed by stormy seas; for the oppressed millions groaning under the heel of European monarchies and Oriental despotisms; for such as have the light and the good tidings, and yet have not eyes to see nor ears to hear withal; for the heathen in the far islands of the sea; and closed with a supplication that the words he was about to speak might find grace and favor, and be as seed sown in fertile ground, yielding in time a grateful harvest of good. Amen.

There was a rustling of dresses, and the standing congregation sat down. The boy whose history this book relates did not enjoy the prayer, he only endured it — if he even did that much. He was restive all through it; he kept tally of the details of the prayer, unconsciously — for he was not listening, but he knew the ground of old, and the clergyman's regular route over it — and when a little trifle of new matter was interlarded, his ear detected it and his whole nature resented it; he considered additions unfair, and scoundrelly. In the midst of the prayer a fly had lit on the back of the pew in front of him and tortured his spirit by calmly rubbing its hands together, embracing its head with its arms, and polishing it so vigorously that it seemed to almost part company with the body, and the slender thread of a neck was exposed to view; scraping its wings with its hind legs and smoothing them to its body as if they had been coat-tails; going through its whole toilet as tranquilly as if it knew it was perfectly safe. As indeed it was; for as sorely as Tom's hands itched to grab for it they did not dare — he believed his soul would be instantly destroyed if he did such a thing while the prayer was going on. But with the closing sentence his hand began to curve and steal forward; and the instant the 'Amen' was out the fly was a prisoner of war. His aunt detected the act and made him let it go.

The minister gave out his text and droned along monotonously through an argument that was so prosy that many a head by and by began to nod — and yet it was an argument that dealt in limitless fire and brimstone and thinned the predestined elect down to a company so small as to be hardly worth the saving. Tom counted the pages of the sermon;

after church he always knew how many pages there had been, but he seldom knew anything else about the discourse. However, this time he was really interested for a little while. The minister made a grand and moving picture of the assembling together of the world's hosts at the millennium when the lion and the lamb should lie down together and a little child should lead them. But the pathos, the lesson, the moral of the great spectacle were lost upon the boy; he only thought of the conspicuousness of the principal character before the on-looking nations; his face lit with the thought, and he said to himself that he wished he could be that child, if it was a tame lion.

Now he lapsed into suffering again, as the dry argument was resumed. Presently he bethought him of a treasure he had and got it out. It was a large black beetle with formidable jaws — a 'pinchbug,' he called it. It was in a percussion-cap box. The first thing the beetle did was to take him by the finger. A natural fillip followed, the beetle went floundering into the aisle and lit on its back, and the hurt finger went into the boy's mouth. The beetle lay there working its helpless legs, unable to turn over. Tom eyed it, and longed for it; but it was safe out of his reach. Other people uninterested in the sermon found relief in the beetle, and they eyed it too. Presently a vagrant poodle dog came idling along, sad at heart, lazy with the summer softness and the quiet, weary of captivity, sighing for change. He spied the beetle; the drooping tail lifted and wagged. He surveyed the prize; walked around it; smelt at it from a safe distance; walked around it again; grew bolder, and took a closer smell; then lifted his lip and made a gingerly snatch at it, just missing it; made another, and another; began to enjoy the diversion; subsided to his stomach with the beetle between his paws, and continued his experiments; grew weary at last, and then indifferent and absent-minded. His head nodded, and little by little his chin descended and touched the enemy, who seized it. There was a sharp yelp, a flirt of the poodle's head, and the beetle fell a couple of yards away, and lit on its back once more. The neighboring spectators shook with a gentle inward joy, several faces went behind fans and handkerchiefs, and Tom was entirely happy. The dog looked foolish, and probably felt so; but there was resentment in his heart, too, and a craving for revenge. So he went to the beetle and began a wary attack on it again; jumping at it from every point of a circle, lighting with his fore-paws within an inch of the creature, making even closer snatches at it with his teeth, and jerking his head till his ears flapped again. But he grew tired once more, after a while; tried to amuse himself with a fly but found no relief; followed an ant around, with his nose close to the floor, and quickly wearied of that; yawned, sighed, forgot the beetle entirely, and sat down on it. Then there was a wild yelp of agony and the poodle went sailing up the aisle; the yelps continued, and so did the dog; he crossed the house in front of the altar; he flew down the other aisle; he crossed before the doors; he clamored up the home-stretch; his anguish grew with his progress, till presently he was but a woolly comet moving in its orbit with the gleam and the speed of light. At last the frantic sufferer sheered from its course, and sprang into its master's lap; he flung it out of the window, and the voice of distress quickly thinned away and died in the distance.

By this time the whole church was red-faced and suffocating with suppressed laughter, and the sermon had come to a dead standstill. The discourse was resumed presently, but it went lame and halting, all possibility of impressiveness being at an end; for even the gravest sentiments were constantly being received with a smothered burst of unholy mirth, under cover of some remote pew-back, as if the poor parson had said a rarely facetious thing. It was a genuine relief to the whole congregation when the ordeal was over and the benediction pronounced.

Tom Sawyer went home quite cheerful, thinking to himself that there was some satisfaction about divine service when there was a bit of variety in it. He had but one marring thought; he was willing that the dog should play with his pinchbug, but he did not think it was upright in him to carry it off.

Chapter VI

MONDAY morning found Tom Sawyer miserable. Monday morning always found him so — because it began another week's slow suffering in school. He generally began that day with wishing he had had no intervening holiday, it made the going into captivity and fetters again so much more odious.

Tom lay thinking. Presently it occurred to him that he wished he was sick; then he could stay home from school. Here was a vague possibility. He canvassed his system. No ailment was found, and he investigated again. This time he thought he could detect colicky symptoms, and he began to encourage them with considerable hope. But they soon grew feeble, and presently died wholly away. He reflected further. Suddenly he discovered something. One of his upper front teeth was loose. This was lucky; he was about to begin to groan, as a 'starter,' as he called it, when it occurred to him that if he came into court with that argument, his aunt would pull it out, and that would hurt. So he thought he would hold the tooth in reserve for the present, and seek further. Nothing offered for some little time, and then he remembered hearing the doctor tell about a certain thing that laid up a patient for two or three weeks and threatened to make him lose a finger. So the boy eagerly drew his sore toe from under the sheet and held it up for inspection. But now he did not know the necessary symptoms. However, it seemed well worth while to chance it, so he fell to groaning with considerable spirit.

But Sid slept on unconscious.

Tom groaned louder, and fancied that he began to feel pain in the toe.

No result from Sid.

Tom was panting with his exertions by this time. He took a rest and then swelled himself up and fetched a succession of admirable groans.

Sid snored on.

Tom was aggravated. He said, 'Sid, Sid!' and shook him. This course worked well, and Tom began to groan again. Sid yawned, stretched, then brought himself up on his elbow with a snort, and began to stare at Tom. Tom went on groaning. Sid said:

'Tom! Say, Tom!' [No response.] 'Here, Tom! TOM! What is the matter, Tom?' And he shook him and looked in his face anxiously.

Tom moaned out:

'Oh, don't, Sid. Don't joggle me.'

'Why, what's the matter, Tom? I must call auntie.'

'No — never mind. It'll be over by and by, maybe. Don't call anybody.'

'But I must! DON'T groan so, Tom, it's awful. How long you been this way?'

'Hours. Ouch! Oh, don't stir so, Sid, you'll kill me.'

'Tom, why didn't you wake me sooner ? Oh, Tom, DON'T! It makes my flesh crawl to hear you. Tom, what is the matter?'

'I forgive you everything, Sid. [Groan.] Everything you've ever done to me. When I'm gone —'

'Oh, Tom, you ain't dying, are you? Don't, Tom — oh, don't. Maybe —'

'I forgive everybody, Sid. [Groan.] Tell 'em so, Sid. And Sid, you give my window-sash and my cat with one eye to that new girl that's come to town, and tell her —'

But Sid had snatched his clothes and gone. Tom was suffering in reality, now, so handsomely was his imagination working, and so his groans had gathered quite a genuine tone.

Sid flew down-stairs and said:

'Oh, Aunt Polly, come! Tom's dying!'

'Dying!'

'Yes'm. Don't wait — come quick!'

'Rubbage! I don't believe it!'

But she fled up-stairs, nevertheless, with Sid and Mary at her heels. And her face grew white, too, and her lip trembled. When she reached the bedside she gasped out:

'You, Tom! Tom, what's the matter with you?'

'Oh, auntie, I'm —'

'What's the matter with you — what is the matter with you, child?'

'Oh, auntie, my sore toe's mortified!'

The old lady sank down into a chair and laughed a little, then cried a little, then did both together. This restored her and she said:

'Tom, what a turn you did give me. Now you shut up that nonsense and climb out of this.'

The groans ceased and the pain vanished from the toe. The boy felt a little foolish, and he said:

'Aunt Polly, it SEEMED mortified, and it hurt so I never minded my tooth at all.'

'Your tooth, indeed! What's the matter with your tooth?'

'One of them's loose, and it aches perfectly awful.'

'There, there, now, don't begin that groaning again. Open your mouth. Well — your tooth IS loose, but you're not going to die about that. Mary, get me a silk thread, and a chunk of fire out of the kitchen.'

Tom said:

'Oh, please, auntie, don't pull it out. It don't hurt any more. I wish I may never stir if it does. Please don't, auntie. I don't want to stay home from school.'

'Oh, you don't, don't you? So all this row was because you thought you'd get to stay home from school and go a-fishing? Tom, Tom, I love you so, and you seem to try every way you can to break my old heart with your outrageousness.' By this time the dental instruments were ready. The old lady made one end of the silk thread fast to Tom's tooth with a loop and tied the other to the bedpost. Then she seized the chunk of fire and suddenly thrust it almost into the boy's face. The tooth hung dangling by the bedpost, now.

But all trials bring their compensations. As Tom wended to school after breakfast, he was the envy of every boy he met because the gap in his upper row of teeth enabled him to expectorate in a new and admirable way. He gathered quite a following of lads interested in the exhibition;

and one that had cut his finger and had been a centre of fascination and homage up to this time, now found himself suddenly without an adherent, and shorn of his glory. His heart was heavy, and he said with a disdain which he did not feel that it wasn't anything to spit like Tom Sawyer; but another boy said, 'Sour grapes!' and he wandered away a dismantled hero.

Shortly Tom came upon the juvenile pariah of the village, Huckleberry Finn, son of the town drunkard. Huckleberry was cordially hated and dreaded by all the mothers of the town, because he was idle and lawless and vulgar and bad — and because all their children admired him so, and delighted in his forbidden society, and wished they dared to be like him. Tom was like the rest of the respectable boys, in that he envied Huckleberry his gaudy outcast condition, and was under strict orders not to play with him. So he played with him every time he got a chance. Huckleberry was always dressed in the cast-off clothes of full-grown men, and they were in perennial bloom and fluttering with rags. His hat was a vast ruin with a wide crescent lopped out of its brim; his coat, when he wore one, hung nearly to his heels and had the rearward buttons far down the back; but one suspender supported his trousers; the seat of the trousers bagged low and contained nothing, the fringed legs dragged in the dirt when not rolled up.

Huckleberry came and went, at his own free will. He slept on doorsteps in fine weather and in empty hogsheads in wet; he did not have to go to school or to church, or call any being master or obey anybody; he could go fishing or swimming when and where he chose, and stay as long as it suited him; nobody forbade him to fight; he could sit up as late as he pleased; he was always the first boy that went barefoot in the spring and the last to resume leather in the fall; he never had to wash, nor put on clean clothes; he could swear wonderfully. In a word, everything that goes to make life precious that boy had. So thought every harassed, hampered, respectable boy in St. Petersburg.

Tom hailed the romantic outcast:

'Hello, Huckleberry!'

'Hello yourself, and see how you like it.'

'What's that you got?'

'Dead cat.'

'Lemme see him, Huck. My, he's pretty stiff. Where'd you get him ?'

'Bought him off'n a boy.'

'What did you give?'

'I give a blue ticket and a bladder that I got at the slaughter-house.'

'Where'd you get the blue ticket?'

'Bought it off'n Ben Rogers two weeks ago for a hoop-stick.'

'Say — what is dead cats good for, Huck?'

'Good for? Cure warts with.'

'No! Is that so? I know something that's better.'

'I bet you don't. What is it?'

'Why, spunk-water.'

'Spunk-water! I wouldn't give a dern for spunkwater.'

'You wouldn't, wouldn't you? D'you ever try it?'

'No, I hain't. But Bob Tanner did.'

'Who told you so!'

'Why, he told Jeff Thatcher, and Jeff told Johnny Baker, and Johnny told Jim Hollis, and Jim told Ben Rogers, and Ben told a nigger, and the nigger told me. There now!'

'Well, what of it? They'll all lie. Leastways all but the nigger. I don't know HIM. But I never see a nigger that WOULDN'T lie. Shucks! Now you tell me how Bob Tanner done it, Huck.'

'Why, he took and dipped his hand in a rotten stump where the rain-water was.'

'In the daytime?'

'Certainly.'

'With his face to the stump?'

'Yes. Least I reckon so.'

'Did he say anything?'

'I don't reckon he did. I don't know.'

'Aha! Talk about trying to cure warts with spunkwater such a blame fool way as that! Why, that ain't a-going to do any good. You got to go all by yourself, to the middle of the woods, where you know there's a spunk-water stump, and just as it's midnight you back up against the stump and jam your hand in and say:

'Barley-corn, barley-corn, injun-meal shorts,
Spunk-water, spunk-water, swaller these warts,'

and then walk away quick, eleven steps, with your eyes shut, and then turn around three times and walk home without speaking to anybody. Because if you speak the charm's busted.'

‘Well, that sounds like a good way; but that ain’t the way Bob Tanner done.’

‘No, sir, you can bet he didn’t, becuz he’s the wartiest boy in this town; and he wouldn’t have a wart on him if he’d knowed how to work spunkwater. I’ve took off thousands of warts off of my hands that way, Huck. I play with frogs so much that I’ve always got considerable many warts. Sometimes I take ‘em off with a bean.’

‘Yes, bean’s good. I’ve done that.’

‘Have you? What’s your way?’

‘You take and split the bean, and cut the wart so as to get some blood, and then you put the blood on one piece of the bean and take and dig a hole and bury it ‘bout midnight at the crossroads in the dark of the moon, and then you burn up the rest of the bean. You see that piece that’s got the blood on it will keep drawing and drawing, trying to fetch the other piece to it, and so that helps the blood to draw the wart, and pretty soon off she comes.’

‘Yes, that’s it, Huck — that’s it; though when you’re burying it if you say ‘Down bean; off wart; come no more to bother me!’ it’s better. That’s the way Joe Harper does, and he’s been nearly to Coonville and most everywheres. But say — how do you cure ‘em with dead cats?’

‘Why, you take your cat and go and get in the graveyard ‘long about midnight when somebody that was wicked has been buried; and when it’s midnight a devil will come, or maybe two or three, but you can’t see ‘em, you can only hear something like the wind, or maybe hear ‘em talk; and when they’re taking that feller away, you heave your cat after ‘em and say, 'Devil follow corpse, cat follow devil, warts follow cat, I'm done with ye!' That'll fetch ANY wart.'

'Sounds right. D'you ever try it, Huck?'

'No, but old Mother Hopkins told me.'

'Well, I reckon it's so, then. Becuz they say she's a witch.'

'Say! Why, Tom, I KNOW she is. She witched pap. Pap says so his own self. He come along one day, and he see she was a-witching him, so he took up a rock, and if she hadn't dodged, he'd a got her. Well, that very night he rolled off'n a shed wher' he was a layin drunk, and broke his arm.'

'Why, that's awful. How did he know she was a-witching him?'

'Lord, pap can tell, easy. Pap says when they keep looking at you right stiddy, they're a-witching you. Specially if they mumble. Becuz when they mumble they're saying the Lord's Prayer backards.'

'Say, Hucky, when you going to try the cat?'

'To-night. I reckon they'll come after old Hoss Williams to-night.'

'But they buried him Saturday. Didn't they get him Saturday night?'

'Why, how you talk! How could their charms work till midnight? — and THEN it's Sunday. Devils don't slosh around much of a Sunday, I don't reckon.'

'I never thought of that. That's so. Lemme go with you?'

'Of course — if you ain't afeard.'

'Afeard! 'Tain't likely. Will you meow?'

'Yes — and you meow back, if you get a chance. Last time, you kep' me a-meowing around till old Hays went to throwing rocks at me and says 'Dern that cat!' and so I hove a brick through his window — but don't you tell.'

'I won't. I couldn't meow that night, becuz auntie was watching me, but I'll meow this time. Say — what's that?'

'Nothing but a tick.'

'Where'd you get him?'

'Out in the woods.'

'What'll you take for him?'

'I don't know. I don't want to sell him.'

'All right. It's a mighty small tick, anyway.'

'Oh, anybody can run a tick down that don't belong to them. I'm satisfied with it. It's a good enough tick for me.'

'Sho, there's ticks a plenty. I could have a thousand of 'em if I wanted to.'

'Well, why don't you? Becuz you know mighty well you can't. This is a pretty early tick, I reckon. It's the first one I've seen this year.'

'Say, Huck — I'll give you my tooth for him.'

'Less see it.'

Tom got out a bit of paper and carefully unrolled it. Huckleberry viewed it wistfully. The temptation was very strong. At last he said:

'Is it genuwyne?'

Tom lifted his lip and showed the vacancy.

'Well, all right,' said Huckleberry, 'it's a trade.'

Tom enclosed the tick in the percussion-cap box that had lately been the pinchbug's prison, and the boys separated, each feeling wealthier than before.

When Tom reached the little isolated frame schoolhouse, he strode in briskly, with the manner of one who had come with all honest speed. He hung his hat on a peg and flung himself into his seat with business-like alacrity. The master, throned on high in his great splint-bottom arm-chair, was dozing, lulled by the drowsy hum of study. The interruption roused him.

'Thomas Sawyer!'

Tom knew that when his name was pronounced in full, it meant trouble.

'Sir!'

'Come up here. Now, sir, why are you late again, as usual?'

Tom was about to take refuge in a lie, when he saw two long tails of yellow hair hanging down a back that he recognized by the electric sympathy of love; and by that form was THE ONLY VACANT PLACE on the girls' side of the school-house. He instantly said:

'I STOPPED TO TALK WITH HUCKLEBERRY FINN!'

The master's pulse stood still, and he stared helplessly. The buzz of study ceased. The pupils wondered if this foolhardy boy had lost his mind. The master said:

'You — you did what?'

'Stopped to talk with Huckleberry Finn.'

There was no mistaking the words.

'Thomas Sawyer, this is the most astounding confession I have ever listened to. No mere ferule will answer for this offence. Take off your jacket.'

The master's arm performed until it was tired and the stock of switches notably diminished. Then the order followed:

'Now, sir, go and sit with the girls! And let this be a warning to you.'

The titter that rippled around the room appeared to abash the boy, but in reality that result was caused rather more by his worshipful awe of his unknown idol and the dread pleasure that lay in his high good fortune. He sat down upon the end of the pine bench and the girl hitched herself away from him with a toss of her head. Nudges and winks and whispers traversed the room, but Tom sat still, with his arms upon the long, low desk before him, and seemed to study his book.

By and by attention ceased from him, and the accustomed school murmur rose upon the dull air once more. Presently the boy began to steal furtive glances at the girl. She observed it, 'made a mouth' at him and gave him the back of her head for the space of a minute. When she cautiously faced around again, a peach lay before her. She thrust it away. Tom gently put it back. She thrust it away again, but with less animosity. Tom patiently returned it to its place. Then she let it remain. Tom scrawled on his slate, 'Please take it — I got more.' The girl glanced at the words, but made no sign. Now the boy began to draw something on the slate, hiding his work with his left hand. For a time the girl refused to notice; but her human curiosity presently began to manifest itself by hardly perceptible signs. The boy worked on, apparently unconscious. The girl made a sort of noncommittal attempt to see, but the boy did not betray that he was aware of it. At last she gave in and hesitatingly whispered:

'Let me see it.'

Tom partly uncovered a dismal caricature of a house with two gable ends to it and a corkscrew of smoke issuing from the chimney. Then the girl's interest began to fasten itself upon the work and she forgot everything else. When it was finished, she gazed a moment, then whispered:

'It's nice — make a man.'

The artist erected a man in the front yard, that resembled a derrick. He could have stepped over the house; but the girl was not hypercritical; she was satisfied with the monster, and whispered:

'It's a beautiful man — now make me coming along.'

Tom drew an hour-glass with a full moon and straw limbs to it and armed the spreading fingers with a portentous fan. The girl said:

'It's ever so nice — I wish I could draw.'

'It's easy,' whispered Tom, 'I'll learn you.'

'Oh, will you? When?'

'At noon. Do you go home to dinner?'

'I'll stay if you will.'

'Good — that's a whack. What's your name?'

'Becky Thatcher. What's yours? Oh, I know. It's Thomas Sawyer.'

'That's the name they lick me by. I'm Tom when I'm good. You call me Tom, will you?'

'Yes.'

Now Tom began to scrawl something on the slate, hiding the words from the girl. But she was not backward this time.

She begged to see. Tom said:

'Oh, it ain't anything.'

'Yes it is.'

'No it ain't. You don't want to see.'

'Yes I do, indeed I do. Please let me.'

'You'll tell.'

'No I won't — deed and deed and double deed won't.'

'You won't tell anybody at all? Ever, as long as you live?'

'No, I won't ever tell ANYbody. Now let me.'

'Oh, YOU don't want to see!'

'Now that you treat me so, I WILL see.' And she put her small hand upon his and a little scuffle ensued, Tom pretending to resist in earnest but letting his hand slip by degrees till these words were revealed: 'I LOVE YOU.'

'Oh, you bad thing!' And she hit his hand a smart rap, but reddened and looked pleased, nevertheless.

Just at this juncture the boy felt a slow, fateful grip closing on his ear, and a steady lifting impulse. In that vise he was borne across the house and deposited in his own seat, under a peppering fire of giggles from the whole school. Then the master stood over him during a few awful moments, and finally moved away to his throne without saying a word. But although Tom's ear tingled, his heart was jubilant.

As the school quieted down Tom made an honest effort to study, but the turmoil within him was too great. In turn he took his place in the reading class and made a botch of it; then in the geography class and turned lakes into mountains, mountains into rivers, and rivers into continents, till chaos was come again; then in the spelling class, and got ‘turned down,’ by a succession of mere baby words, till he brought up at the foot and yielded up the pewter medal which he had worn with ostentation for months.

Chapter VII

THE harder Tom tried to fasten his mind on his book, the more his ideas wandered. So at last, with a sigh and a yawn, he gave it up. It seemed to him that the noon recess would never come. The air was utterly dead. There was not a breath stirring. It was the sleepiest of sleepy days. The drowsing murmur of the five and twenty studying scholars soothed the soul like the spell that is in the murmur of bees. Away off in the flaming sunshine, Cardiff Hill lifted its soft green sides through a shimmering veil of heat, tinted with the purple of distance; a few birds floated on lazy wing high in the air; no other living thing was visible but some cows, and they were asleep. Tom's heart ached to be free, or else to have something of interest to do to pass the dreary time. His hand wandered into his pocket and his face lit up with a glow of gratitude that was prayer, though he did not know it. Then furtively the percussion-cap box came out. He released the tick and put him on the long flat desk. The creature probably glowed with a gratitude that amounted to prayer, too, at this moment, but it was premature: for when he started thankfully to travel off, Tom turned him aside with a pin and made him take a new direction.

Tom's bosom friend sat next him, suffering just as Tom had been, and now he was deeply and gratefully interested in this entertainment in an instant. This bosom friend was

Joe Harper. The two boys were sworn friends all the week, and embattled enemies on Saturdays. Joe took a pin out of his lapel and began to assist in exercising the prisoner. The sport grew in interest momently. Soon Tom said that they were interfering with each other, and neither getting the fullest benefit of the tick. So he put Joe's slate on the desk and drew a line down the middle of it from top to bottom.

'Now,' said he, 'as long as he is on your side you can stir him up and I'll let him alone; but if you let him get away and get on my side, you're to leave him alone as long as I can keep him from crossing over.'

'All right, go ahead; start him up.'

The tick escaped from Tom, presently, and crossed the equator. Joe harassed him awhile, and then he got away and crossed back again. This change of base occurred often. While one boy was worrying the tick with absorbing interest, the other would look on with interest as strong, the two heads bowed together over the slate, and the two souls dead to all things else. At last luck seemed to settle and abide with Joe. The tick tried this, that, and the other course, and got as excited and as anxious as the boys themselves, but time and again just as he would have victory in his very grasp, so to speak, and Tom's fingers would be twitching to begin, Joe's pin would deftly head him off, and keep possession. At last Tom could stand it no longer. The temptation was too strong. So he reached out and lent a hand with his pin. Joe was angry in a moment. Said he:

'Tom, you let him alone.'

'I only just want to stir him up a little, Joe.'

‘No, sir, it ain’t fair; you just let him alone.’

‘Blame it, I ain’t going to stir him much.’

‘Let him alone, I tell you.’

‘I won’t!’

‘You shall — he’s on my side of the line.’

‘Look here, Joe Harper, whose is that tick?’

‘I don’t care whose tick he is — he’s on my side of the line, and you sha’n’t touch him.’

‘Well, I’ll just bet I will, though. He’s my tick and I’ll do what I blame please with him, or die!’

A tremendous whack came down on Tom’s shoulders, and its duplicate on Joe’s; and for the space of two minutes the dust continued to fly from the two jackets and the whole school to enjoy it. The boys had been too absorbed to notice the hush that had stolen upon the school awhile before when the master came tiptoeing down the room and stood over them. He had contemplated a good part of the performance before he contributed his bit of variety to it.

When school broke up at noon, Tom flew to Becky Thatcher, and whispered in her ear:

‘Put on your bonnet and let on you’re going home; and when you get to the corner, give the rest of ‘em the slip, and turn down through the lane and come back. I’ll go the other way and come it over ‘em the same way.’

So the one went off with one group of scholars, and the other with another. In a little while the two met at the bottom of the lane, and when they reached the school they had it all to themselves. Then they sat together, with a slate before them, and Tom gave Becky the pencil and held her hand in his, guiding it, and so created another surprising house. When the interest in art began to wane, the two fell to talking. Tom was swimming in bliss. He said:

'Do you love rats?'

'No! I hate them!'

'Well, I do, too — LIVE ones. But I mean dead ones, to swing round your head with a string.'

'No, I don't care for rats much, anyway. What I like is chewing-gum.'

'Oh, I should say so! I wish I had some now.'

'Do you? I've got some. I'll let you chew it awhile, but you must give it back to me.'

That was agreeable, so they chewed it turn about, and dangled their legs against the bench in excess of contentment.

'Was you ever at a circus?' said Tom.

'Yes, and my pa's going to take me again some time, if I'm good.'

'I been to the circus three or four times — lots of times. Church ain't shucks to a circus. There's things going on at a circus all the time. I'm going to be a clown in a circus when I grow up.'

'Oh, are you! That will be nice. They're so lovely, all spotted up.'

'Yes, that's so. And they get slathers of money — most a dollar a day, Ben Rogers says. Say, Becky, was you ever engaged?'

'What's that?'

'Why, engaged to be married.'

'No.'

'Would you like to?'

'I reckon so. I don't know. What is it like?'

'Like? Why it ain't like anything. You only just tell a boy you won't ever have anybody but him, ever ever ever, and then you kiss and that's all. Anybody can do it.'

'Kiss? What do you kiss for?'

'Why, that, you know, is to — well, they always do that.'

'Everybody?'

'Why, yes, everybody that's in love with each other. Do you remember what I wrote on the slate?'

'Ye — yes.'

'What was it?'

'I sha'n't tell you.'

'Shall I tell YOU?'

'Ye — yes — but some other time.'

'No, now.'

'No, not now — to-morrow.'

'Oh, no, NOW. Please, Becky — I'll whisper it, I'll whisper it ever so easy.'

Becky hesitating, Tom took silence for consent, and passed his arm about her waist and whispered the tale ever so softly, with his mouth close to her ear. And then he added:

'Now you whisper it to me — just the same.'

She resisted, for a while, and then said:

'You turn your face away so you can't see, and then I will. But you mustn't ever tell anybody — WILL you, Tom? Now you won't, WILL you?'

'No, indeed, indeed I won't. Now, Becky.'

He turned his face away. She bent timidly around till her breath stirred his curls and whispered, 'I — love — you!'

Then she sprang away and ran around and around the desks and benches, with Tom after her, and took refuge in a corner at last, with her little white apron to her face. Tom clasped her about her neck and pleaded:

'Now, Becky, it's all done — all over but the kiss. Don't you be afraid of that — it ain't anything at all. Please, Becky.' And he tugged at her apron and the hands.

By and by she gave up, and let her hands drop; her face, all glowing with the struggle, came up and submitted. Tom kissed the red lips and said:

'Now it's all done, Becky. And always after this, you know, you ain't ever to love anybody but me, and you ain't ever to marry anybody but me, ever never and forever. Will you?'

'No, I'll never love anybody but you, Tom, and I'll never marry anybody but you — and you ain't to ever marry anybody but me, either.'

'Certainly. Of course. That's PART of it. And always coming to school or when we're going home, you're to walk with me, when there ain't anybody looking — and you choose me and I choose you at parties, because that's the way you do when you're engaged.'

'It's so nice. I never heard of it before.'

'Oh, it's ever so gay! Why, me and Amy Lawrence —'

The big eyes told Tom his blunder and he stopped, confused.

'Oh, Tom! Then I ain't the first you've ever been engaged to!'

The child began to cry. Tom said:

'Oh, don't cry, Becky, I don't care for her any more.'

'Yes, you do, Tom — you know you do.'

Tom tried to put his arm about her neck, but she pushed him away and turned her face to the wall, and went on crying. Tom tried again, with soothing words in his mouth, and was repulsed again. Then his pride was up, and he strode away and went outside. He stood about, restless and uneasy, for a while, glancing at the door, every now and then, hoping she would repent and come to find him. But she did not. Then he began to feel badly and fear that he was in the wrong. It was a hard struggle with him to make new advances, now, but he nerved himself to it and entered. She was still standing back there in the corner, sobbing, with her face to the wall. Tom's heart smote him. He went to her and stood a moment, not knowing exactly how to proceed. Then he said hesitatingly:

'Becky, I — I don't care for anybody but you.'

No reply — but sobs.

'Becky' — pleadingly. 'Becky, won't you say something?'

More sobs.

Tom got out his chiefest jewel, a brass knob from the top of an andiron, and passed it around her so that she could see it, and said:

'Please, Becky, won't you take it?'

She struck it to the floor. Then Tom marched out of the house and over the hills and far away, to return to school no more that day. Presently Becky began to suspect. She ran to the door; he was not in sight; she flew around to the play-yard; he was not there. Then she called:

'Tom! Come back, Tom!'

She listened intently, but there was no answer. She had no companions but silence and loneliness. So she sat down to cry again and upbraid herself; and by this time the scholars began to gather again, and she had to hide her griefs and still her broken heart and take up the cross of a long, dreary, aching afternoon, with none among the strangers about her to exchange sorrows with.

Chapter VIII

TOM dodged hither and thither through lanes until he was well out of the track of returning scholars, and then fell into a moody jog. He crossed a small 'branch' two or three times, because of a prevailing juvenile superstition that to cross water baffled pursuit. Half an hour later he was disappearing behind the Douglas mansion on the summit of Cardiff Hill, and the school-house was hardly distinguishable away off in the valley behind him. He entered a dense wood, picked his pathless way to the centre of it, and sat down on a mossy spot under a spreading oak. There was not even a zephyr stirring; the dead noonday heat had even stilled the songs of the birds; nature lay in a trance that was broken by no sound but the occasional far-off hammering of a woodpecker, and this seemed to render the pervading silence and sense of loneliness the more profound. The boy's soul was steeped in melancholy; his feelings were in happy accord with his surroundings. He sat long with his elbows on his knees and his chin in his hands, meditating. It seemed to him that life was but a trouble, at best, and he more than half envied Jimmy Hodges, so lately released; it must be very peaceful, he thought, to lie and slumber and dream forever and ever, with the wind whispering through the trees and caressing the grass and the flowers over the grave, and nothing to bother and grieve about, ever any more. If he only had a clean Sunday-school record he could be willing to go, and be done with it all. Now as to this girl. What had he done? Nothing. He had meant the best in the world, and been treated like a dog — like a very dog. She would be sorry some day — maybe when it was too late. Ah, if he could only die TEMPORARILY!

But the elastic heart of youth cannot be compressed into one constrained shape long at a time. Tom presently began to drift insensibly back into the concerns of this life again. What if he turned his back, now, and disappeared mysteriously? What if he went away — ever so far away, into unknown countries beyond the seas — and never came back any more! How would she feel then! The idea of being a clown recurred to him now, only to fill him with disgust. For frivolity and jokes and spotted tights were an offense, when they intruded themselves upon a spirit that was exalted into the vague august realm of the romantic. No, he would be a soldier, and return after long years, all war-worn and illustrious. No — better still, he would join the Indians, and hunt buffaloes and go on the warpath in the mountain ranges and the trackless great plains of the Far West, and away in the future come back a great chief, bristling with feathers, hideous with paint, and prance into Sundayschool, some drowsy summer morning, with a bloodcurdling warwhoop, and sear the eyeballs of all his companions with unappeasable envy. But no, there was something gaudier even than this. He would be a pirate! That was it! NOW his future lay plain before him, and glowing with unimaginable splendor. How his name would fill the world, and make people shudder! How gloriously he would go plowing the dancing seas, in his long, low, black-hulled racer, the Spirit of the Storm, with his grisly flag flying at the fore! And at the zenith of his fame, how he would suddenly appear at the old village and stalk into church, brown and weather-beaten, in his black velvet doublet and trunks, his great jack-boots, his crimson sash, his belt bristling with horse-pistols, his crime-rusted cutlass at his side, his slouch hat with waving plumes, his black flag unfurled, with the skull and cross-bones on it, and hear with swelling ecstasy the whisperings, 'It's Tom Sawyer the Pirate! — the Black Avenger of the Spanish Main!'

Yes, it was settled; his career was determined. He would run away from home and enter upon it. He would start the very next morning. Therefore he must now begin to get ready. He would collect his resources together. He went to a rotten log near at hand and began to dig under one end of it with his Barlow knife. He soon struck wood that sounded hollow. He put his hand there and uttered this incantation impressively:

'What hasn't come here, come! What's here, stay here!'

Then he scraped away the dirt, and exposed a pine shingle. He took it up and disclosed a shapely little treasure-house whose bottom and sides were of shingles. In it lay a marble. Tom's astonishment was boundless! He scratched his head with a perplexed air, and said:

'Well, that beats anything!'

Then he tossed the marble away pettishly, and stood cogitating. The truth was, that a superstition of his had failed, here, which he and all his comrades had always looked upon as infallible. If you buried a marble with certain necessary incantations, and left it alone a fortnight, and then opened the place with the incantation he had just used, you would find that all the marbles you had ever lost had gathered themselves together there, meantime, no matter how widely they had been separated. But now, this thing had actually and unquestionably failed. Tom's whole structure of faith was shaken to its foundations. He had many a time heard of this thing succeeding but never of its failing before. It did not occur to him that he had tried it several times before, himself, but could never find the hiding-places afterward. He puzzled over the matter some time, and finally decided that some witch had interfered and broken the charm. He thought he would satisfy himself on that point; so he searched around till he found a small sandy spot with a little funnel-shaped depression in it. He laid himself down and put his mouth close to this depression and called —

'Doodle-bug, doodle-bug, tell me what I want to know! Doodle-bug, doodle-bug, tell me what I want to know!'

The sand began to work, and presently a small black bug appeared for a second and then darted under again in a fright.

'He dasn't tell! So it WAS a witch that done it. I just knowed it.'

He well knew the futility of trying to contend against witches, so he gave up discouraged. But it occurred to him that he might as well have the marble he had just thrown away, and therefore he went and made a patient search for it. But he could not find it. Now he went back to his treasure-house and carefully placed himself just as he had been standing when he tossed the marble away; then he took another marble from his pocket and tossed it in the same way, saying:

'Brother, go find your brother!'

He watched where it stopped, and went there and looked. But it must have fallen short or gone too far; so he tried twice more. The last repetition was successful. The two marbles lay within a foot of each other.

Just here the blast of a toy tin trumpet came faintly down the green aisles of the forest. Tom flung off his jacket and trousers, turned a suspender into a belt, raked away some brush behind the rotten log, disclosing a rude bow and arrow, a lath sword and a tin trumpet, and in a moment had seized these things and bounded away, barelegged, with fluttering shirt. He presently halted under a great elm, blew an answering blast, and then began to tiptoe and look warily out, this way and that. He said cautiously — to an imaginary company:

'Hold, my merry men! Keep hid till I blow.'

Now appeared Joe Harper, as airily clad and elaborately armed as Tom. Tom called:

'Hold! Who comes here into Sherwood Forest without my pass?'

'Guy of Guisborne wants no man's pass. Who art thou that — that —'

'Dares to hold such language,' said Tom, prompting — for they talked 'by the book,' from memory.

'Who art thou that dares to hold such language?'

'I, indeed! I am Robin Hood, as thy caitiff carcase soon shall know.'

'Then art thou indeed that famous outlaw? Right gladly will I dispute with thee the passes of the merry wood. Have at thee!'

They took their lath swords, dumped their other traps on the ground, struck a fencing attitude, foot to foot, and began a grave, careful combat, 'two up and two down.' Presently Tom said:

'Now, if you've got the hang, go it lively!'

So they 'went it lively,' panting and perspiring with the work. By and by Tom shouted:

'Fall! fall! Why don't you fall?'

'I sha'n't! Why don't you fall yourself? You're getting the worst of it.'

'Why, that ain't anything. I can't fall; that ain't the way it is in the book. The book says, 'Then with one back-handed stroke he slew poor Guy of Guisborne.' You're to turn around and let me hit you in the back.'

There was no getting around the authorities, so Joe turned, received the whack and fell.

'Now,' said Joe, getting up, 'you got to let me kill YOU. That's fair.'

'Why, I can't do that, it ain't in the book.'

'Well, it's blamed mean — that's all.'

'Well, say, Joe, you can be Friar Tuck or Much the miller's son, and lam me with a quarter-staff; or I'll be the Sheriff of Nottingham and you be Robin Hood a little while and kill me.'

This was satisfactory, and so these adventures were carried out. Then Tom became Robin Hood again, and was allowed by the treacherous nun to bleed his strength away through his neglected wound. And at last Joe, representing a whole tribe of weeping outlaws, dragged him sadly forth, gave his bow into his feeble hands, and Tom said, 'Where this arrow falls, there bury poor Robin Hood under the greenwood tree.' Then he shot the arrow and fell back and would have died, but he lit on a nettle and sprang up too gaily for a corpse.

The boys dressed themselves, hid their accoutrements, and went off grieving that there were no outlaws any more, and wondering what modern civilization could claim to have done to compensate for their loss. They said they would rather be outlaws a year in Sherwood Forest than President of the United States forever.

Chapter IX

AT half-past nine, that night, Tom and Sid were sent to bed, as usual. They said their prayers, and Sid was soon asleep. Tom lay awake and waited, in restless impatience. When it seemed to him that it must be nearly daylight, he heard the clock strike ten! This was despair. He would have tossed and fidgeted, as his nerves demanded, but he was afraid he might wake Sid. So he lay still, and stared up into the dark. Everything was dismally still. By and by, out of the stillness, little, scarcely preceptible noises began to emphasize themselves. The ticking of the clock began to bring itself into notice. Old beams began to crack mysteriously. The stairs creaked faintly. Evidently spirits were abroad. A measured, muffled snore issued from Aunt Polly's chamber. And now the tiresome chirping of a cricket that no human ingenuity could locate, began. Next the ghastly ticking of a deathwatch in the wall at the bed's head made Tom shudder — it meant that somebody's days were numbered. Then the howl of a far-off dog rose on the night air, and was answered by a fainter howl from a remoter distance. Tom was in an agony. At last he was satisfied that time had ceased and eternity begun; he began to doze, in spite of himself; the clock chimed eleven, but he did not hear it. And then there came, mingling with his half-formed dreams, a most melancholy caterwauling. The raising of a neighboring window disturbed him. A cry of 'Scat! you devil!' and the crash of an empty bottle against the back of his aunt's woodshed brought him wide awake, and a single minute later he was dressed and out of the window and creeping along the roof of the 'ell' on all fours. He 'meow'd' with caution once or twice, as he went; then jumped to the roof of the woodshed and thence to the ground. Huckleberry Finn was there, with his dead cat. The boys moved off and disappeared in the gloom. At the end of half an hour they were wading through the tall grass of the graveyard.

It was a graveyard of the old-fashioned Western kind. It was on a hill, about a mile and a half from the village. It had a crazy board fence around it, which leaned inward in places, and outward the rest of the time, but stood upright nowhere. Grass and weeds grew rank over the whole cemetery. All the old graves were sunken in, there was not a tombstone on the place; round-topped, worm-eaten boards staggered over the graves, leaning for support and finding none. 'Sacred to the memory of' So-and-So had been painted on them once, but it could no longer have been read, on the most of them, now, even if there had been light.

A faint wind moaned through the trees, and Tom feared it might be the spirits of the dead, complaining at being disturbed. The boys talked little, and only under their breath, for the time and the place and the pervading solemnity and silence oppressed their spirits. They found the sharp new heap they were seeking, and ensconced themselves within the protection of three great elms that grew in a bunch within a few feet of the grave.

Then they waited in silence for what seemed a long time. The hooting of a distant owl was all the sound that troubled the dead stillness. Tom's reflections grew oppressive. He must force some talk. So he said in a whisper:

'Hucky, do you believe the dead people like it for us to be here?'

Huckleberry whispered:

'I wisht I knowed. It's awful solemn like, AIN'T it?'

'I bet it is.'

There was a considerable pause, while the boys canvassed this matter inwardly. Then Tom whispered:

'Say, Hucky — do you reckon Hoss Williams hears us talking?'

'O' course he does. Least his sperrit does.'

Tom, after a pause:

'I wish I'd said Mister Williams. But I never meant any harm. Everybody calls him Hoss.'

'A body can't be too partic'lar how they talk 'bout these-yer dead people, Tom.'

This was a damper, and conversation died again.

Presently Tom seized his comrade's arm and said:

'Sh!'

'What is it, Tom?' And the two clung together with beating hearts.

'Sh! There 'tis again! Didn't you hear it?'

'I —'

'There! Now you hear it.'

'Lord, Tom, they're coming! They're coming, sure. What'll we do?'

'I dono. Think they'll see us?'

'Oh, Tom, they can see in the dark, same as cats. I wisht I hadn't come.'

'Oh, don't be afeard. I don't believe they'll bother us. We ain't doing any harm. If we keep perfectly still, maybe they won't notice us at all.'

'I'll try to, Tom, but, Lord, I'm all of a shiver.'

'Listen!'

The boys bent their heads together and scarcely breathed. A muffled sound of voices floated up from the far end of the graveyard.

'Look! See there!' whispered Tom. 'What is it?'

'It's devil-fire. Oh, Tom, this is awful.'

Some vague figures approached through the gloom, swinging an old-fashioned tin lantern that freckled the ground with innumerable little spangles of light. Presently Huckleberry whispered with a shudder:

'It's the devils sure enough. Three of 'em! Lordy, Tom, we're goners! Can you pray?'

'I'll try, but don't you be afeard. They ain't going to hurt us. 'Now I lay me down to sleep, I —''

'Sh!'

'What is it, Huck?'

'They're HUMANS! One of 'em is, anyway. One of 'em's old Muff Potter's voice.'

'No — 'tain't so, is it?'

'I bet I know it. Don't you stir nor budge. He ain't sharp enough to notice us. Drunk, the same as usual, likely — blamed old rip!'

'All right, I'll keep still. Now they're stuck. Can't find it. Here they come again. Now they're hot. Cold again. Hot again. Red hot! They're p'inted right, this time. Say, Huck, I know another o' them voices; it's Injun Joe.'

'That's so — that murderin' half-breed! I'd druther they was devils a dern sight. What kin they be up to?'

The whisper died wholly out, now, for the three men had reached the grave and stood within a few feet of the boys' hiding-place.

'Here it is,' said the third voice; and the owner of it held the lantern up and revealed the face of young Doctor Robinson.

Potter and Injun Joe were carrying a handbarrow with a rope and a couple of shovels on it. They cast down their load and began to open the grave. The doctor put the lantern at the head of the grave and came and sat down with his back against one of the elm trees. He was so close the boys could have touched him.

'Hurry, men!' he said, in a low voice; 'the moon might come out at any moment.'

They growled a response and went on digging. For some time there was no noise but the grating sound of the spades discharging their freight of mould and gravel. It was very monotonous. Finally a spade struck upon the coffin with a dull woody accent, and within another minute or two the men had hoisted it out on the ground. They pried off the lid with their shovels, got out the body and dumped it rudely on the ground. The moon drifted from behind the clouds and exposed the pallid face. The barrow was got ready and the corpse placed on it, covered with a blanket, and bound to its place with the rope. Potter took out a large spring-knife and cut off the dangling end of the rope and then said:

'Now the cussed thing's ready, Sawbones, and you'll just out with another five, or here she stays.'

'That's the talk!' said Injun Joe.

'Look here, what does this mean?' said the doctor. 'You required your pay in advance, and I've paid you.'

'Yes, and you done more than that,' said Injun Joe, approaching the doctor, who was now standing. 'Five years ago you drove me away from your father's kitchen one night, when I come to ask for something to eat, and you said I warn't there for any good; and when I swore I'd get even with you if it took a hundred years, your father had me jailed for a vagrant. Did you think I'd forget? The Injun blood ain't in me for nothing. And now I've GOT you, and you got to SETTLE, you know!'

He was threatening the doctor, with his fist in his face, by this time. The doctor struck out suddenly and stretched the ruffian on the ground. Potter dropped his knife, and exclaimed:

'Here, now, don't you hit my pard!' and the next moment he had grappled with the doctor and the two were struggling with might and main, trampling the grass and tearing the ground with their heels. Injun Joe sprang to his feet, his eyes flaming with passion, snatched up Potter's knife, and went creeping, catlike and stooping, round and round about the combatants, seeking an opportunity. All at once the doctor flung himself free, seized the heavy headboard of Williams' grave and felled Potter to the earth with it — and in the same instant the half-breed saw his chance and drove the knife to the hilt in the young man's breast. He reeled and fell partly upon Potter, flooding him with his blood, and in the same moment the clouds blotted out the dreadful spectacle and the two frightened boys went speeding away in the dark.

Presently, when the moon emerged again, Injun Joe was standing over the two forms, contemplating them. The doctor murmured inarticulately, gave a long gasp or two and was still. The half-breed muttered:

'THAT score is settled — damn you.'

Then he robbed the body. After which he put the fatal knife in Potter's open right hand, and sat down on the dismantled coffin. Three — four — five minutes passed, and then Potter began to stir and moan. His hand closed upon the knife; he raised it, glanced at it, and let it fall, with a shudder. Then he sat up, pushing the body from him, and gazed at it, and then around him, confusedly. His eyes met Joe's.

'Lord, how is this, Joe?' he said.

'It's a dirty business,' said Joe, without moving.

'What did you do it for?'

'I! I never done it!'

'Look here! That kind of talk won't wash.'

Potter trembled and grew white.

'I thought I'd got sober. I'd no business to drink to-night. But it's in my head yet — worse'n when we started here. I'm all in a muddle; can't recollect anything of it, hardly. Tell me, Joe — HONEST, now, old feller — did I do it? Joe, I never meant to — 'pon my soul and honor, I never meant to, Joe. Tell me how it was, Joe. Oh, it's awful — and him so young and promising.'

'Why, you two was scuffling, and he fetched you one with the headboard and you fell flat; and then up you come, all reeling and staggering like, and snatched the knife and jammed it into him, just as he fetched you another awful clip — and here you've laid, as dead as a wedge til now.'

'Oh, I didn't know what I was a-doing. I wish I may die this minute if I did. It was all on account of the whiskey and the excitement, I reckon. I never used a weepon in my life before, Joe. I've fought, but never with weepons. They'll all say that. Joe, don't tell! Say you won't tell, Joe — that's a good feller. I always liked you, Joe, and stood up for you, too. Don't you remember? You WON'T tell, WILL you, Joe?' And the poor creature dropped on his knees before the stolid murderer, and clasped his appealing hands.

'No, you've always been fair and square with me, Muff Potter, and I won't go back on you. There, now, that's as fair as a man can say.'

'Oh, Joe, you're an angel. I'll bless you for this the longest day I live.' And Potter began to cry.

'Come, now, that's enough of that. This ain't any time for blubbering. You be off yonder way and I'll go this. Move, now, and don't leave any tracks behind you.'

Potter started on a trot that quickly increased to a run. The half-breed stood looking after him. He muttered:

'If he's as much stunned with the lick and fuddled with the rum as he had the look of being, he won't think of the knife till he's gone so far he'll be afraid to come back after it to such a place by himself — chicken-heart!'

Two or three minutes later the murdered man, the blanketed corpse, the lidless coffin, and the open grave were under no inspection but the moon's. The stillness was complete again, too.

Chapter X

THE two boys flew on and on, toward the village, speechless with horror. They glanced backward over their shoulders from time to time, apprehensively, as if they feared they might be followed. Every stump that started up in their path seemed a man and an enemy, and made them catch their breath; and as they sped by some outlying cottages that lay near the village, the barking of the aroused watch-dogs seemed to give wings to their feet.

'If we can only get to the old tannery before we break down!' whispered Tom, in short catches between breaths. 'I can't stand it much longer.'

Huckleberry's hard pantings were his only reply, and the boys fixed their eyes on the goal of their hopes and bent to their work to win it. They gained steadily on it, and at last, breast to breast, they burst through the open door and fell grateful and exhausted in the sheltering shadows beyond. By and by their pulses slowed down, and Tom whispered:

'Huckleberry, what do you reckon'll come of this?'

'If Doctor Robinson dies, I reckon hanging'll come of it.'

'Do you though?'

'Why, I KNOW it, Tom.'

Tom thought a while, then he said:

'Who'll tell? We?'

'What are you talking about? S'pose something happened and Injun Joe DIDN'T hang? Why, he'd kill us some time or other, just as dead sure as we're a laying here.'

'That's just what I was thinking to myself, Huck.'

'If anybody tells, let Muff Potter do it, if he's fool enough. He's generally drunk enough.'

Tom said nothing — went on thinking. Presently he whispered:

'Huck, Muff Potter don't know it. How can he tell?'

'What's the reason he don't know it?'

'Because he'd just got that whack when Injun Joe done it. D'you reckon he could see anything? D'you reckon he knowed anything?'

'By hokey, that's so, Tom!'

'And besides, look-a-here — maybe that whack done for HIM!'

'No, 'taint likely, Tom. He had liquor in him; I could see that; and besides, he always has. Well, when pap's full, you might take and belt him over the head with a church and you couldn't phase him. He says so, his own self. So it's the same with Muff Potter, of course. But if a man was dead sober, I reckon maybe that whack might fetch him; I dono.'

After another reflective silence, Tom said:

'Hucky, you sure you can keep mum?'

'Tom, we GOT to keep mum. You know that. That Injun devil wouldn't make any more of drownding us than a couple of cats, if we was to squeak 'bout this and they didn't hang him. Now, look-a-here, Tom, less take and swear to one another — that's what we got to do — swear to keep mum.'

‘I’m agreed. It’s the best thing. Would you just hold hands and swear that we —‘

‘Oh no, that wouldn’t do for this. That’s good enough for little rubbishy common things — specially with gals, cuz THEY go back on you anyway, and blab if they get in a huff — but there orter be writing ‘bout a big thing like this. And blood.’

Tom’s whole being applauded this idea. It was deep, and dark, and awful; the hour, the circumstances, the surroundings, were in keeping with it. He picked up a clean pine shingle that lay in the moonlight, took a little fragment of ‘red keel’ out of his pocket, got the moon on his work, and painfully scrawled these lines, emphasizing each slow down-stroke by clamping his tongue between his teeth, and letting up the pressure on the up-strokes.

‘Huck Finn and
Tom Sawyer swears
they will keep mum
about This and They
wish They may Drop
down dead in Their
Tracks if They ever
Tell and Rot.

Huckleberry was filled with admiration of Tom’s facility in writing, and the sublimity of his language. He at once took a pin from his lapel and was going to prick his flesh, but Tom said:

'Hold on! Don't do that. A pin's brass. It might have verdigrease on it.'

'What's verdigrease?'

'It's p'ison. That's what it is. You just swaller some of it once — you'll see.'

So Tom unwound the thread from one of his needles, and each boy pricked the ball of his thumb and squeezed out a drop of blood. In time, after many squeezes, Tom managed to sign his initials, using the ball of his little finger for a pen. Then he showed Huckleberry how to make an H and an F, and the oath was complete. They buried the shingle close to the wall, with some dismal ceremonies and incantations, and the fetters that bound their tongues were considered to be locked and the key thrown away.

A figure crept stealthily through a break in the other end of the ruined building, now, but they did not notice it.

'Tom,' whispered Huckleberry, 'does this keep us from EVER telling — ALWAYS?'

'Of course it does. It don't make any difference WHAT happens, we got to keep mum. We'd drop down dead — don't YOU know that?'

'Yes, I reckon that's so.'

They continued to whisper for some little time. Presently a dog set up a long, lugubrious howl just outside — within ten feet of them. The boys clasped each other suddenly, in an agony of fright.

'Which of us does he mean?' gasped Huckleberry.

'I dono — peep through the crack. Quick!'

'No, YOU, Tom!'

‘I can’t — I can’t DO it, Huck!’

‘Please, Tom. There ‘tis again!’

‘Oh, lordy, I’m thankful!’ whispered Tom. ‘I know his voice. It’s Bull Harbison.’ *

[* If Mr. Harbison owned a slave named Bull, Tom would have spoken of him as ‘Harbison’s Bull,’ but a son or a dog of that name was ‘Bull Harbison.’]

‘Oh, that’s good — I tell you, Tom, I was most scared to death; I’d a bet anything it was a STRAY dog.’

The dog howled again. The boys’ hearts sank once more.

‘Oh, my! that ain’t no Bull Harbison!’ whispered Huckleberry. ‘DO, Tom!’

Tom, quaking with fear, yielded, and put his eye to the crack. His whisper was hardly audible when he said:

‘Oh, Huck, IT S A STRAY DOG!’

‘Quick, Tom, quick! Who does he mean?’

‘Huck, he must mean us both — we’re right together.’

‘Oh, Tom, I reckon we’re goners. I reckon there ain’t no mistake ‘bout where I’LL go to. I been so wicked.’

‘Dad fetch it! This comes of playing hookey and doing everything a feller’s told NOT to do. I might a been good, like Sid, if I’d a tried — but no, I wouldn’t, of course. But if ever I get off this time, I lay I’ll just WALLER in Sunday-schools!’ And Tom began to snuffle a little.

‘YOU bad!’ and Huckleberry began to snuffle too. ‘Consound it, Tom Sawyer, you’re just old pie, ‘longside o’ what I am. Oh, LORDY, lordy, lordy, I wisht I only had half your chance.’

Tom choked off and whispered:

'Look, Hucky, look! He's got his BACK to us!'

Hucky looked, with joy in his heart.

'Well, he has, by jingoes! Did he before?'

'Yes, he did. But I, like a fool, never thought. Oh, this is bully, you know. NOW who can he mean?'

The howling stopped. Tom pricked up his ears.

'Sh! What's that?' he whispered.

'Sounds like — like hogs grunting. No — it's somebody snoring, Tom.'

'That IS it! Where 'bouts is it, Huck?'

'I bleeve it's down at 'tother end. Sounds so, anyway. Pap used to sleep there, sometimes, 'long with the hogs, but laws bless you, he just lifts things when HE snores. Besides, I reckon he ain't ever coming back to this town any more.'

The spirit of adventure rose in the boys' souls once more.

'Hucky, do you das't to go if I lead?'

'I don't like to, much. Tom, s'pose it's Injun Joe!'

Tom quailed. But presently the temptation rose up strong again and the boys agreed to try, with the understanding that they would take to their heels if the snoring stopped. So they went tiptoeing stealthily down, the one behind the other. When they had got to within five steps of the snorer, Tom stepped on a stick, and it broke with a sharp snap. The man moaned, writhed a little, and his face came into the moonlight. It was Muff Potter. The boys' hearts had stood still, and their hopes too, when the man moved, but their fears passed away now. They tiptoed out, through the broken weather-boarding, and stopped at a little distance to exchange a parting word. That long, lugubrious howl rose on the night air again! They turned and saw the strange dog standing within a few feet of where Potter was lying, and FACING Potter, with his nose pointing heavenward.

'Oh, geeminy, it's HIM!' exclaimed both boys, in a breath.

'Say, Tom — they say a stray dog come howling around Johnny Miller's house, 'bout midnight, as much as two weeks ago; and a whippoorwill come in and lit on the banisters and sung, the very same evening; and there ain't anybody dead there yet.'

'Well, I know that. And suppose there ain't. Didn't Gracie Miller fall in the kitchen fire and burn herself terrible the very next Saturday?'

'Yes, but she ain't DEAD. And what's more, she's getting better, too.'

'All right, you wait and see. She's a goner, just as dead sure as Muff Potter's a goner. That's what the niggers say, and they know all about these kind of things, Huck.'

Then they separated, cogitating. When Tom crept in at his bedroom window the night was almost spent. He undressed with excessive caution, and fell asleep congratulating himself that nobody knew of his escapade. He was not aware that the gently-snoring Sid was awake, and had been so for an hour.

When Tom awoke, Sid was dressed and gone. There was a late look in the light, a late sense in the atmosphere. He was startled. Why had he not been called — persecuted till he was up, as usual? The thought filled him with bodings. Within five minutes he was dressed and down-stairs, feeling sore and drowsy. The family were still at table, but they had finished breakfast. There was no voice of rebuke; but there were averted eyes; there was a silence and an air of solemnity that struck a chill to the culprit's heart. He sat down and tried to seem gay, but it was up-hill work; it roused no smile, no response, and he lapsed into silence and let his heart sink down to the depths.

After breakfast his aunt took him aside, and Tom almost brightened in the hope that he was going to be flogged; but it was not so. His aunt wept over him and asked him how he could go and break her old heart so; and finally told him to go on, and ruin himself and bring her gray hairs with sorrow to the grave, for it was no use for her to try any more. This was worse than a thousand whippings, and Tom's heart was sorer now than his body. He cried, he pleaded for forgiveness, promised to reform over and over again, and then received his dismissal, feeling that he had won but an imperfect forgiveness and established but a feeble confidence.

He left the presence too miserable to even feel revengeful toward Sid; and so the latter's prompt retreat through the back gate was unnecessary. He moped to school gloomy and sad, and took his flogging, along with Joe Harper, for playing hookey the day before, with the air of one whose heart was busy with heavier woes and wholly dead to trifles. Then he betook himself to his seat, rested his elbows on his desk and his jaws in his hands, and stared at the wall with the stony stare of suffering that has reached the limit and can no further go. His elbow was pressing against some hard substance. After a long time he slowly and sadly changed his position, and took up this object with a sigh. It was in a paper. He unrolled it. A long, lingering, colossal sigh followed, and his heart broke. It was his brass andiron knob!

This final feather broke the camel's back.

Chapter XI

CLOSE upon the hour of noon the whole village was suddenly electrified with the ghastly news. No need of the as yet undreamed-of telegraph; the tale flew from man to man, from group to group, from house to house, with little less than telegraphic speed. Of course the schoolmaster gave holiday for that afternoon; the town would have thought strangely of him if he had not.

A gory knife had been found close to the murdered man, and it had been recognized by somebody as belonging to Muff Potter — so the story ran. And it was said that a belated citizen had come upon Potter washing himself in the 'branch' about one or two o'clock in the morning, and that Potter had at once sneaked off — suspicious circumstances, especially the washing which was not a habit with Potter. It was also said that the town had been ransacked for this 'murderer' (the public are not slow in the matter of sifting evidence and arriving at a verdict), but that he could not be found. Horsemen had departed down all the roads in every direction, and the Sheriff 'was confident' that he would be captured before night.

All the town was drifting toward the graveyard. Tom's heartbreak vanished and he joined the procession, not because he would not a thousand times rather go anywhere else, but because an awful, unaccountable fascination drew him on. Arrived at the dreadful place, he wormed his small body through the crowd and saw the dismal spectacle. It seemed to him an age since he was there before. Somebody pinched his arm. He turned, and his eyes met Huckleberry's. Then both looked elsewhere at once, and wondered if anybody had noticed anything in their mutual glance. But everybody was talking, and intent upon the grisly spectacle before them.

'Poor fellow!' 'Poor young fellow!' 'This ought to be a lesson to grave robbers!' 'Muff Potter'll hang for this if they catch him!' This was the drift of remark; and the minister said, 'It was a judgment; His hand is here.'

Now Tom shivered from head to heel; for his eye fell upon the stolid face of Injun Joe. At this moment the crowd began to sway and struggle, and voices shouted, 'It's him! it's him! he's coming himself!'

'Who? Who?' from twenty voices.

'Muff Potter!'

'Hallo, he's stopped! — Look out, he's turning! Don't let him get away!'

People in the branches of the trees over Tom's head said he wasn't trying to get away — he only looked doubtful and perplexed.

'Infernal impudence!' said a bystander; 'wanted to come and take a quiet look at his work, I reckon — didn't expect any company.'

The crowd fell apart, now, and the Sheriff came through, ostentatiously leading Potter by the arm. The poor fellow's face was haggard, and his eyes showed the fear that was upon him. When he stood before the murdered man, he shook as with a palsy, and he put his face in his hands and burst into tears.

'I didn't do it, friends,' he sobbed; 'pon my word and honor I never done it.'

'Who's accused you?' shouted a voice.

This shot seemed to carry home. Potter lifted his face and looked around him with a pathetic hopelessness in his eyes. He saw Injun Joe, and exclaimed:

'Oh, Injun Joe, you promised me you'd never —'

'Is that your knife?' and it was thrust before him by the Sheriff.

Potter would have fallen if they had not caught him and eased him to the ground. Then he said:

'Something told me 't if I didn't come back and get —' He shuddered; then waved his nerveless hand with a vanquished gesture and said, 'Tell 'em, Joe, tell 'em — it ain't any use any more.'

Then Huckleberry and Tom stood dumb and staring, and heard the stony-hearted liar reel off his serene statement, they expecting every moment that the clear sky would deliver God's lightnings upon his head, and wondering to see how long the stroke was delayed. And when he had finished and still stood alive and whole, their wavering impulse to break their oath and save the poor betrayed prisoner's life faded and vanished away, for plainly this miscreant had sold himself to Satan and it would be fatal to meddle with the property of such a power as that.

'Why didn't you leave? What did you want to come here for?' somebody said.

'I couldn't help it — I couldn't help it,' Potter moaned. 'I wanted to run away, but I couldn't seem to come anywhere but here.' And he fell to sobbing again.

Injun Joe repeated his statement, just as calmly, a few minutes afterward on the inquest, under oath; and the boys, seeing that the lightnings were still withheld, were confirmed in their belief that Joe had sold himself to the devil. He was now become, to them, the most balefully interesting object they had ever looked upon, and they could not take their fascinated eyes from his face.

They inwardly resolved to watch him nights, when opportunity should offer, in the hope of getting a glimpse of his dread master.

Injun Joe helped to raise the body of the murdered man and put it in a wagon for removal; and it was whispered through the shuddering crowd that the wound bled a little! The boys thought that this happy circumstance would turn suspicion in the right direction; but they were disappointed, for more than one villager remarked:

'It was within three feet of Muff Potter when it done it.'

Tom's fearful secret and gnawing conscience disturbed his sleep for as much as a week after this; and at breakfast one morning Sid said:

'Tom, you pitch around and talk in your sleep so much that you keep me awake half the time.'

Tom blanched and dropped his eyes.

'It's a bad sign,' said Aunt Polly, gravely. 'What you got on your mind, Tom?'

'Nothing. Nothing 't I know of.' But the boy's hand shook so that he spilled his coffee.

'And you do talk such stuff,' Sid said. 'Last night you said, 'It's blood, it's blood, that's what it is!' You said that over and over. And you said, 'Don't torment me so — I'll tell!' Tell WHAT? What is it you'll tell?'

Everything was swimming before Tom. There is no telling what might have happened, now, but luckily the concern passed out of Aunt Polly's face and she came to Tom's relief without knowing it. She said:

'Sho! It's that dreadful murder. I dream about it most every night myself. Sometimes I dream it's me that done it.'

Mary said she had been affected much the same way. Sid seemed satisfied. Tom got out of the presence as quick as he plausibly could, and after that he complained of toothache for a week, and tied up his jaws every night. He never knew that Sid lay nightly watching, and frequently slipped the bandage free and then leaned on his elbow listening a good while at a time, and afterward slipped the bandage back to its place again. Tom's distress of mind wore off gradually and the toothache grew irksome and was discarded. If Sid really managed to make anything out of Tom's disjointed mutterings, he kept it to himself.

It seemed to Tom that his schoolmates never would get done holding inquests on dead cats, and thus keeping his trouble present to his mind. Sid noticed that Tom never was coroner at one of these inquiries, though it had been his habit to take the lead in all new enterprises; he noticed, too, that Tom never acted as a witness — and that was strange;

and Sid did not overlook the fact that Tom even showed a marked aversion to these inquests, and always avoided them when he could. Sid marvelled, but said nothing. However, even inquests went out of vogue at last, and ceased to torture Tom's conscience.

Every day or two, during this time of sorrow, Tom watched his opportunity and went to the little grated jail-window and smuggled such small comforts through to the 'murderer' as he could get hold of. The jail was a trifling little brick den that stood in a marsh at the edge of the village, and no guards were afforded for it; indeed, it was seldom occupied. These offerings greatly helped to ease Tom's conscience.

The villagers had a strong desire to tar-and-feather Injun Joe and ride him on a rail, for body-snatching, but so formidable was his character that nobody could be found who was willing to take the lead in the matter, so it was dropped. He had been careful to begin both of his inquest-statements with the fight, without confessing the grave-robbery that preceded it; therefore it was deemed wisest not to try the case in the courts at present.

Chapter XII

ONE of the reasons why Tom's mind had drifted away from its secret troubles was, that it had found a new and weighty matter to interest itself about. Becky Thatcher had stopped coming to school. Tom had struggled with his pride a few days, and tried to 'whistle her down the wind,' but failed. He began to find himself hanging around her father's house, nights, and feeling very miserable. She was ill. What if she should die! There was distraction in the thought. He no longer took an interest in war, nor even in piracy. The charm of life was gone; there was nothing but dreariness left. He put his hoop away, and his bat; there was no joy in them any more. His aunt was concerned. She began to try all manner of remedies on him. She was one of those people who are infatuated with patent medicines and all new-fangled methods of producing health or mending it. She was an inveterate experimenter in these things. When something fresh in this line came out she was in a fever, right away, to try it; not on herself, for she was never ailing, but on anybody else that came handy. She was a subscriber for all the 'Health' periodicals and phrenological frauds; and the solemn ignorance they were inflated with was breath to her nostrils. All the 'rot' they contained about ventilation, and how to go to bed, and how to get up, and what to eat, and what to drink, and how much exercise to take, and what frame of mind to keep one's self in, and what sort of clothing to wear, was all gospel to her, and she never observed that her health-journals of the current month customarily upset everything they had recommended the month before. She was as simple-hearted and honest as the day was long, and so she was an easy victim. She gathered together her quack periodicals and her quack medicines, and thus armed with death, went about on her pale horse, metaphorically speaking, with 'hell following after.' But she never suspected that she was not an angel of healing and the balm of Gilead in disguise, to the suffering neighbors.

The water treatment was new, now, and Tom's low condition was a windfall to her. She had him out at daylight every morning, stood him up in the woodshed and drowned him with a deluge of cold water; then she scrubbed him down with a towel like a file, and so brought him to; then she rolled him up in a wet sheet and put him away under blankets till she sweated his soul clean and 'the yellow stains of it came through his pores' — as Tom said.

Yet notwithstanding all this, the boy grew more and more melancholy and pale and dejected. She added hot baths, sitz baths, shower baths, and plunges. The boy remained as dismal as a hearse. She began to assist the water with a slim oatmeal diet and blisterplasters. She calculated his capacity as she would a jug's, and filled him up every day with quack cure-alls.

Tom had become indifferent to persecution by this time. This phase filled the old lady's heart with consternation. This indifference must be broken up at any cost. Now she heard of Pain-killer for the first time. She ordered a lot at once. She tasted it and was filled with gratitude. It was simply fire in a liquid form. She dropped the water treatment and everything else, and pinned her faith to Pain-killer. She gave Tom a teaspoonful and watched with the deepest anxiety for the result. Her troubles were instantly at rest, her soul at peace again; for the 'indifference' was broken up. The boy could not have shown a wilder, heartier interest, if she had built a fire under him.

Tom felt that it was time to wake up; this sort of life might be romantic enough, in his blighted condition, but it was getting to have too little sentiment and too much distracting variety about it. So he thought over various plans for relief, and finally hit pon that of professing to be fond of Pain-killer. He asked for it so often that he became a nuisance, and his aunt ended by telling him to help himself and quit bothering her. If it had been Sid, she would have had no misgivings to alloy her delight; but since it was Tom, she watched the bottle clandestinely. She found that the medicine did really diminish, but it did not occur to her that the boy was mending the health of a crack in the sitting-room floor with it.

One day Tom was in the act of dosing the crack when his aunt's yellow cat came along, purring, eying the teaspoon avariciously, and begging for a taste. Tom said:

'Don't ask for it unless you want it, Peter.'

But Peter signified that he did want it.

'You better make sure.'

Peter was sure.

'Now you've asked for it, and I'll give it to you, because there ain't anything mean about me; but if you find you don't like it, you mustn't blame anybody but your own self.'

Peter was agreeable. So Tom pried his mouth open and poured down the Pain-killer. Peter sprang a couple of yards in the air, and then delivered a war-whoop and set off round and round the room, banging against furniture, upsetting flower-pots, and making general havoc. Next he rose on his hind feet and pranced around, in a frenzy of enjoyment, with his head over his shoulder and his voice proclaiming his unappeasable happiness. Then he went tearing around the house again spreading chaos and destruction in his path. Aunt Polly entered in time to see him throw a few double summersets, deliver a final mighty hurrah, and sail through the open window, carrying the rest of the flower-pots with him. The old lady stood petrified with astonishment, peering over her glasses; Tom lay on the floor expiring with laughter.

'Tom, what on earth ails that cat?'

'I don't know, aunt,' gasped the boy.

'Why, I never see anything like it. What did make him act so?'

'Deed I don't know, Aunt Polly; cats always act so when they're having a good time.'

'They do, do they?' There was something in the tone that made Tom apprehensive.

'Yes'm. That is, I believe they do.'

'You DO?'

'Yes'm.'

The old lady was bending down, Tom watching, with interest emphasized by anxiety. Too late he divined her 'drift.' The handle of the telltale teaspoon was visible under the bed-valance. Aunt Polly took it, held it up. Tom winced, and dropped his eyes. Aunt Polly raised him by the usual handle — his ear — and cracked his head soundly with her thimble.

'Now, sir, what did you want to treat that poor dumb beast so, for?'

'I done it out of pity for him — because he hadn't any aunt.'

'Hadn't any aunt! — you numskull. What has that got to do with it?'

'Heaps. Because if he'd had one she'd a burnt him out herself! She'd a roasted his bowels out of him 'thout any more feeling than if he was a human!'

Aunt Polly felt a sudden pang of remorse. This was putting the thing in a new light; what was cruelty to a cat MIGHT be cruelty to a boy, too. She began to soften; she felt sorry. Her eyes watered a little, and she put her hand on Tom's head and said gently:

'I was meaning for the best, Tom. And, Tom, it DID do you good.'

Tom looked up in her face with just a perceptible twinkle peeping through his gravity.

'I know you was meaning for the best, aunty, and so was I with Peter. It done HIM good, too. I never see him get around so since —'

'Oh, go 'long with you, Tom, before you aggravate me again. And you try and see if you can't be a good boy, for once, and you needn't take any more medicine.'

Tom reached school ahead of time. It was noticed that this strange thing had been occurring every day latterly. And now, as usual of late, he hung about the gate of the schoolyard instead of playing with his comrades. He was sick, he said, and he looked it. He tried to seem to be looking everywhere but whither he really was looking — down the road. Presently Jeff Thatcher hove in sight, and Tom's face lighted; he gazed a moment, and then turned sorrowfully away. When Jeff arrived, Tom accosted him; and 'led up' warily to opportunities for remark about Becky, but the giddy lad never could see the bait. Tom watched and watched, hoping whenever a frisking frock came in sight, and hating the owner of it as soon as he saw she was not the right one. At last frocks ceased to appear, and he dropped hopelessly into the dumps; he entered the empty schoolhouse and sat down to suffer. Then one more frock passed in at the gate, and Tom's heart gave a great bound. The next instant he was out, and 'going on' like an Indian; yelling, laughing, chasing boys, jumping over the fence at risk of life and limb, throwing handsprings, standing on his head — doing all the heroic things he could conceive of, and keeping a furtive eye out, all the while, to see if Becky Thatcher was noticing. But she seemed to be unconscious of it all; she never looked. Could it be possible that she was not aware that he was there? He carried his exploits to her immediate vicinity; came war-whooping around, snatched a boy's cap, hurled it to the roof of the schoolhouse, broke through a group of boys, tumbling them in every direction, and fell sprawling, himself, under Becky's nose, almost upsetting her — and she turned, with her nose in the air, and he heard her say: 'Mf! some people think they're mighty smart — always showing off!'

Tom's cheeks burned. He gathered himself up and sneaked off, crushed and crestfallen.

Chapter XIII

TOM'S mind was made up now. He was gloomy and desperate. He was a forsaken, friendless boy, he said; nobody loved him; when they found out what they had driven him to, perhaps they would be sorry; he had tried to do right and get along, but they would not let him; since nothing would do them but to be rid of him, let it be so; and let them blame HIM for the consequences — why shouldn't they? What right had the friendless to complain? Yes, they had forced him to it at last: he would lead a life of crime. There was no choice.

By this time he was far down Meadow Lane, and the bell for school to 'take up' tinkled faintly upon his ear. He sobbed, now, to think he should never, never hear that old familiar sound any more — it was very hard, but it was forced on him; since he was driven out into the cold world, he must submit — but he forgave them. Then the sobs came thick and fast.

Just at this point he met his soul's sworn comrade, Joe Harper — hard-eyed, and with evidently a great and dismal purpose in his heart. Plainly here were 'two souls with but a single thought.' Tom, wiping his eyes with his sleeve, began to blubber out something about a resolution to escape from hard usage and lack of sympathy at home by roaming abroad into the great world never to return; and ended by hoping that Joe would not forget him.

But it transpired that this was a request which Joe had just been going to make of Tom, and had come to hunt him up for that purpose. His mother had whipped him for drinking some cream which he had never tasted and knew nothing about; it was plain that she was tired of him and wished him to go; if she felt that way, there was nothing for him to do but succumb; he hoped she would be happy, and never regret having driven her poor boy out into the unfeeling world to suffer and die.

As the two boys walked sorrowing along, they made a new compact to stand by each other and be brothers and never separate till death relieved them of their troubles. Then they began to lay their plans. Joe was for being a hermit, and living on crusts in a remote cave, and dying, some time, of cold and want and grief; but after listening to Tom, he conceded that there were some conspicuous advantages about a life of crime, and so he consented to be a pirate.

Three miles below St. Petersburg, at a point where the Mississippi River was a trifle over a mile wide, there was a long, narrow, wooded island, with a shallow bar at the head of it, and this offered well as a rendezvous. It was not inhabited; it lay far over toward the further shore, abreast a dense and almost wholly unpeopled forest. So Jackson's Island was chosen. Who were to be the subjects of their piracies was a matter that did not occur to them. Then they hunted up Huckleberry Finn, and he joined them promptly, for all careers were one to him; he was indifferent. They presently separated to meet at a lonely spot on the river-bank two miles above the village at the favorite hour — which was midnight. There was a small log raft there which they meant to capture. Each would bring hooks and lines, and such provision as he could steal in the most dark and mysterious way — as became outlaws. And before the afternoon was done, they had all managed to enjoy the sweet glory of spreading the fact that pretty soon the town would 'hear something.' All who got this vague hint were cautioned to 'be mum and wait.'

About midnight Tom arrived with a boiled ham and a few trifles, and stopped in a dense undergrowth on a small bluff overlooking the meeting-place. It was starlight, and very still. The mighty river lay like an ocean at rest. Tom listened a moment, but no sound disturbed the quiet. Then he gave a low, distinct whistle. It was answered from under the bluff. Tom whistled twice more; these signals were answered in the same way. Then a guarded voice said:

'Who goes there?'

'Tom Sawyer, the Black Avenger of the Spanish Main. Name your names.'

'Huck Finn the Red-Handed, and Joe Harper the Terror of the Seas.' Tom had furnished these titles, from his favorite literature.

'Tis well. Give the countersign.'

Two hoarse whispers delivered the same awful word simultaneously to the brooding night:

'BLOOD!'

Then Tom tumbled his ham over the bluff and let himself down after it, tearing both skin and clothes to some extent in the effort. There was an easy, comfortable path along the shore under the bluff, but it lacked the advantages of difficulty and danger so valued by a pirate.

The Terror of the Seas had brought a side of bacon, and had about worn himself out with getting it there. Finn the Red-Handed had stolen a skillet and a quantity of half-cured leaf tobacco, and had also brought a few corn-cobs to make pipes with. But none of the pirates smoked or 'chewed' but himself. The Black Avenger of the Spanish Main said it would never do to start without some fire. That was a wise thought; matches were hardly known there in that day. They saw a fire smouldering upon a great raft a hundred yards above, and they went stealthily thither and helped themselves to a chunk. They made an imposing adventure of it, saying, 'Hist!' every now and then, and suddenly halting with finger on lip; moving with hands on imaginary dagger-hilts; and giving orders in dismal whispers that if 'the foe' stirred, to 'let him have it to the hilt,' because 'dead men tell no tales.' They knew well enough that the raftsmen were all down at the village laying in stores or having a spree, but still that was no excuse for their conducting this thing in an unpiratical way.

They shoved off, presently, Tom in command, Huck at the after oar and Joe at the forward. Tom stood amidships, gloomy-browed, and with folded arms, and gave his orders in a low, stern whisper:

'Luff, and bring her to the wind!'

'Aye-aye, sir!'

'Steady, steady-y-y-y!'

'Steady it is, sir!'

'Let her go off a point!'

'Point it is, sir!'

As the boys steadily and monotonously drove the raft toward mid-stream it was no doubt understood that these orders were given only for 'style,' and were not intended to mean anything in particular.

'What sail's she carrying?'

'Courses, tops'ls, and flying-jib, sir.'

'Send the r'yals up! Lay out aloft, there, half a dozen of ye — foretopmaststuns'l! Lively, now!'

'Aye-aye, sir!'

'Shake out that maintogalans'l! Sheets and braces! NOW my hearties!'

'Aye-aye, sir!'

'Hellum-a-lee — hard a port! Stand by to meet her when she comes! Port, port! NOW, men! With a will! Stead-y-y-y!'

'Steady it is, sir!'

The raft drew beyond the middle of the river; the boys pointed her head right, and then lay on their oars. The river was not high, so there was not more than a two or three mile current. Hardly a word was said during the next three-quarters of an hour. Now the raft was passing before the distant town. Two or three glimmering lights showed where it lay, peacefully sleeping, beyond the vague vast sweep of star-gemmed water, unconscious of the tremendous event that was happening. The Black Avenger stood still with folded arms, 'looking his last' upon the scene of his former joys and his later sufferings, and wishing 'she' could see him now, abroad on the wild sea, facing peril and death with dauntless heart, going to his doom with a grim smile on his lips. It was but a small strain on his imagination to remove Jackson's Island beyond eyeshot of the village, and so he 'looked his last' with a broken and satisfied heart. The other pirates were looking their last, too; and they all looked so long that they came near letting the current drift them out of the range of the island. But they discovered the danger in time, and made shift to avert it. About two o'clock in the morning the raft grounded on the bar two hundred yards above the head of the island, and they waded back and forth until they had landed their freight. Part of the little raft's belongings consisted of an old sail, and this they spread over a nook in the bushes for a tent to shelter their provisions; but they themselves would sleep in the open air in good weather, as became outlaws.

They built a fire against the side of a great log twenty or thirty steps within the sombre depths of the forest, and then cooked some bacon in the frying-pan for supper, and used up half of the corn 'pone' stock they had brought. It seemed glorious sport to be feasting in that wild, free way in the virgin forest of an unexplored and uninhabited island, far from the haunts of men, and they said they never would return to civilization. The climbing fire lit up their faces and threw its ruddy glare upon the pillared tree-trunks of their forest temple, and upon the varnished foliage and festooning vines.

When the last crisp slice of bacon was gone, and the last allowance of corn pone devoured, the boys stretched themselves out on the grass, filled with contentment. They could have found a cooler place, but they would not deny themselves such a romantic feature as the roasting camp-fire.

'AIN'T it gay?' said Joe.

'It's NUTS!' said Tom. 'What would the boys say if they could see us?'

'Say? Well, they'd just die to be here — hey, Hucky!'

'I reckon so,' said Huckleberry; 'anyways, I'm suited. I don't want nothing better'n this. I don't ever get enough to eat, gen'ally — and here they can't come and pick at a feller and bullyrag him so.'

'It's just the life for me,' said Tom. 'You don't have to get up, mornings, and you don't have to go to school, and wash, and all that blame foolishness. You see a pirate don't have to do ANYTHING, Joe, when he's ashore, but a hermit HE has to be praying considerable, and then he don't have any fun, anyway, all by himself that way.'

'Oh yes, that's so,' said Joe, 'but I hadn't thought much about it, you know. I'd a good deal rather be a pirate, now that I've tried it.'

'You see,' said Tom, 'people don't go much on hermits, nowadays, like they used to in old times, but a pirate's always respected. And a hermit's got to sleep on the hardest place he can find, and put sackcloth and ashes on his head, and stand out in the rain, and —'

'What does he put sackcloth and ashes on his head for?' inquired Huck.

'I dono. But they've GOT to do it. Hermits always do.

You'd have to do that if you was a hermit.'

'Dern'd if I would,' said Huck.

'Well, what would you do?'

'I dono. But I wouldn't do that.'

'Why, Huck, you'd HAVE to. How'd you get around it?'

'Why, I just wouldn't stand it. I'd run away.'

'Run away! Well, you WOULD be a nice old slouch of a hermit. You'd be a disgrace.'

The Red-Handed made no response, being better employed. He had finished gouging out a cob, and now he fitted a weed stem to it, loaded it with tobacco, and was pressing a coal to the charge and blowing a cloud of fragrant smoke — he was in the full bloom of luxurious contentment. The other pirates envied him this majestic vice, and secretly resolved to acquire it shortly. Presently Huck said:

'What does pirates have to do?'

Tom said:

'Oh, they have just a bully time — take ships and burn them, and get the money and bury it in awful places in their island where there's ghosts and things to watch it, and kill everybody in the ships — make 'em walk a plank.'

'And they carry the women to the island,' said Joe; 'they don't kill the women.'

'No,' assented Tom, 'they don't kill the women — they're too noble. And the women's always beautiful, too.

'And don't they wear the bulliest clothes! Oh no! All gold and silver and di'monds,' said Joe, with enthusiasm.

'Who?' said Huck.

'Why, the pirates.'

Huck scanned his own clothing forlornly.

'I reckon I ain't dressed fitten for a pirate,' said he, with a regretful pathos in his voice; 'but I ain't got none but these.'

But the other boys told him the fine clothes would come fast enough, after they should have begun their adventures. They made him understand that his poor rags would do to begin with, though it was customary for wealthy pirates to start with a proper wardrobe.

Gradually their talk died out and drowsiness began to steal upon the eyelids of the little waifs. The pipe dropped from the fingers of the Red-Handed, and he slept the sleep of the conscience-free and the weary. The Terror of the Seas and the Black Avenger of the Spanish Main had more difficulty in getting to sleep. They said their prayers inwardly, and lying down, since there was nobody there with authority to make them kneel and recite aloud; in truth, they had a mind not to say them at all, but they were afraid to proceed to such lengths as that, lest they might call down a sudden and special thunderbolt from heaven. Then at once they reached and hovered upon the imminent verge of sleep — but an intruder came, now, that would not 'down.' It was conscience. They began to feel a vague fear that they had been doing wrong to run away; and next they thought of the stolen meat, and then the real torture came. They tried to argue it away by reminding conscience that they had purloined sweetmeats and apples scores of times; but conscience was not to be appeased by such thin plausibilities; it seemed to them, in the end, that there was no getting around the stubborn fact that taking sweetmeats was only 'hooking,' while taking bacon and hams and such valuables was plain simple stealing — and there was a command against that in the Bible. So they inwardly resolved that so long as they remained in the business, their piracies should not again be sullied with the crime of stealing. Then conscience granted a truce, and these curiously inconsistent pirates fell peacefully to sleep.

Chapter XIV

When Tom awoke in the morning, he wondered where he was. He sat up and rubbed his eyes and looked around. Then he comprehended. It was the cool gray dawn, and there was a delicious sense of repose and peace in the deep pervading calm and silence of the woods. Not a leaf stirred; not a sound obtruded upon great Nature's meditation. Beaded dewdrops stood upon the leaves and grasses. A white layer of ashes covered the fire, and a thin blue breath of smoke rose straight into the air. Joe and Huck still slept.

Now, far away in the woods a bird called; another answered; presently the hammering of a woodpecker was heard. Gradually the cool dim gray of the morning whitened, and as gradually sounds multiplied and life manifested itself. The marvel of Nature shaking off sleep and going to work unfolded itself to the musing boy. A little green worm came crawling over a dewy leaf, lifting two-thirds of his body into the air from time to time and 'sniffing around,' then proceeding again — for he was measuring, Tom said; and when the worm approached him, of its own accord, he sat as still as a stone, with his hopes rising and falling, by turns, as the creature still came toward him or seemed inclined to go elsewhere; and when at last it considered a painful moment with its curved body in the air and then came decisively down upon Tom's leg and began a journey over him, his whole heart was glad — for that meant that he was going to have a new suit of clothes — without the shadow of a doubt a gaudy piratical uniform. Now a procession of ants appeared, from nowhere in particular, and went about their labors; one struggled manfully by with a dead spider five times as big as itself in its arms, and lugged it straight up a tree-trunk. A brown spotted lady-bug climbed the dizzy height of a grass blade, and Tom bent down close to it and said, 'Lady-bug, lady-bug, fly away home, your house is on fire, your children's alone,' and she took wing and went off to see about it — which did not surprise the boy, for he knew of old that this insect was credulous about conflagrations, and he had practised upon its simplicity more than once. A tumblebug came next, heaving sturdily at its ball, and Tom touched the creature, to see it shut its legs against its body and pretend to be dead. The birds were fairly rioting by this time. A catbird, the Northern mocker, lit in a tree over Tom's head, and trilled out her imitations of her neighbors in a rapture of enjoyment; then a shrill jay swept down, a flash of blue flame, and stopped on a twig almost within the boy's reach, cocked his head to one side and eyed the strangers with a consuming curiosity; a gray squirrel and a big fellow of the 'fox' kind came skurrying along, sitting up at intervals to inspect and chatter at the boys, for the wild things had probably never seen a human being before and scarcely knew whether to be afraid or not. All Nature was wide awake and stirring, now; long lances of sunlight pierced down through the dense foliage far and near, and a few butterflies came fluttering upon the scene.

Tom stirred up the other pirates and they all clattered away with a shout, and in a minute or two were stripped and chasing after and tumbling over each other in the shallow limpid water of the white sandbar. They felt no longing for the little village sleeping in the distance beyond the majestic waste of water. A vagrant current or a slight rise in the river had carried off their raft, but this only gratified them, since its going was something like burning the bridge between them and civilization.

They came back to camp wonderfully refreshed, gladhearted, and ravenous; and they soon had the camp-fire blazing up again. Huck found a spring of clear cold water close by, and the boys made cups of broad oak or hickory leaves, and felt that water, sweetened with such a wildwood charm as that, would be a good enough substitute for coffee. While Joe was slicing bacon for breakfast, Tom and Huck asked him to hold on a minute; they stepped to a promising nook in the river-bank and threw in their lines; almost immediately they had reward. Joe had not had time to get impatient before they were back again with some handsome bass, a couple of sun-perch and a small catfish — provisions enough for quite a family. They fried the fish with the bacon, and were astonished; for no fish had ever seemed so delicious before. They did not know that the quicker a freshwater fish is on the fire after he is caught the better he is; and they reflected little upon what a sauce open-air sleeping, open-air exercise, bathing, and a large ingredient of hunger make, too.

They lay around in the shade, after breakfast, while Huck had a smoke, and then went off through the woods on an exploring expedition. They tramped gayly along, over decaying logs, through tangled underbrush, among solemn monarchs of the forest, hung from their crowns to the ground with a drooping regalia of grape-vines. Now and then they came upon snug nooks carpeted with grass and jeweled with flowers.

They found plenty of things to be delighted with, but nothing to be astonished at. They discovered that the island was about three miles long and a quarter of a mile wide, and that the shore it lay closest to was only separated from it by a narrow channel hardly two hundred yards wide. They took a swim about every hour, so it was close upon the middle of the afternoon when they got back to camp. They were too hungry to stop to fish, but they fared sumptuously upon cold ham, and then threw themselves down in the shade to talk. But the talk soon began to drag, and then died. The stillness, the solemnity that brooded in the woods, and the sense of loneliness, began to tell upon the spirits of the boys. They fell to thinking. A sort of undefined longing crept upon them. This took dim shape, presently — it was budding homesickness. Even Finn the Red-Handed was dreaming of his doorsteps and empty hogsheads. But they were all ashamed of their weakness, and none was brave enough to speak his thought.

For some time, now, the boys had been dully conscious of a peculiar sound in the distance, just as one sometimes is of the ticking of a clock which he takes no distinct note of. But now this mysterious sound became more pronounced, and forced a recognition. The boys started, glanced at each other, and then each assumed a listening attitude. There was a long silence, profound and unbroken; then a deep, sullen boom came floating down out of the distance.

'What is it!' exclaimed Joe, under his breath.

'I wonder,' said Tom in a whisper.

'Tain't thunder,' said Huckleberry, in an awed tone, 'becuz thunder —'

'Hark!' said Tom. 'Listen — don't talk.'

They waited a time that seemed an age, and then the same muffled boom troubled the solemn hush.

'Let's go and see.'

They sprang to their feet and hurried to the shore toward the town. They parted the bushes on the bank and peered out over the water. The little steam ferryboat was about a mile below the village, drifting with the current. Her broad deck seemed crowded with people. There were a great many skiffs rowing about or floating with the stream in the neighborhood of the ferryboat, but the boys could not determine what the men in them were doing. Presently a great jet of white smoke burst from the ferryboat's side, and as it expanded and rose in a lazy cloud, that same dull throb of sound was borne to the listeners again.

'I know now!' exclaimed Tom; 'somebody's drownded!'

'That's it!' said Huck; 'they done that last summer, when Bill Turner got drownded; they shoot a cannon over the water, and that makes him come up to the top. Yes, and they take loaves of bread and put quicksilver in 'em and set 'em afloat, and wherever there's anybody that's drownded, they'll float right there and stop.'

'Yes, I've heard about that,' said Joe. 'I wonder what makes the bread do that.'

'Oh, it ain't the bread, so much,' said Tom; 'I reckon it's mostly what they SAY over it before they start it out.'

'But they don't say anything over it,' said Huck. 'I've seen 'em and they don't.'

'Well, that's funny,' said Tom. 'But maybe they say it to themselves. Of COURSE they do. Anybody might know that.'

The other boys agreed that there was reason in what Tom said, because an ignorant lump of bread, uninstructed by an incantation, could not be expected to act very intelligently when set upon an errand of such gravity.

'By jings, I wish I was over there, now,' said Joe.

'I do too' said Huck 'I'd give heaps to know who it is.'

The boys still listened and watched. Presently a revealing thought flashed through Tom's mind, and he exclaimed:

'Boys, I know who's drownded — it's us!'

They felt like heroes in an instant. Here was a gorgeous triumph; they were missed; they were mourned; hearts were breaking on their account; tears were being shed; accusing memories of unkindness to these poor lost lads were rising up, and unavailing regrets and remorse were being indulged; and best of all, the departed were the talk of the whole town, and the envy of all the boys, as far as this dazzling notoriety was concerned. This was fine. It was worth while to be a pirate, after all.

As twilight drew on, the ferryboat went back to her accustomed business and the skiffs disappeared. The pirates returned to camp. They were jubilant with vanity over their new grandeur and the illustrious trouble they were making. They caught fish, cooked supper and ate it, and then fell to guessing at what the village was thinking and saying about them; and the pictures they drew of the public distress on their account were gratifying to look upon — from their point of view. But when the shadows of night closed them in, they gradually ceased to talk, and sat gazing into the fire, with their minds evidently wandering elsewhere. The excitement was gone, now, and Tom and Joe could not keep back thoughts of certain persons at home who were not enjoying this fine frolic as much as they were. Misgivings came; they grew troubled and unhappy; a sigh or two escaped, unawares. By and by Joe timidly ventured upon a roundabout 'feeler' as to how the others might look upon a return to civilization — not right now, but —

Tom withered him with derision! Huck, being uncommitted as yet, joined in with Tom, and the waverer quickly 'explained,' and was glad to get out of the scrape with as little taint of chicken-hearted homesickness clinging to his garments as he could. Mutiny was effectually laid to rest for the moment.

As the night deepened, Huck began to nod, and presently to snore. Joe followed next. Tom lay upon his elbow motionless, for some time, watching the two intently. At last he got up cautiously, on his knees, and went searching among the grass and the flickering reflections flung by the camp-fire. He picked up and inspected several large semi-cylinders of the thin white bark of a sycamore, and finally chose two which seemed to suit him. Then he knelt by the fire and painfully wrote something upon each of these with his 'red keel"; one he rolled up and put in his jacket pocket, and the other he put in Joe's hat and removed it to a little distance from the owner. And he also put into the hat certain schoolboy treasures of almost inestimable value — among them a lump of chalk, an India-rubber ball, three fishhooks, and one of that kind of marbles known as a 'sure 'nough crystal.' Then he tiptoed his way cautiously among the trees till he felt that he was out of hearing, and straightway broke into a keen run in the direction of the sandbar.

Chapter XV

A FEW minutes later Tom was in the shoal water of the bar, wading toward the Illinois shore. Before the depth reached his middle he was half-way over; the current would permit no more wading, now, so he struck out confidently to swim the remaining hundred yards. He swam quartering upstream, but still was swept downward rather faster than he had expected. However, he reached the shore finally, and drifted along till he found a low place and drew himself out. He put his hand on his jacket pocket, found his piece of bark safe, and then struck through the woods, following the shore, with streaming garments. Shortly before ten o'clock he came out into an open place opposite the village, and saw the ferryboat lying in the shadow of the trees and the high bank. Everything was quiet under the blinking stars. He crept down the bank, watching with all his eyes, slipped into the water, swam three or four strokes and climbed into the skiff that did 'yawl' duty at the boat's stern. He laid himself down under the thwarts and waited, panting.

Presently the cracked bell tapped and a voice gave the order to 'cast off.' A minute or two later the skiff's head was standing high up, against the boat's swell, and the voyage was begun. Tom felt happy in his success, for he knew it was the boat's last trip for the night. At the end of a long twelve or fifteen minutes the wheels stopped, and Tom slipped overboard and swam ashore in the dusk, landing fifty yards downstream, out of danger of possible stragglers.

He flew along unfrequented alleys, and shortly found himself at his aunt's back fence. He climbed over, approached the 'ell,' and looked in at the sitting-room window, for a light was burning there. There sat Aunt Polly, Sid, Mary, and Joe Harper's mother, grouped together, talking. They were by the bed, and the bed was between them and the door. Tom went to the door and began to softly lift the latch; then he pressed gently and the door yielded a crack; he continued pushing cautiously, and quaking every time it creaked, till he judged he might squeeze through on his knees; so he put his head through and began, warily.

'What makes the candle blow so?' said Aunt Polly. Tom hurried up. 'Why, that door's open, I believe. Why, of course it is. No end of strange things now. Go 'long and shut it, Sid.'

Tom disappeared under the bed just in time. He lay and 'breathed' himself for a time, and then crept to where he could almost touch his aunt's foot.

'But as I was saying,' said Aunt Polly, 'he warn't BAD, so to say — only mischEEvous. Only just giddy, and harum-scarum, you know. He warn't any more responsible than a colt. HE never meant any harm, and he was the best-hearted boy that ever was' — and she began to cry.

'It was just so with my Joe — always full of his devilment, and up to every kind of mischief, but he was just as unselfish and kind as he could be — and laws bless me, to think I went and whipped him for taking that cream, never once recollecting that I throwed it out myself because it was sour, and I never to see him again in this world, never, never, never, poor abused boy!' And Mrs. Harper sobbed as if her heart would break.

'I hope Tom's better off where he is,' said Sid, 'but if he'd been better in some ways —'

'SID!' Tom felt the glare of the old lady's eye, though he could not see it. 'Not a word against my Tom, now that he's gone! God'll take care of HIM — never you trouble YOURself, sir! Oh, Mrs. Harper, I don't know how to give him up! I don't know how to give him up! He was such a comfort to me, although he tormented my old heart out of me, 'most.'

'The Lord giveth and the Lord hath taken away — Blessed be the name of the Lord! But it's so hard — Oh, it's so hard! Only last Saturday my Joe busted a firecracker right under my nose and I knocked him sprawling. Little did I know then, how soon — Oh, if it was to do over again I'd hug him and bless him for it.'

'Yes, yes, yes, I know just how you feel, Mrs. Harper, I know just exactly how you feel. No longer ago than yesterday noon, my Tom took and filled the cat full of Pain-killer, and I did think the cretur would tear the house down. And God forgive me, I cracked Tom's head with my thimble, poor boy, poor dead boy. But he's out of all his troubles now. And the last words I ever heard him say was to reproach —'

But this memory was too much for the old lady, and she broke entirely down. Tom was snuffling, now, himself — and more in pity of himself than anybody else. He could hear Mary crying, and putting in a kindly word for him from time to time. He began to have a nobler opinion of himself than ever before. Still, he was sufficiently touched by his aunt's grief to long to rush out from under the bed and overwhelm her with joy — and the theatrical gorgeousness of the thing appealed strongly to his nature, too, but he resisted and lay still.

He went on listening, and gathered by odds and ends that it was conjectured at first that the boys had got drowned while taking a swim; then the small raft had been missed; next, certain boys said the missing lads had promised that the village should 'hear something' soon; the wise-heads had 'put this and that together' and decided that the lads had gone off on that raft and would turn up at the next town below, presently; but toward noon the raft had been found, lodged against the Missouri shore some five or six miles below the village — and then hope perished; they must be drowned, else hunger would have driven them home by nightfall if not sooner. It was believed that the search for the bodies had been a fruitless effort merely because the drowning must have occurred in midchannel, since the boys, being good swimmers, would otherwise have escaped to shore. This was Wednesday night. If the bodies continued missing until Sunday, all hope would be given over, and the funerals would be preached on that morning. Tom shuddered.

Mrs. Harper gave a sobbing good-night and turned to go. Then with a mutual impulse the two bereaved women flung themselves into each other's arms and had a good, consoling cry, and then parted. Aunt Polly was tender far beyond her wont, in her good-night to Sid and Mary. Sid snuffled a bit and Mary went off crying with all her heart.

Aunt Polly knelt down and prayed for Tom so touchingly, so appealingly, and with such measureless love in her words and her old trembling voice, that he was weltering in tears again, long before she was through.

He had to keep still long after she went to bed, for she kept making broken-hearted ejaculations from time to time, tossing unrestfully, and turning over. But at last she was still, only moaning a little in her sleep. Now the boy stole out, rose gradually by the bedside, shaded the candle-light with his hand, and stood regarding her. His heart was full of pity for her. He took out his sycamore scroll and placed it by the candle. But something occurred to him, and he lingered considering. His face lighted with a happy solution of his thought; he put the bark hastily in his pocket. Then he bent over and kissed the faded lips, and straightway made his stealthy exit, latching the door behind him.

He threaded his way back to the ferry landing, found nobody at large there, and walked boldly on board the boat, for he knew she was tenantless except that there was a watchman, who always turned in and slept like a graven image. He untied the skiff at the stern, slipped into it, and was soon rowing cautiously upstream. When he had pulled a mile above the village, he started quartering across and bent himself stoutly to his work. He hit the landing on the other side neatly, for this was a familiar bit of work to him. He was moved to capture the skiff, arguing that it might be considered a ship and therefore legitimate prey for a pirate, but he knew a thorough search would be made for it and that might end in revelations. So he stepped ashore and entered the woods.

He sat down and took a long rest, torturing himself meanwhile to keep awake, and then started warily down the home-stretch. The night was far spent. It was broad daylight before he found himself fairly abreast the island bar. He rested again until the sun was well up and gilding the great river with its splendor, and then he plunged into the stream. A little later he paused, dripping, upon the threshold of the camp, and heard Joe say:

'No, Tom's true-blue, Huck, and he'll come back. He won't desert. He knows that would be a disgrace to a pirate, and Tom's too proud for that sort of thing. He's up to something or other. Now I wonder what?'

'Well, the things is ours, anyway, ain't they?'

Pretty near, but not yet, Huck. The writing says they are if he ain't back here to breakfast.'

'Which he is!' exclaimed Tom, with fine dramatic effect, stepping grandly into camp.

A sumptuous breakfast of bacon and fish was shortly provided, and as the boys set to work upon it, Tom recounted (and adorned) his adventures. They were a vain and boastful company of heroes when the tale was done. Then Tom hid himself away in a shady nook to sleep till noon, and the other pirates got ready to fish and explore.

Chapter XVI

AFTER dinner all the gang turned out to hunt for turtle eggs on the bar. They went about poking sticks into the sand, and when they found a soft place they went down on their knees and dug with their hands. Sometimes they would take fifty or sixty eggs out of one hole. They were perfectly round white things a trifle smaller than an English walnut. They had a famous fried-egg feast that night, and another on Friday morning.

After breakfast they went whooping and prancing out on the bar, and chased each other round and round, shedding clothes as they went, until they were naked, and then continued the frolic far away up the shoal water of the bar, against the stiff current, which latter tripped their legs from under them from time to time and greatly increased the fun. And now and then they stooped in a group and splashed water in each other's faces with their palms, gradually approaching each other, with averted faces to avoid the strangling sprays, and finally gripping and struggling till the best man ducked his neighbor, and then they all went under in a tangle of white legs and arms and came up blowing, sputtering, laughing, and gasping for breath at one and the same time.

When they were well exhausted, they would run out and sprawl on the dry, hot sand, and lie there and cover themselves up with it, and by and by break for the water again and go through the original performance once more. Finally it occurred to them that their naked skin represented flesh-colored 'tights' very fairly; so they drew a ring in the sand and had a circus — with three clowns in it, for none would yield this proudest post to his neighbor.

Next they got their marbles and played 'knucks' and 'ring-taw' and 'keeps' till that amusement grew stale. Then Joe and Huck had another swim, but Tom would not venture, because he found that in kicking off his trousers he had kicked his string of rattlesnake rattles off his ankle, and he wondered how he had escaped cramp so long without the protection of this mysterious charm. He did not venture again until he had found it, and by that time the other boys were tired and ready to rest. They gradually wandered apart, dropped into the 'dumps,' and fell to gazing longingly across the wide river to where the village lay drowsing in the sun. Tom found himself writing 'BECKY' in the sand with his big toe; he scratched it out, and was angry with himself for his weakness. But he wrote it again, nevertheless; he could not help it. He erased it once more and then took himself out of temptation by driving the other boys together and joining them.

But Joe's spirits had gone down almost beyond resurrection. He was so homesick that he could hardly endure the misery of it. The tears lay very near the surface. Huck was melancholy, too. Tom was downhearted, but tried hard not to show it. He had a secret which he was not ready to tell, yet, but if this mutinous depression was not broken up soon, he would have to bring it out. He said, with a great show of cheerfulness:

'I bet there's been pirates on this island before, boys. We'll explore it again. They've hid treasures here somewhere. How'd you feel to light on a rotten chest full of gold and silver — hey?'

But it roused only faint enthusiasm, which faded out, with no reply. Tom tried one or two other seductions; but they failed, too. It was discouraging work. Joe sat poking up the sand with a stick and looking very gloomy. Finally he said:

'Oh, boys, let's give it up. I want to go home. It's so lonesome.'

'Oh no, Joe, you'll feel better by and by,' said Tom. 'Just think of the fishing that's here.'

'I don't care for fishing. I want to go home.'

'But, Joe, there ain't such another swimming-place anywhere.'

'Swimming's no good. I don't seem to care for it, somehow, when there ain't anybody to say I sha'n't go in. I mean to go home.'

'Oh, shucks! Baby! You want to see your mother, I reckon.'

'Yes, I DO want to see my mother — and you would, too, if you had one. I ain't any more baby than you are.' And Joe snuffled a little.

'Well, we'll let the cry-baby go home to his mother, won't we, Huck? Poor thing — does it want to see its mother? And so it shall. You like it here, don't you, Huck? We'll stay, won't we?'

Huck said, 'Y-e-s' — without any heart in it.

'I'll never speak to you again as long as I live,' said Joe, rising. 'There now!' And he moved moodily away and began to dress himself.

'Who cares!' said Tom. 'Nobody wants you to. Go 'long home and get laughed at. Oh, you're a nice pirate. Huck and me ain't cry-babies. We'll stay, won't we, Huck? Let him go if he wants to. I reckon we can get along without him, per'aps.'

But Tom was uneasy, nevertheless, and was alarmed to see Joe go sullenly on with his dressing. And then it was discomforting to see Huck eying Joe's preparations so wistfully, and keeping up such an ominous silence. Presently, without a parting word, Joe began to wade off toward the Illinois shore. Tom's heart began to sink. He glanced at Huck. Huck could not bear the look, and dropped his eyes. Then he said:

'I want to go, too, Tom. It was getting so lonesome anyway, and now it'll be worse. Let's us go, too, Tom.'

'I won't! You can all go, if you want to. I mean to stay.'

'Tom, I better go.'

'Well, go 'long — who's hendering you.'

Huck began to pick up his scattered clothes. He said:

'Tom, I wisht you'd come, too. Now you think it over. We'll wait for you when we get to shore.'

'Well, you'll wait a blame long time, that's all.'

Huck started sorrowfully away, and Tom stood looking after him, with a strong desire tugging at his heart to yield his pride and go along too. He hoped the boys would stop, but they still waded slowly on. It suddenly dawned on Tom that it was become very lonely and still. He made one final struggle with his pride, and then darted after his comrades, yelling:

'Wait! Wait! I want to tell you something!'

They presently stopped and turned around. When he got to where they were, he began unfolding his secret, and they listened moodily till at last they saw the 'point' he was driving at, and then they set up a war-whoop of applause and said it was 'splendid!' and said if he had told them at first, they wouldn't have started away. He made a plausible excuse; but his real reason had been the fear that not even the secret would keep them with him any very great length of time, and so he had meant to hold it in reserve as a last seduction.

The lads came gayly back and went at their sports again with a will, chattering all the time about Tom's stupendous plan and admiring the genius of it. After a dainty egg and fish dinner, Tom said he wanted to learn to smoke, now. Joe caught at the idea and said he would like to try, too. So Huck made pipes and filled them. These novices had never smoked anything before but cigars made of grape-vine, and they 'bit' the tongue, and were not considered manly anyway.

Now they stretched themselves out on their elbows and began to puff, charily, and with slender confidence. The smoke had an unpleasant taste, and they gagged a little, but Tom said:

'Why, it's just as easy! If I'd a knowed this was all, I'd a learnt long ago.'

'So would I,' said Joe. 'It's just nothing.'

'Why, many a time I've looked at people smoking, and thought well I wish I could do that; but I never thought I could,' said Tom.

'That's just the way with me, hain't it, Huck? You've heard me talk just that way — haven't you, Huck? I'll leave it to Huck if I haven't.'

'Yes — heaps of times,' said Huck.

'Well, I have too,' said Tom; 'oh, hundreds of times. Once down by the slaughter-house. Don't you remember, Huck? Bob Tanner was there, and Johnny Miller, and Jeff Thatcher, when I said it. Don't you remember, Huck, 'bout me saying that?'

'Yes, that's so,' said Huck. 'That was the day after I lost a white alley. No, 'twas the day before.'

'There — I told you so,' said Tom. 'Huck recollects it.'

'I bleeve I could smoke this pipe all day,' said Joe. 'I don't feel sick.'

'Neither do I,' said Tom. 'I could smoke it all day. But I bet you Jeff Thatcher couldn't.'

'Jeff Thatcher! Why, he'd keel over just with two draws. Just let him try it once. HE'D see!'

'I bet he would. And Johnny Miller — I wish could see Johnny Miller tackle it once.'

'Oh, don't I!' said Joe. 'Why, I bet you Johnny Miller couldn't any more do this than nothing. Just one little snifter would fetch HIM.'

'Deed it would, Joe. Say — I wish the boys could see us now.'

'So do I.'

'Say — boys, don't say anything about it, and some time when they're around, I'll come up to you and say, 'Joe, got a pipe? I want a smoke.' And you'll say, kind of careless like, as if it warn't anything, you'll say, 'Yes, I got my OLD pipe, and another one, but my tobacker ain't very good.' And I'll say, 'Oh, that's all right, if it's STRONG enough.' And then you'll out with the pipes, and we'll light up just as ca'm, and then just see 'em look!'

'By jings, that'll be gay, Tom! I wish it was NOW!'

'So do I! And when we tell 'em we learned when we was off pirating, won't they wish they'd been along?'

'Oh, I reckon not! I'll just BET they will!'

So the talk ran on. But presently it began to flag a trifle, and grow disjointed. The silences widened; the expectoration marvellously increased. Every pore inside the boys' cheeks became a spouting fountain; they could scarcely bail out the cellars under their tongues fast enough to prevent an inundation; little overflowings down their throats occurred in spite of all they could do, and sudden retchings followed every time. Both boys were looking very pale and miserable, now. Joe's pipe dropped from his nerveless fingers. Tom's followed. Both fountains were going furiously and both pumps bailing with might and main. Joe said feebly:

'I've lost my knife. I reckon I better go and find it.'

Tom said, with quivering lips and halting utterance:

'I'll help you. You go over that way and I'll hunt around by the spring. No, you needn't come, Huck — we can find it.'

So Huck sat down again, and waited an hour. Then he found it lonesome, and went to find his comrades. They were wide apart in the woods, both very pale, both fast asleep. But something informed him that if they had had any trouble they had got rid of it.

They were not talkative at supper that night. They had a humble look, and when Huck prepared his pipe after the meal and was going to prepare theirs, they said no, they were not feeling very well — something they ate at dinner had disagreed with them.

About midnight Joe awoke, and called the boys. There was a brooding oppressiveness in the air that seemed to bode something. The boys huddled themselves together and sought the friendly companionship of the fire, though the dull dead heat of the breathless atmosphere was stifling. They sat still, intent and waiting. The solemn hush continued. Beyond the light of the fire everything was swallowed up in the blackness of darkness. Presently there came a quivering glow that vaguely revealed the foliage for a moment and then vanished. By and by another came, a little stronger. Then another. Then a faint moan came sighing through the branches of the forest and the boys felt a fleeting breath upon their cheeks, and shuddered with the fancy that the Spirit of the Night had gone by. There was a pause. Now a weird flash turned night into day and showed every little grass-blade, separate and distinct, that grew about their feet. And it showed three white, startled faces, too. A deep peal of thunder went rolling and tumbling down the heavens and lost itself in sullen rumblings in the distance. A sweep of chilly air passed by, rustling all the leaves and snowing the flaky ashes broadcast about the fire. Another fierce glare lit up the forest and an instant crash followed that seemed to rend the tree-tops right over the boys' heads. They clung together in terror, in the thick gloom that followed. A few big rain-drops fell pattering upon the leaves.

'Quick! boys, go for the tent!' exclaimed Tom.

They sprang away, stumbling over roots and among vines in the dark, no two plunging in the same direction. A furious blast roared through the trees, making everything sing as it went. One blinding flash after another came, and peal on peal of deafening thunder. And now a drenching rain poured down and the rising hurricane drove it in sheets along the ground. The boys cried out to each other, but the roaring wind and the booming thunder-blasts drowned their voices utterly. However, one by one they straggled in at last and took shelter under the tent, cold, scared, and streaming with water; but to have company in misery seemed something to be grateful for. They could not talk, the old sail flapped so furiously, even if the other noises would have allowed them. The tempest rose higher and higher, and presently the sail tore loose from its fastenings and went winging away on the blast. The boys seized each others' hands and fled, with many tumblings and bruises, to the shelter of a great oak that stood upon the river-bank. Now the battle was at its highest. Under the ceaseless conflagration of lightning that flamed in the skies, everything below stood out in clean-cut and shadowless distinctness: the bending trees, the billowy river, white with foam, the driving spray of spume-flakes, the dim outlines of the high bluffs on the other side, glimpsed through the drifting cloud-rack and the slanting veil of rain. Every little while some giant tree yielded the fight and fell crashing through the younger growth; and the unflagging thunderpeals came now in ear-splitting explosive bursts, keen and sharp, and unspeakably appalling. The storm culminated in one matchless effort that seemed likely to tear the island to pieces, burn it up, drown it to the tree-tops, blow it away, and deafen every creature in it, all at one and the same moment. It was a wild night for homeless young heads to be out in.

But at last the battle was done, and the forces retired with weaker and weaker threatenings and grumblings, and peace resumed her sway. The boys went back to camp, a good deal awed; but they found there was still something to be thankful for, because the great sycamore, the shelter of their beds, was a ruin, now, blasted by the lightnings, and they were not under it when the catastrophe happened.

Everything in camp was drenched, the camp-fire as well; for they were but heedless lads, like their generation, and had made no provision against rain. Here was matter for dismay, for they were soaked through and chilled. They were eloquent in their distress; but they presently discovered that the fire had eaten so far up under the great log it had been built against (where it curved upward and separated itself from the ground), that a handbreadth or so of it had escaped wetting; so they patiently wrought until, with shreds and bark gathered from the under sides of sheltered logs, they coaxed the fire to burn again. Then they piled on great dead boughs till they had a roaring furnace, and were glad-hearted once more. They dried their boiled ham and had a feast, and after that they sat by the fire and expanded and glorified their midnight adventure until morning, for there was not a dry spot to sleep on, anywhere around.

As the sun began to steal in upon the boys, drowsiness came over them, and they went out on the sandbar and lay down to sleep. They got scorched out by and by, and drearily set about getting breakfast. After the meal they felt rusty, and stiff-jointed, and a little homesick once more. Tom saw the signs, and fell to cheering up the pirates as well as he could. But they cared nothing for marbles, or circus, or swimming, or anything. He reminded them of the imposing secret, and raised a ray of cheer. While it lasted, he got them interested in a new device. This was to knock off being pirates, for a while, and be Indians for a change. They were attracted by this idea; so it was not long before they were stripped, and striped from head to heel with black mud, like so many zebras — all of them chiefs, of course — and then they went tearing through the woods to attack an English settlement.

By and by they separated into three hostile tribes, and darted upon each other from ambush with dreadful war-whoops, and killed and scalped each other by thousands. It was a gory day. Consequently it was an extremely satisfactory one.

They assembled in camp toward supper-time, hungry and happy; but now a difficulty arose — hostile Indians could not break the bread of hospitality together without first making peace, and this was a simple impossibility without smoking a pipe of peace. There was no other process that ever they had heard of. Two of the savages almost wished they had remained pirates. However, there was no other way; so with such show of cheerfulness as they could muster they called for the pipe and took their whiff as it passed, in due form.

And behold, they were glad they had gone into savagery, for they had gained something; they found that they could now smoke a little without having to go and hunt for a lost knife; they did not get sick enough to be seriously uncomfortable. They were not likely to fool away this high promise for lack of effort. No, they practised cautiously, after supper, with right fair success, and so they spent a jubilant evening. They were prouder and happier in their new acquirement than they would have been in the scalping and skinning of the Six Nations. We will leave them to smoke and chatter and brag, since we have no further use for them at present.

Chapter XVII

BUT there was no hilarity in the little town that same tranquil Saturday afternoon. The Harpers, and Aunt Polly's family, were being put into mourning, with great grief and many tears. An unusual quiet possessed the village, although it was ordinarily quiet enough, in all conscience. The villagers conducted their concerns with an absent air, and talked little; but they sighed often. The Saturday holiday seemed a burden to the children. They had no heart in their sports, and gradually gave them up.

In the afternoon Becky Thatcher found herself moping about the deserted schoolhouse yard, and feeling very melancholy. But she found nothing there to comfort her. She soliloquized:

'Oh, if I only had a brass andiron-knob again! But I haven't got anything now to remember him by.' And she choked back a little sob.

Presently she stopped, and said to herself:

'It was right here. Oh, if it was to do over again, I wouldn't say that — I wouldn't say it for the whole world. But he's gone now; I'll never, never, never see him any more.'

This thought broke her down, and she wandered away, with tears rolling down her cheeks. Then quite a group of boys and girls — playmates of Tom's and Joe's — came by, and stood looking over the paling fence and talking in reverent tones of how Tom did so-and-so the last time they saw him, and how Joe said this and that small trifle (pregnant with awful prophecy, as they could easily see now!) — and each speaker pointed out the exact spot where the lost lads stood at the time, and then added something like 'and I was a-standing just so — just as I am now, and as if you was him — I was as close as that — and he smiled, just this way — and then something seemed to go all over me, like — awful, you know — and I never thought what it meant, of course, but I can see now!'

Then there was a dispute about who saw the dead boys last in life, and many claimed that dismal distinction, and offered evidences, more or less tampered with by the witness; and when it was ultimately decided who DID see the departed last, and exchanged the last words with them, the lucky parties took upon themselves a sort of sacred importance, and were gaped at and envied by all the rest. One poor chap, who had no other grandeur to offer, said with tolerably manifest pride in the remembrance:

'Well, Tom Sawyer he licked me once.'

But that bid for glory was a failure. Most of the boys could say that, and so that cheapened the distinction too much. The group loitered away, still recalling memories of the lost heroes, in awed voices.

When the Sunday-school hour was finished, the next morning, the bell began to toll, instead of ringing in the usual way. It was a very still Sabbath, and the mournful sound seemed in keeping with the musing hush that lay upon nature. The villagers began to gather, loitering a moment in the vestibule to converse in whispers about the sad event. But there was no whispering in the house; only the funereal rustling of dresses as the women gathered to their seats disturbed the silence there. None could remember when the little church had been so full before. There was finally a waiting pause, an expectant dumbness, and then Aunt Polly entered, followed by Sid and Mary, and they by the Harper family, all in deep black, and the whole congregation, the old minister as well, rose reverently and stood until the mourners were seated in the front pew. There was another communing silence, broken at intervals by muffled sobs, and then the minister spread his hands abroad and prayed. A moving hymn was sung, and the text followed: 'I am the Resurrection and the Life.'

As the service proceeded, the clergyman drew such pictures of the graces, the winning ways, and the rare promise of the lost lads that every soul there, thinking he recognized these pictures, felt a pang in remembering that he had persistently blinded himself to them always before, and had as persistently seen only faults and flaws in the poor boys. The minister related many a touching incident in the lives of the departed, too, which illustrated their sweet, generous natures, and the people could easily see, now, how noble and beautiful those episodes were, and remembered with grief that at the time they occurred they had seemed rank rascalities, well deserving of the cowhide. The congregation became more and more moved, as the pathetic tale went on, till at last the whole company broke down and joined the weeping mourners in a chorus of anguished sobs, the preacher himself giving way to his feelings, and crying in the pulpit.

There was a rustle in the gallery, which nobody noticed; a moment later the church door creaked; the minister raised his streaming eyes above his handkerchief, and stood transfixed! First one and then another pair of eyes followed the minister's, and then almost with one impulse the congregation rose and stared while the three dead boys came marching up the aisle, Tom in the lead, Joe next, and Huck, a ruin of drooping rags, sneaking sheepishly in the rear! They had been hid in the unused gallery listening to their own funeral sermon!

Aunt Polly, Mary, and the Harpers threw themselves upon their restored ones, smothered them with kisses and poured out thanksgivings, while poor Huck stood abashed and uncomfortable, not knowing exactly what to do or where to hide from so many unwelcoming eyes. He wavered, and started to slink away, but Tom seized him and said:

'Aunt Polly, it ain't fair. Somebody's got to be glad to see Huck.'

'And so they shall. I'm glad to see him, poor motherless thing!' And the loving attentions Aunt Polly lavished upon him were the one thing capable of making him more uncomfortable than he was before.

Suddenly the minister shouted at the top of his voice: 'Praise God from whom all blessings flow — SING! — and put your hearts in it!'

And they did. Old Hundred swelled up with a triumphant burst, and while it shook the rafters Tom Sawyer the

Pirate looked around upon the envying juveniles about him and confessed in his heart that this was the proudest moment of his life.

As the 'sold' congregation trooped out they said they would almost be willing to be made ridiculous again to hear Old Hundred sung like that once more.

Tom got more cuffs and kisses that day — according to Aunt Polly's varying moods — than he had earned before in a year; and he hardly knew which expressed the most gratefulness to God and affection for himself.

Chapter XVIII

THAT was Tom's great secret — the scheme to return home with his brother pirates and attend their own funerals. They had paddled over to the Missouri shore on a log, at dusk on Saturday, landing five or six miles below the village; they had slept in the woods at the edge of the town till nearly daylight, and had then crept through back lanes and alleys and finished their sleep in the gallery of the church among a chaos of invalided benches.

At breakfast, Monday morning, Aunt Polly and Mary were very loving to Tom, and very attentive to his wants. There was an unusual amount of talk. In the course of it Aunt Polly said:

'Well, I don't say it wasn't a fine joke, Tom, to keep everybody suffering 'most a week so you boys had a good time, but it is a pity you could be so hard-hearted as to let me suffer so. If you could come over on a log to go to your funeral, you could have come over and give me a hint some way that you warn't dead, but only run off.'

'Yes, you could have done that, Tom,' said Mary; 'and I believe you would if you had thought of it.'

'Would you, Tom?' said Aunt Polly, her face lighting wistfully. 'Say, now, would you, if you'd thought of it?'

'I — well, I don't know. 'Twould 'a' spoiled everything.'

'Tom, I hoped you loved me that much,' said Aunt Polly, with a grieved tone that discomforted the boy. 'It would have been something if you'd cared enough to THINK of it, even if you didn't DO it.'

'Now, auntie, that ain't any harm,' pleaded Mary; 'it's only Tom's giddy way — he is always in such a rush that he never thinks of anything.'

'More's the pity. Sid would have thought. And Sid would have come and DONE it, too. Tom, you'll look back, some day, when it's too late, and wish you'd cared a little more for me when it would have cost you so little.'

'Now, auntie, you know I do care for you,' said Tom.

'I'd know it better if you acted more like it.'

'I wish now I'd thought,' said Tom, with a repentant tone; 'but I dreamt about you, anyway. That's something, ain't it?'

'It ain't much — a cat does that much — but it's better than nothing. What did you dream?'

'Why, Wednesday night I dreamt that you was sitting over there by the bed, and Sid was sitting by the woodbox, and Mary next to him.'

'Well, so we did. So we always do. I'm glad your dreams could take even that much trouble about us.'

'And I dreamt that Joe Harper's mother was here.'

'Why, she was here! Did you dream any more?'

'Oh, lots. But it's so dim, now.'

'Well, try to recollect — can't you?'

'Somehow it seems to me that the wind — the wind blowed the — the —'

'Try harder, Tom! The wind did blow something. Come!'

Tom pressed his fingers on his forehead an anxious minute, and then said:

'I've got it now! I've got it now! It blowed the candle!'

'Mercy on us! Go on, Tom — go on!'

'And it seems to me that you said, 'Why, I believe that that door —''

'Go ON, Tom!'

'Just let me study a moment — just a moment. Oh, yes — you said you believed the door was open.'

'As I'm sitting here, I did! Didn't I, Mary! Go on!'

'And then — and then — well I won't be certain, but it seems like as if you made Sid go and — and —'

'Well? Well? What did I make him do, Tom? What did I make him do?'

'You made him — you — Oh, you made him shut it.'

'Well, for the land's sake! I never heard the beat of that in all my days! Don't tell ME there ain't anything in dreams, any more. Sereny Harper shall know of this before I'm an hour older. I'd like to see her get around THIS with her rubbage 'bout superstition. Go on, Tom!'

'Oh, it's all getting just as bright as day, now. Next you said I warn't BAD, only mischeevous and harum-scarum, and not any more responsible than — than — I think it was a colt, or something.'

'And so it was! Well, goodness gracious! Go on, Tom!'

'And then you began to cry.'

'So I did. So I did. Not the first time, neither. And then —'

'Then Mrs. Harper she began to cry, and said Joe was just the same, and she wished she hadn't whipped him for taking cream when she'd throwed it out her own self —'

'Tom! The sperrit was upon you! You was a prophesying — that's what you was doing! Land alive, go on, Tom!'

'Then Sid he said — he said —'

'I don't think I said anything,' said Sid.

'Yes you did, Sid,' said Mary.

'Shut your heads and let Tom go on! What did he say, Tom?'

'He said — I THINK he said he hoped I was better off where I was gone to, but if I'd been better sometimes —'

'THERE, d'you hear that! It was his very words!'

'And you shut him up sharp.'

'I lay I did! There must 'a' been an angel there. There WAS an angel there, somewheres!'

'And Mrs. Harper told about Joe scaring her with a firecracker, and you told about Peter and the Painkiller —'

'Just as true as I live!'

'And then there was a whole lot of talk 'bout dragging the river for us, and 'bout having the funeral Sunday, and then you and old Miss Harper hugged and cried, and she went.'

'It happened just so! It happened just so, as sure as I'm a-sitting in these very tracks. Tom, you couldn't told it more like if you'd 'a' seen it! And then what? Go on, Tom!'

'Then I thought you prayed for me — and I could see you and hear every word you said. And you went to bed, and I was so sorry that I took and wrote on a piece of sycamore bark, 'We ain't dead — we are only off being pirates,' and put it on the table by the candle; and then you looked so good, laying there asleep, that I thought I went and leaned over and kissed you on the lips.'

'Did you, Tom, DID you! I just forgive you everything for that!' And she seized the boy in a crushing embrace that made him feel like the guiltiest of villains.

'It was very kind, even though it was only a — dream,' Sid soliloquized just audibly.

'Shut up, Sid! A body does just the same in a dream as he'd do if he was awake. Here's a big Milum apple I've been saving for you, Tom, if you was ever found again — now go 'long to school. I'm thankful to the good God and Father of us all I've got you back, that's long-suffering and merciful to them that believe on Him and keep His word, though goodness knows I'm unworthy of it, but if only the worthy ones got His blessings and had His hand to help them over the rough places, there's few enough would smile here or ever enter into His rest when the long night comes. Go 'long Sid, Mary, Tom — take yourselves off — you've hendered me long enough.'

The children left for school, and the old lady to call on Mrs. Harper and vanquish her realism with Tom's marvellous dream. Sid had better judgment than to utter the thought that was in his mind as he left the house. It was this: 'Pretty thin — as long a dream as that, without any mistakes in it!'

What a hero Tom was become, now! He did not go skipping and prancing, but moved with a dignified swagger as became a pirate who felt that the public eye was on him. And indeed it was; he tried not to seem to see the looks or hear the remarks as he passed along, but they were food and drink to him. Smaller boys than himself flocked at his heels, as proud to be seen with him, and tolerated by him, as if he had been the drummer at the head of a procession or the elephant leading a menagerie into town. Boys of his own size pretended not to know he had been away at all; but they were consuming with envy, nevertheless. They would have given anything to have that swarthy suntanned skin of his, and his glittering notoriety; and Tom would not have parted with either for a circus.

At school the children made so much of him and of Joe, and delivered such eloquent admiration from their eyes, that the two heroes were not long in becoming insufferably 'stuck-up.' They began to tell their adventures to hungry listeners — but they only began; it was not a thing likely to have an end, with imaginations like theirs to furnish material. And finally, when they got out their pipes and went serenely puffing around, the very summit of glory was reached.

Tom decided that he could be independent of Becky Thatcher now. Glory was sufficient. He would live for glory. Now that he was distinguished, maybe she would be wanting to 'make up.' Well, let her — she should see that he could be as indifferent as some other people. Presently she arrived. Tom pretended not to see her. He moved away and joined a group of boys and girls and began to talk. Soon he observed that she was tripping gayly back and forth with flushed face and dancing eyes, pretending to be busy chasing schoolmates, and screaming with laughter when she made a capture; but he noticed that she always made her captures in his vicinity, and that she seemed to cast a conscious eye in his direction at such times, too. It gratified all the vicious vanity that was in him; and so, instead of winning him, it only 'set him up' the more and made him the more diligent to avoid betraying that he knew she was about. Presently she gave over skylarking, and moved irresolutely about, sighing once or twice and glancing furtively and wistfully toward Tom. Then she observed that now Tom was talking more particularly to Amy Lawrence than to any one else. She felt a sharp pang and grew disturbed and uneasy at once. She tried to go away, but her feet were treacherous, and carried her to the group instead. She said to a girl almost at Tom's elbow — with sham vivacity:

'Why, Mary Austin! you bad girl, why didn't you come to Sunday-school?'

'I did come — didn't you see me?'

'Why, no! Did you? Where did you sit?'

'I was in Miss Peters' class, where I always go. I saw YOU.'

'Did you? Why, it's funny I didn't see you. I wanted to tell you about the picnic.'

'Oh, that's jolly. Who's going to give it?'

'My ma's going to let me have one.'

'Oh, goody; I hope she'll let ME come.'

'Well, she will. The picnic's for me. She'll let anybody come that I want, and I want you.'

'That's ever so nice. When is it going to be?'

'By and by. Maybe about vacation.'

'Oh, won't it be fun! You going to have all the girls and boys?'

'Yes, every one that's friends to me — or wants to be"; and she glanced ever so furtively at Tom, but he talked right along to Amy Lawrence about the terrible storm on the island, and how the lightning tore the great sycamore tree 'all to flinders' while he was 'standing within three feet of it.'

'Oh, may I come?' said Grace Miller.

'Yes.'

'And me?' said Sally Rogers.

'Yes.'

'And me, too?' said Susy Harper. 'And Joe?'

'Yes.'

And so on, with clapping of joyful hands till all the group had begged for invitations but Tom and Amy. Then Tom turned coolly away, still talking, and took Amy with him. Becky's lips trembled and the tears came to her eyes; she hid these signs with a forced gayety and went on chattering, but the life had gone out of the picnic, now, and out of everything else; she got away as soon as she could and hid herself and had what her sex call 'a good cry.' Then she sat moody, with wounded pride, till the bell rang. She roused up, now, with a vindictive cast in her eye, and gave her plaited tails a shake and said she knew what SHE'D do.

At recess Tom continued his flirtation with Amy with jubilant self-satisfaction. And he kept drifting about to find Becky and lacerate her with the performance. At last he spied her, but there was a sudden falling of his mercury. She was sitting cosily on a little bench behind the schoolhouse looking at a picture-book with Alfred Temple — and so absorbed were they, and their heads so close together over the book, that they did not seem to be conscious of anything in the world besides. Jealousy ran red-hot through Tom's veins. He began to hate himself for throwing away the chance Becky had offered for a reconciliation. He called himself a fool, and all the hard names he could think of. He wanted to cry with vexation. Amy chatted happily along, as they walked, for her heart was singing, but Tom's tongue had lost its function. He did not hear what Amy was saying, and whenever she paused expectantly he could only stammer an awkward assent, which was as often misplaced as otherwise. He kept drifting to the rear of the schoolhouse, again and again, to sear his eyeballs with the hateful spectacle there. He could not help it. And it maddened him to see, as he thought he saw, that Becky Thatcher never once suspected that he was even in the land of the living. But she did see, nevertheless; and she knew she was winning her fight, too, and was glad to see him suffer as she had suffered.

Amy's happy prattle became intolerable. Tom hinted at things he had to attend to; things that must be done; and time was fleeting. But in vain — the girl chirped on. Tom thought, 'Oh, hang her, ain't I ever going to get rid of her?' At last he must be attending to those things — and she said artlessly that she would be 'around' when school let out. And he hastened away, hating her for it.

'Any other boy!' Tom thought, grating his teeth. 'Any boy in the whole town but that Saint Louis smarty that thinks he dresses so fine and is aristocracy! Oh, all right, I licked you the first day you ever saw this town, mister, and I'll lick you again! You just wait till I catch you out! I'll just take and —'

And he went through the motions of thrashing an imaginary boy — pummelling the air, and kicking and gouging. 'Oh, you do, do you? You holler 'nough, do you? Now, then, let that learn you!' And so the imaginary flogging was finished to his satisfaction.

Tom fled home at noon. His conscience could not endure any more of Amy's grateful happiness, and his jealousy could bear no more of the other distress. Becky resumed her picture inspections with Alfred, but as the minutes dragged along and no Tom came to suffer, her triumph began to cloud and she lost interest; gravity and absent-mindedness followed, and then melancholy; two or three times she pricked up her ear at a footstep, but it was a false hope; no Tom came. At last she grew entirely miserable and wished she hadn't carried it so far. When poor Alfred, seeing that he was losing her, he did not know how, kept exclaiming: 'Oh, here's a jolly one! look at this!' she lost patience at last, and said, 'Oh, don't bother me! I don't care for them!' and burst into tears, and got up and walked away.

Alfred dropped alongside and was going to try to comfort her, but she said:

'Go away and leave me alone, can't you! I hate you!'

So the boy halted, wondering what he could have done — for she had said she would look at pictures all through the nooning — and she walked on, crying. Then Alfred went musing into the deserted schoolhouse. He was humiliated and angry. He easily guessed his way to the truth — the girl had simply made a convenience of him to vent her spite upon Tom Sawyer. He was far from hating Tom the less when this thought occurred to him. He wished there was some way to get that boy into trouble without much risk to himself. Tom's spelling-book fell under his eye. Here was his opportunity. He gratefully opened to the lesson for the afternoon and poured ink upon the page.

Becky, glancing in at a window behind him at the moment, saw the act, and moved on, without discovering herself. She started homeward, now, intending to find Tom and tell him; Tom would be thankful and their troubles would be healed. Before she was half way home, however, she had changed her mind. The thought of Tom's treatment of her when she was talking about her picnic came scorching back and filled her with shame. She resolved to let him get whipped on the damaged spelling-book's account, and to hate him forever, into the bargain.

Chapter XIX

TOM arrived at home in a dreary mood, and the first thing his aunt said to him showed him that he had brought his sorrows to an unpromising market:

'Tom, I've a notion to skin you alive!'

'Auntie, what have I done?'

'Well, you've done enough. Here I go over to Sereny Harper, like an old softy, expecting I'm going to make her believe all that rubbage about that dream, when lo and behold you she'd found out from Joe that you was over here and heard all the talk we had that night. Tom, I don't know what is to become of a boy that will act like that. It makes me feel so bad to think you could let me go to Sereny Harper and make such a fool of myself and never say a word.'

This was a new aspect of the thing. His smartness of the morning had seemed to Tom a good joke before, and very ingenious. It merely looked mean and shabby now. He hung his head and could not think of anything to say for a moment. Then he said:

'Auntie, I wish I hadn't done it — but I didn't think.'

'Oh, child, you never think. You never think of anything but your own selfishness. You could think to come all the way over here from Jackson's Island in the night to laugh at our troubles, and you could think to fool me with a lie about a dream; but you couldn't ever think to pity us and save us from sorrow.'

'Auntie, I know now it was mean, but I didn't mean to be mean. I didn't, honest. And besides, I didn't come over here to laugh at you that night.'

'What did you come for, then?'

'It was to tell you not to be uneasy about us, because we hadn't got drownded.'

'Tom, Tom, I would be the thankfullest soul in this world if I could believe you ever had as good a thought as that, but you know you never did — and I know it, Tom.'

'Indeed and 'deed I did, auntie — I wish I may never stir if I didn't.'

'Oh, Tom, don't lie — don't do it. It only makes things a hundred times worse.'

'It ain't a lie, auntie; it's the truth. I wanted to keep you from grieving — that was all that made me come.'

'I'd give the whole world to believe that — it would cover up a power of sins, Tom. I'd 'most be glad you'd run off and acted so bad. But it ain't reasonable; because, why didn't you tell me, child?'

'Why, you see, when you got to talking about the funeral, I just got all full of the idea of our coming and hiding in the church, and I couldn't somehow bear to spoil it. So I just put the bark back in my pocket and kept mum.'

'What bark?'

'The bark I had wrote on to tell you we'd gone pirating. I wish, now, you'd waked up when I kissed you — I do, honest.'

The hard lines in his aunt's face relaxed and a sudden tenderness dawned in her eyes.

'DID you kiss me, Tom?'

'Why, yes, I did.'

'Are you sure you did, Tom?'

'Why, yes, I did, auntie — certain sure.'

'What did you kiss me for, Tom?'

'Because I loved you so, and you laid there moaning and I was so sorry.'

The words sounded like truth. The old lady could not hide a tremor in her voice when she said:

'Kiss me again, Tom! — and be off with you to school, now, and don't bother me any more.'

The moment he was gone, she ran to a closet and got out the ruin of a jacket which Tom had gone pirating in. Then she stopped, with it in her hand, and said to herself:

'No, I don't dare. Poor boy, I reckon he's lied about it — but it's a blessed, blessed lie, there's such a comfort come from it. I hope the Lord — I KNOW the Lord will forgive him, because it was such goodheartedness in him to tell it. But I don't want to find out it's a lie. I won't look.'

She put the jacket away, and stood by musing a minute. Twice she put out her hand to take the garment again, and twice she refrained. Once more she ventured, and this time she fortified herself with the thought: 'It's a good lie — it's a good lie — I won't let it grieve me.' So she sought the jacket pocket. A moment later she was reading Tom's piece of bark through flowing tears and saying: 'I could forgive the boy, now, if he'd committed a million sins!'

CHAPTER XX

THERE was something about Aunt Polly's manner, when she kissed Tom, that swept away his low spirits and made him lighthearted and happy again. He started to school and had the luck of coming upon Becky Thatcher at the head of Meadow Lane. His mood always determined his manner. Without a moment's hesitation he ran to her and said:

'I acted mighty mean to-day, Becky, and I'm so sorry. I won't ever, ever do that way again, as long as ever I live — please make up, won't you?'

The girl stopped and looked him scornfully in the face:

'I'll thank you to keep yourself TO yourself, Mr. Thomas Sawyer. I'll never speak to you again.'

She tossed her head and passed on. Tom was so stunned that he had not even presence of mind enough to say 'Who cares, Miss Smarty?' until the right time to say it had gone by. So he said nothing. But he was in a fine rage, nevertheless. He moped into the schoolyard wishing she were a boy, and imagining how he would trounce her if she were. He presently encountered her and delivered a stinging remark as he passed. She hurled one in return, and the angry breach was complete. It seemed to Becky, in her hot resentment, that she could hardly wait for school to 'take in,' she was so impatient to see Tom flogged for the injured spelling-book. If she had had any lingering notion of exposing Alfred Temple, Tom's offensive fling had driven it entirely away.

Poor girl, she did not know how fast she was nearing trouble herself. The master, Mr. Dobbins, had reached middle age with an unsatisfied ambition. The darling of his desires was, to be a doctor, but poverty had decreed that he should be nothing higher than a village schoolmaster. Every day he took a mysterious book out of his desk and absorbed himself in it at times when no classes were reciting. He kept that book under lock and key. There was not an urchin in school but was perishing to have a glimpse of it, but the chance never came. Every boy and girl had a theory about the nature of that book; but no two theories were alike, and there was no way of getting at the facts in the case. Now, as Becky was passing by the desk, which stood near the door, she noticed that the key was in the lock! It was a precious moment. She glanced around; found herself alone, and the next instant she had the book in her hands. The title-page — Professor Somebody's ANATOMY — carried no information to her mind; so she began to turn the leaves. She came at once upon a handsomely engraved and colored frontispiece — a human figure, stark naked. At that moment a shadow fell on the page and Tom Sawyer stepped in at the door and caught a glimpse of the picture. Becky snatched at the book to close it, and had the hard luck to tear the pictured page half down the middle. She thrust the volume into the desk, turned the key, and burst out crying with shame and vexation.

'Tom Sawyer, you are just as mean as you can be, to sneak up on a person and look at what they're looking at.'

'How could I know you was looking at anything?'

'You ought to be ashamed of yourself, Tom Sawyer; you know you're going to tell on me, and oh, what shall I do, what shall I do! I'll be whipped, and I never was whipped in school.'

Then she stamped her little foot and said:

'BE so mean if you want to! I know something that's going to happen. You just wait and you'll see! Hateful, hateful, hateful!' — and she flung out of the house with a new explosion of crying.

Tom stood still, rather flustered by this onslaught. Presently he said to himself:

'What a curious kind of a fool a girl is! Never been licked in school! Shucks! What's a licking! That's just like a girl — they're so thin-skinned and chicken-hearted. Well, of course I ain't going to tell old Dobbins on this little fool, because there's other ways of getting even on her, that ain't so mean; but what of it? Old Dobbins will ask who it was tore his book. Nobody'll answer. Then he'll do just the way he always does — ask first one and then t'other, and when he comes to the right girl he'll know it, without any telling. Girls' faces always tell on them. They ain't got any backbone. She'll get licked. Well, it's a kind of a tight place for Becky Thatcher, because there ain't any way out of it.' Tom conned the thing a moment longer, and then added: 'All right, though; she'd like to see me in just such a fix — let her sweat it out!'

Tom joined the mob of skylarking scholars outside. In a few moments the master arrived and school 'took in.' Tom did not feel a strong interest in his studies. Every time he stole a glance at the girls' side of the room Becky's face troubled him. Considering all things, he did not want to pity her, and yet it was all he could do to help it. He could get up no exultation that was really worthy the name. Presently the spelling-book discovery was made, and Tom's mind was entirely full of his own matters for a while after that. Becky roused up from her lethargy of distress and showed good interest in the proceedings. She did not expect that Tom could get out of his trouble by denying that he spilt the ink on the book himself; and she was right. The denial only seemed to make the thing worse for Tom. Becky supposed she would be glad of that, and she tried to believe she was glad of it, but she found she was not certain. When the worst came to the worst, she had an impulse to get up and tell on Alfred Temple, but she made an effort and forced herself to keep still — because, said she to herself, 'he'll tell about me tearing the picture sure. I wouldn't say a word, not to save his life!'

Tom took his whipping and went back to his seat not at all broken-hearted, for he thought it was possible that he had unknowingly upset the ink on the spellingbook himself, in some skylarking bout — he had denied it for form's sake and because it was custom, and had stuck to the denial from principle.

A whole hour drifted by, the master sat nodding in his throne, the air was drowsy with the hum of study. By and by, Mr. Dobbins straightened himself up, yawned, then unlocked his desk, and reached for his book, but seemed undecided whether to take it out or leave it. Most of the pupils glanced up languidly, but there were two among them that watched his movements with intent eyes. Mr. Dobbins fingered his book absently for a while, then took it out and settled himself in his chair to read! Tom shot a glance at

Becky. He had seen a hunted and helpless rabbit look as she did, with a gun levelled at its head. Instantly he forgot his quarrel with her. Quick — something must be done! done in a flash, too! But the very imminence of the emergency paralyzed his invention. Good! — he had an inspiration! He would run and snatch the book, spring through the door and fly. But his resolution shook for one little instant, and the chance was lost — the master opened the volume. If Tom only had the wasted opportunity back again! Too late. There was no help for Becky now, he said. The next moment the master faced the school. Every eye sank under his gaze. There was that in it which smote even the innocent with fear. There was silence while one might count ten — the master was gathering his wrath. Then he spoke: 'Who tore this book?'

There was not a sound. One could have heard a pin drop. The stillness continued; the master searched face after face for signs of guilt.

'Benjamin Rogers, did you tear this book?'

A denial. Another pause.

'Joseph Harper, did you?'

Another denial. Tom's uneasiness grew more and more intense under the slow torture of these proceedings. The master scanned the ranks of boys — considered a while, then turned to the girls:

'Amy Lawrence?'

A shake of the head.

'Gracie Miller?'

The same sign.

‘Susan Harper, did you do this?’

Another negative. The next girl was Becky Thatcher. Tom was trembling from head to foot with excitement and a sense of the hopelessness of the situation.

‘Rebecca Thatcher’ [Tom glanced at her face — it was white with terror] — ‘did you tear — no, look me in the face’ [her hands rose in appeal] — ‘did you tear this book?’

A thought shot like lightning through Tom’s brain. He sprang to his feet and shouted — ‘I done it!’

The school stared in perplexity at this incredible folly. Tom stood a moment, to gather his dismembered faculties; and when he stepped forward to go to his punishment the surprise, the gratitude, the adoration that shone upon him out of poor Becky’s eyes seemed pay enough for a hundred floggings. Inspired by the splendor of his own act, he took without an outcry the most merciless flaying that even Mr. Dobbins had ever administered; and also received with indifference the added cruelty of a command to remain two hours after school should be dismissed — for he knew who would wait for him outside till his captivity was done, and not count the tedious time as loss, either.

Tom went to bed that night planning vengeance against Alfred Temple; for with shame and repentance Becky had told him all, not forgetting her own treachery; but even the longing for vengeance had to give way, soon, to pleasanter musings, and he fell asleep at last with Becky’s latest words lingering dreamily in his ear —

‘Tom, how COULD you be so noble!’

Chapter XXI

VACATION was approaching. The schoolmaster, always severe, grew severer and more exacting than ever, for he wanted the school to make a good showing on 'Examination' day. His rod and his ferule were seldom idle now — at least among the smaller pupils. Only the biggest boys, and young ladies of eighteen and twenty, escaped lashing. Mr. Dobbins' lashings were very vigorous ones, too; for although he carried, under his wig, a perfectly bald and shiny head, he had only reached middle age, and there was no sign of feebleness in his muscle. As the great day approached, all the tyranny that was in him came to the surface; he seemed to take a vindictive pleasure in punishing the least shortcomings. The consequence was, that the smaller boys spent their days in terror and suffering and their nights in plotting revenge. They threw away no opportunity to do the master a mischief. But he kept ahead all the time. The retribution that followed every vengeful success was so sweeping and majestic that the boys always retired from the field badly worsted. At last they conspired together and hit upon a plan that promised a dazzling victory. They swore in the sign-painter's boy, told him the scheme, and asked his help. He had his own reasons for being delighted, for the master boarded in his father's family and had given the boy ample cause to hate him. The master's wife would go on a visit to the country in a few days, and there would be nothing to interfere with the plan; the master always prepared himself for great occasions by getting pretty well fuddled, and the sign-painter's boy said that when the dominie had reached the proper condition on Examination Evening he would 'manage the thing' while he napped in his chair; then he would have him awakened at the right time and hurried away to school.

In the fulness of time the interesting occasion arrived. At eight in the evening the schoolhouse was brilliantly lighted, and adorned with wreaths and festoons of foliage and flowers. The master sat throned in his great chair upon a raised platform, with his blackboard behind him. He was looking tolerably mellow. Three rows of benches on each side and six rows in front of him were occupied by the dignitaries of the town and by the parents of the pupils. To his left, back of the rows of citizens, was a spacious temporary platform upon which were seated the scholars who were to take part in the exercises of the evening; rows of small boys, washed and dressed to an intolerable state of discomfort; rows of gawky big boys; snowbanks of girls and young ladies clad in lawn and muslin and conspicuously conscious of their bare arms, their grandmothers' ancient trinkets, their bits of pink and blue ribbon and the flowers in their hair. All the rest of the house was filled with non-participating scholars.

The exercises began. A very little boy stood up and sheepishly recited, 'You'd scarce expect one of my age to speak in public on the stage,' etc. — accompanying himself with the painfully exact and spasmodic gestures which a machine might have used — supposing the machine to be a trifle out of order. But he got through safely, though cruelly scared, and got a fine round of applause when he made his manufactured bow and retired.

A little shamefaced girl lisped, 'Mary had a little lamb,' etc., performed a compassion-inspiring curtsy, got her meed of applause, and sat down flushed and happy.

Tom Sawyer stepped forward with conceited confidence and soared into the unquenchable and indestructible 'Give me liberty or give me death' speech, with fine fury and frantic gesticulation, and broke down in the middle of it. A ghastly stage-fright seized him, his legs quaked under him and he was like to choke. True, he had the manifest sympathy of the house but he had the house's silence, too, which was even worse than its sympathy. The master frowned, and this completed the disaster. Tom struggled awhile and then retired, utterly defeated. There was a weak attempt at applause, but it died early.

'The Boy Stood on the Burning Deck' followed; also 'The Assyrian Came Down,' and other declamatory gems. Then there were reading exercises, and a spelling fight. The meagre Latin class recited with honor. The prime feature of the evening was in order, now — original 'compositions' by the young ladies. Each in her turn stepped forward to the edge of the platform, cleared her throat, held up her manuscript (tied with dainty ribbon), and proceeded to read, with labored attention to 'expression' and punctuation. The themes were the same that had been illuminated upon similar occasions by their mothers before them, their grandmothers, and doubtless all their ancestors in the female line clear back to the Crusades. 'Friendship' was one; 'Memories of Other Days"; 'Religion in History"; 'Dream Land"; 'The Advantages of Culture"; 'Forms of Political Government Compared and Contrasted"; 'Melancholy"; 'Filial Love"; 'Heart Longings,' etc., etc.

A prevalent feature in these compositions was a nursed and petted melancholy; another was a wasteful and opulent gush of 'fine language"; another was a tendency to lug in by the ears particularly prized words and phrases until they were worn entirely out; and a peculiarity that conspicuously marked and marred them was the inveterate and intolerable sermon that wagged its crippled tail at the end of each and every one of them. No matter what the subject might be, a brain-racking effort was made to squirm it into some aspect or other that the moral and religious mind could contemplate with edification. The glaring insincerity of these sermons was not sufficient to compass the banishment of the fashion from the schools, and it is not sufficient to-day; it never will be sufficient while the world stands, perhaps. There is no school in all our land where the young ladies do not feel obliged to close their compositions with a sermon; and you will find that the sermon of the most frivolous and the least religious girl in the school is always the longest and the most relentlessly pious. But enough of this. Homely truth is unpalatable.

Let us return to the 'Examination.' The first composition that was read was one entitled 'Is this, then, Life?' Perhaps the reader can endure an extract from it:

'In the common walks of life, with what delightful emotions does the youthful mind look forward to some anticipated scene of festivity! Imagination is busy sketching rose-tinted pictures of joy. In fancy, the voluptuous votary of fashion sees herself amid the festive throng, 'the observed of all observers.' Her graceful form, arrayed in snowy robes, is whirling through the mazes of the joyous dance; her eye is brightest, her step is lightest in the gay assembly.

'In such delicious fancies time quickly glides by, and the welcome hour arrives for her entrance into the Elysian world, of which she has had such bright dreams. How fairy-like does everything appear to her enchanted vision! Each new scene is more charming than the last. But after a while she finds that beneath this goodly exterior, all is vanity, the flattery which once charmed her soul, now grates harshly upon her ear; the ball-room has lost its charms; and with wasted health and imbittered heart, she turns away with the conviction that earthly pleasures cannot satisfy the longings of the soul!'

And so forth and so on. There was a buzz of gratification from time to time during the reading, accompanied by whispered ejaculations of 'How sweet!' 'How eloquent!' 'So true!' etc., and after the thing had closed with a peculiarly afflicting sermon the applause was enthusiastic.

Then arose a slim, melancholy girl, whose face had the 'interesting' paleness that comes of pills and indigestion, and read a 'poem.' Two stanzas of it will do:

'A MISSOURI MAIDEN'S FAREWELL TO ALABAMA

'Alabama, good-bye! I love thee well!
But yet for a while do I leave thee now!
Sad, yes, sad thoughts of thee my heart doth swell,
And burning recollections throng my brow!
For I have wandered through thy flowery woods;
Have roamed and read near Tallapoosa's stream;
Have listened to Tallassee's warring floods,
And wooed on Coosa's side Aurora's beam.

'Yet shame I not to bear an o'er-full heart,
Nor blush to turn behind my tearful eyes;
'Tis from no stranger land I now must part,
'Tis to no strangers left I yield these sighs.
Welcome and home were mine within this State,
Whose vales I leave — whose spires fade fast from me
And cold must be mine eyes, and heart, and tete,
When, dear Alabama! they turn cold on thee!'

There were very few there who knew what 'tete' meant, but the poem was very satisfactory, nevertheless.

Next appeared a dark-complexioned, black-eyed, black-haired young lady, who paused an impressive moment, assumed a tragic expression, and began to read in a measured, solemn tone:

'A VISION

'Dark and tempestuous was night. Around the throne on high not a single star quivered; but the deep intonations of the heavy thunder constantly vibrated upon the ear; whilst the terrific lightning revelled in angry mood through the cloudy chambers of heaven, seeming to scorn the power exerted over its terror by the illustrious Franklin! Even the boisterous winds unanimously came forth from their mystic homes, and blustered about as if to enhance by their aid the wildness of the scene.

'At such a time, so dark, so dreary, for human sympathy my very spirit sighed; but instead thereof,

'My dearest friend, my counsellor, my comforter and guide — My joy in grief, my second bliss in joy,' came to my side. She moved like one of those bright beings pictured in the sunny walks of fancy's Eden by the romantic and young, a queen of beauty unadorned save by her own transcendent loveliness. So soft was her step, it failed to make even a sound, and but for the magical thrill imparted by her genial touch, as other unobtrusive beauties, she would have glided away un-perceived — unsought. A strange sadness rested upon her features, like icy tears upon the robe of December, as she pointed to the contending elements without, and bade me contemplate the two beings presented.'

This nightmare occupied some ten pages of manuscript and wound up with a sermon so destructive of all hope to non-Presbyterians that it took the first prize. This composition was considered to be the very finest effort of the evening. The mayor of the village, in delivering the prize to the author of it, made a warm speech in which he said that it was by far the most 'eloquent' thing he had ever listened to, and that Daniel Webster himself might well be proud of it.

It may be remarked, in passing, that the number of compositions in which the word 'beauteous' was over-fondled, and human experience referred to as 'life's page,' was up to the usual average.

Now the master, mellow almost to the verge of geniality, put his chair aside, turned his back to the audience, and began to draw a map of America on the blackboard, to exercise the geography class upon. But he made a sad business of it with his unsteady hand, and a smothered titter rippled over the house. He knew what the matter was, and set himself to right it. He sponged out lines and remade them; but he only distorted them more than ever, and the tittering was more pronounced. He threw his entire attention upon his work, now, as if determined not to be put down by the mirth. He felt that all eyes were fastened upon him; he imagined he was succeeding, and yet the tittering continued; it even manifestly increased. And well it might. There was a garret above, pierced with a scuttle over his head; and down through this scuttle came a cat, suspended around the haunches by a string; she had a rag tied about her head and jaws to keep her from mewing; as she slowly descended she curved upward and clawed at the string, she swung downward and clawed at the intangible air. The tittering rose higher and higher — the cat was within six inches of the absorbed teacher's head — down, down, a little lower, and she grabbed his wig with her desperate claws, clung to it, and was snatched up into the garret in an instant with her trophy still in her possession! And how the light did blaze abroad from the master's bald pate — for the sign-painter's boy had GILDED it!

That broke up the meeting. The boys were avenged. Vacation had come.

NOTE:— The pretended 'compositions' quoted in this chapter are taken without alteration from a volume entitled 'Prose and Poetry, by a Western Lady' — but they are exactly and precisely after the schoolgirl pattern, and hence are much happier than any mere imitations could be.

Chapter XXII

TOM joined the new order of Cadets of Temperance, being attracted by the showy character of their 'regalia.' He promised to abstain from smoking, chewing, and profanity as long as he remained a member. Now he found out a new thing — namely, that to promise not to do a thing is the surest way in the world to make a body want to go and do that very thing. Tom soon found himself tormented with a desire to drink and swear; the desire grew to be so intense that nothing but the hope of a chance to display himself in his red sash kept him from withdrawing from the order. Fourth of July was coming; but he soon gave that up — gave it up before he had worn his shackles over forty-eight hours — and fixed his hopes upon old Judge Frazer, justice of the peace, who was apparently on his deathbed and would have a big public funeral, since he was so high an official. During three days Tom was deeply concerned about the Judge's condition and hungry for news of it. Sometimes his hopes ran high — so high that he would venture to get out his regalia and practise before the lookingglass. But the Judge had a most discouraging way of fluctuating. At last he was pronounced upon the mend — and then convalescent. Tom was disgusted; and felt a sense of injury, too. He handed in his resignation at once — and that night the Judge suffered a relapse and died. Tom resolved that he would never trust a man like that again.

The funeral was a fine thing. The Cadets paraded in a style calculated to kill the late member with envy. Tom was a free boy again, however — there was something in that. He could drink and swear, now — but found to his surprise that he did not want to. The simple fact that he could, took the desire away, and the charm of it.

Tom presently wondered to find that his coveted vacation was beginning to hang a little heavily on his hands.

He attempted a diary — but nothing happened during three days, and so he abandoned it.

The first of all the negro minstrel shows came to town, and made a sensation. Tom and Joe Harper got up a band of performers and were happy for two days.

Even the Glorious Fourth was in some sense a failure, for it rained hard, there was no procession in consequence, and the greatest man in the world (as Tom supposed), Mr. Benton, an actual United States Senator, proved an overwhelming disappointment — for he was not twenty-five feet high, nor even anywhere in the neighborhood of it.

A circus came. The boys played circus for three days afterward in tents made of rag carpeting — admission, three pins for boys, two for girls — and then circusing was abandoned.

A phrenologist and a mesmerizer came — and went again and left the village duller and drearier than ever.

There were some boys-and-girls' parties, but they were so few and so delightful that they only made the aching voids between ache the harder.

Becky Thatcher was gone to her Constantinople home to stay with her parents during vacation — so there was no bright side to life anywhere.

The dreadful secret of the murder was a chronic misery. It was a very cancer for permanency and pain.

Then came the measles.

During two long weeks Tom lay a prisoner, dead to the world and its happenings. He was very ill, he was interested in nothing. When he got upon his feet at last and moved feebly down-town, a melancholy change had come over everything and every creature. There had been a 'revival,' and everybody had 'got religion,' not only the adults, but even the boys and girls. Tom went about, hoping against hope for the sight of one blessed sinful face, but disappointment crossed him everywhere. He found Joe Harper studying a Testament, and turned sadly away from the depressing spectacle. He sought Ben Rogers, and found him visiting the poor with a basket of tracts. He hunted up Jim Hollis, who called his attention to the precious blessing of his late measles as a warning. Every boy he encountered added another ton to his depression; and when, in desperation, he flew for refuge at last to the bosom of Huckleberry Finn and was received with a Scriptural quotation, his heart broke and he crept home and to bed realizing that he alone of all the town was lost, forever and forever.

And that night there came on a terrific storm, with driving rain, awful claps of thunder and blinding sheets of lightning. He covered his head with the bedclothes and waited in a horror of suspense for his doom; for he had not the shadow of a doubt that all this hubbub was about him. He believed he had taxed the forbearance of the powers above to the extremity of endurance and that this was the result. It might have seemed to him a waste of pomp and ammunition to kill a bug with a battery of artillery, but there seemed nothing incongruous about the getting up such an expensive thunderstorm as this to knock the turf from under an insect like himself.

By and by the tempest spent itself and died without accomplishing its object. The boy's first impulse was to be grateful, and reform. His second was to wait — for there might not be any more storms.

The next day the doctors were back; Tom had relapsed. The three weeks he spent on his back this time seemed an entire age. When he got abroad at last he was hardly grateful that he had been spared, remembering how lonely was his estate, how companionless and forlorn he was. He drifted listlessly down the street and found Jim Hollis acting as judge in a juvenile court that was trying a cat for murder, in the presence of her victim, a bird. He found Joe Harper and Huck Finn up an alley eating a stolen melon. Poor lads! they — like Tom — had suffered a relapse.

Chapter XXIII

At last the sleepy atmosphere was stirred — and vigorously: the murder trial came on in the court. It became the absorbing topic of village talk immediately. Tom could not get away from it. Every reference to the murder sent a shudder to his heart, for his troubled conscience and fears almost persuaded him that these remarks were put forth in his hearing as 'feelers"; he did not see how he could be suspected of knowing anything about the murder, but still he could not be comfortable in the midst of this gossip. It kept him in a cold shiver all the time. He took Huck to a lonely place to have a talk with him. It would be some relief to unseal his tongue for a little while; to divide his burden of distress with another sufferer. Moreover, he wanted to assure himself that Huck had remained discreet.

'Huck, have you ever told anybody about — that?'

'Bout what?'

'You know what.'

'Oh — 'course I haven't.'

'Never a word?'

'Never a solitary word, so help me. What makes you ask?'

'Well, I was afeard.'

'Why, Tom Sawyer, we wouldn't be alive two days if that got found out. YOU know that.'

Tom felt more comfortable. After a pause:

'Huck, they couldn't anybody get you to tell, could they?'

'Get me to tell? Why, if I wanted that half-breed devil to drownd me they could get me to tell. They ain't no different way.'

'Well, that's all right, then. I reckon we're safe as long as we keep mum. But let's swear again, anyway. It's more surer.'

'I'm agreed.'

So they swore again with dread solemnities.

'What is the talk around, Huck? I've heard a power of it.'

'Talk? Well, it's just Muff Potter, Muff Potter, Muff Potter all the time. It keeps me in a sweat, constant, so's I want to hide som'ers.'

'That's just the same way they go on round me. I reckon he's a goner. Don't you feel sorry for him, sometimes?'

'Most always — most always. He ain't no account; but then he hain't ever done anything to hurt anybody. Just fishes a little, to get money to get drunk on — and loafs around considerable; but lord, we all do that — leastways most of us — preachers and such like. But he's kind of good — he give me half a fish, once, when there warn't enough for two; and lots of times he's kind of stood by me when I was out of luck.'

'Well, he's mended kites for me, Huck, and knitted hooks on to my line. I wish we could get him out of there.'

'My! we couldn't get him out, Tom. And besides, 'twouldn't do any good; they'd ketch him again.'

'Yes — so they would. But I hate to hear 'em abuse him so like the dickens when he never done — that.'

'I do too, Tom. Lord, I hear 'em say he's the bloodiest looking villain in this country, and they wonder he wasn't ever hung before.'

'Yes, they talk like that, all the time. I've heard 'em say that if he was to get free they'd lynch him.'

'And they'd do it, too.'

The boys had a long talk, but it brought them little comfort. As the twilight drew on, they found themselves hanging about the neighborhood of the little isolated jail, perhaps with an undefined hope that something would happen that might clear away their difficulties. But nothing happened; there seemed to be no angels or fairies interested in this luckless captive.

The boys did as they had often done before — went to the cell grating and gave Potter some tobacco and matches. He was on the ground floor and there were no guards.

His gratitude for their gifts had always smote their consciences before — it cut deeper than ever, this time. They felt cowardly and treacherous to the last degree when Potter said:

'You've been mighty good to me, boys — better'n anybody else in this town. And I don't forget it, I don't. Often I says to myself, says I, 'I used to mend all the boys' kites and things, and show 'em where the good fishin' places was, and befriend 'em what I could, and now they've all forgot old Muff when he's in trouble; but Tom don't, and Huck don't — THEY don't forget him, says I, 'and I don't forget them.' Well, boys, I done an awful thing — drunk and crazy at the time — that's the only way I account for it — and now I got to swing for it, and it's right. Right, and BEST, too, I reckon — hope so, anyway. Well, we won't talk about that. I don't want to make YOU feel bad; you've befriended me. But what I want to say, is, don't YOU ever get drunk — then you won't ever get here. Stand a litter furder west — so — that's it; it's a prime comfort to see faces that's friendly when a body's in such a muck of trouble, and there don't none come here but yourn. Good friendly faces — good friendly faces. Git up on one another's backs and let me touch 'em. That's it. Shake hands — yourn'll come through the bars, but mine's too big. Little hands, and weak — but they've helped Muff Potter a power, and they'd help him more if they could.'

Tom went home miserable, and his dreams that night were full of horrors. The next day and the day after, he hung about the court-room, drawn by an almost irresistible impulse to go in, but forcing himself to stay out. Huck was having the same experience. They studiously avoided each other. Each wandered away, from time to time, but the same dismal fascination always brought them back presently. Tom kept his ears open when idlers sauntered out of the courtroom, but invariably heard distressing news — the toils were closing more and more relentlessly around poor Potter. At the end of the second day the village talk was to the effect that Injun Joe's evidence stood firm and unshaken, and that there was not the slightest question as to what the jury's verdict would be.

Tom was out late, that night, and came to bed through the window. He was in a tremendous state of excitement.

It was hours before he got to sleep. All the village flocked to the court-house the next morning, for this was to be the great day. Both sexes were about equally represented in the packed audience. After a long wait the jury filed in and took their places; shortly afterward, Potter, pale and haggard, timid and hopeless, was brought in, with chains upon him, and seated where all the curious eyes could stare at him; no less conspicuous was Injun Joe, stolid as ever. There was another pause, and then the judge arrived and the sheriff proclaimed the opening of the court. The usual whisperings among the lawyers and gathering together of papers followed. These details and accompanying delays worked up an atmosphere of preparation that was as impressive as it was fascinating.

Now a witness was called who testified that he found Muff Potter washing in the brook, at an early hour of the morning that the murder was discovered, and that he immediately sneaked away. After some further questioning, counsel for the prosecution said:

'Take the witness.'

The prisoner raised his eyes for a moment, but dropped them again when his own counsel said:

'I have no questions to ask him.'

The next witness proved the finding of the knife near the corpse. Counsel for the prosecution said:

'Take the witness.'

'I have no questions to ask him,' Potter's lawyer replied.

A third witness swore he had often seen the knife in Potter's possession.

'Take the witness.'

Counsel for Potter declined to question him. The faces of the audience began to betray annoyance. Did this attorney mean to throw away his client's life without an effort?

Several witnesses deposed concerning Potter's guilty behavior when brought to the scene of the murder. They were allowed to leave the stand without being cross-questioned.

Every detail of the damaging circumstances that occurred in the graveyard upon that morning which all present remembered so well was brought out by credible witnesses, but none of them were crossexamined by Potter's lawyer. The perplexity and dissatisfaction of the house expressed itself in murmurs and provoked a reproof from the bench. Counsel for the prosecution now said:

'By the oaths of citizens whose simple word is above suspicion, we have fastened this awful crime, beyond all possibility of question, upon the unhappy prisoner at the bar. We rest our case here.'

A groan escaped from poor Potter, and he put his face in his hands and rocked his body softly to and fro, while a painful silence reigned in the court-room. Many men were moved, and many women's compassion testified itself in tears. Counsel for the defence rose and said:

'Your honor, in our remarks at the opening of this trial, we foreshadowed our purpose to prove that our client did this fearful deed while under the influence of a blind and irresponsible delirium produced by drink. We have changed our mind. We shall not offer that plea.' [Then to the clerk:] 'Call Thomas Sawyer!'

A puzzled amazement awoke in every face in the house, not even excepting Potter's. Every eye fastened itself with wondering interest upon Tom as he rose and took his place upon the stand. The boy looked wild enough, for he was badly scared. The oath was administered.

'Thomas Sawyer, where were you on the seventeenth of June, about the hour of midnight?'

Tom glanced at Injun Joe's iron face and his tongue failed him. The audience listened breathless, but the words refused to come. After a few moments, however, the boy got a little of his strength back, and managed to put enough of it into his voice to make part of the house hear:

'In the graveyard!'

'A little bit louder, please. Don't be afraid. You were —'

'In the graveyard.'

A contemptuous smile flitted across Injun Joe's face.

'Were you anywhere near Horse Williams' grave?'

'Yes, sir.'

'Speak up — just a trifle louder. How near were you?'

'Near as I am to you.'

'Were you hidden, or not?'

'I was hid.'

'Where?'

'Behind the elms that's on the edge of the grave.'

Injun Joe gave a barely perceptible start.

'Any one with you?'

'Yes, sir. I went there with —'

'Wait — wait a moment. Never mind mentioning your companion's name. We will produce him at the proper time.

Did you carry anything there with you.'

Tom hesitated and looked confused.

'Speak out, my boy — don't be diffident. The truth is always respectable. What did you take there?'

'Only a — a — dead cat.'

There was a ripple of mirth, which the court checked.

'We will produce the skeleton of that cat. Now, my boy, tell us everything that occurred — tell it in your own way — don't skip anything, and don't be afraid.'

Tom began — hesitatingly at first, but as he warmed to his subject his words flowed more and more easily; in a little while every sound ceased but his own voice; every eye fixed itself upon him; with parted lips and bated breath the audience hung upon his words, taking no note of time, rapt in the ghastly fascinations of the tale. The strain upon pent emotion reached its climax when the boy said:

'— and as the doctor fetched the board around and Muff Potter fell, Injun Joe jumped with the knife and —'

Crash! Quick as lightning the half-breed sprang for a window, tore his way through all opposers, and was gone!

Chapter XXIV

TOM was a glittering hero once more — the pet of the old, the envy of the young. His name even went into immortal print, for the village paper magnified him. There were some that believed he would be President, yet, if he escaped hanging.

As usual, the fickle, unreasoning world took Muff Potter to its bosom and fondled him as lavishly as it had abused him before. But that sort of conduct is to the world's credit; therefore it is not well to find fault with it.

Tom's days were days of splendor and exultation to him, but his nights were seasons of horror. Injun Joe infested all his dreams, and always with doom in his eye. Hardly any temptation could persuade the boy to stir abroad after nightfall. Poor Huck was in the same state of wretchedness and terror, for Tom had told the whole story to the lawyer the night before the great day of the trial, and Huck was sore afraid that his share in the business might leak out, yet, notwithstanding Injun Joe's flight had saved him the suffering of testifying in court. The poor fellow had got the attorney to promise secrecy, but what of that? Since Tom's harassed conscience had managed to drive him to the lawyer's house by night and wring a dread tale from lips that had been sealed with the dismalest and most formidable of oaths, Huck's confidence in the human race was well-nigh obliterated.

Daily Muff Potter's gratitude made Tom glad he had spoken; but nightly he wished he had sealed up his tongue.

Half the time Tom was afraid Injun Joe would never be captured; the other half he was afraid he would be. He felt sure he never could draw a safe breath again until that man was dead and he had seen the corpse.

Rewards had been offered, the country had been scoured, but no Injun Joe was found. One of those omniscient and awe-inspiring marvels, a detective, came up from St. Louis, moused around, shook his head, looked wise, and made that sort of astounding success which members of that craft usually achieve. That is to say, he 'found a clew.' But you can't hang a 'clew' for murder, and so after that detective had got through and gone home, Tom felt just as insecure as he was before.

The slow days drifted on, and each left behind it a slightly lightened weight of apprehension.

Chapter XXV

THERE comes a time in every rightlyconstructed boy's life when he has a raging desire to go somewhere and dig for hidden treasure. This desire suddenly came upon Tom one day. He sallied out to find Joe Harper, but failed of success. Next he sought Ben Rogers; he had gone fishing. Presently he stumbled upon Huck Finn the Red-Handed. Huck would answer. Tom took him to a private place and opened the matter to him confidentially. Huck was willing. Huck was always willing to take a hand in any enterprise that offered entertainment and required no capital, for he had a troublesome superabundance of that sort of time which is not money. 'Where'll we dig?' said Huck.

'Oh, most anywhere.'

'Why, is it hid all around?'

'No, indeed it ain't. It's hid in mighty particular places, Huck — sometimes on islands, sometimes in rotten chests under the end of a limb of an old dead tree, just where the shadow falls at midnight; but mostly under the floor in ha'nted houses.'

'Who hides it?'

'Why, robbers, of course — who'd you reckon? Sunday-school sup'rintendents?'

'I don't know. If 'twas mine I wouldn't hide it; I'd spend it and have a good time.'

'So would I. But robbers don't do that way. They always hide it and leave it there.'

'Don't they come after it any more?'

'No, they think they will, but they generally forget the marks, or else they die. Anyway, it lays there a long time and gets rusty; and by and by somebody finds an old yellow paper that tells how to find the marks — a paper that's got to be ciphered over about a week because it's mostly signs and hy'roglyphics.'

'HyroQwhich?'

'Hy'roglyphics — pictures and things, you know, that don't seem to mean anything.'

'Have you got one of them papers, Tom?'

'No.'

'Well then, how you going to find the marks?'

'I don't want any marks. They always bury it under a ha'nted house or on an island, or under a dead tree that's got one limb sticking out. Well, we've tried Jackson's Island a little, and we can try it again some time; and there's the old ha'nted house up the Still-House branch, and there's lots of deadlimb trees — dead loads of 'em.'

'Is it under all of them?'

'How you talk! No!'

'Then how you going to know which one to go for?'

'Go for all of 'em!'

'Why, Tom, it'll take all summer.'

'Well, what of that? Suppose you find a brass pot with a hundred dollars in it, all rusty and gray, or rotten chest full of di'monds. How's that?'

Huck's eyes glowed.

'That's bully. Plenty bully enough for me. Just you gimme the hundred dollars and I don't want no di'monds.'

'All right. But I bet you I ain't going to throw off on di'monds. Some of 'em's worth twenty dollars apiece — there ain't any, hardly, but's worth six bits or a dollar.'

'No! Is that so?'

'Cert'nly — anybody'll tell you so. Hain't you ever seen one, Huck?'

'Not as I remember.'

'Oh, kings have slathers of them.'

'Well, I don' know no kings, Tom.'

'I reckon you don't. But if you was to go to Europe you'd see a raft of 'em hopping around.'

'Do they hop?'

'Hop? — your granny! No!'

'Well, what did you say they did, for?'

'Shucks, I only meant you'd SEE 'em — not hopping, of course — what do they want to hop for? — but I mean you'd just see 'em — scattered around, you know, in a kind of a general way. Like that old humpbacked Richard.'

'Richard? What's his other name?'

'He didn't have any other name. Kings don't have any but a given name.'

'No?'

'But they don't.'

'Well, if they like it, Tom, all right; but I don't want to be a king and have only just a given name, like a nigger. But say — where you going to dig first?'

'Well, I don't know. S'pose we tackle that old dead-limb tree on the hill t'other side of Still-House branch?'

'I'm agreed.'

So they got a crippled pick and a shovel, and set out on their three-mile tramp. They arrived hot and panting, and threw themselves down in the shade of a neighboring elm to rest and have a smoke.

'I like this,' said Tom.

'So do I.'

'Say, Huck, if we find a treasure here, what you going to do with your share?'

'Well, I'll have pie and a glass of soda every day, and I'll go to every circus that comes along. I bet I'll have a gay time.'

'Well, ain't you going to save any of it?'

'Save it? What for?'

'Why, so as to have something to live on, by and by.'

'Oh, that ain't any use. Pap would come back to thish-yer town some day and get his claws on it if I didn't hurry up, and I tell you he'd clean it out pretty quick. What you going to do with yourn, Tom?'

'I'm going to buy a new drum, and a sure-'nough sword, and a red necktie and a bull pup, and get married.'

'Married!'

'That's it.'

'Tom, you — why, you ain't in your right mind.'

'Wait — you'll see.'

'Well, that's the foolishest thing you could do. Look at pap and my mother. Fight! Why, they used to fight all the time. I remember, mighty well.'

‘That ain’t anything. The girl I’m going to marry won’t fight.’

‘Tom, I reckon they’re all alike. They’ll all comb a body. Now you better think ‘bout this awhile. I tell you you better. What’s the name of the gal?’

‘It ain’t a gal at all — it’s a girl.’

‘It’s all the same, I reckon; some says gal, some says girl — both’s right, like enough. Anyway, what’s her name, Tom?’

‘I’ll tell you some time — not now.’

‘All right — that’ll do. Only if you get married I’ll be more lonesomer than ever.’

‘No you won’t. You’ll come and live with me. Now stir out of this and we’ll go to digging.’

They worked and sweated for half an hour. No result. They toiled another half-hour. Still no result. Huck said:

‘Do they always bury it as deep as this?’

‘Sometimes — not always. Not generally. I reckon we haven’t got the right place.’

So they chose a new spot and began again. The labor dragged a little, but still they made progress. They pegged away in silence for some time. Finally Huck leaned on his shovel, swabbed the beaded drops from his brow with his sleeve, and said:

‘Where you going to dig next, after we get this one?’

‘I reckon maybe we’ll tackle the old tree that’s over yonder on Cardiff Hill back of the widow’s.’

‘I reckon that’ll be a good one. But won’t the widow take it away from us, Tom? It’s on her land.’

‘SHE take it away! Maybe she’d like to try it once. Whoever finds one of these hid treasures, it belongs to him. It don't make any difference whose land it's on.'

That was satisfactory. The work went on. By and by Huck said:

'Blame it, we must be in the wrong place again. What do you think?'

'It is mighty curious, Huck. I don't understand it. Sometimes witches interfere. I reckon maybe that's what's the trouble now.'

'Shucks! Witches ain't got no power in the daytime.'

'Well, that's so. I didn't think of that. Oh, I know what the matter is! What a blamed lot of fools we are! You got to find out where the shadow of the limb falls at midnight, and that's where you dig!'

'Then consound it, we've fooled away all this work for nothing. Now hang it all, we got to come back in the night. It's an awful long way. Can you get out?'

'I bet I will. We've got to do it to-night, too, because if somebody sees these holes they'll know in a minute what's here and they'll go for it.'

'Well, I'll come around and maow to-night.'

'All right. Let's hide the tools in the bushes.'

The boys were there that night, about the appointed time. They sat in the shadow waiting. It was a lonely place, and an hour made solemn by old traditions. Spirits whispered in the rustling leaves, ghosts lurked in the murky nooks, the deep baying of a hound floated up out of the distance, an owl answered with his sepulchral note. The boys were subdued by these solemnities, and talked little. By and by they judged that twelve had come; they marked where the shadow fell, and began to dig. Their hopes commenced to rise. Their interest grew stronger, and their industry kept pace with it. The hole deepened and still deepened, but every time their hearts jumped to hear the pick strike upon something, they only suffered a new disappointment. It was only a stone or a chunk. At last Tom said:

'It ain't any use, Huck, we're wrong again.'

'Well, but we CAN'T be wrong. We spotted the shadder to a dot.'

'I know it, but then there's another thing.'

'What's that?'.

'Why, we only guessed at the time. Like enough it was too late or too early.'

Huck dropped his shovel.

'That's it,' said he. 'That's the very trouble. We got to give this one up. We can't ever tell the right time, and besides this kind of thing's too awful, here this time of night with witches and ghosts a-fluttering around so. I feel as if something's behind me all the time; and I'm afeard to turn around, becuz maybe there's others in front a-waiting for a chance. I been creeping all over, ever since I got here.'

'Well, I've been pretty much so, too, Huck. They most always put in a dead man when they bury a treasure under a tree, to look out for it.'

'Lordy!'

'Yes, they do. I've always heard that.'

'Tom, I don't like to fool around much where there's dead people. A body's bound to get into trouble with 'em, sure.'

'I don't like to stir 'em up, either. S'pose this one here was to stick his skull out and say something!'

'Don't Tom! It's awful.'

'Well, it just is. Huck, I don't feel comfortable a bit.'

'Say, Tom, let's give this place up, and try somewheres else.'

'All right, I reckon we better.'

'What'll it be?'

Tom considered awhile; and then said:

'The ha'nted house. That's it!'

'Blame it, I don't like ha'nted houses, Tom. Why, they're a dern sight worse'n dead people. Dead people might talk, maybe, but they don't come sliding around in a shroud, when you ain't noticing, and peep over your shoulder all of a sudden and grit their teeth, the way a ghost does. I couldn't stand such a thing as that, Tom — nobody could.'

'Yes, but, Huck, ghosts don't travel around only at night. They won't hender us from digging there in the daytime.'

'Well, that's so. But you know mighty well people don't go about that ha'nted house in the day nor the night.'

'Well, that's mostly because they don't like to go where a man's been murdered, anyway — but nothing's ever been seen around that house except in the night — just some blue lights slipping by the windows — no regular ghosts.'

'Well, where you see one of them blue lights flickering around, Tom, you can bet there's a ghost mighty close behind it. It stands to reason. Becuz you know that they don't anybody but ghosts use 'em.'

'Yes, that's so. But anyway they don't come around in the daytime, so what's the use of our being afeard?'

'Well, all right. We'll tackle the ha'nted house if you say so — but I reckon it's taking chances.'

They had started down the hill by this time. There in the middle of the moonlit valley below them stood the 'ha'nted' house, utterly isolated, its fences gone long ago, rank weeds smothering the very doorsteps, the chimney crumbled to ruin, the window-sashes vacant, a corner of the roof caved in. The boys gazed awhile, half expecting to see a blue light flit past a window; then talking in a low tone, as befitted the time and the circumstances, they struck far off to the right, to give the haunted house a wide berth, and took their way homeward through the woods that adorned the rearward side of Cardiff Hill.

Chapter XXVI

ABOUT noon the next day the boys arrived at the dead tree; they had come for their tools. Tom was impatient to go to the haunted house; Huck was measurably so, also — but suddenly said:

'Lookyhere, Tom, do you know what day it is?'

Tom mentally ran over the days of the week, and then quickly lifted his eyes with a startled look in them —

'My! I never once thought of it, Huck!'

'Well, I didn't neither, but all at once it popped onto me that it was Friday.'

'Blame it, a body can't be too careful, Huck. We might 'a' got into an awful scrape, tackling such a thing on a Friday.'

'MIGHT! Better say we WOULD! There's some lucky days, maybe, but Friday ain't.'

'Any fool knows that. I don't reckon YOU was the first that found it out, Huck.'

'Well, I never said I was, did I? And Friday ain't all, neither. I had a rotten bad dream last night — dreampt about rats.'

'No! Sure sign of trouble. Did they fight?'

'No.'

'Well, that's good, Huck. When they don't fight it's only a sign that there's trouble around, you know. All we got to do is to look mighty sharp and keep out of it. We'll drop this thing for to-day, and play. Do you know Robin Hood, Huck?'

'No. Who's Robin Hood?'

'Why, he was one of the greatest men that was ever in England — and the best. He was a robber.'

'Cracky, I wisht I was. Who did he rob?'

'Only sheriffs and bishops and rich people and kings, and such like. But he never bothered the poor. He loved 'em. He always divided up with 'em perfectly square.'

'Well, he must 'a' been a brick.'

'I bet you he was, Huck. Oh, he was the noblest man that ever was. They ain't any such men now, I can tell you. He could lick any man in England, with one hand tied behind him; and he could take his yew bow and plug a ten-cent piece every time, a mile and a half.'

'What's a YEW bow?'

'I don't know. It's some kind of a bow, of course. And if he hit that dime only on the edge he would set down and cry — and curse. But we'll play Robin Hood — it's nobby fun. I'll learn you.'

'I'm agreed.'

So they played Robin Hood all the afternoon, now and then casting a yearning eye down upon the haunted house and passing a remark about the morrow's prospects and possibilities there. As the sun began to sink into the west they took their way homeward athwart the long shadows of the trees and soon were buried from sight in the forests of Cardiff Hill.

On Saturday, shortly after noon, the boys were at the dead tree again. They had a smoke and a chat in the shade, and then dug a little in their last hole, not with great hope, but merely because Tom said there were so many cases where people had given up a treasure after getting down within six inches of it, and then somebody else had come along and turned it up with a single thrust of a shovel. The thing failed this time, however, so the boys shouldered their tools and went away feeling that they had not trifled with fortune, but had fulfilled all the requirements that belong to the business of treasure-hunting.

When they reached the haunted house there was something so weird and grisly about the dead silence that reigned there under the baking sun, and something so depressing about the loneliness and desolation of the place, that they were afraid, for a moment, to venture in. Then they crept to the door and took a trembling peep. They saw a weed-grown, floorless room, unplastered, an ancient fireplace, vacant windows, a ruinous staircase; and here, there, and everywhere hung ragged and abandoned cobwebs. They presently entered, softly, with quickened pulses, talking in whispers, ears alert to catch the slightest sound, and muscles tense and ready for instant retreat.

In a little while familiarity modified their fears and they gave the place a critical and interested examination, rather admiring their own boldness, and wondering at it, too. Next they wanted to look up-stairs. This was something like cutting off retreat, but they got to daring each other, and of course there could be but one result — they threw their tools into a corner and made the ascent. Up there were the same signs of decay. In one corner they found a closet that promised mystery, but the promise was a fraud — there was nothing in it. Their courage was up now and well in hand. They were about to go down and begin work when —

'Sh!' said Tom.

'What is it?' whispered Huck, blanching with fright.

'Sh! ... There! ... Hear it?'

'Yes! ... Oh, my! Let's run!'

'Keep still! Don't you budge! They're coming right toward the door.'

The boys stretched themselves upon the floor with their eyes to knot-holes in the planking, and lay waiting, in a misery of fear.

'They've stopped.... No — coming.... Here they are. Don't whisper another word, Huck. My goodness, I wish I was out of this!'

Two men entered. Each boy said to himself: 'There's the old deaf and dumb Spaniard that's been about town once or twice lately — never saw t'other man before.'

'T'other' was a ragged, unkempt creature, with nothing very pleasant in his face. The Spaniard was wrapped in a serape; he had bushy white whiskers; long white hair flowed from under his sombrero, and he wore green goggles. When they came in, 't'other' was talking in a low voice; they sat down on the ground, facing the door, with their backs to the wall, and the speaker continued his remarks. His manner became less guarded and his words more distinct as he proceeded:

'No,' said he, 'I've thought it all over, and I don't like it.

It's dangerous.'

'Dangerous!' grunted the 'deaf and dumb' Spaniard — to the vast surprise of the boys. 'Milksop!'

This voice made the boys gasp and quake. It was Injun Joe's! There was silence for some time. Then Joe said:

'What's any more dangerous than that job up yonder — but nothing's come of it.'

'That's different. Away up the river so, and not another house about. 'Twon't ever be known that we tried, anyway, long as we didn't succeed.'

'Well, what's more dangerous than coming here in the daytime! — anybody would suspicion us that saw us.'

'I know that. But there warn't any other place as handy after that fool of a job. I want to quit this shanty. I wanted to yesterday, only it warn't any use trying to stir out of here, with those infernal boys playing over there on the hill right in full view.'

'Those infernal boys' quaked again under the inspiration of this remark, and thought how lucky it was that they had remembered it was Friday and concluded to wait a day. They wished in their hearts they had waited a year.

The two men got out some food and made a luncheon. After a long and thoughtful silence, Injun Joe said:

'Look here, lad — you go back up the river where you belong. Wait there till you hear from me. I'll take the chances on dropping into this town just once more, for a look. We'll do that 'dangerous' job after I've spied around a little and think things look well for it. Then for Texas! We'll leg it together!'

This was satisfactory. Both men presently fell to yawning, and Injun Joe said:

'I'm dead for sleep! It's your turn to watch.'

He curled down in the weeds and soon began to snore. His comrade stirred him once or twice and he became quiet. Presently the watcher began to nod; his head drooped lower and lower, both men began to snore now.

The boys drew a long, grateful breath. Tom whispered:

'Now's our chance — come!'

Huck said:

'I can't — I'd die if they was to wake.'

Tom urged — Huck held back. At last Tom rose slowly and softly, and started alone. But the first step he made wrung such a hideous creak from the crazy floor that he sank down almost dead with fright. He never made a second attempt. The boys lay there counting the dragging moments till it seemed to them that time must be done and eternity growing gray; and then they were grateful to note that at last the sun was setting.

Now one snore ceased. Injun Joe sat up, stared around — smiled grimly upon his comrade, whose head was drooping upon his knees — stirred him up with his foot and said:

'Here! YOU'RE a watchman, ain't you! All right, though — nothing's happened.'

'My! have I been asleep?'

'Oh, partly, partly. Nearly time for us to be moving, pard. What'll we do with what little swag we've got left?'

'I don't know — leave it here as we've always done, I reckon. No use to take it away till we start south. Six hundred and fifty in silver's something to carry.'

'Well — all right — it won't matter to come here once more.'

'No — but I'd say come in the night as we used to do — it's better.'

'Yes: but look here; it may be a good while before I get the right chance at that job; accidents might happen; 'tain't in such a very good place; we'll just regularly bury it — and bury it deep.'

'Good idea,' said the comrade, who walked across the room, knelt down, raised one of the rearward hearthstones and took out a bag that jingled pleasantly. He subtracted from it twenty or thirty dollars for himself and as much for Injun Joe, and passed the bag to the latter, who was on his knees in the corner, now, digging with his bowie-knife.

The boys forgot all their fears, all their miseries in an instant. With gloating eyes they watched every movement. Luck! — the splendor of it was beyond all imagination! Six hundred dollars was money enough to make half a dozen boys rich! Here was treasurehunting under the happiest auspices — there would not be any bothersome uncertainty as to where to dig. They nudged each other every moment — eloquent nudges and easily understood, for they simply meant — 'Oh, but ain't you glad NOW we're here!'

Joe's knife struck upon something.

'Hello!' said he.

'What is it?' said his comrade.

'Half-rotten plank — no, it's a box, I believe. Here — bear a hand and we'll see what it's here for. Never mind, I've broke a hole.'

He reached his hand in and drew it out —

'Man, it's money!'

The two men examined the handful of coins. They were gold. The boys above were as excited as themselves, and as delighted.

Joe's comrade said:

'We'll make quick work of this. There's an old rusty pick over amongst the weeds in the corner the other side of the fireplace — I saw it a minute ago.'

He ran and brought the boys' pick and shovel. Injun Joe took the pick, looked it over critically, shook his head, muttered something to himself, and then began to use it. The box was soon unearthed. It was not very large; it was iron bound and had been very strong before the slow years had injured it. The men contemplated the treasure awhile in blissful silence.

'Pard, there's thousands of dollars here,' said Injun Joe.

'Twas always said that Murrel's gang used to be around here one summer,' the stranger observed.

'I know it,' said Injun Joe; 'and this looks like it, I should say.'

'Now you won't need to do that job.'

The half-breed frowned. Said he:

'You don't know me. Least you don't know all about that thing. 'Tain't robbery altogether — it's REVENGE!' and a wicked light flamed in his eyes. 'I'll need your help in it. When it's finished — then Texas. Go home to your Nance and your kids, and stand by till you hear from me.'

'Well — if you say so; what'll we do with this — bury it again?'

'Yes. [Ravishing delight overhead.] NO! by the great Sachem, no! [Profound distress overhead.] I'd nearly forgot. That pick had fresh earth on it! [The boys were sick with terror in a moment.] What business has a pick and a shovel here? What business with fresh earth on them? Who brought them here — and where are they gone? Have you heard anybody? — seen anybody? What! bury it again and leave them to come and see the ground disturbed? Not exactly — not exactly. We'll take it to my den.'

'Why, of course! Might have thought of that before. You mean Number One?'

'No — Number Two — under the cross. The other place is bad — too common.'

'All right. It's nearly dark enough to start.'

Injun Joe got up and went about from window to window cautiously peeping out. Presently he said:

'Who could have brought those tools here? Do you reckon they can be up-stairs?'

The boys' breath forsook them. Injun Joe put his hand on his knife, halted a moment, undecided, and then turned toward the stairway. The boys thought of the closet, but their strength was gone. The steps came creaking up the stairs — the intolerable distress of the situation woke the stricken resolution of the lads — they were about to spring for the closet, when there was a crash of rotten timbers and Injun Joe landed on the ground amid the debris of the ruined stairway. He gathered himself up cursing, and his comrade said:

'Now what's the use of all that? If it's anybody, and they're up there, let them STAY there — who cares? If they want to jump down, now, and get into trouble, who objects? It will be dark in fifteen minutes — and then let them follow us if they want to. I'm willing. In my opinion, whoever hove those things in here caught a sight of us and took us for ghosts or devils or something. I'll bet they're running yet.'

Joe grumbled awhile; then he agreed with his friend that what daylight was left ought to be economized in getting things ready for leaving. Shortly afterward they slipped out of the house in the deepening twilight, and moved toward the river with their precious box.

Tom and Huck rose up, weak but vastly relieved, and stared after them through the chinks between the logs of the house. Follow? Not they. They were content to reach ground again without broken necks, and take the townward track over the hill. They did not talk much. They were too much absorbed in hating themselves — hating the ill luck that made them take the spade and the pick there. But for that, Injun Joe never would have suspected. He would have hidden the silver with the gold to wait there till his 'revenge' was satisfied, and then he would have had the misfortune to find that money turn up missing. Bitter, bitter luck that the tools were ever brought there!

They resolved to keep a lookout for that Spaniard when he should come to town spying out for chances to do his revengeful job, and follow him to 'Number Two,' wherever that might be. Then a ghastly thought occurred to Tom.

'Revenge? What if he means US, Huck!'

'Oh, don't!' said Huck, nearly fainting.

They talked it all over, and as they entered town they agreed to believe that he might possibly mean somebody else — at least that he might at least mean nobody but Tom, since only Tom had testified.

Very, very small comfort it was to Tom to be alone in danger! Company would be a palpable improvement, he thought.

Chapter XXVII

THE adventure of the day mightily tormented Tom's dreams that night. Four times he had his hands on that rich treasure and four times it wasted to nothingness in his fingers as sleep forsook him and wakefulness brought back the hard reality of his misfortune. As he lay in the early morning recalling the incidents of his great adventure, he noticed that they seemed curiously subdued and far away — somewhat as if they had happened in another world, or in a time long gone by. Then it occurred to him that the great adventure itself must be a dream! There was one very strong argument in favor of this idea — namely, that the quantity of coin he had seen was too vast to be real. He had never seen as much as fifty dollars in one mass before, and he was like all boys of his age and station in life, in that he imagined that all references to 'hundreds' and 'thousands' were mere fanciful forms of speech, and that no such sums really existed in the world. He never had supposed for a moment that so large a sum as a hundred dollars was to be found in actual money in any one's possession. If his notions of hidden treasure had been analyzed, they would have been found to consist of a handful of real dimes and a bushel of vague, splendid, ungraspable dollars.

But the incidents of his adventure grew sensibly sharper and clearer under the attrition of thinking them over, and so he presently found himself leaning to the impression that the thing might not have been a dream, after all. This uncertainty must be swept away. He would snatch a hurried breakfast and go and find Huck. Huck was sitting on the gunwale of a flatboat, listlessly dangling his feet in the water and looking very melancholy. Tom concluded to let Huck lead up to the subject. If he did not do it, then the adventure would be proved to have been only a dream.

'Hello, Huck!'

'Hello, yourself.'

Silence, for a minute.

'Tom, if we'd 'a' left the blame tools at the dead tree, we'd 'a' got the money. Oh, ain't it awful!'

'Tain't a dream, then, 'tain't a dream! Somehow I most wish it was. Dog'd if I don't, Huck.'

'What ain't a dream?'

'Oh, that thing yesterday. I been half thinking it was.'

'Dream! If them stairs hadn't broke down you'd 'a' seen how much dream it was! I've had dreams enough all night — with that patch-eyed Spanish devil going for me all through 'em — rot him!'

'No, not rot him. FIND him! Track the money!'

'Tom, we'll never find him. A feller don't have only one chance for such a pile — and that one's lost. I'd feel mighty shaky if I was to see him, anyway.'

'Well, so'd I; but I'd like to see him, anyway — and track him out — to his Number Two.'

'Number Two — yes, that's it. I been thinking 'bout that. But I can't make nothing out of it. What do you reckon it is?'

'I dono. It's too deep. Say, Huck — maybe it's the number of a house!'

'Goody! ... No, Tom, that ain't it. If it is, it ain't in this one-horse town. They ain't no numbers here.'

'Well, that's so. Lemme think a minute. Here — it's the number of a room — in a tavern, you know!'

'Oh, that's the trick! They ain't only two taverns. We can find out quick.'

'You stay here, Huck, till I come.'

Tom was off at once. He did not care to have Huck's company in public places. He was gone half an hour. He found that in the best tavern, No. 2 had long been occupied by a young lawyer, and was still so occupied. In the less ostentatious house, No. 2 was a mystery. The tavern-keeper's young son said it was kept locked all the time, and he never saw anybody go into it or come out of it except at night; he did not know any particular reason for this state of things; had had some little curiosity, but it was rather feeble; had made the most of the mystery by entertaining himself with the idea that that room was 'ha'nted"; had noticed that there was a light in there the night before.

'That's what I've found out, Huck. I reckon that's the very No. 2 we're after.'

'I reckon it is, Tom. Now what you going to do?'

'Lemme think.'

Tom thought a long time. Then he said:

'I'll tell you. The back door of that No. 2 is the door that comes out into that little close alley between the tavern and the old rattle trap of a brick store. Now you get hold of all the door-keys you can find, and I'll nip all of auntie's, and the first dark night we'll go there and try 'em. And mind you, keep a lookout for Injun Joe, because he said he was going to drop into town and spy around once more for a chance to get his revenge. If you see him, you just follow him; and if he don't go to that No. 2, that ain't the place.'

'Lordy, I don't want to foller him by myself!'

'Why, it'll be night, sure. He mightn't ever see you — and if he did, maybe he'd never think anything.'

'Well, if it's pretty dark I reckon I'll track him. I dono — I dono. I'll try.'

'You bet I'll follow him, if it's dark, Huck. Why, he might 'a' found out he couldn't get his revenge, and be going right after that money.'

'It's so, Tom, it's so. I'll foller him; I will, by jingoes!'

'Now you're TALKING! Don't you ever weaken, Huck, and I won't.'

Chapter XXVIII

THAT night Tom and Huck were ready for their adventure. They hung about the neighborhood of the tavern until after nine, one watching the alley at a distance and the other the tavern door. Nobody entered the alley or left it; nobody resembling the Spaniard entered or left the tavern door. The night promised to be a fair one; so Tom went home with the understanding that if a considerable degree of darkness came on, Huck was to come and 'maow,' whereupon he would slip out and try the keys. But the night remained clear, and Huck closed his watch and retired to bed in an empty sugar hogshead about twelve.

Tuesday the boys had the same ill luck. Also Wednesday. But Thursday night promised better. Tom slipped out in good season with his aunt's old tin lantern, and a large towel to blindfold it with. He hid the lantern in Huck's sugar hogshead and the watch began. An hour before midnight the tavern closed up and its lights (the only ones thereabouts) were put out. No Spaniard had been seen. Nobody had entered or left the alley. Everything was auspicious. The blackness of darkness reigned, the perfect stillness was interrupted only by occasional mutterings of distant thunder.

Tom got his lantern, lit it in the hogshead, wrapped it closely in the towel, and the two adventurers crept in the gloom toward the tavern. Huck stood sentry and Tom felt his way into the alley. Then there was a season of waiting anxiety that weighed upon Huck's spirits like a mountain. He began to wish he could see a flash from the lantern — it would frighten him, but it would at least tell him that Tom was alive yet. It seemed hours since Tom had disappeared. Surely he must have fainted; maybe he was dead; maybe his heart had burst under terror and excitement. In his uneasiness Huck found himself drawing closer and closer to the alley; fearing all sorts of dreadful things, and momentarily expecting some catastrophe to happen that would take away his breath. There was not much to take away, for he seemed only able to inhale it by thimblefuls, and his heart would soon wear itself out, the way it was beating. Suddenly there was a flash of light and Tom came tearing by him: . 'Run!' said he; 'run, for your life!'

He needn't have repeated it; once was enough; Huck was making thirty or forty miles an hour before the repetition was uttered. The boys never stopped till they reached the shed of a deserted slaughterhouse at the lower end of the village. Just as they got within its shelter the storm burst and the rain poured down. As soon as Tom got his breath he said:

'Huck, it was awful! I tried two of the keys, just as soft as I could; but they seemed to make such a power of racket that I couldn't hardly get my breath I was so scared. They wouldn't turn in the lock, either. Well, without noticing what I was doing, I took hold of the knob, and open comes the door! It warn't locked! I hopped in, and shook off the towel, and, GREAT CAESAR'S GHOST!'

'What! — what'd you see, Tom?'

'Huck, I most stepped onto Injun Joe's hand!'

'No!'

'Yes! He was lying there, sound asleep on the floor, with his old patch on his eye and his arms spread out.'

'Lordy, what did you do? Did he wake up?'

'No, never budged. Drunk, I reckon. I just grabbed that towel and started!'

'I'd never 'a' thought of the towel, I bet!'

'Well, I would. My aunt would make me mighty sick if I lost it.'

'Say, Tom, did you see that box?'

'Huck, I didn't wait to look around. I didn't see the box, I didn't see the cross. I didn't see anything but a bottle and a tin cup on the floor by Injun Joe; yes, I saw two barrels and lots more bottles in the room. Don't you see, now, what's the matter with that ha'nted room?'

'How?'

'Why, it's ha'nted with whiskey! Maybe ALL the Temperance Taverns have got a ha'nted room, hey, Huck?'

'Well, I reckon maybe that's so. Who'd 'a' thought such a thing? But say, Tom, now's a mighty good time to get that box, if Injun Joe's drunk.'

'It is, that! You try it!'

Huck shuddered.

'Well, no — I reckon not.'

'And I reckon not, Huck. Only one bottle alongside of Injun Joe ain't enough. If there'd been three, he'd be drunk enough and I'd do it.'

There was a long pause for reflection, and then Tom said:

'Lookyhere, Huck, less not try that thing any more till we know Injun Joe's not in there. It's too scary. Now, if we watch every night, we'll be dead sure to see him go out, some time or other, and then we'll snatch that box quicker'n lightning.'

'Well, I'm agreed. I'll watch the whole night long, and I'll do it every night, too, if you'll do the other part of the job.'

'All right, I will. All you got to do is to trot up Hooper Street a block and maow — and if I'm asleep, you throw some gravel at the window and that'll fetch me.'

'Agreed, and good as wheat!'

'Now, Huck, the storm's over, and I'll go home. It'll begin to be daylight in a couple of hours. You go back and watch that long, will you?'

'I said I would, Tom, and I will. I'll ha'nt that tavern every night for a year! I'll sleep all day and I'll stand watch all night.'

'That's all right. Now, where you going to sleep?'

'In Ben Rogers' hayloft. He lets me, and so does his pap's nigger man, Uncle Jake. I tote water for Uncle Jake whenever he wants me to, and any time I ask him he gives me a little something to eat if he can spare it. That's a mighty good nigger, Tom. He likes me, becuz I don't ever act as if I was above him. Sometime I've set right down and eat WITH him. But you needn't tell that. A body's got to do things when he's awful hungry he wouldn't want to do as a steady thing.'

‘Well, if I don’t want you in the daytime, I’ll let you sleep. I won’t come bothering around. Any time you see something’s up, in the night, just skip right around and maow.’

Chapter XXIX

THE first thing Tom heard on Friday morning was a glad piece of news — Judge Thatcher's family had come back to town the night before. Both Injun Joe and the treasure sunk into secondary importance for a moment, and Becky took the chief place in the boy's interest. He saw her and they had an exhausting good time playing 'hispy' and 'gully-keeper' with a crowd of their schoolmates. The day was completed and crowned in a peculiarly satisfactory way: Becky teased her mother to appoint the next day for the long-promised and longdelayed picnic, and she consented. The child's delight was boundless; and Tom's not more moderate. The invitations were sent out before sunset, and straightway the young folks of the village were thrown into a fever of preparation and pleasurable anticipation. Tom's excitement enabled him to keep awake until a pretty late hour, and he had good hopes of hearing Huck's 'maow,' and of having his treasure to astonish Becky and the picnickers with, next day; but he was disappointed. No signal came that night.

Morning came, eventually, and by ten or eleven o'clock a giddy and rollicking company were gathered at Judge Thatcher's, and everything was ready for a start. It was not the custom for elderly people to mar the picnics with their presence. The children were considered safe enough under the wings of a few young ladies of eighteen and a few young gentlemen of twenty-three or thereabouts. The old steam ferryboat was chartered for the occasion; presently the gay throng filed up the main street laden with provisionbaskets. Sid was sick and had to miss the fun; Mary remained at home to entertain him. The last thing Mrs. Thatcher said to Becky, was:

'You'll not get back till late. Perhaps you'd better stay all night with some of the girls that live near the ferry-landing, child.'

'Then I'll stay with Susy Harper, mamma.'

'Very well. And mind and behave yourself and don't be any trouble.'

Presently, as they tripped along, Tom said to Becky:

'Say — I'll tell you what we'll do. 'Stead of going to Joe Harper's we'll climb right up the hill and stop at the Widow Douglas'. She'll have ice-cream! She has it most every day — dead loads of it. And she'll be awful glad to have us.'

'Oh, that will be fun!'

Then Becky reflected a moment and said:

'But what will mamma say?'

'How'll she ever know?'

The girl turned the idea over in her mind, and said reluctantly:

'I reckon it's wrong — but —'

'But shucks! Your mother won't know, and so what's the harm? All she wants is that you'll be safe; and I bet you she'd 'a' said go there if she'd 'a' thought of it. I know she would!'

The Widow Douglas' splendid hospitality was a tempting bait. It and Tom's persuasions presently carried the day. So it was decided to say nothing anybody about the night's programme. Presently it occurred to Tom that maybe Huck might come this very night and give the signal. The thought took a deal of the spirit out of his anticipations. Still he could not bear to give up the fun at Widow Douglas'. And why should he give it up, he reasoned — the signal did not come the night before, so why should it be any more likely to come to-night? The sure fun of the evening outweighed the uncertain treasure; and, boylike, he determined to yield to the stronger inclination and not allow himself to think of the box of money another time that day.

Three miles below town the ferryboat stopped at the mouth of a woody hollow and tied up. The crowd swarmed ashore and soon the forest distances and craggy heights echoed far and near with shoutings and laughter. All the different ways of getting hot and tired were gone through with, and by-and-by the rovers straggled back to camp fortified with responsible appetites, and then the destruction of the good things began. After the feast there was a refreshing season of rest and chat in the shade of spreading oaks. Byand-by somebody shouted:

'Who's ready for the cave?'

Everybody was. Bundles of candles were procured, and straightway there was a general scamper up the hill. The mouth of the cave was up the hillside — an opening shaped like a letter A. Its massive oaken door stood unbarred. Within was a small chamber, chilly as an ice-house, and walled by Nature with solid limestone that was dewy with a cold sweat. It was romantic and mysterious to stand here in the deep gloom and look out upon the green valley shining in the sun. But the impressiveness of the situation quickly wore off, and the romping began again. The moment a candle was lighted there was a general rush upon the owner of it; a struggle and a gallant defence followed, but the candle was soon knocked down or blown out, and then there was a glad clamor of laughter and a new chase. But all things have an end. By-andby the procession went filing down the steep descent of the main avenue, the flickering rank of lights dimly revealing the lofty walls of rock almost to their point of junction sixty feet overhead. This main avenue was not more than eight or ten feet wide. Every few steps other lofty and still narrower crevices branched from it on either hand — for McDougal's cave was but a vast labyrinth of crooked aisles that ran into each other and out again and led nowhere. It was said that one might wander days and nights together through its intricate tangle of rifts and chasms, and never find the end of the cave; and that he might go down, and down, and still down, into the earth, and it was just the same — labyrinth under labyrinth, and no end to any of them. No man 'knew' the cave. That was an impossible thing. Most of the young men knew a portion of it, and it was not customary to venture much beyond this known portion. Tom Sawyer knew as much of the cave as any one.

The procession moved along the main avenue some three-quarters of a mile, and then groups and couples began to slip aside into branch avenues, fly along the dismal corridors, and take each other by surprise at points where the corridors joined again. Parties were able to elude each other for the space of half an hour without going beyond the 'known' ground.

By-and-by, one group after another came straggling back to the mouth of the cave, panting, hilarious, smeared from head to foot with tallow drippings, daubed with clay, and entirely delighted with the success of the day. Then they were astonished to find that they had been taking no note of time and that night was about at hand. The clanging bell had been calling for half an hour. However, this sort of close to the day's adventures was romantic and therefore satisfactory. When the ferryboat with her wild freight pushed into the stream, nobody cared sixpence for the wasted time but the captain of the craft.

Huck was already upon his watch when the ferryboat's lights went glinting past the wharf. He heard no noise on board, for the young people were as subdued and still as people usually are who are nearly tired to death. He wondered what boat it was, and why she did not stop at the wharf — and then he dropped her out of his mind and put his attention upon his business. The night was growing cloudy and dark. Ten o'clock came, and the noise of vehicles ceased, scattered lights began to wink out, all straggling footpassengers disappeared, the village betook itself to its slumbers and left the small watcher alone with the silence and the ghosts. Eleven o'clock came, and the tavern lights were put out; darkness everywhere, now. Huck waited what seemed a weary long time, but nothing happened. His faith was weakening. Was there any use? Was there really any use?

Why not give it up and turn in?

A noise fell upon his ear. He was all attention in an instant. The alley door closed softly. He sprang to the corner of the brick store. The next moment two men brushed by him, and one seemed to have something under his arm. It must be that box! So they were going to remove the treasure. Why call Tom now? It would be absurd — the men would get away with the box and never be found again. No, he would stick to their wake and follow them; he would trust to the darkness for security from discovery. So communing with himself, Huck stepped out and glided along behind the men, cat-like, with bare feet, allowing them to keep just far enough ahead not to be invisible.

They moved up the river street three blocks, then turned to the left up a cross-street. They went straight ahead, then, until they came to the path that led up Cardiff Hill; this they took. They passed by the old Welshman's house, half-way up the hill, without hesitating, and still climbed upward. Good, thought Huck, they will bury it in the old quarry. But they never stopped at the quarry. They passed on, up the summit. They plunged into the narrow path between the tall sumach bushes, and were at once hidden in the gloom. Huck closed up and shortened his distance, now, for they would never be able to see him. He trotted along awhile; then slackened his pace, fearing he was gaining too fast; moved on a piece, then stopped altogether; listened; no sound; none, save that he seemed to hear the beating of his own heart. The hooting of an owl came over the hill — ominous sound! But no footsteps. Heavens, was everything lost! He was about to spring with winged feet, when a man cleared his throat not four feet from him! Huck's heart shot into his throat, but he swallowed it again; and then he stood there shaking as if a dozen agues had taken charge of him at once, and so weak that he thought he must surely fall to the ground. He knew where he was. He knew he was within five steps of the stile leading into Widow Douglas' grounds. Very well, he thought, let them bury it there; it won't be hard to find.

Now there was a voice — a very low voice — Injun Joe's:

'Damn her, maybe she's got company — there's lights, late as it is.'

'I can't see any.'

This was that stranger's voice — the stranger of the haunted house. A deadly chill went to Huck's heart — this, then, was the 'revenge' job! His thought was, to fly. Then he remembered that the Widow Douglas had been kind to him more than once, and maybe these men were going to murder her. He wished he dared venture to warn her; but he knew he didn't dare — they might come and catch him. He thought all this and more in the moment that elapsed between the stranger's remark and Injun Joe's next — which was —

'Because the bush is in your way. Now — this way — now you see, don't you?'

'Yes. Well, there IS company there, I reckon. Better give it up.'

'Give it up, and I just leaving this country forever! Give it up and maybe never have another chance. I tell you again, as I've told you before, I don't care for her swag — you may have it. But her husband was rough on me — many times he was rough on me — and mainly he was the justice of the peace that jugged me for a vagrant. And that ain't all. It ain't a millionth part of it! He had me HORSEWHIPPED! — horsewhipped in front of the jail, like a nigger! — with all the town looking on! HORSEWHIPPED! — do you understand? He took advantage of me and died. But I'll take it out of HER.'

'Oh, don't kill her! Don't do that!'

'Kill? Who said anything about killing? I would kill HIM if he was here; but not her. When you want to get revenge on a woman you don't kill her — bosh! you go for her looks. You slit her nostrils — you notch her ears like a sow!'

'By God, that's —'

'Keep your opinion to yourself! It will be safest for you. I'll tie her to the bed. If she bleeds to death, is that my fault? I'll not cry, if she does. My friend, you'll help me in this thing — for MY sake — that's why you're here — I mightn't be able alone. If you flinch, I'll kill you. Do you understand that? And if I have to kill you, I'll kill her — and then I reckon nobody'll ever know much about who done this business.'

'Well, if it's got to be done, let's get at it. The quicker the better — I'm all in a shiver.'

'Do it NOW? And company there? Look here — I'll get suspicious of you, first thing you know. No — we'll wait till the lights are out — there's no hurry.'

Huck felt that a silence was going to ensue — a thing still more awful than any amount of murderous talk; so he held his breath and stepped gingerly back; planted his foot carefully and firmly, after balancing, one-legged, in a precarious way and almost toppling over, first on one side and then on the other. He took another step back, with the same elaboration and the same risks; then another and another, and — a twig snapped under his foot! His breath stopped and he listened. There was no sound — the stillness was perfect. His gratitude was measureless. Now he turned in his tracks, between the walls of sumach bushes — turned himself as carefully as if he were a ship — and then stepped quickly but cautiously along. When he emerged at the quarry he felt secure, and so he picked up his nimble heels and flew. Down, down he sped, till he reached the Welshman's. He banged at the door, and presently the heads of the old man and his two stalwart sons were thrust from windows.

'What's the row there? Who's banging? What do you want?'

'Let me in — quick! I'll tell everything.'

'Why, who are you?'

'Huckleberry Finn — quick, let me in!'

'Huckleberry Finn, indeed! It ain't a name to open many doors, I judge! But let him in, lads, and let's see what's the trouble.'

'Please don't ever tell I told you,' were Huck's first words when he got in. 'Please don't — I'd be killed, sure — but the widow's been good friends to me sometimes, and I want to tell — I WILL tell if you'll promise you won't ever say it was me.'

'By George, he HAS got something to tell, or he wouldn't act so!' exclaimed the old man; 'out with it and nobody here'll ever tell, lad.'

Three minutes later the old man and his sons, well armed, were up the hill, and just entering the sumach path on tiptoe, their weapons in their hands. Huck accompanied them no further. He hid behind a great bowlder and fell to listening. There was a lagging, anxious silence, and then all of a sudden there was an explosion of firearms and a cry.

Huck waited for no particulars. He sprang away and sped down the hill as fast as his legs could carry him.

Chapter XXX

AS the earliest suspicion of dawn appeared on Sunday morning, Huck came groping up the hill and rapped gently at the old Welshman's door. The inmates were asleep, but it was a sleep that was set on a hair-trigger, on account of the exciting episode of the night. A call came from a window:

'Who's there!'

Huck's scared voice answered in a low tone:

'Please let me in! It's only Huck Finn!'

'It's a name that can open this door night or day, lad! — and welcome!'

These were strange words to the vagabond boy's ears, and the pleasantest he had ever heard. He could not recollect that the closing word had ever been applied in his case before. The door was quickly unlocked, and he entered. Huck was given a seat and the old man and his brace of tall sons speedily dressed themselves.

'Now, my boy, I hope you're good and hungry, because breakfast will be ready as soon as the sun's up, and we'll have a piping hot one, too — make yourself easy about that! I and the boys hoped you'd turn up and stop here last night.'

'I was awful scared,' said Huck, 'and I run. I took out when the pistols went off, and I didn't stop for three mile.

I've come now becuz I wanted to know about it, you know; and I come before daylight becuz I didn't want to run across them devils, even if they was dead.'

'Well, poor chap, you do look as if you'd had a hard night of it — but there's a bed here for you when you've had your breakfast. No, they ain't dead, lad — we are sorry enough for that. You see we knew right where to put our hands on them, by your description; so we crept along on tiptoe till we got within fifteen feet of them — dark as a cellar that sumach path was — and just then I found I was going to sneeze. It was the meanest kind of luck! I tried to keep it back, but no use — 'twas bound to come, and it did come! I was in the lead with my pistol raised, and when the sneeze started those scoundrels a-rustling to get out of the path, I sung out, 'Fire boys!' and blazed away at the place where the rustling was. So did the boys. But they were off in a jiffy, those villains, and we after them, down through the woods. I judge we never touched them. They fired a shot apiece as they started, but their bullets whizzed by and didn't do us any harm. As soon as we lost the sound of their feet we quit chasing, and went down and stirred up the constables. They got a posse together, and went off to guard the river bank, and as soon as it is light the sheriff and a gang are going to beat up the woods. My boys will be with them presently. I wish we had some sort of description of those rascals — 'twould help a good deal. But you couldn't see what they were like, in the dark, lad, I suppose?'

'Oh yes; I saw them down-town and follered them.'

'Splendid! Describe them — describe them, my boy!'

'One's the old deaf and dumb Spaniard that's ben around here once or twice, and t'other's a mean-looking, ragged —'

'That's enough, lad, we know the men! Happened on them in the woods back of the widow's one day, and they slunk away. Off with you, boys, and tell the sheriff — get your breakfast to-morrow morning!'

The Welshman's sons departed at once. As they were leaving the room Huck sprang up and exclaimed:

'Oh, please don't tell ANYbody it was me that blowed on them! Oh, please!'

'All right if you say it, Huck, but you ought to have the credit of what you did.'

'Oh no, no! Please don't tell!'

When the young men were gone, the old Welshman said:

'They won't tell — and I won't. But why don't you want it known?'

Huck would not explain, further than to say that he already knew too much about one of those men and would not have the man know that he knew anything against him for the whole world — he would be killed for knowing it, sure.

The old man promised secrecy once more, and said:

'How did you come to follow these fellows, lad? Were they looking suspicious?'

Huck was silent while he framed a duly cautious reply. Then he said:

'Well, you see, I'm a kind of a hard lot, — least everybody says so, and I don't see nothing agin it — and sometimes I can't sleep much, on account of thinking about it and sort of trying to strike out a new way of doing. That was the way of it last night. I couldn't sleep, and so I come along up-street 'bout midnight, a-turning it all over, and when I got to that old shackly brick store by the Temperance Tavern, I backed up agin the wall to have another think. Well, just then along comes these two chaps slipping along close by me, with something under their arm, and I reckoned they'd stole it. One was a-smoking, and t'other one wanted a light; so they stopped right before me and the cigars lit up their faces and I see that the big one was the deaf and dumb Spaniard, by his white whiskers and the patch on his eye, and t'other one was a rusty, ragged-looking devil.'

'Could you see the rags by the light of the cigars?'

This staggered Huck for a moment. Then he said:

'Well, I don't know — but somehow it seems as if I did.'

'Then they went on, and you —'

'Follered 'em — yes. That was it. I wanted to see what was up — they sneaked along so. I dogged 'em to the widder's stile, and stood in the dark and heard the ragged one beg for the widder, and the Spaniard swear he'd spile her looks just as I told you and your two —'

'What! The DEAF AND DUMB man said all that!'

Huck had made another terrible mistake! He was trying his best to keep the old man from getting the faintest hint of who the Spaniard might be, and yet his tongue seemed determined to get him into trouble in spite of all he could do. He made several efforts to creep out of his scrape, but the old man's eye was upon him and he made blunder after blunder. Presently the Welshman said:

'My boy, don't be afraid of me. I wouldn't hurt a hair of your head for all the world. No — I'd protect you — I'd protect you. This Spaniard is not deaf and dumb; you've let that slip without intending it; you can't cover that up now. You know something about that Spaniard that you want to keep dark. Now trust me — tell me what it is, and trust me — I won't betray you.'

Huck looked into the old man's honest eyes a moment, then bent over and whispered in his ear:

'Tain't a Spaniard — it's Injun Joe!'

The Welshman almost jumped out of his chair. In a moment he said:

'It's all plain enough, now. When you talked about notching ears and slitting noses I judged that that was your own embellishment, because white men don't take that sort of revenge. But an Injun! That's a different matter altogether.'

During breakfast the talk went on, and in the course of it the old man said that the last thing which he and his sons had done, before going to bed, was to get a lantern and examine the stile and its vicinity for marks of blood. They found none, but captured a bulky bundle of —

'Of WHAT?'

If the words had been lightning they could not have leaped with a more stunning suddenness from Huck's blanched lips. His eyes were staring wide, now, and his breath suspended — waiting for the answer. The Welshman started — stared in return — three seconds — five seconds — ten — then replied:

‘Of burglar’s tools. Why, what’s the MATTER with you?’

Huck sank back, panting gently, but deeply, unutterably grateful. The Welshman eyed him gravely, curiously — and presently said:

‘Yes, burglar’s tools. That appears to relieve you a good deal. But what did give you that turn? What were YOU expecting we’d found?’

Huck was in a close place — the inquiring eye was upon him — he would have given anything for material for a plausible answer — nothing suggested itself — the inquiring eye was boring deeper and deeper — a senseless reply offered — there was no time to weigh it, so at a venture he uttered it — feebly:

‘Sunday-school books, maybe.’

Poor Huck was too distressed to smile, but the old man laughed loud and joyously, shook up the details of his anatomy from head to foot, and ended by saying that such a laugh was money in a-man’s pocket, because it cut down the doctor’s bill like everything. Then he added:

‘Poor old chap, you’re white and jaded — you ain’t well a bit — no wonder you’re a little flighty and off your balance. But you’ll come out of it. Rest and sleep will fetch you out all right, I hope.’

Huck was irritated to think he had been such a goose and betrayed such a suspicious excitement, for he had dropped the idea that the parcel brought from the tavern was the treasure, as soon as he had heard the talk at the widow’s stile. He had only thought it was not the treasure, however — he had not known that it wasn’t — and so the suggestion of a captured bundle was too much for his self-possession. But on the whole he felt glad the little episode had happened, for now he knew beyond all question that that bundle was not THE bundle, and so his mind was at rest and exceedingly comfortable. In fact, everything seemed to be drifting just in the right direction, now; the treasure must be still in No. 2, the men would be captured and jailed that day, and he and Tom could seize the gold that night without any trouble or any fear of interruption.

Just as breakfast was completed there was a knock at the door. Huck jumped for a hiding-place, for he had no mind to be connected even remotely with the late event. The Welshman admitted several ladies and gentlemen, among them the Widow Douglas, and noticed that groups of citizens were climbing up the hill — to stare at the stile. So the news had spread. The Welshman had to tell the story of the night to the visitors. The widow's gratitude for her preservation was outspoken.

'Don't say a word about it, madam. There's another that you're more beholden to than you are to me and my boys, maybe, but he don't allow me to tell his name. We wouldn't have been there but for him.'

Of course this excited a curiosity so vast that it almost belittled the main matter — but the Welshman allowed it to eat into the vitals of his visitors, and through them be transmitted to the whole town, for he refused to part with his secret. When all else had been learned, the widow said:

'I went to sleep reading in bed and slept straight through all that noise. Why didn't you come and wake me?'

‘We judged it warn’t worth while. Those fellows warn’t likely to come again — they hadn’t any tools left to work with, and what was the use of waking you up and scaring you to death? My three negro men stood guard at your house all the rest of the night. They’ve just come back.’

More visitors came, and the story had to be told and retold for a couple of hours more.

There was no Sabbath-school during day-school vacation, but everybody was early at church. The stirring event was well canvassed. News came that not a sign of the two villains had been yet discovered. When the sermon was finished, Judge Thatcher’s wife dropped alongside of Mrs. Harper as she moved down the aisle with the crowd and said:

‘Is my Becky going to sleep all day? I just expected she would be tired to death.’

‘Your Becky?’

‘Yes,’ with a startled look — ‘didn’t she stay with you last night?’

‘Why, no.’

Mrs. Thatcher turned pale, and sank into a pew, just as Aunt Polly, talking briskly with a friend, passed by. Aunt Polly said:

‘Good-morning, Mrs. Thatcher. Good-morning, Mrs. Harper. I’ve got a boy that’s turned up missing. I reckon my Tom stayed at your house last night — one of you. And now he’s afraid to come to church. I’ve got to settle with him.’

Mrs. Thatcher shook her head feebly and turned paler than ever.

'He didn't stay with us,' said Mrs. Harper, beginning to look uneasy. A marked anxiety came into Aunt Polly's face.

'Joe Harper, have you seen my Tom this morning?'

'No'm.'

'When did you see him last?'

Joe tried to remember, but was not sure he could say. The people had stopped moving out of church. Whispers passed along, and a boding uneasiness took possession of every countenance. Children were anxiously questioned, and young teachers. They all said they had not noticed whether Tom and Becky were on board the ferryboat on the homeward trip; it was dark; no one thought of inquiring if any one was missing. One young man finally blurted out his fear that they were still in the cave! Mrs. Thatcher swooned away. Aunt Polly fell to crying and wringing her hands.

The alarm swept from lip to lip, from group to group, from street to street, and within five minutes the bells were wildly clanging and the whole town was up! The Cardiff Hill episode sank into instant insignificance, the burglars were forgotten, horses were saddled, skiffs were manned, the ferryboat ordered out, and before the horror was half an hour old, two hundred men were pouring down highroad and river toward the cave.

All the long afternoon the village seemed empty and dead. Many women visited Aunt Polly and Mrs. Thatcher and tried to comfort them. They cried with them, too, and that was still better than words. All the tedious night the town waited for news; but when the morning dawned at last, all the word that came was, 'Send more candles — and send food.' Mrs. Thatcher was almost crazed; and Aunt Polly, also. Judge Thatcher sent messages of hope and encouragement from the cave, but they conveyed no real cheer.

The old Welshman came home toward daylight, spattered with candle-grease, smeared with clay, and almost worn out. He found Huck still in the bed that had been provided for him, and delirious with fever. The physicians were all at the cave, so the Widow Douglas came and took charge of the patient. She said she would do her best by him, because, whether he was good, bad, or indifferent, he was the Lord's, and nothing that was the Lord's was a thing to be neglected. The Welshman said Huck had good spots in him, and the widow said:

'You can depend on it. That's the Lord's mark. He don't leave it off. He never does. Puts it somewhere on every creature that comes from his hands.'

Early in the forenoon parties of jaded men began to straggle into the village, but the strongest of the citizens continued searching. All the news that could be gained was that remotenesses of the cavern were being ransacked that had never been visited before; that every corner and crevice was going to be thoroughly searched; that wherever one wandered through the maze of passages, lights were to be seen flitting hither and thither in the distance, and shoutings and pistolshots sent their hollow reverberations to the ear down the sombre aisles. In one place, far from the section usually traversed by tourists, the names 'BECKY & TOM' had been found traced upon the rocky wall with candle-smoke, and near at hand a grease-soiled bit of ribbon.

Mrs. Thatcher recognized the ribbon and cried over it. She said it was the last relic she should ever have of her child; and that no other memorial of her could ever be so precious, because this one parted latest from the living body before the awful death came. Some said that now and then, in the cave, a far-away speck of light would glimmer, and then a glorious shout would burst forth and a score of men go trooping down the echoing aisle — and then a sickening disappointment always followed; the children were not there; it was only a searcher's light.

Three dreadful days and nights dragged their tedious hours along, and the village sank into a hopeless stupor. No one had heart for anything. The accidental discovery, just made, that the proprietor of the Temperance Tavern kept liquor on his premises, scarcely fluttered the public pulse, tremendous as the fact was. In a lucid interval, Huck feebly led up to the subject of taverns, and finally asked — dimly dreading the worst — if anything had been discovered at the Temperance Tavern since he had been ill.

'Yes,' said the widow.

Huck started up in bed, wild-eyed:

'What? What was it?'

'Liquor! — and the place has been shut up. Lie down, child — what a turn you did give me!'

'Only tell me just one thing — only just one — please! Was it Tom Sawyer that found it?'

The widow burst into tears. 'Hush, hush, child, hush! I've told you before, you must NOT talk. You are very, very sick!'

Then nothing but liquor had been found; there would have been a great powwow if it had been the gold. So the treasure was gone forever — gone forever! But what could she be crying about? Curious that she should cry.

These thoughts worked their dim way through Huck's mind, and under the weariness they gave him he fell asleep. The widow said to herself:

'There — he's asleep, poor wreck. Tom Sawyer find it! Pity but somebody could find Tom Sawyer! Ah, there ain't many left, now, that's got hope enough, or strength enough, either, to go on searching.'

Chapter XXXI

NOW to return to Tom and Becky's share in the picnic. They tripped along the murky aisles with the rest of the company, visiting the familiar wonders of the cave — wonders dubbed with rather overdescriptive names, such as 'The Drawing-Room,' 'The Cathedral,' 'Aladdin's Palace,' and so on. Presently the hide-and-seek frolicking began, and Tom and Becky engaged in it with zeal until the exertion began to grow a trifle wearisome; then they wandered down a sinuous avenue holding their candles aloft and reading the tangled web-work of names, dates, post-office addresses, and mottoes with which the rocky walls had been frescoed (in candle-smoke). Still drifting along and talking, they scarcely noticed that they were now in a part of the cave whose walls were not frescoed. They smoked their own names under an overhanging shelf and moved on. Presently they came to a place where a little stream of water, trickling over a ledge and carrying a limestone sediment with it, had, in the slow-dragging ages, formed a laced and ruffled Niagara in gleaming and imperishable stone. Tom squeezed his small body behind it in order to illuminate it for Becky's gratification. He found that it curtained a sort of steep natural stairway which was enclosed between narrow walls, and at once the ambition to be a discoverer seized him. Becky responded to his call, and they made a smoke-mark for future guidance, and started upon their quest. They wound this way and that, far down into the secret depths of the cave, made another mark, and branched off in search of novelties to tell the upper world about. In one place they found a spacious cavern, from whose ceiling depended a multitude of shining stalactites of the length and circumference of a man's leg; they walked all about it, wondering and admiring, and presently left it by one of the numerous passages that opened into it. This shortly brought them to a bewitching spring, whose basin was incrusted with a frostwork of glittering crystals; it was in the midst of a cavern whose walls were supported by many fantastic pillars which had been formed by the joining of great stalactites and stalagmites together, the result of the ceaseless water-drip of centuries. Under the roof vast knots of bats had packed themselves together, thousands in a bunch; the lights disturbed the creatures and they came flocking down by hundreds, squeaking and darting furiously at the candles. Tom knew their ways and the danger of this sort of conduct. He seized Becky's hand and hurried her into the first corridor that offered; and none too soon, for a bat struck Becky's light out with its wing while she was passing out of the cavern. The bats chased the children a good distance; but the fugitives plunged into every new passage that offered, and at last got rid of the perilous things. Tom found a subterranean lake, shortly, which stretched its dim length away until its shape was lost in the shadows. He wanted to explore its borders, but concluded that it would be best to sit down and rest awhile, first. Now, for the first time, the deep stillness of the place laid a clammy hand upon the spirits of the children. Becky said:

'Why, I didn't notice, but it seems ever so long since I heard any of the others.'

'Come to think, Becky, we are away down below them — and I don't know how far away north, or south, or east, or whichever it is. We couldn't hear them here.'

Becky grew apprehensive.

'I wonder how long we've been down here, Tom? We better start back.'

'Yes, I reckon we better. P'raps we better.'

'Can you find the way, Tom? It's all a mixed-up crookedness to me.'

'I reckon I could find it — but then the bats. If they put our candles out it will be an awful fix. Let's try some other way, so as not to go through there.'

'Well. But I hope we won't get lost. It would be so awful!' and the girl shuddered at the thought of the dreadful possibilities.

They started through a corridor, and traversed it in silence a long way, glancing at each new opening, to see if there was anything familiar about the look of it; but they were all strange. Every time Tom made an examination, Becky would watch his face for an encouraging sign, and he would say cheerily:

'Oh, it's all right. This ain't the one, but we'll come to it right away!'

But he felt less and less hopeful with each failure, and presently began to turn off into diverging avenues at sheer random, in desperate hope of finding the one that was wanted. He still said it was 'all right,' but there was such a leaden dread at his heart that the words had lost their ring and sounded just as if he had said, 'All is lost!' Becky clung to his side in an anguish of fear, and tried hard to keep back the tears, but they would come. At last she said:

'Oh, Tom, never mind the bats, let's go back that way! We seem to get worse and worse off all the time.'

'Listen!' said he.

Profound silence; silence so deep that even their breathings were conspicuous in the hush. Tom shouted. The call went echoing down the empty aisles and died out in the distance in a faint sound that resembled a ripple of mocking laughter.

'Oh, don't do it again, Tom, it is too horrid,' said Becky.

'It is horrid, but I better, Becky; they might hear us, you know,' and he shouted again.

The 'might' was even a chillier horror than the ghostly laughter, it so confessed a perishing hope. The children stood still and listened; but there was no result. Tom turned upon the back track at once, and hurried his steps. It was but a little while before a certain indecision in his manner revealed another fearful fact to Becky — he could not find his way back!

'Oh, Tom, you didn't make any marks!'

'Becky, I was such a fool! Such a fool! I never thought we might want to come back! No — I can't find the way. It's all mixed up.'

'Tom, Tom, we're lost! we're lost! We never can get out of this awful place! Oh, why DID we ever leave the others!'

She sank to the ground and burst into such a frenzy of crying that Tom was appalled with the idea that she might die, or lose her reason. He sat down by her and put his arms around her; she buried her face in his bosom, she clung to him, she poured out her terrors, her unavailing regrets, and the far echoes turned them all to jeering laughter. Tom begged her to pluck up hope again, and she said she could not. He fell to blaming and abusing himself for getting her into this miserable situation; this had a better effect. She said she would try to hope again, she would get up and follow wherever he might lead if only he would not talk like that any more. For he was no more to blame than she, she said.

So they moved on again — aimlessly — simply at random — all they could do was to move, keep moving. For a little while, hope made a show of reviving — not with any reason to back it, but only because it is its nature to revive when the spring has not been taken out of it by age and familiarity with failure.

By-and-by Tom took Becky's candle and blew it out. This economy meant so much! Words were not needed. Becky understood, and her hope died again. She knew that Tom had a whole candle and three or four pieces in his pockets — yet he must economize.

By-and-by, fatigue began to assert its claims; the children tried to pay attention, for it was dreadful to think of sitting down when time was grown to be so precious, moving, in some direction, in any direction, was at least progress and might bear fruit; but to sit down was to invite death and shorten its pursuit.

At last Becky's frail limbs refused to carry her farther. She sat down. Tom rested with her, and they talked of home, and the friends there, and the comfortable beds and, above all, the light! Becky cried, and Tom tried to think of some way of comforting her, but all his encouragements were grown threadbare with use, and sounded like sarcasms. Fatigue bore so heavily upon Becky that she drowsed off to sleep. Tom was grateful. He sat looking into her drawn face and saw it grow smooth and natural under the influence of pleasant dreams; and by-and-by a smile dawned and rested there. The peaceful face reflected somewhat of peace and healing into his own spirit, and his thoughts wandered away to bygone times and dreamy memories. While he was deep in his musings, Becky woke up with a breezy little laugh — but it was stricken dead upon her lips, and a groan followed it.

'Oh, how COULD I sleep! I wish I never, never had waked! No! No, I don't, Tom! Don't look so! I won't say it again.'

'I'm glad you've slept, Becky; you'll feel rested, now, and we'll find the way out.'

'We can try, Tom; but I've seen such a beautiful country in my dream. I reckon we are going there.'

'Maybe not, maybe not. Cheer up, Becky, and let's go on trying.'

They rose up and wandered along, hand in hand and hopeless. They tried to estimate how long they had been in the cave, but all they knew was that it seemed days and weeks, and yet it was plain that this could not be, for their candles were not gone yet. A long time after this — they could not tell how long — Tom said they must go softly and listen for dripping water — they must find a spring. They found one presently, and Tom said it was time to rest again. Both were cruelly tired, yet Becky said she thought she could go a little farther. She was surprised to hear Tom dissent. She could not understand it. They sat down, and Tom fastened his candle to the wall in front of them with some clay. Thought was soon busy; nothing was said for some time. Then Becky broke the silence:

'Tom, I am so hungry!'

Tom took something out of his pocket.

'Do you remember this?' said he.

Becky almost smiled.

'It's our wedding-cake, Tom.'

'Yes — I wish it was as big as a barrel, for it's all we've got.'

'I saved it from the picnic for us to dream on, Tom, the way grown-up people do with weddingcake — but it'll be our —'

She dropped the sentence where it was. Tom divided the cake and Becky ate with good appetite, while Tom nibbled at his moiety. There was abundance of cold water to finish the feast with. By-and-by Becky suggested that they move on again. Tom was silent a moment. Then he said:

'Becky, can you bear it if I tell you something?'

Becky's face paled, but she thought she could.

'Well, then, Becky, we must stay here, where there's water to drink. That little piece is our last candle!'

Becky gave loose to tears and wailings. Tom did what he could to comfort her, but with little effect. At length Becky said:

'Tom!'

'Well, Becky?'

'They'll miss us and hunt for us!'

'Yes, they will! Certainly they will!'

'Maybe they're hunting for us now, Tom.'

'Why, I reckon maybe they are. I hope they are.'

'When would they miss us, Tom?'

'When they get back to the boat, I reckon.'

'Tom, it might be dark then — would they notice we hadn't come?'

'I don't know. But anyway, your mother would miss you as soon as they got home.'

A frightened look in Becky's face brought Tom to his senses and he saw that he had made a blunder. Becky was not to have gone home that night! The children became silent and thoughtful. In a moment a new burst of grief from Becky showed Tom that the thing in his mind had struck hers also — that the Sabbath morning might be half spent before Mrs. Thatcher discovered that Becky was not at Mrs. Harper's.

The children fastened their eyes upon their bit of candle and watched it melt slowly and pitilessly away; saw the half inch of wick stand alone at last; saw the feeble flame rise and fall, climb the thin column of smoke, linger at its top a moment, and then — the horror of utter darkness reigned!

How long afterward it was that Becky came to a slow consciousness that she was crying in Tom's arms, neither could tell. All that they knew was, that after what seemed a mighty stretch of time, both awoke out of a dead stupor of sleep and resumed their miseries once more. Tom said it might be Sunday, now — maybe Monday. He tried to get Becky to talk, but her sorrows were too oppressive, all her hopes were gone. Tom said that they must have been missed long ago, and no doubt the search was going on. He would shout and maybe some one would come. He tried it; but in the darkness the distant echoes sounded so hideously that he tried it no more.

The hours wasted away, and hunger came to torment the captives again. A portion of Tom's half of the cake was left; they divided and ate it. But they seemed hungrier than before. The poor morsel of food only whetted desire.

By-and-by Tom said:

'SH! Did you hear that?'

Both held their breath and listened. There was a sound like the faintest, far-off shout. Instantly Tom answered it, and leading Becky by the hand, started groping down the corridor in its direction. Presently he listened again; again the sound was heard, and apparently a little nearer.

'It's them!' said Tom; 'they're coming! Come along, Becky — we're all right now!'

The joy of the prisoners was almost overwhelming. Their speed was slow, however, because pitfalls were somewhat common, and had to be guarded against. They shortly came to one and had to stop. It might be three feet deep, it might be a hundred — there was no passing it at any rate. Tom got down on his breast and reached as far down as he could. No bottom. They must stay there and wait until the searchers came. They listened; evidently the distant shoutings were growing more distant! a moment or two more and they had gone altogether. The heart-sinking misery of it! Tom whooped until he was hoarse, but it was of no use. He talked hopefully to Becky; but an age of anxious waiting passed and no sounds came again.

The children groped their way back to the spring. The weary time dragged on; they slept again, and awoke famished and woe-stricken. Tom believed it must be Tuesday by this time.

Now an idea struck him. There were some side passages near at hand. It would be better to explore some of these than bear the weight of the heavy time in idleness. He took a kite-line from his pocket, tied it to a projection, and he and Becky started, Tom in the lead, unwinding the line as he groped along. At the end of twenty steps the corridor ended in a 'jumpingoff place.' Tom got down on his knees and felt below, and then as far around the corner as he could reach with his hands conveniently; he made an effort to stretch yet a little farther to the right, and at that moment, not twenty yards away, a human hand, holding a candle, appeared from behind a rock! Tom lifted up a glorious shout, and instantly that hand was followed by the body it belonged to — Injun Joe's! Tom was paralyzed; he could not move. He was vastly gratified the next moment, to see the 'Spaniard' take to his heels and get himself out of sight. Tom wondered that Joe had not recognized his voice and come over and killed him for testifying in court. But the echoes must have disguised the voice. Without doubt, that was it, he reasoned. Tom's fright weakened every muscle in his body. He said to himself that if he had strength enough to get back to the spring he would stay there, and nothing should tempt him to run the risk of meeting Injun Joe again. He was careful to keep from Becky what it was he had seen. He told her he had only shouted 'for luck.'

But hunger and wretchedness rise superior to fears in the long run. Another tedious wait at the spring and another long sleep brought changes. The children awoke tortured with a raging hunger. Tom believed that it must be Wednesday or Thursday or even Friday or Saturday, now, and that the search had been given over. He proposed to explore another passage. He felt willing to risk Injun Joe and all other terrors. But Becky was very weak. She had sunk into a dreary apathy and would not be roused. She said she would wait, now, where she was, and die — it would not be long. She told Tom to go with the kite-line and explore if he chose; but she implored him to come back every little while and speak to her; and she made him promise that when the awful time came, he would stay by her and hold her hand until all was over.

Tom kissed her, with a choking sensation in his throat, and made a show of being confident of finding the searchers or an escape from the cave; then he took the kite-line in his hand and went groping down one of the passages on his hands and knees, distressed with hunger and sick with bodings of coming doom.

Chapter XXXII

TUESDAY afternoon came, and waned to the twilight. The village of St. Petersburg still mourned. The lost children had not been found. Public prayers had been offered up for them, and many and many a private prayer that had the petitioner's whole heart in it; but still no good news came from the cave. The majority of the searchers had given up the quest and gone back to their daily avocations, saying that it was plain the children could never be found. Mrs. Thatcher was very ill, and a great part of the time delirious. People said it was heartbreaking to hear her call her child, and raise her head and listen a whole minute at a time, then lay it wearily down again with a moan. Aunt Polly had drooped into a settled melancholy, and her gray hair had grown almost white. The village went to its rest on Tuesday night, sad and forlorn.

Away in the middle of the night a wild peal burst from the village bells, and in a moment the streets were swarming with frantic half-clad people, who shouted, 'Turn out! turn out! they're found! they're found!' Tin pans and horns were added to the din, the population massed itself and moved toward the river, met the children coming in an open carriage drawn by shouting citizens, thronged around it, joined its homeward march, and swept magnificently up the main street roaring huzzah after huzzah!

The village was illuminated; nobody went to bed again; it was the greatest night the little town had ever seen. During the first half-hour a procession of villagers filed through Judge Thatcher's house, seized the saved ones and kissed them, squeezed Mrs. Thatcher's hand, tried to speak but couldn't — and drifted out raining tears all over the place.

Aunt Polly's happiness was complete, and Mrs. Thatcher's nearly so. It would be complete, however, as soon as the messenger dispatched with the great news to the cave should get the word to her husband. Tom lay upon a sofa with an eager auditory about him and told the history of the wonderful adventure, putting in many striking additions to adorn it withal; and closed with a description of how he left Becky and went on an exploring expedition; how he followed two avenues as far as his kite-line would reach; how he followed a third to the fullest stretch of the kite-line, and was about to turn back when he glimpsed a far-off speck that looked like daylight; dropped the line and groped toward it, pushed his head and shoulders through a small hole, and saw the broad Mississippi rolling by! And if it had only happened to be night he would not have seen that speck of daylight and would not have explored that passage any more! He told how he went back for Becky and broke the good news and she told him not to fret her with such stuff, for she was tired, and knew she was going to die, and wanted to. He described how he labored with her and convinced her; and how she almost died for joy when she had groped to where she actually saw the blue speck of daylight; how he pushed his way out at the hole and then helped her out; how they sat there and cried for gladness; how some men came along in a skiff and Tom hailed them and told them their situation and their famished condition; how the men didn't believe the wild tale at first, 'because,' said they, 'you are five miles down the river below the valley the cave is in' — then took them aboard, rowed to a house, gave them supper, made them rest till two or three hours after dark and then brought them home.

Before day-dawn, Judge Thatcher and the handful of searchers with him were tracked out, in the cave, by the twine clews they had strung behind them, and informed of the great news.

Three days and nights of toil and hunger in the cave were not to be shaken off at once, as Tom and Becky soon discovered. They were bedridden all of Wednesday and Thursday, and seemed to grow more and more tired and worn, all the time. Tom got about, a little, on Thursday, was down-town Friday, and nearly as whole as ever Saturday; but Becky did not leave her room until Sunday, and then she looked as if she had passed through a wasting illness.

Tom learned of Huck's sickness and went to see him on Friday, but could not be admitted to the bedroom; neither could he on Saturday or Sunday. He was admitted daily after that, but was warned to keep still about his adventure and introduce no exciting topic. The Widow Douglas stayed by to see that he obeyed. At home Tom learned of the Cardiff Hill event; also that the 'ragged man's' body had eventually been found in the river near the ferrylanding; he had been drowned while trying to escape, perhaps.

About a fortnight after Tom's rescue from the cave, he started off to visit Huck, who had grown plenty strong enough, now, to hear exciting talk, and Tom had some that would interest him, he thought. Judge Thatcher's house was on Tom's way, and he stopped to see Becky. The Judge and some friends set Tom to talking, and some one asked him ironically if he wouldn't like to go to the cave again. Tom said he thought he wouldn't mind it. The Judge said:

'Well, there are others just like you, Tom, I've not the least doubt. But we have taken care of that. Nobody will get lost in that cave any more.'

'Why?'

'Because I had its big door sheathed with boiler iron two weeks ago, and triple-locked — and I've got the keys.'

Tom turned as white as a sheet.

'What's the matter, boy! Here, run, somebody! Fetch a glass of water!'

The water was brought and thrown into Tom's face.

'Ah, now you're all right. What was the matter with you, Tom?'

'Oh, Judge, Injun Joe's in the cave!'

Chapter XXXIII

WITHIN a few minutes the news had spread, and a dozen skiff-loads of men were on their way to McDougal's cave, and the ferryboat, well filled with passengers, soon followed. Tom Sawyer was in the skiff that bore Judge Thatcher.

When the cave door was unlocked, a sorrowful sight presented itself in the dim twilight of the place. Injun Joe lay stretched upon the ground, dead, with his face close to the crack of the door, as if his longing eyes had been fixed, to the latest moment, upon the light and the cheer of the free world outside. Tom was touched, for he knew by his own experience how this wretch had suffered. His pity was moved, but nevertheless he felt an abounding sense of relief and security, now, which revealed to him in a degree which he had not fully appreciated before how vast a weight of dread had been lying upon him since the day he lifted his voice against this bloody-minded outcast.

Injun Joe's bowie-knife lay close by, its blade broken in two. The great foundation-beam of the door had been chipped and hacked through, with tedious labor; useless labor, too, it was, for the native rock formed a sill outside it, and upon that stubborn material the knife had wrought no effect; the only damage done was to the knife itself. But if there had been no stony obstruction there the labor would have been useless still, for if the beam had been wholly cut away Injun Joe could not have squeezed his body under the door, and he knew it. So he had only hacked that place in order to be doing something — in order to pass the weary time — in order to employ his tortured faculties. Ordinarily one could find half a dozen bits of candle stuck around in the crevices of this vestibule, left there by tourists; but there were none now. The prisoner had searched them out and eaten them. He had also contrived to catch a few bats, and these, also, he had eaten, leaving only their claws. The poor unfortunate had starved to death. In one place, near at hand, a stalagmite had been slowly growing up from the ground for ages, builded by the water-drip from a stalactite overhead. The captive had broken off the stalagmite, and upon the stump had placed a stone, wherein he had scooped a shallow hollow to catch the precious drop that fell once in every three minutes with the dreary regularity of a clock-tick — a dessertspoonful once in four and twenty hours. That drop was falling when the Pyramids were new; when Troy fell; when the foundations of Rome were laid when Christ was crucified; when the Conqueror created the British empire; when Columbus sailed; when the massacre at Lexington was 'news.' It is falling now; it will still be falling when all these things shall have sunk down the afternoon of history, and the twilight of tradition, and been swallowed up in the thick night of oblivion. Has everything a purpose and a mission? Did this drop fall patiently during five thousand years to be ready for this flitting human insect's need? and has it another important object to accomplish ten thousand years to come? No matter. It is many and many a year since the hapless half-breed scooped out the stone to catch the priceless drops, but to this day the tourist stares longest at that pathetic stone and that slow-dropping water when he comes to see the wonders of McDougal's cave. Injun Joe's cup stands first in the list of the cavern's marvels; even 'Aladdin's Palace' cannot rival it.

Injun Joe was buried near the mouth of the cave; and people flocked there in boats and wagons from the towns and from all the farms and hamlets for seven miles around; they brought their children, and all sorts of provisions, and confessed that they had had almost as satisfactory a time at the funeral as they could have had at the hanging.

This funeral stopped the further growth of one thing — the petition to the governor for Injun Joe's pardon. The petition had been largely signed; many tearful and eloquent meetings had been held, and a committee of sappy women been appointed to go in deep mourning and wail around the governor, and implore him to be a merciful ass and trample his duty under foot. Injun Joe was believed to have killed five citizens of the village, but what of that? If he had been Satan himself there would have been plenty of weaklings ready to scribble their names to a pardon-petition, and drip a tear on it from their permanently impaired and leaky water-works.

The morning after the funeral Tom took Huck to a private place to have an important talk. Huck had learned all about Tom's adventure from the Welshman and the Widow Douglas, by this time, but Tom said he reckoned there was one thing they had not told him; that thing was what he wanted to talk about now. Huck's face saddened. He said:

'I know what it is. You got into No. 2 and never found anything but whiskey. Nobody told me it was you; but I just knowed it must 'a' ben you, soon as I heard 'bout that whiskey business; and I knowed you hadn't got the money becuz you'd 'a' got at me some way or other and told me even if you was mum to everybody else. Tom, something's always told me we'd never get holt of that swag.'

'Why, Huck, I never told on that tavern-keeper. YOU know his tavern was all right the Saturday I went to the picnic. Don't you remember you was to watch there that night?'

'Oh yes! Why, it seems 'bout a year ago. It was that very night that I follered Injun Joe to the widder's.'

'YOU followed him?'

'Yes — but you keep mum. I reckon Injun Joe's left friends behind him, and I don't want 'em souring on me and doing me mean tricks. If it hadn't ben for me he'd be down in Texas now, all right.'

Then Huck told his entire adventure in confidence to Tom, who had only heard of the Welshman's part of it before.

'Well,' said Huck, presently, coming back to the main question, 'whoever nipped the whiskey in No. 2, nipped the money, too, I reckon — anyways it's a goner for us, Tom.'

'Huck, that money wasn't ever in No. 2!'

'What!' Huck searched his comrade's face keenly. 'Tom, have you got on the track of that money again?'

‘Huck, it’s in the cave!’

Huck’s eyes blazed.

‘Say it again, Tom.’

‘The money’s in the cave!’

‘Tom — honest injun, now — is it fun, or earnest?’

‘Earnest, Huck — just as earnest as ever I was in my life. Will you go in there with me and help get it out?’

‘I bet I will! I will if it’s where we can blaze our way to it and not get lost.’

‘Huck, we can do that without the least little bit of trouble in the world.’

‘Good as wheat! What makes you think the money’s —‘

‘Huck, you just wait till we get in there. If we don’t find it I’ll agree to give you my drum and every thing I’ve got in the world. I will, by jings.’

‘All right — it’s a whiz. When do you say?’

‘Right now, if you say it. Are you strong enough?’

‘Is it far in the cave? I ben on my pins a little, three or four days, now, but I can’t walk more’n a mile, Tom — least I don’t think I could.’

‘It’s about five mile into there the way anybody but me would go, Huck, but there’s a mighty short cut that they don’t anybody but me know about. Huck, I’ll take you right to it in a skiff. I’ll float the skiff down there, and I’ll pull it back again all by myself. You needn’t ever turn your hand over.’

‘Less start right off, Tom.’

‘All right. We want some bread and meat, and our pipes, and a little bag or two, and two or three kite-strings, and some of these new-fangled things they call lucifer matches. I tell you, many's the time I wished I had some when I was in there before.'

A trifle after noon the boys borrowed a small skiff from a citizen who was absent, and got under way at once. When they were several miles below 'Cave Hollow,' Tom said:

'Now you see this bluff here looks all alike all the way down from the cave hollow — no houses, no woodyards, bushes all alike. But do you see that white place up yonder where there's been a landslide? Well, that's one of my marks. We'll get ashore, now.'

They landed.

'Now, Huck, where we're a-standing you could touch that hole I got out of with a fishing-pole. See if you can find it.'

Huck searched all the place about, and found nothing. Tom proudly marched into a thick clump of sumach bushes and said:

'Here you are! Look at it, Huck; it's the snuggest hole in this country. You just keep mum about it. All along I've been wanting to be a robber, but I knew I'd got to have a thing like this, and where to run across it was the bother. We've got it now, and we'll keep it quiet, only we'll let Joe Harper and Ben Rogers in — because of course there's got to be a Gang, or else there wouldn't be any style about it. Tom Sawyer's Gang — it sounds splendid, don't it, Huck?'

'Well, it just does, Tom. And who'll we rob?'

'Oh, most anybody. Waylay people — that's mostly the way.'

'And kill them?'

'No, not always. Hive them in the cave till they raise a ransom.'

'What's a ransom?'

'Money. You make them raise all they can, off'n their friends; and after you've kept them a year, if it ain't raised then you kill them. That's the general way. Only you don't kill the women. You shut up the women, but you don't kill them. They're always beautiful and rich, and awfully scared. You take their watches and things, but you always take your hat off and talk polite. They ain't anybody as polite as robbers — you'll see that in any book. Well, the women get to loving you, and after they've been in the cave a week or two weeks they stop crying and after that you couldn't get them to leave. If you drove them out they'd turn right around and come back. It's so in all the books.'

'Why, it's real bully, Tom. I believe it's better'n to be a pirate.'

'Yes, it's better in some ways, because it's close to home and circuses and all that.'

By this time everything was ready and the boys entered the hole, Tom in the lead. They toiled their way to the farther end of the tunnel, then made their spliced kite-strings fast and moved on. A few steps brought them to the spring, and Tom felt a shudder quiver all through him. He showed Huck the fragment of candle-wick perched on a lump of clay against the wall, and described how he and Becky had watched the flame struggle and expire.

The boys began to quiet down to whispers, now, for the stillness and gloom of the place oppressed their spirits. They went on, and presently entered and followed Tom's other corridor until they reached the 'jumping-off place.' The candles revealed the fact that it was not really a precipice, but only a steep clay hill twenty or thirty feet high. Tom whispered:

'Now I'll show you something, Huck.'

He held his candle aloft and said:

'Look as far around the corner as you can. Do you see that? There — on the big rock over yonder — done with candle-smoke.'

'Tom, it's a CROSS!'

'NOW where's your Number Two? 'UNDER THE CROSS,' hey? Right yonder's where I saw Injun Joe poke up his candle, Huck!'

Huck stared at the mystic sign awhile, and then said with a shaky voice:

'Tom, less git out of here!'

'What! and leave the treasure?'

'Yes — leave it. Injun Joe's ghost is round about there, certain.'

'No it ain't, Huck, no it ain't. It would ha'nt the place where he died — away out at the mouth of the cave — five mile from here.'

'No, Tom, it wouldn't. It would hang round the money. I know the ways of ghosts, and so do you.'

Tom began to fear that Huck was right. Misgivings gathered in his mind. But presently an idea occurred to him —

'Lookyhere, Huck, what fools we're making of ourselves!

Injun Joe's ghost ain't a going to come around where there's a cross!'

The point was well taken. It had its effect.

'Tom, I didn't think of that. But that's so. It's luck for us, that cross is. I reckon we'll climb down there and have a hunt for that box.'

Tom went first, cutting rude steps in the clay hill as he descended. Huck followed. Four avenues opened out of the small cavern which the great rock stood in. The boys examined three of them with no result. They found a small recess in the one nearest the base of the rock, with a pallet of blankets spread down in it; also an old suspender, some bacon rind, and the well-gnawed bones of two or three fowls. But there was no money-box. The lads searched and researched this place, but in vain. Tom said:

'He said UNDER the cross. Well, this comes nearest to being under the cross. It can't be under the rock itself, because that sets solid on the ground.'

They searched everywhere once more, and then sat down discouraged. Huck could suggest nothing. By-and-by Tom said:

'Lookyhere, Huck, there's footprints and some candle-grease on the clay about one side of this rock, but not on the other sides. Now, what's that for? I bet you the money IS under the rock. I'm going to dig in the clay.'

'That ain't no bad notion, Tom!' said Huck with animation.

Tom's 'real Barlow' was out at once, and he had not dug four inches before he struck wood.

'Hey, Huck! — you hear that?'

Huck began to dig and scratch now. Some boards were soon uncovered and removed. They had concealed a natural chasm which led under the rock. Tom got into this and held his candle as far under the rock as he could, but said he could not see to the end of the rift. He proposed to explore. He stooped and passed under; the narrow way descended gradually. He followed its winding course, first to the right, then to the left, Huck at his heels. Tom turned a short curve, by-and-by, and exclaimed:

'My goodness, Huck, lookyhere!'

It was the treasure-box, sure enough, occupying a snug little cavern, along with an empty powder-keg, a couple of guns in leather cases, two or three pairs of old moccasins, a leather belt, and some other rubbish well soaked with the water-drip.

'Got it at last!' said Huck, ploughing among the tarnished coins with his hand. 'My, but we're rich, Tom!'

'Huck, I always reckoned we'd get it. It's just too good to believe, but we HAVE got it, sure! Say — let's not fool around here. Let's snake it out. Lemme see if I can lift the box.'

It weighed about fifty pounds. Tom could lift it, after an awkward fashion, but could not carry it conveniently.

'I thought so,' he said; 'THEY carried it like it was heavy, that day at the ha'nted house. I noticed that. I reckon I was right to think of fetching the little bags along.'

The money was soon in the bags and the boys took it up to the cross rock.

‘Now less fetch the guns and things,’ said Huck.

‘No, Huck — leave them there. They’re just the tricks to have when we go to robbing. We’ll keep them there all the time, and we’ll hold our orgies there, too. It’s an awful snug place for orgies.’

‘What orgies?’

‘I dono. But robbers always have orgies, and of course we’ve got to have them, too. Come along, Huck, we’ve been in here a long time. It’s getting late, I reckon. I’m hungry, too. We’ll eat and smoke when we get to the skiff.’

They presently emerged into the clump of sumach bushes, looked warily out, found the coast clear, and were soon lunching and smoking in the skiff. As the sun dipped toward the horizon they pushed out and got under way. Tom skimmed up the shore through the long twilight, chatting cheerily with Huck, and landed shortly after dark.

‘Now, Huck,’ said Tom, ‘we’ll hide the money in the loft of the widow’s woodshed, and I’ll come up in the morning and we’ll count it and divide, and then we’ll hunt up a place out in the woods for it where it will be safe. Just you lay quiet here and watch the stuff till I run and hook Benny Taylor’s little wagon; I won’t be gone a minute.’

He disappeared, and presently returned with the wagon, put the two small sacks into it, threw some old rags on top of them, and started off, dragging his cargo behind him. When the boys reached the Welshman’s house, they stopped to rest. Just as they were about to move on, the Welshman stepped out and said:

‘Hallo, who’s that?’

'Huck and Tom Sawyer.'

'Good! Come along with me, boys, you are keeping everybody waiting. Here — hurry up, trot ahead — I'll haul the wagon for you. Why, it's not as light as it might be. Got bricks in it? — or old metal?'

'Old metal,' said Tom.

'I judged so; the boys in this town will take more trouble and fool away more time hunting up six bits' worth of old iron to sell to the foundry than they would to make twice the money at regular work. But that's human nature — hurry along, hurry along!'

The boys wanted to know what the hurry was about.

'Never mind; you'll see, when we get to the Widow Douglas'.'

Huck said with some apprehension — for he was long used to being falsely accused:

'Mr. Jones, we haven't been doing nothing.'

The Welshman laughed.

'Well, I don't know, Huck, my boy. I don't know about that. Ain't you and the widow good friends?'

'Yes. Well, she's ben good friends to me, anyway.'

'All right, then. What do you want to be afraid for?'

This question was not entirely answered in Huck's slow mind before he found himself pushed, along with Tom, into Mrs. Douglas' drawing-room. Mr. Jones left the wagon near the door and followed.

The place was grandly lighted, and everybody that was of any consequence in the village was there. The Thatchers were there, the Harpers, the Rogerses, Aunt Polly, Sid, Mary, the minister, the editor, and a great many more, and all dressed in their best. The widow received the boys as heartily as any one could well receive two such looking beings. They were covered with clay and candle-grease. Aunt Polly blushed crimson with humiliation, and frowned and shook her head at Tom. Nobody suffered half as much as the two boys did, however. Mr. Jones said:

'Tom wasn't at home, yet, so I gave him up; but I stumbled on him and Huck right at my door, and so I just brought them along in a hurry.'

'And you did just right,' said the widow. 'Come with me, boys.'

She took them to a bedchamber and said:

'Now wash and dress yourselves. Here are two new suits of clothes — shirts, socks, everything complete. They're Huck's — no, no thanks, Huck — Mr. Jones bought one and I the other. But they'll fit both of you. Get into them. We'll wait — come down when you are slicked up enough.'

Then she left.

Chapter XXXIV

HUCK said: 'Tom, we can slope, if we can find a rope. The window ain't high from the ground.'

'Shucks! what do you want to slope for?'

'Well, I ain't used to that kind of a crowd. I can't stand it. I ain't going down there, Tom.'

'Oh, bother! It ain't anything. I don't mind it a bit. I'll take care of you.'

Sid appeared.

'Tom,' said he, 'auntie has been waiting for you all the afternoon. Mary got your Sunday clothes ready, and everybody's been fretting about you. Say — ain't this grease and clay, on your clothes?'

'Now, Mr. Siddy, you jist 'tend to your own business. What's all this blow-out about, anyway?'

'It's one of the widow's parties that she's always having. This time it's for the Welshman and his sons, on account of that scrape they helped her out of the other night. And say — I can tell you something, if you want to know.'

'Well, what?'

'Why, old Mr. Jones is going to try to spring something on the people here to-night, but I overheard him tell auntie to-day about it, as a secret, but I reckon it's not much of a secret now. Everybody knows — the widow, too, for all she tries to let on she don't. Mr. Jones was bound Huck should be here — couldn't get along with his grand secret without Huck, you know!'

'Secret about what, Sid?'

'About Huck tracking the robbers to the widow's. I reckon Mr. Jones was going to make a grand time over his surprise, but I bet you it will drop pretty flat.'

Sid chuckled in a very contented and satisfied way.

'Sid, was it you that told?'

'Oh, never mind who it was. SOMEBODY told — that's enough.'

'Sid, there's only one person in this town mean enough to do that, and that's you. If you had been in Huck's place you'd 'a' sneaked down the hill and never told anybody on the robbers. You can't do any but mean things, and you can't bear to see anybody praised for doing good ones. There — no thanks, as the widow says' — and Tom cuffed Sid's ears and helped him to the door with several kicks. 'Now go and tell auntie if you dare — and to-morrow you'll catch it!'

Some minutes later the widow's guests were at the supper-table, and a dozen children were propped up at little side-tables in the same room, after the fashion of that country and that day. At the proper time Mr. Jones made his little speech, in which he thanked the widow for the honor she was doing himself and his sons, but said that there was another person whose modesty —

And so forth and so on. He sprung his secret about Huck's share in the adventure in the finest dramatic manner he was master of, but the surprise it occasioned was largely counterfeit and not as clamorous and effusive as it might have been under happier circumstances. However, the widow made a pretty fair show of astonishment, and heaped so many compliments and so much gratitude upon Huck that he almost forgot the nearly intolerable discomfort of his new clothes in the entirely intolerable discomfort of being set up as a target for everybody's gaze and everybody's laudations.

The widow said she meant to give Huck a home under her roof and have him educated; and that when she could spare the money she would start him in business in a modest way. Tom's chance was come. He said:

'Huck don't need it. Huck's rich.'

Nothing but a heavy strain upon the good manners of the company kept back the due and proper complimentary laugh at this pleasant joke. But the silence was a little awkward. Tom broke it:

'Huck's got money. Maybe you don't believe it, but he's got lots of it. Oh, you needn't smile — I reckon I can show you. You just wait a minute.'

Tom ran out of doors. The company looked at each other with a perplexed interest — and inquiringly at Huck, who was tongue-tied.

'Sid, what ails Tom?' said Aunt Polly. 'He — well, there ain't ever any making of that boy out. I never —'

Tom entered, struggling with the weight of his sacks, and Aunt Polly did not finish her sentence. Tom poured the mass of yellow coin upon the table and said:

'There — what did I tell you? Half of it's Huck's and half of it's mine!'

The spectacle took the general breath away. All gazed, nobody spoke for a moment. Then there was a unanimous call for an explanation. Tom said he could furnish it, and he did. The tale was long, but brimful of interest. There was scarcely an interruption from any one to break the charm of its flow. When he had finished, Mr. Jones said:

'I thought I had fixed up a little surprise for this occasion, but it don't amount to anything now. This one makes it sing mighty small, I'm willing to allow.'

The money was counted. The sum amounted to a little over twelve thousand dollars. It was more than any one present had ever seen at one time before, though several persons were there who were worth considerably more than that in property.

Chapter XXXV

THE reader may rest satisfied that Tom's and Huck's windfall made a mighty stir in the poor little village of St. Petersburg. So vast a sum, all in actual cash, seemed next to incredible. It was talked about, gloated over, glorified, until the reason of many of the citizens tottered under the strain of the unhealthy excitement. Every 'haunted' house in St. Petersburg and the neighboring villages was dissected, plank by plank, and its foundations dug up and ransacked for hidden treasure — and not by boys, but men — pretty grave, unromantic men, too, some of them. Wherever Tom and Huck appeared they were courted, admired, stared at. The boys were not able to remember that their remarks had possessed weight before; but now their sayings were treasured and repeated; everything they did seemed somehow to be regarded as remarkable; they had evidently lost the power of doing and saying commonplace things; moreover, their past history was raked up and discovered to bear marks of conspicuous originality. The village paper published biographical sketches of the boys.

The Widow Douglas put Huck's money out at six per cent., and Judge Thatcher did the same with Tom's at Aunt Polly's request. Each lad had an income, now, that was simply prodigious — a dollar for every week-day in the year and half of the Sundays. It was just what the minister got

— no, it was what he was promised — he generally couldn't collect it. A dollar and a quarter a week would board, lodge, and school a boy in those old simple days — and clothe him and wash him, too, for that matter.

Judge Thatcher had conceived a great opinion of Tom. He said that no commonplace boy would ever have got his daughter out of the cave. When Becky told her father, in strict confidence, how Tom had taken her whipping at school, the Judge was visibly moved; and when she pleaded grace for the mighty lie which Tom had told in order to shift that whipping from her shoulders to his own, the Judge said with a fine outburst that it was a noble, a generous, a magnanimous lie — a lie that was worthy to hold up its head and march down through history breast to breast with George Washington's lauded Truth about the hatchet! Becky thought her father had never looked so tall and so superb as when he walked the floor and stamped his foot and said that. She went straight off and told Tom about it.

Judge Thatcher hoped to see Tom a great lawyer or a great soldier some day. He said he meant to look to it that Tom should be admitted to the National Military Academy and afterward trained in the best law school in the country, in order that he might be ready for either career or both.

Huck Finn's wealth and the fact that he was now under the Widow Douglas' protection introduced him into society — no, dragged him into it, hurled him into it — and his sufferings were almost more than he could bear. The widow's servants kept him clean and neat, combed and brushed, and they bedded him nightly in unsympathetic sheets that had not one little spot or stain which he could press to his heart and know for a friend. He had to eat with a knife and fork; he had to use napkin, cup, and plate; he had to learn his book, he had to go to church; he had to talk so properly that speech was become insipid in his mouth; whithersoever he turned, the bars and shackles of civilization shut him in and bound him hand and foot.

He bravely bore his miseries three weeks, and then one day turned up missing. For forty-eight hours the widow hunted for him everywhere in great distress. The public were profoundly concerned; they searched high and low, they dragged the river for his body. Early the third morning Tom Sawyer wisely went poking among some old empty hogsheads down behind the abandoned slaughter-house, and in one of them he found the refugee. Huck had slept there; he had just breakfasted upon some stolen odds and ends of food, and was lying off, now, in comfort, with his pipe. He was unkempt, uncombed, and clad in the same old ruin of rags that had made him picturesque in the days when he was free and happy. Tom routed him out, told him the trouble he had been causing, and urged him to go home. Huck's face lost its tranquil content, and took a melancholy cast. He said:

'Don't talk about it, Tom. I've tried it, and it don't work; it don't work, Tom. It ain't for me; I ain't used to it. The widder's good to me, and friendly; but I can't stand them ways. She makes me get up just at the same time every morning; she makes me wash, they comb me all to thunder; she won't let me sleep in the woodshed; I got to wear them blamed clothes that just smothers me, Tom; they don't seem to any air git through 'em, somehow; and they're so rotten nice that I can't set down, nor lay down, nor roll around anywher's; I hain't slid on a cellar-door for — well, it 'pears to be years; I got to go to church and sweat and sweat — I hate them ornery sermons! I can't ketch a fly in there, I can't chaw. I got to wear shoes all Sunday. The widder eats by a bell; she goes to bed by a bell; she gits up by a bell — everything's so awful reg'lar a body can't stand it.'

'Well, everybody does that way, Huck.'

'Tom, it don't make no difference. I ain't everybody, and I can't STAND it. It's awful to be tied up so. And grub comes too easy — I don't take no interest in vittles, that way. I got to ask to go a-fishing; I got to ask to go in a-swimming — dern'd if I hain't got to ask to do everything. Well, I'd got to talk so nice it wasn't no comfort — I'd got to go up in the attic and rip out awhile, every day, to git a taste in my mouth, or I'd a died, Tom. The widder wouldn't let me smoke; she wouldn't let me yell, she wouldn't let me gape, nor stretch, nor scratch, before folks —' [Then with a spasm of special irritation and injury] — 'And dad fetch it, she prayed all the time! I never see such a woman! I HAD to shove, Tom — I just had to. And besides, that school's going to open, and I'd a had to go to it — well, I wouldn't stand THAT, Tom. Lookyhere, Tom, being rich ain't what it's cracked up to be. It's just worry and worry, and sweat and sweat, and a-wishing you was dead all the time. Now these clothes suits me, and this bar'l suits me, and I ain't ever going to shake 'em any more. Tom, I wouldn't ever got into all this trouble if it hadn't 'a' ben for that money; now you just take my sheer of it along with your'n, and gimme a ten-center sometimes — not many times, becuz I don't give a dern for a thing 'thout it's tollable hard to git — and you go and beg off for me with the widder.'

'Oh, Huck, you know I can't do that. 'Tain't fair; and besides if you'll try this thing just a while longer you'll come to like it.'

'Like it! Yes — the way I'd like a hot stove if I was to set on it long enough. No, Tom, I won't be rich, and I won't live in them cussed smothery houses. I like the woods, and the river, and hogsheads, and I'll stick to 'em, too. Blame it all! just as we'd got guns, and a cave, and all just fixed to rob, here this dern foolishness has got to come up and spile it all!'

Tom saw his opportunity —

'Lookyhere, Huck, being rich ain't going to keep me back from turning robber.'

'No! Oh, good-licks; are you in real dead-wood earnest, Tom?'

'Just as dead earnest as I'm sitting here. But Huck, we can't let you into the gang if you ain't respectable, you know.'

Huck's joy was quenched.

'Can't let me in, Tom? Didn't you let me go for a pirate?'

'Yes, but that's different. A robber is more hightoned than what a pirate is — as a general thing. In most countries they're awful high up in the nobility — dukes and such.'

'Now, Tom, hain't you always ben friendly to me? You wouldn't shet me out, would you, Tom? You wouldn't do that, now, WOULD you, Tom?'

'Huck, I wouldn't want to, and I DON'T want to — but what would people say? Why, they'd say, 'Mph! Tom Sawyer's Gang! pretty low characters in it!' They'd mean you, Huck. You wouldn't like that, and I wouldn't.'

Huck was silent for some time, engaged in a mental struggle. Finally he said:

'Well, I'll go back to the widder for a month and tackle it and see if I can come to stand it, if you'll let me b'long to the gang, Tom.'

'All right, Huck, it's a whiz! Come along, old chap, and I'll ask the widow to let up on you a little, Huck.'

'Will you, Tom — now will you? That's good. If she'll let up on some of the roughest things, I'll smoke private and cuss private, and crowd through or bust. When you going to start the gang and turn robbers?'

'Oh, right off. We'll get the boys together and have the initiation to-night, maybe.'

'Have the which?'

'Have the initiation.'

'What's that?'

'It's to swear to stand by one another, and never tell the gang's secrets, even if you're chopped all to flinders, and kill anybody and all his family that hurts one of the gang.'

'That's gay — that's mighty gay, Tom, I tell you.'

'Well, I bet it is. And all that swearing's got to be done at midnight, in the lonesomest, awfulest place you can find — a ha'nted house is the best, but they're all ripped up now.'

'Well, midnight's good, anyway, Tom.'

'Yes, so it is. And you've got to swear on a coffin, and sign it with blood.'

'Now, that's something LIKE! Why, it's a million times bullier than pirating. I'll stick to the widder till I rot, Tom; and if I git to be a reg'lar ripper of a robber, and everybody talking 'bout it, I reckon she'll be proud she snaked me in out of the wet.'

CONCLUSION

SO endeth this chronicle. It being strictly a history of a BOY, it must stop here; the story could not go much further without becoming the history of a MAN. When one writes a novel about grown people, he knows exactly where to stop — that is, with a marriage; but when he writes of juveniles, he must stop where he best can.

Most of the characters that perform in this book still live, and are prosperous and happy. Some day it may seem worth while to take up the story of the younger ones again and see what sort of men and women they turned out to be; therefore it will be wisest not to reveal any of that part of their lives at present.